Microorganisms for Sustainability 18

Series Editor: Naveen Kumar Arora

Ram Naresh Bharagava *Editor*

Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment

Springer

Microorganisms for Sustainability

Volume 18

Series editor
Naveen Kumar Arora, Environmental Microbiology, School for Environmental Science, Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

More information about this series at http://www.springer.com/series/14379

Ram Naresh Bharagava
Editor

Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment

Springer

Editor
Ram Naresh Bharagava
Department of Microbiology
Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University
Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

ISSN 2512-1901 ISSN 2512-1898 (electronic)
Microorganisms for Sustainability
ISBN 978-981-15-1389-3 ISBN 978-981-15-1390-9 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-1390-9

© Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd. 2020
This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed.
The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.
The publisher, the authors, and the editors are safe to assume that the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication. Neither the publisher nor the authors or the editors give a warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the material contained herein or for any errors or omissions that may have been made. The publisher remains neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published maps and institutional affiliations.

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

This book is truly dedicated to my parents for their unfailing patience, contagious love, forgiveness, selflessness, and endless support, my wife for trusting and believing me, and my kids for always being a hope to move forward in life.
Ram Naresh Bharagava

Preface

Environmental pollution has become one of the serious problems of the current scenario worldwide. Environmental safety and sustainability with rapid industrialization is also a major challenge. Environmental pollutants are mainly organic and inorganic in nature and are released in the environment through natural and anthropogenic activities. Organic pollutants mainly include pesticides, phenolic compounds, chlorophenols, petroleum hydrocarbons, azo dyes, polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), polyaromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), organometallic compounds, persistent organic pollutants (POPs), etc., whereas inorganic pollutants include a variety of toxic and non-biodegradable heavy metals such as cadmium (Cd), chromium (Cr), lead (Pb), arsenic (As), and mercury (Hg). Among the different sources of environmental pollution, industrial wastewaters are mainly considered as the major sources of environmental pollution. The untreated/partially treated wastewaters discharged from various industries contains potentially toxic and hazardous organic and inorganic pollutants, which cause the pollution of soil and aquatic resources including groundwater and severe toxic effects in humans, animals, and plants. The governments around the globe are strictly advocating for the mitigation of environmental pollution. Hence, the removal/elimination of pollutants from the contaminated environment is utmost important for environmental safety and to promote the sustainable development of our society with low environmental impacts.

Various approaches are being applied for the removal of toxic and hazardous pollutants from contaminated environments. Physicochemical approaches are commonly used for the treatment and management of contaminated environment, but these approaches are environmentally destructive in nature due to generation of secondary pollutants, which is also a serious concern. Ecofriendly approaches such as bioremediation approaches can be a sustainable solution for the treatment and management of environment contaminated by a wide range of organic and inorganic pollutants. Bioremediation is an environment-friendly and cost-effective technique that uses microbes such as bacterial, fungi, and algae., green plants, or their enzymes to degrade/detoxify the toxic environmental pollutants from the polluted soils and aquatic resources. Bioremediation is recognized and approved by the United States Environmental Protection Agency as an ecofriendly solution for environmental management. The ecofriendly removal of pollutants from contaminated environments requires our increasing understanding of degradation pathways and regulatory networks to carbon flux for their degradation and detoxification, which is utmost important for environmental safety. Therefore, this book provides the comprehensive and up-to-date knowledge of eco-toxicological and health effects of various environmental pollutants and ecofriendly approaches for their degradation and detoxification for environmental management.

The main focus in this book relies on the eco-toxicological and health effects of various toxic and hazardous environmental pollutants such as toxic metals, pesticides, azo dyes, petroleum hydrocarbons, and a variety of toxic heavy metals such as cadmium and chromium released from natural as well as anthropogenic sources, their toxicological effects in environments, humans, and animals and ecofriendly approaches such as bioremediation and phytoremediation for degradation and detoxification for environmental safety. For this book, a number of experts from colleges, universities. and research laboratories have contributed their valuable knowledge on the relevant topic, which will be quite useful for readers to get more information on the subject matter. All the chapters compiled in this book cover the different aspects of environmental problems and their remedies with up-to-date developments in the field of biodegradation and bioremediation including the use of various group of microbes for environmental remediation, terrestrial/aquatic plants for phytoremediation of toxic metals from contaminated sites, constructed wetlands for treatment of industrial wastewaters, microbial enzymes for degradation and detoxification of environmental pollutants, biosurfactants for remediation of petroleum hydrocarbons and heavy metals, biodegradation and bioremediation of azo dyes, pesticides, plant–microbe interactions for environmental remediation, and various emerging technologies such as electro-bioremediation, nano-bioremediation, and microbial fuel cell for environmental management.

This book will be of great value to researchers, environmental chemists and scientists, microbiologists and biotechnologists, eco-toxicologists, waste treatment engineers and managers, environmental science managers, administrators and policy makers, industry persons and students at bachelor’s, master’s, and doctoral level in the relevant field. Thus, in this book, readers will find the updated information as well as the future direction for research in the field of environmental management.

Lucknow, India Ram Naresh Bharagava

Acknowledgements

The edited book entitled *Emerging Ecofriendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment* is the outcome of long dedicated efforts of many individuals, who directly or indirectly supported me during the compilation and upbringing of this valuable edition; many of whom deserve special mention.

The Editor is highly thankful to all the national and international contributing authors for their valuable submissions, cooperation and providing most up-to-date information on the diverse aspects of the subject regardless of their busy schedules.

I am extremely thankful to our Series Editor, Prof. Naveen Kumar Arora, and Publishing Editor, Ms. Aakanksha Tyagi, for the encouragement, support and valuable advice, and skillful organization and management of the entire book project; Ms. Vaishnavi Venkatesh for moving the book through the production process in an efficient and professional manner.

I am also heartily thankful to the Almighty God for helping me through the entire journey and making the experience enjoyable. Further, we hope that this book will be of great value to researchers working on *Wastewaters and their Treatment* and will go some way to make our planet safe and greener. At the end, we seek to learn more on the subject through the valuable comments, reviews, and suggestions from our readers.

Contents

About the Series Editor

Naveen Kumar Arora, PhD, Microbiology, is a Professor in the Department of Environmental Science at Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University (A Central University), Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India, and is a renowned researcher in the field of Environmental Microbiology and Biotechnology. His specific area of research is rhizosphere biology and PGPRs. He has more than 50 research papers published in premium international journals and several articles published in magazines and dailies. He is the editor of 10 books, published by Springer. He is a member of several national and international societies, Secretary General of the Society for Environmental Sustainability, on the editorial board of four journals, and a reviewer of several international journals. He is also the Editor in Chief of the journal *Environmental Sustainability* published by Springer Nature. He has delivered lectures in conferences and seminars around the globe. He has a long-standing interest in teaching at the PG level and is involved in taking courses in bacteriology, microbial physiology, environmental microbiology, agricultural microbiology, and industrial microbiology. He has been advisor to 118 postgraduate and 08 doctoral students. Recently, he was awarded for excellence in research by the Honorable Governor of Uttar Pradesh. Although an academician and researcher by profession, he has a huge obsession for the wildlife and its conservation and has authored a book, *Splendid Wilds*. He is the President of the Society for Conservation of Wildlife and has a dedicated website www.naveenarora.co.in for the cause of wildlife and environmental conservation.

Editor and Contributors

About the Editor

Ram Naresh Bharagava is an Assistant Professor in Department of Microbiology, Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University, Vidya Vihar, Raebareli Road, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India. He earned B.Sc. in Biology from the University of Lucknow, Lucknow, and M.Sc. in Molecular Biology and Biotechnology from Govind Ballabh Pant University of Agriculture & Technology (GBPUAT), Pantnagar, Uttarakhand (UK), India. He did Ph.D. in Microbiology from Indian Institute of Toxicology Research (CSIR-IITR), Lucknow, and Pt. Ravishankar Shukla University, Raipur, Chhattisgarh, India. He published one author book and eight edited books and more than 140 research items in National and International journal of repute. His major thrust areas of research are Biodegradation and Bioremediation of Environmental Pollutants, Metagenomics and Wastewater Microbiology. He is life member of the Indian Science Congress Association (ISCA), India, Association of Microbiologists of India (AMI), Biotech Research Society, India (BRSI), and Academy of Environmental Biology (AEB).

Contributors

S. Adishkumar Department of Civil Engineering, University V.O.C College of Engineering, Anna University, Thoothukudi, India

Ankit Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Jharkhand, Ranchi, India

Rida Batool Department of Microbiology and Molecular Genetics, University of the Punjab, Quaid-e-Azam Campus, Lahore, Pakistan

Kuldeep Bauddh Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Jharkhand Ranchi, Ranchi, India

Monalisha Behera Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Rajasthan, Ajmer, India

Ram Naresh Bharagava Laboratory for Bioremediation and Metagenomics Research (LBMR), Department of Microbiology (DM), Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University (A Central University), Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

Zainab S. Birungi Water Utililisation and Environmental Engineering Division, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Pretoria, Pretoria, Gauteng, South Africa

Nirmali Bordoloi Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Jharkhand Ranchi, Ranchi, India

Evans M. N. Chirwa Water Utililisation and Environmental Engineering Division, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Pretoria, Pretoria, Gauteng, South Africa

Géssica de Oliveira Santiago Santos Post-Graduated Program on Process Engineering, Tiradentes University, Aracaju-Sergipe, Brazil

Institute of Technology and Research, Aracaju-Sergipe, Brazil

Marília Moura de Salles Pupo Post-Graduated Program on Process Engineering, Tiradentes University, Aracaju-Sergipe, Brazil

Institute of Technology and Research, Aracaju-Sergipe, Brazil

M. Dinesh Kumar Department of Civil Engineering, Anna University Regional Campus, Tirunelveli, India

Divya Dubey Department of Environmental Science (DES), School of Environmental Science (SES), Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar (A Central) University, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

Venkatesh Dutta Department of Environmental Science (DES), School of Environmental Science (SES), Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar (A Central) University, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

Deepa H. Dwivedi Department of Horticulture, School of Agriculture Sciences and Technology, Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

Katlin Ivon Barrios Eguiluz Post-Graduated Program on Process Engineering, Tiradentes University, Aracaju-Sergipe, Brazil

Institute of Technology and Research, Aracaju-Sergipe, Brazil

Luiz Fernando Romanholo Ferreira Post-Graduated Program on Process Engineering, Tiradentes University, Aracaju-Sergipe, Brazil

Institute of Technology and Research, Aracaju-Sergipe, Brazil

Alak Kumar Ghosh Department of Chemistry, University of Burdwan, Golapbag, Burdwan (E), West Bengal, India

Munni Gond Department of Horticulture, School of Agriculture Sciences and Technology, Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

S. Gopikumar Department of Civil Engineering, SCAD College of Engineering and Technology, Tirunelveli, India

Lienda Handojo Department of Chemical Engineering, Institut Teknologi Bandung, Bandung, Indonesia

Antonius Indarto Department of Chemical Engineering, Institut Teknologi Bandung, Bandung, Indonesia

Asma Kalsoom Department of Microbiology and Molecular Genetics, University of the Punjab, Lahore, Pakistan

Susmita Karmakar Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Jharkhand, Ranchi, India

Shubhra Khare Plant Physiology Laboratory, Department of Botany, University of Allahabad, Allahabad, Uttar Pradesh, India

Zakhele (Zack) Khuzwayo Environmental Engineering Sciences and Water Utilisation Engineering, Department of Chemical Engineering, Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment, and Information Technology (EBIT), University of Pretoria, Pretoria, Gauteng, South Africa

Sachin Kishor Department of Horticulture, School of Agriculture Sciences and Technology, Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

John Korstad Department of Biology and Renewable Energy, Oral Roberts University, Tulsa, OK, USA

Sankaran Krishnamoorthy Algae Biotechnology Laboratory, Department of Energy and Environment, National Institute of Technology, Tiruchirappalli, Tamil Nadu, India

Narendra Kumar Department of Environmental Sciences, Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

Ramesh Kumar Department of Chemistry, University of Burdwan, Golapbag, Burdwan (E), West Bengal, India

Sanjeev Kumar Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Jharkhand, Ranchi, India

Saroj Kumar Department of Environmental Science (DES), School of Environmental Science (SES), Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar (A Central) University, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

Khushbu Kumari Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Jharkhand Ranchi, Ranchi, India

Nisha Kumari Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Rajasthan, Ajmer, India

Sutanu Maji Department of Horticulture, School of Agriculture Sciences and Technology, Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

Dave Mangindaan Department of Food Technology, Bina Nusantara University, West Jakarta, Indonesia

Niharika Plant Physiology Laboratory, Department of Botany, University of Allahabad, Allahabad, Uttar Pradesh, India

Evans M. Nkhalambayausi Chirwa Water Utilisation and Environmental Engineering Division, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Pretoria, Pretoria, Gauteng, South Africa

Parimal Pal Chemical Engineering Department, National Institute of Technology Durgapur, Burdwan (W), West Bengal, India

Abhay K. Pandey Department of Biochemistry, University of Allahabad, Allahabad, Uttar Pradesh, India

Jyoti Pandey Department of Chemistry, School of Physical and Decision Sciences (SPDS), Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University (Central University), Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

Daniel Pramudita Department of Chemical Engineering, Institut Teknologi Bandung, Bandung, Indonesia

Bhanu Pratap Department of Environmental Science (DES), School of Environmental Science (SES), Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar (A Central) University, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

Premalatha Manickam Algae Biotechnology Laboratory, Department of Energy and Environment, National Institute of Technology, Tiruchirappalli, Tamil Nadu, India

J. Rajesh Banu Department of Civil Engineering, Anna University Regional Campus, Tirunelveli, India

Anita Rani Department of Botany, Dyal Singh College, University of Delhi, New Delhi, India

Maria Roestorff Water Utililisation and Environmental Engineering Division, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Pretoria, Pretoria, Gauteng, South Africa

Lala Saha Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Jharkhand Ranchi, Ranchi, India

Giancarlo Richard Salazar-Banda Post-Graduated Program on Process Engineering, Tiradentes University, Aracaju-Sergipe, Brazil

Institute of Technology and Research, Aracaju-Sergipe, Brazil

Na Shen Water Utililisation and Environmental Engineering Division, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Pretoria, Pretoria, Gauteng, South Africa

Amit Kumar Singh Department of Biochemistry, University of Allahabad, Allahabad, Uttar Pradesh, India

N. B. Singh Plant Physiology Laboratory, Department of Botany, University of Allahabad, Allahabad, Uttar Pradesh, India

Namrta Singh Department of Horticulture, School of Agriculture Sciences and Technology, Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

Niharika Singh Plant Physiology Laboratory, Department of Botany, University of Allahabad, Allahabad, Uttar Pradesh, India

Ritu Singh Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Rajasthan, Ajmer, India

Sagarika Sinha Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Jharkhand Ranchi, Ranchi, India

Jaya Tiwari School of Biological Sciences, AIPH University, Bhubaneswar, Orissa, India

Nádia Hortense Torres Institute of Technology and Research, Aracaju-Sergipe, Brazil

Do Khac Uan School of Environmental Science and Technology, Hanoi University of Science and Technology, Hanoi, Vietnam

Vijayasekaran Muthukaruppan Research and Development, Trichy Distilleries and Chemicals Ltd., Tiruchirappalli, Tamil Nadu, India

Ravi Kumar Yadav Plant Physiology Laboratory, Department of Botany, University of Allahabad, Allahabad, Uttar Pradesh, India

Chapter 1
Green Technologies for the Treatment of Pharmaceutical Contaminants in Wastewaters

Marília Moura de Salles Pupo, Géssica de Oliveira Santiago Santos, Nádia Hortense Torres, Ram Naresh Bharagava, Luiz Fernando Romanholo Ferreira, Giancarlo Richard Salazar-Banda, and Katlin Ivon Barrios Eguiluz

Abstract The remarkable worldwide increase in the production and use of several pharmaceuticals, on one hand, brings advantages to modern society and, on the other hand, represents a hazardous risk to natural ecosystems. Pharmaceuticals are considered emerging contaminants of great environmental concern since its continuous disposal in the environment and high persistency can affect ecosystems and human life quality. In this context, the scientific community has addressed this problematic in several fronts investigating incidence, toxicological effects, and detection techniques to determine the real impact of the increase of its release as one of the challenges of the new millennia. The present chapter approaches the occurrence, and deleterious effects of these contaminants, as well as the alternative treatments developed to adequately remove them from natural water bodies and water streams.

Keywords Wastewaters · Pharmaceutical contaminants · Hazardous risks · Green technologies · Treatment

---

M. M. de Salles Pupo · G. de Oliveira Santiago Santos · L. F. R. Ferreira · G. R. Salazar-Banda · K. I. B. Eguiluz (✉)
Post-Graduated Program on Process Engineering, Tiradentes University,
Aracaju-Sergipe, Brazil

Institute of Technology and Research, Aracaju-Sergipe, Brazil

N. H. Torres
Institute of Technology and Research, Aracaju-Sergipe, Brazil

R. N. Bharagava
Laboratory for Bioremediation and Metagenomics Research (LBMR), Department of Microbiology (DM), Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University (A Central University), Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

R. N. Bharagava (ed.), *Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment*, Microorganisms for Sustainability 18,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-1390-9_1

1.1 Introduction

Emerging contaminants have no proper definition, being hard to describe and classify (Tijani et al. 2016). The US Geological Society defines the emerging contaminants as synthetic or naturally occurring chemicals, microorganisms, or metabolites that are not monitored but have the potential to cause adverse ecological and/or human health effects (USGS 2014). Recent research shows that the use of pharmaceuticals will globally reach 4500 billion doses by 2020, approximately 24% more than in 2015; at the same time, 50% of the world population will be able to consume more than one dose per person per day. Compared to consumption, global spending for pharmaceuticals is mostly driven by the USA, EU (Germany, the UK, Italy, France, Spain), Japan, Canada, South Korea, and Australia (QuintilesI MS Health, 2015, 2016), with an overall market of $1400 billion by 2020 (Mezzelani et al. 2018).

The development of analytical techniques such as high-performance liquid chromatography-mass spectrometry (HPLC-MS) allowed the detection of several compounds in complex matrixes identifying and quantifying the compounds in concentrations as low as nanograms per liter. Considering their high toxicity and the ability to move along the food chain, most times even nano-level of contaminations is enough to see deleterious effects promoted from contact with pharmaceuticals (Rivera-Utrilla et al. 2013; Yadav et al. 2016a; Comber et al. 2018). Attempts like the Stockholm Convention, also known as the Persistent Organic Pollutants Treaty of 2001, and the Berlaymont Declaration of 2013 have been made seeking to control the level of these contaminants in the environment, without success.

Among the emerging contaminants, pharmaceuticals are classified according to their uses adding to up to 24 classifications, of which four are predominantly found in water and are known as nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), anticonvulsants, antibiotics, and lipid regulators (Tijani et al. 2016). The first reports of pharmaceuticals as environmental contaminants were only found when ethinylestradiol (birth control substance) was directly related to neurological impairment found in fishes back in 1994 (Gautam et al. 2017; Purdom et al. 1994), but their effects on the environmental balance vary from disrupting key bacterial cycles (nitrification/denitrification) to impairments in soil fertility (Watkinson et al. 2009). With the increase in human and animal use of these drugs, and due to the incomplete metabolization of these compounds, an increase in volume detected in the environment has been seen in recent years. Although most of the pharmaceuticals reach the wastewater treatment plants after being somewhat digested by human and animal organisms, there is still a great amount of the contaminants that reach the systems as purchased due to inadequate disposal of these compounds (Pereira et al. 2017).

This problem is accentuated when considering that conventional wastewater treatment plants do not reach complete mineralization of these compounds, which several times exits the system unchanged (Yadav et al. 2016b; Zhang et al. 2018). The scenario is more problematic when considering practices of water reuse, especially adopted in areas where the resource is scarce. For instance, Kleywegt et al.

(2011) detected more than 30 different pharmaceuticals in drinking water across the world.

Endocrine disruption, chronic toxicity, and increase in bacterial strain resistance to these drugs are the main side effects already spread worldwide. Hence, pharmaceuticals and several emerging contaminants are being even more frequently the focus on research and investments in order to better understand their incidence and their fate in natural environments. In this sense, UNESCO-IHP initiative funded by the Swedish International and Developed Cooperation Agency (Sida) just invested in studies in 17 different countries (Australia, Brazil, China, Ethiopia, India, Kenya, Kuwait, Mexico, Mongolia, Nigeria, Norway, Rwanda, Saint Lucia, Thailand, Tunisia, Ukraine, and Vietnam).

Notably, efforts from various entities are starting to promote awareness of the problem and address possible solutions and research on the topic. However, pharmaceutical pollution control protocols involve both political and cultural changes demanding intensive and direct participation of the standard home user. With this background, this chapter presents a critical review of the recent scientific development on the issue of presenting environmentally friendly options for pharmaceutical removal from the environment. In addition, a summary of the main pharmaceuticals found in the environment and the latest detection methods is presented. Finally, the uses of environmentally friendly technologies named green technologies for the elimination of these compounds from the environment are also discussed.

1.2 Occurrence of Pharmaceuticals Worldwide

The presence of pharmaceutical contaminants in the wastewater is directly related to human activity and, as such, is highly unpredictable. Partly, this is because these contaminants can enter the environment from several sources (Fig. 1.1). However, household wastewater is one of the main sources for pharmaceuticals found in the environment (Pereira et al. 2017). Additionally, pharmaceuticals used in veterinary applications are commonly excreted directly into soils or superficial waters without proper treatment, which increases the complexity of emission estimation (Bielen et al. 2017).

Due to their physical-chemical properties, high stability, and chemical persistence, pharmaceuticals are generally hard to naturally degrade. In a more concerning scenario, their chemical structures can present specific affinities that lead them to bond, rearrange, and develop synergistic effects resulting in a more bioactive compound than their metabolic precursor (Luo et al. 2014; Zainith et al. 2019). Various routes by which the pharmaceuticals enter the environment can be seen in Fig. 1.1 (Tijani et al. 2016; Verlicchi et al. 2012; Ding et al. 2010; Yang et al. 2017a; Scott et al. 2018).

Therefore, it is no surprise that pharmaceuticals have been found in both influent and effluent waters from wastewater treatment plants (WWTP) (Comber et al. 2018; Verlicchi et al. 2012; Cotillas et al. 2016; Guedes-alonso et al. 2013), surface water

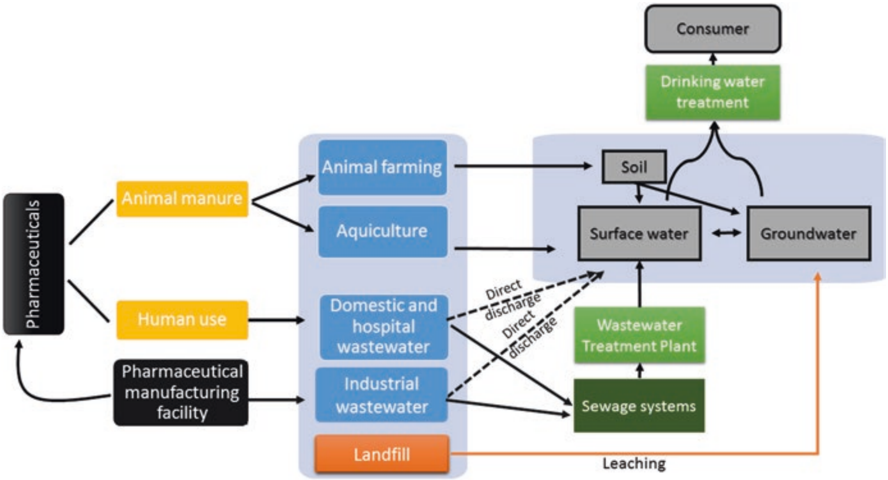


Fig. 1.1 Schematic pathways of pharmaceutical contaminants from sources to receptors (gray) (Adapted from Stuart et al. (2012))

Table 1.1 Pharmaceutical classes and representative compounds intensely consumed worldwide according to its use

Classes	Representative compound
Antibiotic	Erythromycin; sulfamethoxazole
Antimicrobial	Oxytetracycline, trimethoprim
Anti-inflammatory	Acetylsalicylic acid; ibuprofen; diclofenac
Analgesic	Paracetamol
Antidepressants	Benzodiazepines
Antiepileptics	Carbamazepine
Lipid-lowering drugs	Fibrates
β-Blockers	Atenolol, propranolol, and metoprolol
Antiulcer drugs and antihistamines	Ranitidine and famotidine
Other substances	Cocaine, barbiturates, methadone, amphetamines, opiates, heroin, and other narcotics

(Bielen et al. 2017; Marsik et al. 2017; Mandaric et al. 2017), groundwater (Yao et al. 2017; Sui et al. 2015), and even drinking water (Machado et al. 2016; Saxena et al. 2015; Leung et al. 2013; Mompelat et al. 2009). Among the several compounds found in literature, a brief summary of the most frequent classes of pharmaceuticals and representative compounds is displayed in Table 1.1 (Kümmerer 2001; Balakrishna et al. 2017; Puckowski et al. 2016).

In countries like China, known as the largest producer and consumer of pharmaceuticals in the world, amounts of over 90,000 tons of antibiotics were estimated to be consumed, of which 53,800 tons entered the environment through WWTP (Zhang et al. 2018). The loadings vary according to the season, sporadic events, intra- and inter-day variation, and spatial distribution, which all contribute to the difficulty to properly predict the amounts of contaminants found in the environment (Petrie et al. 2014). Further, urban and anthropic variables, such as tourism and collective vacation periods, have been found to significantly alter the incidence of pharmaceuticals in the environment (Mandaric et al. 2017). For example, studies developed by Mandaric et al. (2017), analyzing the incidence of 80 different pharmaceutical compounds in the Adige river basin (Italy), found that the overall presence of the compounds was higher in winter than in summer.

However, considering the distribution throughout over 400 km of the river and 12 different sampling points, it was proven that this difference is related to both the larger dilution seen in summer, due to the snow melting and the higher presence of tourists during winter. Similarly, Azzouz and Ballesteros (2013) and Pereira et al. (2015) analyzed the influence of environmental conditions on the concentration of pharmaceuticals, hormones, and personal care products in samples of raw water received by a WWTP in southeastern Spain. The research focused on determining the presence of compounds most resistant to removal by conventional wastewater treatment. Higher levels of these contaminants were observed in colder periods than in warm periods (spring and summer), which was mainly attributed to the biodegradation being favored by high temperatures and solar irradiance. On the other hand, carbamazepine in raw water presented only little change between periods, which suggests that this pharmaceutical is resistant to changes in temperature and solar irradiance.

Finally, the efficiency with which these contaminants are removed by a conventional water treatment plant operating by means of peroxidation with potassium permanganate and chlorination with sodium hypochlorite in the presence of highly concentrated ammonia was evaluated (Saxena et al. 2015; Bharagava et al. 2018). As result, it was found that water treated in the colder periods still contained small amounts of ibuprofen and carbamazepine (0.09–0.50 ng L^{-1}), these values being less than 0.2% of their initial concentrations at the WWTP intake.

On the other hand, Marsik et al. (2017) analyzed the concentration of five of the most common nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) (ibuprofen, diclofenac, naproxen, ketoprofen, and indomethacin) collected in 29 sites, including urban and rural areas, water streams, and main water supply points in the Elba river in Czech Republic. Although the amount of NSAID varied according to the sampling point, in general, their concentrations increase during the months of spring and autumn. In this study, ibuprofen was the most abundant compound found (3.210 ng L^{-1}), followed by naproxen, diclofenac, and ketoprofen (1.4238 ng L^{-1}, 1.080 ng L^{-1}, and 929 ng L^{-1}, respectively). Additionally, factors like flow rates also influenced the concentration of all compounds showing a significant increase in creeks, probably associated with the proximity to the contamination source.

Kot-Wasik et al. (2016) investigated the occurrence and efficiency of removing 25 pharmaceuticals during water and wastewater treatment analyzing the seasonal variation noted throughout the year. The compounds found more frequently were carbamazepine (100% of the samples) and ibuprofen (98% of the samples). Still, pharmaceutical concentrations were higher in winter, especially for the nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) and caffeine, probably due to degradation inhibition related to low temperatures and limited sunlight. Carbamazepine was once again found as the most resistant to natural degradation, and its concentration was uniform throughout the year.

Therefore, complex studies like these, which seek to understand the anthropogenic effect on the concentration of pharmaceuticals throughout the year, promote a better knowledge of the various routes in which population density can affect contamination rates and aid in developing adequate protocols to suit various environments. Nowadays, an increasing concern on the presence of these contaminants in drinking water is seen, especially in governmental studies. Kleywegt et al. (2011) reported a survey carried out by the Ontario Ministry of the Environment (MOE), analyzing 258 field samples, collected through the timespan of 16 months. Incidence of pharmaceuticals and other emerging contaminants is widely reported in drinking water samples in this study, highlighting the need for improvements in the treatment used to remove these specific compounds.

Moreover, the amounts in which these compounds are found have become an alarming problem. Kay et al. (2017) analyzed the Aire and Calder catchment in West Yorkshire (UK), which receive 105 WWTP effluents being the most populated area of the UK with close to 1.5 million people. For analysis, only five of the most commonly found compounds were analyzed in the samples gathered, which were 121 WWTP effluents, 185 receiving waters, and 14 combined sewer outflows. The compounds analyzed were diclofenac, erythromycin, ibuprofen, mefenamic acid, and propranolol. After thorough analysis, the pharmaceuticals chosen were found in 51–94% of the samples in concentrations up to tens of hundreds of ng L^{-1}, many times exceeding the permissible values found in legislation. Although the variety of products found in effluents and surface waters is endless, studies can have a range as wide as hundreds of compounds and still not effectively characterize all the compounds found in samples collected. Worldwide the number of contaminants identified in these studies is continuously increasing. Table 1.2 shows the latest studies highlighting the analysis method applied and the water matrix chosen in each case.

When brought to light, the incidence in which contaminants are found in natural water bodies only reinforces the need to improve the WWTP. Studies developed in South Korea frequently detected incomplete removal of 25 compounds from the total of 26 analyzed by the WWTP, even in systems relying on membrane filtration, membrane bioreactor, nanofiltration, reverse osmosis, and ultraviolet irradiation (Kim et al. 2018; Chowdhary et al. 2018). Further, this situation is even more worrisome in countries with poor environmental protection laws. In such places, the contamination occurs notably by poor understanding from the population, disposing pharmaceuticals directly into toilets and water bodies, combined with limited contamination control measurement adopted by hospitals, treatment centers, and even industries (Visanji et al. 2018).

In countries like India, fiscal incentives and low employee costs will drive the pharmaceutical industry to produce $45 billion a year by 2020, where sewage treatment is so deficient that from 1.3 billion people attended, only 31% of the sewage

Table 1.2 Reports on pharmaceutical compounds found in natural waters worldwide

Country	Number of contaminants identified	Environment analyzed	Analysis method	Year	References
South Korea	26	Effluents, surface waters, drinking water	LC-MS/MS	2007	Kim et al. (2007)
Canada	48	Surface waters, drinking water	Q-trap MS LC-MS/MS	2011	Kleywegt et al. (2011)
Australia	28	Hospital wastewaters, WWTP effluent, surface waters, drinking waters	HPLC-MS/MS	2006	Watkinson et al. (2009)
Italy	80	Surface waters	UPLC-QLIT-MS^2	2017	Mandaric et al. (2017)
China	14	Ground water and surface water	HPLC-MS/MS	2017	Yao et al. (2017)
Spain	13	Wastewater	HPLC-MS/MS and UHPLC-MS/MS	2013	Guedes-alonso et al. (2013)
Spain	23	WWTP	LC-MS/MS	2017	Afonso-Olivares et al. (2017)
Spain	19	Wastewater	UPLC-Qtrap-MS	2017	Hom-Diaz et al. (2017)
India	67	Wastewater, hospital effluent, river water, ground water		2017	Balakrishna et al. (2017)
China	37	WWTP	HPLC-MS	2018	Zhang et al. (2018)
China	39	Advanced drinking water treatment plant	HPLC-MS/MS and LC/MS/MS	2016	Lin et al. (2016)
South Africa	90	WWTP, surface waters	UPLC-TQD-MS	2017	Archer et al. (2017)
Kenya	21	Rivers	UPLC	2018	K'oreje et al. (2018)

(38.254 million liters per day) is actually treated (Balakrishna et al. 2017). Although proper treatment methods and adequate environmental policies are still in development in these countries, an increase in studies focusing on the detection and quantification of pharmaceuticals in the environment has been noted (Gogoi et al. 2018).

Yao et al. (2017) investigated the occurrence of 14 antibiotics (fluoroquinolones, tetracyclines, macrolides, and sulfonamides) in groundwater and water bodies in the fields of Jianghan in China, during three seasons. Total concentrations of target compounds in water samples were higher in spring than in summer and winter, mostly associated with veterinary use and the higher incidence of diseases in this period. Erythromycin was the antibiotic found mostly in superficial waters with an average concentration of 1.60 μg L^{-1}, 0.772 μg L^{-1}, and 0.546 μg L^{-1}, respectively, in spring, summer, and winter.

Matongo et al. (2015) investigated the presence of pharmaceuticals, such as sulfamethazine, sulfamethoxazole, erythromycin, metronidazole, trimethoprim, acetaminophen, caffeine, carbamazepine, clozapine, and ibuprofen in the Umgeni River, in the Durban city in KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. Clozapine was found in higher concentrations (78.33 μg L^{-1}) followed by ibuprofen (62.0 μg L^{-1}).

Machado et al. (2016) investigated the presence of emerging contaminants of different classes in 100 samples of potable water in 22 Brazilian capitals, and seven water sources from most populated areas in the country. The samples were collected between June and September of 2011 and again in the same period of 2012. Among the emerging contaminants, caffeine was the substance most commonly found, detected in 93% of the potable water samples, and in 100% of the surface waters. Caffeine concentration in potable water varied from 1.8 ng L^{-1} to 2 μg L^{-1}, while in water sources, the concentrations varied from 40 ng L^{-1} to about 19 μg L^{-1}. The fact that caffeine is found in potable water indicates that there is still reminiscent of domestic wastewater contamination in potable water distribution since this is typically an anthropogenic compound. Similar results were found in studies carried out in China (Leung et al. 2013) and Spain (Boleda et al. 2011).

On the other hand, Watkinson et al. (2009) analyzed the presence of 28 antibiotics in hospital wastewaters, WWTP effluent, surface waters, and drinking waters and found that although the presence of antibiotics was seen in every sample, including surface water used as drinking water extraction sites, none of the antibiotics analyzed were found in drinking water samples. Thus, the samples collected from 81 different surface water and 20 different drinking water sites within South-East Queensland (Australia) pointed out that the treatment applied to the drinking water supplied to the population was satisfactory for antibiotic removal, which represents hopes in developing adequate treatment and distribution protocol for the critical areas.

The most delicate part of these studies relies on identifying adequately the presence of the compounds on the intake and output of the WWTP. In this sense, an innovative research developed by Sgroi et al. (2017) used fluorescence data of three-dimensional excitation—emission matrixes (EEM) to analyze treatment efficiency of 10 WWTP facilities in Sicily (Italy) using 11 target compounds. These WWTP presented secondary treatments varying from activated sludge units with nitrification and denitrification processes, activated sludge units without nitrification and rotating biological contactors, or even extended aeration activated sludge unit (Kumari et al. 2016; Saxena et al. 2017). All compounds were removed in a range from 28 to 82%; however, due to treatment efficiencies varying among the WWTPs proposed, the development of rapid, low-cost, and highly specific studies like these enable the tailoring of systems more adequately addressing the influent for every matrix it presents.

Finally, all the studies mentioned contamination found in untreated wastewater and/or the persistent contamination found after the effluent exits the WWTP. However, considering that, for example, one in four households in the United States relies on septic systems for wastewater disposal, further investigation on the direct influence of this route is also necessary. Yang et al. (2017b) studied the fate of pharmaceuticals in septic systems considering drain fields of drip dispersal, gravel trench, and advanced system. Although the septic systems can treat partially the compounds analyzed, it also serves as an accumulation point for their byproducts. Additionally, these accumulation points infiltrate to groundwater contaminating the water source, which was confirmed in this study by identifying seven markers directly below the septic systems studied.

1.3 Ecotoxicological Effects

Other than toxicological effects related to direct exposure to pharmaceuticals, a concerning process occurring is the increase in microbial resistance normally caused by interaction with human and animal bacterial species, exposure to bacteria present in hospital, farms and home care, and finally interaction with bacteria present in sewage and biological wastes (Mishra and Bharagava 2016; Pereira et al. 2017; Gavrilescu et al. 2015).

Analyzing pharmaceutical ecotoxicological effect is normally carried out in laboratorial environment based on acute toxicity tests to a certain compound. The most commonly used organisms are fishes *Danio rerio* and *Pimephales promelas* and the crustaceous *Daphnia magna*, using standard methods measuring the concentrations that cause oxidative stress and/or mortality to the organism tested. One of the most common methods used is the effect concentration 50% (EC_{50}), which determines the concentration in which adverse effect is noted in 50% of the individuals (Petrie et al. 2014; Galus et al. 2013). Therefore, a compound is considered harmful when its EC_{50} is between 10 and 100 mg L^{-1}, toxic at 1–10 g L^{-1}, and highly toxic when <1 mg L^{-1} (Petrie et al. 2014). However, data comparison in literature is very complicated due to the specific compounds and species tested, as well as the variety of toxicological endpoints studied. Table 1.3 shows the EC_{50} found for a group of compounds tested using organisms *D. magna, V. fischeri, A. flos-aque, P. subcapitata, S. vacuolatus, and S. obliquus*.

Various factors affect the toxicity of certain compounds, and due to the sensitive nature of the species analyzed, variables such as temperature, pH, salinity, and turbidity, need to be considered as well (Yadav et al. 2019; Mani and Bharagava 2016). Mostly, for pharmaceutical contamination, the main factor affected is the pH of the water bodies. Recent studies by Liu et al. (2016) analyzed the toxicity of sulfadiazine to *Daphnia magna*, in various pH presenting toxicity increments up to 15-folds in EC50, when pH reduced from 8.5 to 6.0. Similar results had been previously reported by Anskjær et al. (2013), finding 11-fold increment in EC50 with the same pH variation, relating the specific transformation from its neutral form at pH 6.0 to its negatively charged form at pH 8.5.

Table 1.3 Estimations of the effective concentration (EC_{50}) for several organisms exposed to a variety of pharmaceutical compounds

Compound tested	Organism tested	Endpoint	Toxicity (mg L^{-1})	References
Sulfadiazine	*D. magna*	24 h EC_{50}	48.89	Liu et al. (2016)
		48 h EC_{50}	11.93	
Diclofenac	*D. magna*	24 h EC_{50}	3.18	Czech et al. (2014)
	V. fischeri	48 h EC_{50}	2.69	
	D. magna	14.04	14.04	
Chloramphenicol	*V. fischeri*	24 h EC_{50}	5	
	D. magna	48 h EC_{50}	5	
		27.06	27.06	
Metoprolol	*V. fischeri*	24 h EC_{50}	2.59	
		48 h EC_{50}	2.59	
		14.48	14.48	
Oxytetracycline	*Anabaena flos-aque*	72 h ErC_{50}	2.7	Kolar et al. (2014)
	Pseudokirchneriella subcapitata	72 h ErC_{10}	1.5	
	Daphnia magna	72 h ErC_{50}	1.04	
		72 h ErC_{10}	0.47	
Trimethoprim	*Anabaena flos-aque*	48 h EC_{50}	669[a]	
	Pseudokirchneriella subcapitata	48 h EC_{10}	197	
	Daphnia magna	72 h ErC_{50}	253	
		72 h ErC_{10}	26	
		72 h ErC_{50}	129	
		72 h ErC_{10}	65	
		48 h EC_{50}	100	
		48 h EC_{10}	66	

(continued)

Table 1.3 (continued)

Compound tested	Organism tested	Endpoint	Toxicity (mg L^{-1})	References
Sulfamethoxazole + sulfamethazine	*Scenedesmus vacuolatus*	72 h EC_{50}	19.52	Xiong et al. (2018)
	Scenedesmus obliquus	96 h EC_{50}	0.108	
Diclofenac	*D. magna*	24 h EC_{50}	82.3	Du et al. (2016)
		48 h EC_{50}	18.1	
		72 h EC_{50}	6.23	
Ibuprofen	*D. magna*	24 h EC_{50}	116	
		48 h EC_{50}	23.5	
		72 h EC_{50}	8.33	

[a]Value exceeded water solubility

Additionally, it is common to find that the by-product formed after degradation of the original pharmaceutical is many times more toxic for the studied organism than its previous form. For example, Dirany et al. (2012) analyzed the degradation of sulfachloropyridazine by electro-Fenton treatment and further analyzed the toxicity of the target compound and two of its oxidation by-products, namely amino-6-chloropyridazine and *p*-benzoquinone. Analyzing the toxicity in *V. fischeri*, they found EC_{50} of 1.96 mg L^{-1} for sulfachloropyridazine and <0.01 mg L^{-1} for *p*-benzoquinone and over 250 mg L^{-1} for 6-chloropyridazine. Considering the degradation chain follows the sequence sulfachloropyridazine > 6-chloropyridazine > *p*-benzoquinone, a sharp increase in toxicity is seen in an intermediary step of the treatment, which is a common finding when treating pharmaceuticals (Coledam et al. 2017).

Nevertheless, study on bioaccumulation of pharmaceuticals and their effects on the health of the species exposed to them is still a field to be widely researched. Cheng et al. (2017) reported the bioaccumulation of sulfadiazine in Chinese mitten crab (*E. sinensis*), finding rates of <3 ng/g, not dose-dependent. These researches increase the understanding of the secondary effects promoted by the environmental contamination of these compounds and aid in the development of new treatment protocols and risk identification.

Another particularly interesting study was developed by Mohd Zanuri et al. (2017) analyzing the effects of short-term exposure to realistic values of ibuprofen, diclofenac, and sildenafil citrate of selected specimens: echinoderms (*Asterias rubens* and *Psammechinus miliaris*) and a polychaete worm *Arenicola marina*. From the compounds analyzed, diclofenac was more toxic than the others reducing sperm swimming speed and fertilization success in *A. rubens*. Exposure to sildenafil citrate (commercially known as Viagra®) actually enhanced sperm motility, which increased fertilization success in the echinoderms, which also did not present toxicity effects for this organism. Case studies like these are important to highlight the various toxic effects possible in environmental conditions.

Additionally, one of the main problems in estimating the toxicity of real effluents is that in many processes and in urban scenarios, the organisms are exposed to a complex mixture of compounds, and it is difficult to estimate EC_{50} for the compounds found. For example, Bielen et al. (2017) studied the effluents from two pharmaceutical companies in Croatia, collecting samples in four different periods throughout the year, analyzing seasonal effects. Sample one contained mostly azithromycin and erythromycin, while sample two contained sulfonamides, fluoroquinolones, tetracyclines, and β-lactams. *D. rerio* specimens were exposed to the effluent as in loco (after undergoing a membrane reactor treatment) and 2× diluted and 4× diluted. Mortality rates for the effluent from Company 1 as in loco were 100%, showing improvement to as low as 20% only after a 4× dilution. Meanwhile, the specimens exposed to effluent from Company 2 varied from under 10% mortality to no mortality after dilution. Studies like these highlight the complexity of ecotoxicity tests in case of pharmaceutical contamination supporting the need for Predicted No Effect Concentrations (PNECs) for all compounds being emitted in the environment.

1.4 Alternative Treatments

1.4.1 Microalgal

Studies developed in Spain by Hom-Diaz et al. (2017) analyzed the effectiveness of a tubular microalgae reactor for toilet wastewater treatment system for pharmaceutical removal. The system consisted of 1200 L microtubular tanks and a constant stirring velocity of 0.13 m s^{-1}, analyzing the system efficiency in two periods of the year (period 1: September 14 to October 16; period 2: October 20 to December 22), in order to analyze both seasonal effects and possible variations in population's consumption of pharmaceuticals. These studies also analyzed two hydraulic retention times of 8 and 12 days. In general, the system was able to remove 98% of the anti-inflammatory drugs, 48% of antibiotics, and between 30 and 57% of the psychiatric drugs, proving effectiveness for this proposed system to remove pharmaceuticals present in natural wastewaters.

Furthermore, extensive research has been carried out by Xiong et al. (2018) gathering the latest studies on microalgae used to remove pharmaceuticals from water sources in microalgae-mediated bioremediation, highlighting the possibility of solar energy use, eco-friendliness, and its low cost. The research classified microalgae treatment in bioadsorption, bioaccumulation, and biodegradation. Bioadsorption is highly recommended for pharmaceuticals with cationic groups that are actively attracted to the microalgae surface due to electrostatic interaction. Bioaccumulation that is the uptake of substrates has been proven successful with specific pharmaceuticals like carbamazepine (Xiong et al. 2016). Finally, biodegradation was found to be the most common route for pharmaceutical removal by microalgae treatment, finding removal rates of up to 80% of active compounds according to the literature (Xiong et al. 2018).

When considering microalgae removal rates, a series of factors come into play, as seen in recent studies developed by Xiong et al. (2019), where sulfamethoxazole and sulfamethazine were combined at various concentrations and submitted to microalgae degradation with *S. obliquus*. While seeking to understand the degradation route of the compounds studied, it was possible to note that the degradation of sulfamethazine was considerably improved with the addition of sulfamethoxazole. By determining the degradation routes present, it was confirmed that *S. obliquus* was able to promote hydroxylation, methylation, deamination, and bond cleavage, all of which could contribute to the understanding and determination of the potential applications of this specific organism.

Microalgae is, therefore, one of the proposed solutions for pharmaceuticals removal from water bodies and various wastewaters. Mostly, the recent trends involve combined processes where the system is optimized by a previous or posterior microalgae treatment. In this sense, studies on integrating microalgae with advanced oxidation processes (AOPS) (Keen et al. 2012), constructed wetlands (Ding et al. 2016), and microbial fuel cells (Li et al. 2014) are being performed.

1.4.2 Advanced Oxidation Processes (AOP)

Contamination with certain pharmaceuticals due to their specific properties and high stability are typically hard to address. In this sense, the AOPs are known to be an effective indiscriminate method to strongly oxidase the most organic compounds. Furthermore, even in cases where the target compound is not totally degraded, the addition of hydroxyl groups to the parent molecule facilitates ring opening by certain catechol dioxygenase enzymes produced by heterotrophic bacteria being a critical step in biotransformation of aromatic compounds (Keen et al. 2012).

Ozonation, UV, photocatalysis, and Fenton reaction have been used for the treatment of potable water and to a lesser extent in wastewater disinfection. It has been reported that WWTPs equipped with AOPs were capable of eliminating pharmaceutical compounds, such as caffeine and sulfamethoxazole, at efficiencies of 89.5% and 92.2%, respectively (Lin et al. 2016).

Among the AOPs available, UV treatment is used as one of the main disinfection techniques in European Wastewater Treatment Plants considering its high disinfection capacity with no addition of chemicals required (Song et al. 2016). In a sense, the treatment efficiencies in WWTP have not been thoroughly addressed due to variations in environmental concentrations and specific operatiing conditions that are typically difficult to simulate in lab-scale reactors. However, Paredes et al. (2018) researched the fate of 12 different pharmaceuticals, analyzing UV dose, temperature, and water matrix in order to determine the real applicability of the UV treatment. The effluents tested were collected from four different WWTP in Spain, UV dose varied from 12 to 44 mJ/cm^2, and contaminant concentration was spiked at environmentally relevant concentrations (10 μg L^{-1}). Phototransformation was seen in most compounds in rates varying from 60 to 92%, with a considerable increase in degradation when the temperature was altered from 15 to 25 °C.

Although Paredes et al. (2018) found high rates of degradation for recalcitrant compounds (such as diclofenac and diazepam), the phototransformation of the pharmaceuticals in full-scale system is almost negligible due to the low doses of UV applied in the system, also impaired by variables such as total suspended solids, dissolved organic matter, and nitrate concentration. These results suggest that the UV method, once it is present in most WWTP as a disinfection procedure, could be a viable route to improve the removal rates of pharmaceuticals if combined with catalytical processes.

In this sense, Keen et al. (2012) analyzed the degradation of carbamazepine, a well-known and very persistent drug prescribed for epilepsy and other mental disorders, by combining UV/H_2O_2 and biodegradation. Their study determined that the initial UV/H_2O_2 attacking the compound with the hydroxyls formed and leading to the formation of assimilable organic carbon (AOC) enables the biofilm growth. Additionally, the UV/H_2O_2 coupled with a traditional WWTP could also provide higher levels of disinfection, possibly even removing the need for that additional final step from the process.

1.4.3 Adsorption

Basically, considering a physical treatment approach, adsorption is well known for being highly efficient, low cost, and easy operation and presents no risk of formation of toxic products. It can be applied as a batch process or in the form of fixed-bed columns that is easily scaled up (Ahmed and Hameed 2018).

Improvements in the physical structures of adsorbents are another approach to increase their effectiveness when treating effluents contaminated with pharmaceuticals. In that sense, Shan et al. (2017) supported graphene oxide (compound widely known for its adsorptive features) onto rigid fluorine-containing molecules (TFT or DFB) analyzing its capacity to adsorb carbamazepine, sulfamethoxazole, sulfadiazine, ibuprofen, paracetamol, and phenacetin solutions. The enhancements proposed by doping the graphene oxide on the DFB structure can increase the adsorption capacity by 1.0–15 times, highlighting the potential for the use of this technology efficiently adsorbing these molecules from water bodies.

Further, since adsorption is mostly dependent on particle size, other improvements can be done to enhance the adsorption rates, especially when treating nanoparticles. In this sense, procedures such as coagulation would ensure the separation of larger particles allowing the use of filtration systems with smaller pores. Thus, Sheng et al. (2016) combined an ultrafiltration system with coagulation and powdered activated carbon pretreatment to address samples containing acetaminophen, bezafibrate, caffeine, carbamazepine, cotinine, diclofenac, gemfibrozil, ibuprofen, metoprolol, naproxen, sulfadimethoxine, sulfamethazine, sulfamethoxazole, sulfathiazole, triclosan, and trimethoprim. By developing this procedure, they noted that pharmaceuticals would bond to the activated carbon by weak Van der Walls attraction forces, which would be retained in the ultrafiltration system blocking the passage of further pharmaceuticals.

Sheng et al. (2016) studied the effects of coagulation, activated carbon, and ultrafiltration alone and combined, finding that for the individual technologies, rates of 50, 29, and 7% removal were found for the activated carbon, ultrafiltration, and coagulation alone, respectively. As for the proposed combined process of ultrafiltration with coagulation pretreatment showed an improvement of only 4% in removal rates. Finally, rates of 90.3% removal were found when combining ultrafiltration with activated carbon use.

When focusing on adsorption using activated carbon, researchers have found good removal rates, but due to the high cost of activated carbon, the reuse of these materials is of great concern. In this sense, Marques et al. (2017) analyzed the thermal regeneration of activated carbon in granular, powdered, and cloth forms studying the retention of chlorofibric acid and paracetamol. The materials were tested for absorption capacity and then submitted to thermal regeneration in 400 and 600 °C. The procedure was repeated after every adsorption experiment for four cycles. Among the materials tested, carbon felt presented the highest regeneration capacity maintaining its activity over 50% up to the second reuse, decreasing to fewer than 20% at the fourth reuse in both the temperature conditions. Although the results in these tests are interesting, the need to develop efficient recovering systems is one of the main limiting factors for the industrial application of adsorption as a route for pharmaceutical removal from effluents.

1.4.4 Enzymatic Bioreactor

Based on the enzymatic capacity to degrade certain chemicals, enzymatic bioreactors are controlled by pH, temperature, and enzyme innate features. Enzymes such as laccases are well known for degrading a wide variety of compounds and their ability to sustain drastic changes in pH. Taking into account the advantages of this degradation route, Asif et al. (2017) proposed the integration of laccase-based bioreactor with high retention membranes coupling the two systems and working with *Aspergillus oryzae (A. oryzae)* and *Trametes versicolor (T. versicolor)*, analyzing degradation and retention of sulfamethoxazole, carbamazepine, diclofenac, oxybenzone, and a pesticide (atrazine). Since degradation by laccase occurs due to the nature of functional groups present in the compounds (e.g., electron-donating capacities) and the relative redox potential of the laccase and the compounds, the findings were particularly analyzed for each compound studied. Considering the combined treatment of membrane filtering and the enzymatic attack by the laccase use, all compounds were removed in rates varying from 50 to 100%.

Likewise, Ba et al. (2018) studied the efficiency of a hybrid bioreactor (HBR) of a combined cross-linked tyrosinase and laccase aggregates and hollow fiber microfiltration (MF) membrane to remove a mixture of 14 pharmaceuticals from municipal wastewater in concentrations at 10 μg L^{-1}. They reported that after a 5-day continuous operation, the HBR achieved >90% efficiency for the elimination of the 14 selected pharmaceuticals at environmental concentration. This outstanding result was attributed to a synergistic action between insolubilized enzymes and membranes. Moreover, the biocatalyst retained nearly 70% of its initial enzymatic activity over the treatment period. In this sense, HBR was proven as an adequate method to treat these compounds inviting the scientific community to further investigate its applicability for the continuous treatment of wastewater.

1.5 Conclusion

To date, discussions on the environmental and human risk of exposure to pharmaceutical contaminants are still in serious debate. It is safe to say that although many studies developing toxicity tests have proven that many pharmaceuticals in low concentration do not impose a risk for human health, in long-term exposure the effective risk of these compounds is still to be properly assessed. Finally, as our understanding of pharmaceutical contamination increases, it becomes clear that certain measurements should be considered. First, the parent compounds are found in the environment mostly due to inadequate disposal of the products; however, their metabolites occur as a natural process of the incomplete consumption by the organism and are frequently as physiologically active as their parent compound. Therefore, special attention should be given to these compounds as well focusing on applying for the advances in wastewater treatment to ensure environmental safety for the following years as the use of pharmaceuticals increases.

Acknowledgments The authors thank the Brazilian National Council of Technological and Scientific Development CNPq (grants: 304419/2015-0 and 310282/2013-6), *Coordenação de Aperfeiçoamento de Pessoal de Nível Superior* (CAPES)—finance Code 001—and to FAPITEC for the scholarships and financial support for this work.

References

Afonso-Olivares C, Sosa-Ferrera Z, Santana-Rodrígues JJ (2017) Occurrence and environmental impact of pharmaceutical residues from conventional and natural wastewater treatment plants in Gran Canaria (Spain). Sci Total Environ 559–600:934–943

Ahmed MJ, Hameed BH (2018) Removal of emerging pharmaceutical contaminants by adsorption in a fixed-bed column: a review. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 149:257–266

Anskjær GG, Rendal C, Kusk KO (2013) Effect of pH on the toxicity and bioconcentration of sulfadiazine on Daphnia magna. Chemosphere 91:1183–1188

Archer E, Petrie B, Kasprzyk-Hordern B et al (2017) The fate of pharmaceuticals and personal care products (PPCPs), endocrine disrupting contaminants (EDCs), metabolites and illicit drugs in a WWTW and environmental waters. Chemosphere 174:437–446

Asif MB, Nguyen LN, Hai FI et al (2017) Integration of an enzymatic bioreactor with membrane distillation for enhanced biodegradation of trace organic contaminants. Int Biodeterior Biodegrad 124:73–81

Azzouz A, Ballesteros E (2013) Influence of seasonal climate differences on the pharmaceutical, hormone and personal care product removal efficiency of a drinking water treatment plant. Chemosphere 93:2046–2054

Ba S, Jones JP, Cabana H (2018) A hybrid bioreactor based on insolubilized tyrosinase and laccase catalysis and micro filtration membrane remove pharmaceuticals from wastewater. Chemosphere 201:749–755

Balakrishna K, Rath A, Praveenkumarreddy Y et al (2017) A review of the occurrence of pharmaceuticals and personal care products in Indian water bodies. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 137:113–120

Bharagava RN, Saxena G, Mulla SI, Patel DK (2018) Characterization and identification of recalcitrant organic pollutants (ROPs) in tannery wastewater and its phytotoxicity evaluation for environmental safety. Arch Environ Contam Toxicol 75(2):259–272

Bielen A, Šimatović A, Kosić-Vukšić J et al (2017) Negative environmental impacts of antibiotic-contaminated effluents from pharmaceutical industries. Water Res 126:79–87

Boleda MR, Huerta-fontela M, Ventura F et al (2011) Evaluation of the presence of drugs of abuse in tap waters. Chemosphere 84:1601–1607

Cheng L, Chen Y, Zheng YY et al (2017) Bioaccumulation of sulfadiazine and subsequent enzymatic activities in Chinese mitten crab (Eriocheir sinensis). Mar Pollut Bull 121:176–182

Chowdhary P, Raj A, Bharagava RN (2018) Environmental pollution and health hazards from distillery wastewater and treatment approaches to combat the environmental threats: a review. Chemosphere 194:229–246

Coledam DAC, Pupo MMDS, Silva BF et al (2017) Electrochemical mineralization of cephalexin using a conductive diamond anode: a mechanistic and toxicity investigation. Chemosphere 168:638–647

Comber S, Gardner M, Sörme P et al (2018) Active pharmaceutical ingredients entering the aquatic environment from wastewater treatment works: a cause for concern ? Sci Total Environ 613–614:538–547

Cotillas S, de Vidales MJ, Llanos J et al (2016) Electrolytic and electro-irradiated processes with diamond anodes for the oxidation of persistent pollutants and disinfection of urban treated wastewater. J Hazard Mater 319:93–101

Czech B, Jo I, Oleszczuk P (2014) Ecotoxicological evaluation of selected pharmaceuticals to *Vibrio fischeri* and *Daphnia magna* before and after photooxidation process. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 104:247–253

Ding H-Y, Feng Y-J, Lu J-W (2010) Study on the service life and deactivation mechanism of Ti/SnO2-Sb electrode by physical and electrochemical methods. Russ J Electrochem 46:72–76

Ding Y, Wang W, Liu X et al (2016) Intensified nitrogen removal of constructed wetland by novel integration of high rate algal pond biotechnology. Bioresour Technol 219:757–761

Dirany A, Sirés I, Oturan N et al (2012) Electrochemical treatment of the antibiotic sulfachloropyridazine: kinetics, reaction pathways, and toxicity evolution. Environ Sci Technol 46:4074–4082

Du J, Mei CF, Ying GG et al (2016) Toxicity thresholds for diclofenac, acetaminophen and ibuprofen in the water flea Daphnia magna. Bull Environ Contam Toxicol 97:84–90

Galus M, Kirischian N, Higgins S et al (2013) Chronic, low concentration exposure to pharmaceuticals impacts multiple organ systems in zebrafish. Aquat Toxicol 132–133:200–211

Gautam S, Kaithwas G, Bharagava RN, Saxena G (2017) Pollutants in tannery wastewater, their pharmacological effects and bioremediation approaches for human health protection and environmental safety. In: Bharagava RN (ed) Environmental pollutants and their bioremediation approaches. CRC Press, Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton, pp 369–396

Gavrilescu M, Katerina D, Aamand J et al (2015) Emerging pollutants in the environment: present and future challenges in biomonitoring, ecological risks and bioremediation. N Biotechnol 32:147–156

Gogoi A, Mazumder P, Tyagi VK et al (2018) Occurrence and fate of emerging contaminants in water environment: a review. Groundw Sustain Dev 6:169–180

Guedes-alonso R, Afonso-olivares C, Montesdeoca-esponda S, et al (2013) An assessment of the concentrations of pharmaceutical compounds in wastewater treatment plants on the island of Gran Canaria 2:1–8

Hom-Diaz A, Jaén-Gil A, Bello-Laserna I et al (2017) Performance of a microalgal photobioreactor treating toilet wastewater: pharmaceutically active compound removal and biomass harvesting. Sci Total Environ 592:1–11

K'oreje KO, Kandie FJ, Vergeynst L et al (2018) Occurrence, fate and removal of pharmaceuticals, personal care products and pesticides in wastewater stabilization ponds and receiving rivers in the Nzoia Basin, Kenya. Sci Total Environ 637–638:336–348

Kay P, Hughes SR, Ault JR et al (2017) Widespread, routine occurrence of pharmaceuticals in sewage effluent, combined sewer overflows and receiving waters. Environ Pollut 220:1447–1455

Keen OS, Baik S, Linden KG et al (2012) Enhanced biodegradation of carbamazepine after UV/H2O2 advanced oxidation. Environ Sci Technol 46:6222–6227

Kim SD, Cho J, Kim IS et al (2007) Occurrence and removal of pharmaceuticals and endocrine disruptors in South Korean surface, drinking, and waste waters. Water Res 41:1013–1021

Kim S, Chu KH, Al-Hamadani YAJ et al (2018) Removal of contaminants of emerging concern by membranes in water and wastewater: a review. Chem Eng J 335:896–914

Kleywegt S, Pileggi V, Yang P et al (2011) Pharmaceuticals, hormones and bisphenol A in untreated source and finished drinking water in Ontario, Canada—occurrence and treatment efficiency. Sci Total Environ 409:1481–1488

Kolar B, Arnuš L, Jeretin B et al (2014) The toxic effect of oxytetracycline and trimethoprim in the aquatic environment. Chemosphere 115:75–80

Kot-Wasik A, Jakimska A, Śliwka-Kaszynska M (2016) Occurrence and seasonal variations of 25 pharmaceutical residues in wastewater and drinking water treatment plants. Environ Monit Assess 188:661

Kumari V, Yadav A, Haq I, Kumar S, Bharagava RN, Singh SK, Raj A (2016) Genotoxicity evaluation of tannery effluent treated with newly isolated hexavalent chromium reducing Bacillus cereus. J Environ Manag 183:204–211

Kümmerer K (2001) Drugs in the environment: emission of drugs, diagnostic aids and disinfectants into wastewater by hospitals in relation to other sources—a review. Chemosphere 45:957–969

Leung HW, Jin L, Wei S et al (2013) Pharmaceuticals in tap water: human health risk assessment and proposed monitoring framework in China. Environ Health Perspect 121:839–846

Li W-W, Yu H-Q, He Z (2014) Towards sustainable wastewater treatment by using microbial fuel cells-centered technologies. Energy Environ Sci 7(3):911–924

Lin T, Yu S, Chen W (2016) Occurrence, removal and risk assessment of pharmaceutical and personal care products (PPCPs) in an advanced drinking water treatment plant (ADWTP) around Taihu Lake in China. Chemosphere 152:1–9

Liu K, Xu S, Zhang M et al (2016) Estimation of the toxicity of sulfadiazine to Daphnia magna using negligible depletion hollow-fiber liquid-phase microextraction independent of ambient pH. Sci Rep 6:4–11

Luo Y, Guo W, Ngo HH et al (2014) A review on the occurrence of micropollutants in the aquatic environment and their fate and removal during wastewater treatment. Sci Total Environ 473–474:619–641

Machado KC, Tadeu M, Vidal C et al (2016) A preliminary nationwide survey of the presence of emerging contaminants in drinking and source waters in Brazil. Sci Total Environ 572:138–146

Mandaric L, Diamantini E, Stella E et al (2017) Contamination sources and distribution patterns of pharmaceuticals and personal care products in Alpine rivers strongly affected by tourism. Sci Total Environ 590–591:484–494

Mani S, Bharagava RN (2016) Exposure to crystal violet, its toxic, genotoxic and carcinogenic effects on environment and its degradation and detoxification for environmental safety. Rev Environ Contam Toxicol 237:71–104

Marques SCR, Marcuzzo JM, Baldan MR et al (2017) Pharmaceuticals removal by activated carbons: role of morphology on cyclic thermal regeneration. Chem Eng J 321:233–244

Marsik P, Rezek J, Zidkov M et al (2017) Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs in the watercourses of Elbe basin in Czech Republic. Chemosphere 171:97–105

Matongo S, Birungi G, Moodley B (2015) Occurrence of selected pharmaceuticals in water and sediment of Umgeni River, KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. Environ Sci Pollut Res Int 22(13):10298–10308

Mezzelani M, Gorbi S, Regoli F (2018) Pharmaceuticals in the aquatic environments: evidence of emerged threat and future challenges for marine organisms. Mar Environ Res 140:41–60

Mishra S, Bharagava RN (2016) Toxic and genotoxic effects of hexavalent chromium in environment and its bioremediation strategies. J Environ Sci Health C 34(1):1–32

Mohd Zanuri NB, Bentley MG, Caldwell GS (2017) Assessing the impact of diclofenac, ibuprofen and sildenafil citrate (Viagra®) on the fertilisation biology of broadcast spawning marine invertebrates. Mar Environ Res 127:126–136

Mompelat S, Le Bot B, Thomas O (2009) Occurrence and fate of pharmaceutical products and by-products, from resource to drinking water. Environ Int 35:803–814

Paredes L, Omil F, Lema JM et al (2018) What happens with organic micropollutants during UV disinfection in WWTPs? A global perspective from laboratory to full-scale. J Hazard Mater 342:670–678

Pereira AMPT, Silva LJG, Meisel LM et al (2015) Environmental impact of pharmaceuticals from Portuguese wastewaters: geographical and seasonal occurrence, removal and risk assessment. Environ Res 136:108–119

Pereira AL, de Vasconcelos Barros RT, Pereira SR (2017) Pharmacopollution and Household Waste Medicine (HWM): how reverse logistics is environmentally important to Brazil. Environ Sci Pollut Res 24:24061–24075

Petrie B, Barden R, Kasprzyk-Hordern B (2014) A review on emerging contaminants in wastewaters and the environment: current knowledge, understudied areas and recommendations for future monitoring. Water Res 72:1–25

Puckowski A, Mioduszewska K, Łukaszewicz P et al (2016) Bioaccumulation and analytics of pharmaceutical residues in the environment: a review. J Pharm Biomed Anal 127:232–255. http://linkinghub.elsevier.com/retrieve/pii/S073170851630111X

Purdom CE, Hardiman PA, Bye VJ et al (1994) Estrogenic effects of effluents from sewage treatment works. Chem Ecol 8:275–285

Rivera-Utrilla J, Sánchez-Polo M, Ferro-García MÁ et al (2013) Pharmaceuticals as emerging contaminants and their removal from water. A review. Chemosphere 93(7):1268–1287

Saxena G, Bharagava RN, Kaithwas G, Raj A (2015) Microbial indicators, pathogens and methods for their monitoring in water environment. J Water Health 13(2):319–339

Saxena G, Chandra R, Bharagava RN (2017) Environmental pollution, toxicity profile and treatment approaches for tannery wastewater and its chemical pollutants. Rev Environ Contam Toxicol 240:31–69

Scott T, Phillips PJ, Kolpin DW et al (2018) Pharmaceutical manufacturing facility discharges can substantially increase the pharmaceutical load to U.S. wastewaters. Sci Total Environ 636:69–79

Sgroi M, Roccaro P, Korshin GV et al (2017) Use of fluorescence EEM to monitor the removal of emerging contaminants in full scale wastewater treatment plants. J Hazard Mater 323:367–376

Shan D, Deng S, Li J et al (2017) Preparation of porous graphene oxide by chemically intercalating a rigid molecule for enhanced removal of typical pharmaceuticals. Carbon 119:101–109

Sheng C, Nnanna AGA, Liu Y et al (2016) Removal of Trace Pharmaceuticals from Water using coagulation and powdered activated carbon as pretreatment to ultrafiltration membrane system. Sci Total Environ 550:1075–1083

Song K, Mohseni M, Taghipour F (2016) Application of ultraviolet light-emitting diodes (UV-LEDs) for water disinfection: a review. Water Res 94:341–349

Stuart M, Lapworth D, Crane E et al (2012) Review of risk from potential emerging contaminants in UK groundwater. Sci Total Environ 416:1–21

Sui Q, Cao X, Lu S et al (2015) Occurrence, sources and fate of pharmaceuticals and personal care products in the groundwater: a review. Emerg Contam 1:14–24

Tijani JO, Fatoba OO, Babajide OO et al (2016) Pharmaceuticals, endocrine disruptors, personal care products, nanomaterials and perfluorinated pollutants: a review. Environ Chem Lett 14:27–49

USGS, Survey UG (2014) Emerging contaminants in the environment. http://toxics.usgs.gov/regional/emc/

Verlicchi P, Al Aukidy M, Zambello E (2012) Occurrence of pharmaceutical compounds in urban wastewater: removal, mass load and environmental risk after a secondary treatment—a review. Sci Total Environ 429:123–155

Visanji Z, Sadr SMK, Memon FA (2018) An implementation of a decision support tool to assess treatment of emerging contaminants in India. J Water Resour Prot 10:422–440

Watkinson AJ, Murby EJ, Kolpin DW et al (2009) The occurrence of antibiotics in an urban watershed: from wastewater to drinking water. Sci Total Environ 407:2711–2723

Xiong JQ, Kurade MB, Abou-Shanab RAI et al (2016) Biodegradation of carbamazepine using freshwater microalgae Chlamydomonas mexicana and Scenedesmus obliquus and the determination of its metabolic fate. Bioresour Technol 205:183–190

Xiong JQ, Kurade MB, Jeon BH (2018) Can microalgae remove pharmaceutical contaminants from water? Trends Biotechnol 36:30–44

Xiong JQ, Kim SJ, Kurade MB et al (2019) Combined effects of sulfamethazine and sulfamethoxazole on a freshwater microalga, Scenedesmus obliquus: toxicity, biodegradation, and metabolic fate. J Hazard Mater 370:138–146

Yadav A, Mishra S, Kaithwas G, Raj A, Bharagava RN (2016a) Organic pollutants and pathogenic bacteria in tannery wastewater and their removal strategies. In: Singh JS, Singh DP (eds) Microbes and environmental management. Studium Press (India) Pvt. Ltd, New Delhi, pp 104–130

Yadav A, Raj A, Bharagava RN (2016b) Detection and characterization of a multidrug and multimetal resistant Enterobacterium Pantoea sp. from tannery wastewater after secondary treatment process. Int J Plant Environ 1(2):37–41

Yadav A, Raj A, Purchase D, Ferreira LFR, Saratale GD, Bharagava RN (2019) Phytotoxicity, cytotoxicity and genotoxicity evaluation of organic and inorganic pollutants rich tannery wastewater from a Common Effluent Treatment Plant (CETP) in Unnao district, India using Vigna radiata and Allium cepa. Chemosphere 224:324–332

Yang Y, Ok YS, Kim K-H et al (2017a) Occurrences and removal of pharmaceuticals and personal care products (PPCPs) in drinking water and water/sewage treatment plants: a review. Sci Total Environ 596–597:303–320

Yang YY, Toor GS, Wilson PC et al (2017b) Micropollutants in groundwater from septic systems: transformations, transport mechanisms, and human health risk assessment. Water Res 123:258–267

Yao L, Wang Y, Tong L et al (2017) Occurrence and risk assessment of antibiotics in surface water and groundwater from different depths of aquifers: a case study at Jianghan Plain, central China. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 135:236–242

Zainith S, Purchase D, Saratale GD, Ferreira LFR, Bilal M, Bharagava RN (2019) Isolation and characterization of lignin-degrading bacterium Bacillus aryabhattai from pulp and paper mill wastewater and evaluation of its lignin-degrading potential. 3 Biotech 9(3):92

Zhang Y, Wang B, Cagnetta G et al (2018) Typical pharmaceuticals in major WWTPs in Beijing, China: occurrence, load pattern and calculation reliability. Water Res 140:291–300

Chapter 2
Constructed Wetlands: An Emerging Green Technology for the Treatment of Industrial Wastewaters

M. Dinesh Kumar, S. Gopikumar, Do Khac Uan, S. Adishkumar, and J. Rajesh Banu

Abstract Constructed wetland treatment methods have been evolved as a consistent treatment technology treating domestic, industrial and agricultural wastewaters. Special attention has been focused on landfill leachate and storm water runoff. Natural wetlands in general remove pollution, but in CWs the conditions are properly monitored, as a result the efficiency in pollution removal is drastic. Removal of the organics and suspended impurities improves the treatment efficiency. Introducing special media for the absorption of nitrogen and phosphorous is focused for removal, which are available in abundant and observed to be the major pollutant. The cost for operation and maintenance of CWs are lower as it requires very less power consumption compared with conventional treatment systems. In addition the design is framed in such a way that it is involved in maintaining the environment during floods and provides habitat for wildlife through dual or multipurpose ecosystems.

Keywords Industries · Wastewaters · Treatment · Constructed wetlands · Green technology

---

M. Dinesh Kumar · J. Rajesh Banu (✉)
Department of Civil Engineering, Anna University Regional Campus, Tirunelveli, India

S. Gopikumar
Department of Civil Engineering, SCAD College of Engineering and Technology, Tirunelveli, India

D. K. Uan
School of Environmental Science and Technology, Hanoi University of Science and Technology, Hanoi, Vietnam

S. Adishkumar
Department of Civil Engineering, University V.O.C College of Engineering, Anna University, Thoothukudi, India

R. N. Bharagava (ed.), *Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment*, Microorganisms for Sustainability 18,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-1390-9_2

2.1 Introduction

Insufficient availability of fresh water and poor sanitation are the major problems outbursting in the urbanized world and is observed to be continuing so far; therefore, a proper technology should be adopted. According to WHO and UNICEF report 2017, worldwide 3 out of 10 people are in need of access to fresh drinking water, and every 6 out of 10 are deficient of secure sanitation The increase in water demand is currently being managed by groundwater utility, which is easily available in all geographical areas, though it has been technologically overexploited in all the developing countries (Jiang 2009). Administration of wastewater has been monitored by constructing wastewater treatment plants, but most of the developing countries are giving less priority in treating wastewater (Konnerup et al. 2011; Bharagava et al. 2017; Chowdhary et al. 2017). The outcome of this strategy leads to disposal of untreated wastewater in open streams and lakes (Senzia et al. 2003).

Constructed wetland is considered as potential ecofriendly technology to overcome several environmental issues. This will enhance the wastewater treatment in an innovative, sustainable and cost-effective emerging solution for the environmental protection and restoration (Vymazal 2011a). Natural wetlands have been referred as earth kidneys because they provide the function such as filtering pollutants and nutrients from water that flows through them. Natural wetlands are not to manage wastewater. However, their potential for treating pollutants makes significance in the area of wastewater treatment system. An engineered constructed system imitates the natural wetland functions. This system of treatment unit is intended to progress such as filtration, adsorption, biodegradation, phytoremediation, photo remediation and bioaccumulation with the help of vegetation, soil and microbes for treating wastewater (Chowdhary et al. 2017; Yadav et al. 2017; Mishra et al. 2018).

Conventional system is in regular practice for the treatment of wastewater, but constructed wetlands—the engineered, multidimensional treatment modules which include the unit operation and process—are also observed to be the substitute. The accomplishment is accompanied due to frequent increase in circulation of water, great prospective in water, nutrient reuse, less utilization of energy, less maintenance and effective removal of pollutants (Kadlec and Wallace 2008; Vymazal 2011a; Mishra et al. 2019). The application of this technology in the field of pharmaceutical and personal care products receives wide appreciation by removing the organic and solids contaminant along with toxin metals, nutrients and pathogens (Gikas et al. 2013; Zhang et al. 2014; Yadav et al. 2016a).

The success rate in adopting this technology is due to design and operational variables; its application receives wide appreciation in the field of domestic sewage treatment (Mburu et al. 2013a, b), hospital wastewater (Shrestha et al. 2001), industrial wastewater (Maine et al. 2007; Yadav et al. 2019), agricultural wastewater (He et al. 2006), agricultural runoff (Yang et al. 2008), lake/river water (Li et al. 2009), sludge effluent (Ahmed et al. 2008; Kumari et al. 2016), oil produced wastewater (Ji et al. 2007), storm water runoff (Ávila et al. 2013), sugar factory wastewater (Bojcevska and Tonderski 2007; Bharagava and Chandra 2010), laboratory wastewater (Meutia 2001) and landfill leachate (Nahlik and Mitsch 2006). Phenol removal was the first research work carried out in 1950s in Germany on CWs treating wastewater (Seidel 1961). Meanwhile in the last two or three decades, industrial and agricultural wastewater along with storm water runoff is treated in CWs (Vymazal 2011a).

CW treatment efficiency proves that warm tropical and subtropical climates are essential for treating wastewater (Kivaisi 2001), this is due to exposed sunlight, and have higher microbial action that benefits plant growth round the year, which decrease the time necessary for microbial biodegradation (Zhang et al. 2012). To achieve successful wastewater treatment with CWs, the designs are based on engineered systems that make the most of the usual progression connecting the lowland plant life, earth that is in connection with microbiological throng (Vymazal 2014). Development of treatment capability and to highlight the exact characteristics of wetland ecosystems, the man-made modern treatment wetlands are designed (Kadlec and Wallace 2008). In addition to wetland treatment methods, the advanced constructed wetland treatment is capable of covering a wide variety of priorities that focus on improving the biodiversity and environmental conditions associated with recovering river water quality, accompanying wildlife usage and irrigation of agricultural lands. In connection with treatment terminology, some confusing names have been mentioned such as bio filters, sand filters and green filters.

The CWs are extensive technologies that evolved with time and applications of the hour without the contribution of energy and are the cost-effective and eco-friendly expertise, which supports in removal of pollutants naturally from the wastewater. CWs have some advantages compared to other treatment systems, such as less expensive, natural process, simple construction, less operation and maintenance, stability and cost-effectiveness.

2.2 Current Scenario About Constructed Wetland Treating Industrial Wastewater

This technology deals with minimum energy consumption, using reuse/recyclable materials with renewable sources, without the utilization of chemicals. The effect of a good technology lies in the viability of economical factors protecting the environment with a good acceptance by the community. In treating industrial wastewater, sustainable treatment system associate with the economic growth, environmental and ecosystem protection and public health. CW system can bring the best sustainable treatment to the industries. CWs are known as low-cost and environment friendly engineered system that use vegetation, soil material and microorganism to treat municipal and industrial wastewaters (Nikolaou and Stefanakis 2018). Current studies have focused on exploiting this type of treatment, as it is a better treatment system financially compared with conventional wastewater treatment system.

Normally, the conventional treatments such as activated sludge treatment, trickling filter and anaerobic digestion require more cost investments for their infrastructures. Stefanakis et al. (2014) discussed that the current system of CW gives an efficient method in treating domestic and industrial wastewaters resulting in good effluent quality. These treatments mainly depend on the action of wetland vegetation, microbes and supporting materials. Processes such as adsorption, infiltration and biological degradation are the treatment processes that takes place through vegetation in wetlands (Vymazal 2005). CW is a phytoremediation process that improves the treatment of industrial wastewater (Riggio et al. 2018; Saxena et al. 2019). Phytoremediation is a plant-based significant treatment process in CW to remove pollutants such as organic or inorganic materials and nutrients (Herath and Vithanage 2015; Yadav et al. 2016b). The processes involved in phytoremediation are phytoextraction, phytodegradation, phytostimulation, phytostabilization, rhizofiltration and phytovolatilization (Fig. 2.1).

In phytoextraction, wetland plants absorb the heavy metal through roots from the substance while in phytodegradation, plants accomplished enzymatic breakdown of organic to simpler components either alone or with the help of microbes. Plants in wetland absorb organic materials through roots and release it into atmosphere through transpiration, known as phytovolatilization. Through phytostabilization, plants immobilize the pollutants to diminish the exposure in wetlands. Through phytoremediation, vegetation in CWs enable major mechanisms to remove noxious waste. Thus, treating industrial wastewater in wetland is more economic and environmentally healthy process.

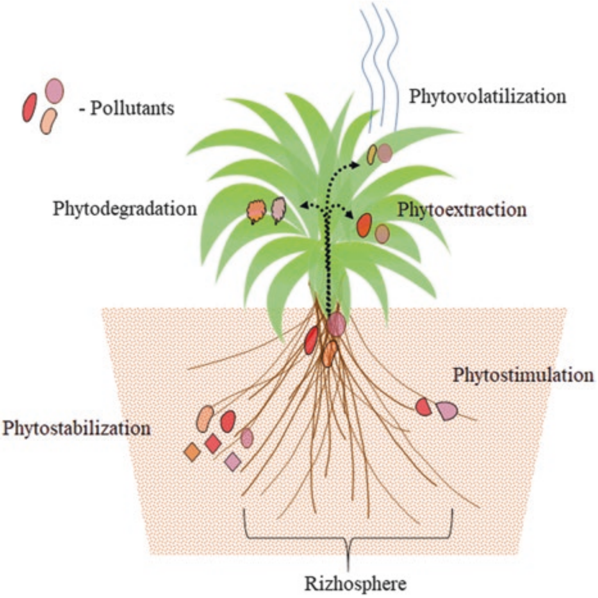


Fig. 2.1 Phytoremediation treatment process in constructed wetland

Stefanakis (2018) reported about a free-flow CW system which treating wastewater from oilfields make available of good occupancy for all birds. This shows that CW systems provide a good ecological system by promoting biodiversity. To improve the treatment efficiency, integrated wetland system was developed. Wu (2008) discussed about the integrated vertical flow constructed wetland (IVCW) that merged with an up flow followed by down flow connected in series. Tao et al. (2010) reported that IVCWs are favourable for anammox process. Saeed et al. (2012) reported about a horizontal subsurface flow CW (HSSCW) system made up of different media such as organic pea gravel, cupola slag and organic coco-peat. Saeed and Sun (2013) used sugar bagasse as supporting media in vertical flow stage of hybrid CW (HCW) which supports nitrogen removal and organic removal from textile wastewater. This is due to the greater porosity and organic carbon leaching action of sugar bagasse. The authors also found out that decolourizing is efficient when they use sylhet sand as media in horizontal flow stage of same HCW.

Pretreatment of domestic and dairy wastewater in a proportion is carried out in Imhoff tank which is further subjected to treatment in a two-stage HSSCW-based CW system connected in series and observed 94% output removal efficiency (Mantovi et al. 2003). Single-stage vertical flow-based CW systems followed by Van Oirschot (2015) deal with the treatment of dairy effluent for the past 16 years and observed significant removal of phosphorus and nitrogen along with organic compounds. Low greenhouse gas emissions compared to other conventional methods while treating the wastewater is an advantage for CW treatment system. In various CW types, surface flow CW (SCW) system produce low CO_2 emissions while VSSCW produces lowest CH_4 emissions, while significant N_2O emissions were produced (Mander et al. 2014).

However, HCW systems attain high removal efficiency with low greenhouse gas emission. MFC is an emerging technology treating the wastewater along with power production (Jayashree et al. 2014, 2016). It has an advantage of less sludge production (Tamilarasan et al. 2018; Kumar et al. 2018). A new approach of integrating CW incorporating microbial fuel cell (MFC) in treating industrial wastewater was introduced. Yadav et al. (2012) demonstrated an integrated CW with MFC treating dye wastewater which results in removal efficiency of 75% with the generation of power density in the range of 15.73 m Wm^{-2}. Presence of both the anaerobic and aerobic circumstances in the process will normally develop the in situ CW-MFC (Yadav et al. 2018). This combined system may offer further electron acceptors that favours the anaerobic zone in the system and improve more power production. New operational approaches are needed to enhance the organic removal and other useful end product such as electricity by treating various industrial wastewaters in CW system.

2.3 Constructed Wetland Classifications

Constructed wetlands (CW) are mainly classified into three systems: (a) surface water flow CW (free water flow) (SCW), (b) subsurface water flow CW (SSCW) and (c) hybrid CW (HCW). In which, first two classifications mainly depend upon their hydrological structure, and the third system is a combination of various CW types. The subsurface water flow also classifies the wetland into two: vertical subsurface water flow CW (VSSCW) and horizontal subsurface water flow CW (HSSCW). Table 2.1 shows the classifications of constructed wetlands.

2.3.1 Surface Water Flow CW (SCW)

SCW are generally a shallow water flow channels or basins with some vegetation which is planted on soil layer (Vymazal 2014). In SCW, water flows horizontally at minimum velocity, forming a water column depth up to 80 cm. This type of CWs is exposed to atmosphere and partially to the sunlight. The wastewater flows through wetland and comes into contact with the vegetation and efficiently removes the pollutants through various physicochemical or biological processes (Wang et al. 2017). Due to the atmospheric diffusion, the upper surface of the wetlands acts as aerobic zones, while the anoxic and anaerobic zones are present nearby the residues. But in high-loading SCW, the anoxic zone is present near the water surface. This type of CWs is used as an advanced wastewater treatment followed by secondary or tertiary treatment. Nitrogen is most effectively removed in SCW by nitrification/denitrification process. Figure 2.2 indicates the schematic representation of surface flow constructed wetland (SCW).

In SCW, nitrifying microbes in aerobic region oxidize NH_3, and then in anoxic zone, NO_3 is converted to free nitrogen by denitrifying microbes. In SCW, phosphorous is removed by sorption and precipitation. SCW consists of an arrangement of compartments with water regulator which regulate the flow in CW. *Typha species* and *Phragmites australis* are the wetland species commonly vegetated in SCW at the water depth of 20–40 cm. Chen (2011) reported that above 70% removal efficiency for total suspended solids (TSS), chemical oxygen demand (COD) and biochemical oxygen demand (BOD) can be achieved in SCW. The author also reported that removal efficiency of 40–50% for nitrogen (N) and 40–90% phosphorous (P) can be achieved in SCW.

2.3.2 Subsurface Flow CW (SSCW)

Subsurface flow CW (SSCW) is a sort of CW, with saturated or unsaturated vegetation which grow on the gravel. In these CWs, wastewater flows vertically or horizontally by which the pollutants comes into contact with microbes that live around

Table 2.1 Various classifications of constructed wetlands

Wastewater type	Macrophytes	Size	HRT	HLR	Removal, %	References
Surface flow constructed wetland (SCW)						
Synthetic	*Potamogeton crispus* and *Phragmites australis*	100 cm (height) 90 cm (length) 60 cm (width)	5 days	–	COD: 77.7 NH_4^+-N: 92.9 TN: 83.6 TP: 81.4	Zhang et al. (2017)
Synthetic	*P. australis* *Vallisneria natans* *P. crispus*	40 cm (diameter) 50 cm (depth)	10 days	–	COD: 96 NH_4^+-N: 98 TN: 90	Li et al. (2017)
Horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetlands (HSSCW)						
Sewage	*Unplanted*	1.2 m (length) 0.2 m (width) 0.3 m (depth)	5 days	6 cm day^{-1}	COD: 70.3 NH_4^+-N: 18.4 TN: 24.6	Li et al. (2014)
Industrial cork boiling	*Phragmites australis*	0.35 × 0.15 × 0.25 m	5 days	2.6–11.5 g COD/m^2/day	BOD: 91.7 COD: 74.6	Gomes et al. (2018)
Vertical subsurface flow constructed wetlands (VSSCW)						
Synthetic	*P. australis*	60 × 20 cm	72 h	0.207 m^3 m^{-2} $batch^{-1}$	COD: 96 N: 74	Fan et al. (2013)
Domestic	*Canna indica*	60 cm (length) 60 cm (width) 75 cm (depth)	3 days	–	COD: 95 NH_4^+-N: 88 NO_3–N: 50 TN: 83	Ding et al. (2014)

(continued)

Table 2.1 (continued)

Wastewater type	Macrophytes	Size	HRT	HLR	Removal, %	References
Hybrid constructed wetlands (HCW)						
High strength urban	*Phragmites australis*	VSSCW 0.26 m^2 (surface area) HSSCW 125 cm (length) 57 cm (width) 56 cm (depth)	VSSCW: 1.42 h HSSCW: 2.8 days	VSSCW: 344 L/m^2day HSSCW: 64 L/m^2day	VSSCW: BOD: 84 COD: 31 SS: 68 HSSCW: BOD: 62 COD: 66 SS: 84	Herrera-Melián et al. (2015)
Textile industry	*P. australis*, *Dracaena sanderiana*, *Asplenium platyneuron*	VSSCW 1.50 m (diameter) 0.15 m (height) HSSCW 1.01 m (length) 0.45 m (width) 0.7 m (depth)	VSSCW 0.2–1.8 days HSSCW 0.7–7.1 days	566–2830 mm/day and 1132–5660 mm/day	Total efficiency: BOD: 91.7 COD: 74.6 SS: 37.7 NH_4^+-N: 69.9 NO_3–N: 76.6	Saeed and Sun (2013)

HRT hydraulic retention time, *HLR* hydraulic loading rate

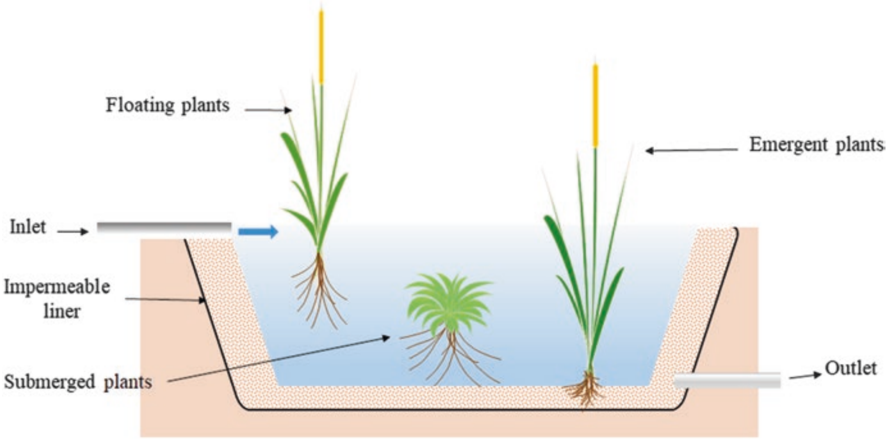


Fig. 2.2 Surface flow constructed wetland (SCW)

the rhizosphere zone (Saeed and Sun 2012). Saeed and Sun (2017) explained about the pollutant removal mechanism of the SSCW as follows: filtration and settling, precipitation and chemical conversion, adsorption on surface of media, plants uptake, organic matter removal by microbes and conversion of nutrients. While removing contaminant, microbial reaction in SSCW is greater than SCW. In SSCW, water flows below the media, and depending on the flow pattern in SSCW, it can be categorized into two groups: (a) vertical subsurface water flow CW (VSSCW) and (b) horizontal flow subsurface water flow CW (HSSCW).

2.3.2.1 Horizontal Subsurface Flow CW (HSSCW)

In horizontal subsurface flow CW (HSSCW), the wastewater enters into the gravel media of CW horizontally and gets treated. Due to subsurface flow, the water is fed into CW below 5 cm from the top layer and not exposed to air. The wastewater reaches into aerobic, anoxic and anaerobic zones. Aerobic zones near the roots drip the oxygen into wastewater (Vymazal 2014). Plant roots release the oxygen which increases the dissolved oxygen (DO) in the upper zone of HSSCW. Lower zone remains as anaerobic region due to poor supply of oxygen. Temperature influences the vegetation activity, while DO content in winter is low but high in summer conditions (Huang et al. 2013). Mburu et al. (2013a, b) reported that horizontal flow decreases the DO level because of high oxygen intake during the degradation. Though nutrient removal is low, HSSCW has been proved very operative in the removal of solids and organics at high rate. Stefanakis (2018) proposed some modifications to advance the efficiency of HSSCW through effluent recirculating, by rising water level or providing step feed and gravity filters. Generally, HSSCW is applied for the treatment of effluents from the industries such as dairy, swine, mine and olive mills. Figure 2.3 represents the horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetland (HSSCW).

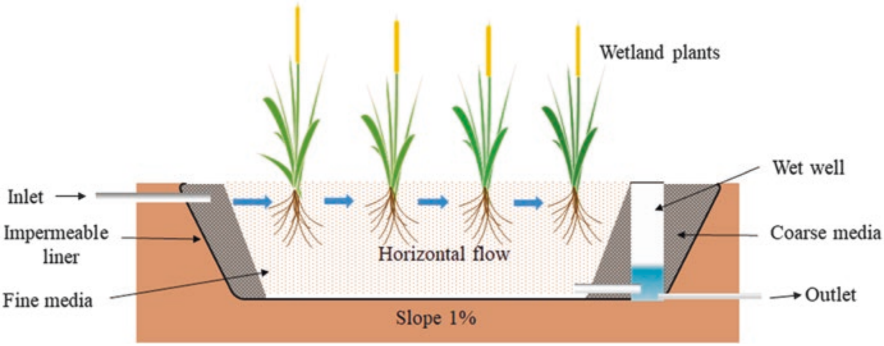


Fig. 2.3 Horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetland (HSSCW)

2.3.2.2 Vertical Subsurface Flow CW (VSSCW)

VSSCW consists of a flatbed topped with gravel and macrophytes planted on the surface of the bed. Wastewater fed into the CW on the top layer and spreads over the other layers of CW. Then wastewater percolates down to reach the outlet through the gravel media due to the gravitational force. In this mode of operation, wastewater moves vertically and shoots out the confined air and pulling the fresh air from the atmosphere into the bed, as a result better aeration is enhanced. In VSSCW, the bed depth varies from 0.45 to 1.20 m and has a slope of 1–2%, which is used to collect the treated water (Stefanakis et al. 2014). For better oxygen transfer in CW, the gravel media is totally drained and permits fresh air to occupy over the media. Oxygen from atmosphere contributes more in bed oxygenation compared to oxygen transferred from the plants. In VSSCW, macrophytes are used to maintain the hydraulic conductivity of the CW. Pempkowiak et al. (2015) reported that VSSCW systems has some advantages such as ability to transport oxygen and significantly smaller than HSSCW systems. Schematic representation of vertical subsurface flow constructed wetland (VSSCW) is shown in Fig. 2.4.

2.3.3 Hybrid Constructed Wetlands (HCW)

For effective wastewater treatment, CWs are combined and form as hybrid CWs. Mostly, HCW consists of the arrangement of VSSCW and HSSCW. Commonly used types of HCW are made up of (a) VSSCW and HSSCW systems in series and (b) HSSCW combined with VSSCW system (Stefanakis et al. 2014). In VSSCW–HSSCW combined system, VSSCW unit placed in first, to remove the suspended solids and organic matter and to provide nitrification. In combination with HSSCW–VSSCW, HSSCW is provided first to remove organic matter and then to achieve denitrification. Then it is followed by VSSCW to enhance the organic removal also to provide good conditions for nitrification. Nguyen et al. (2018) reported that HCW is an efficient treatment method to remove all the pollutants.

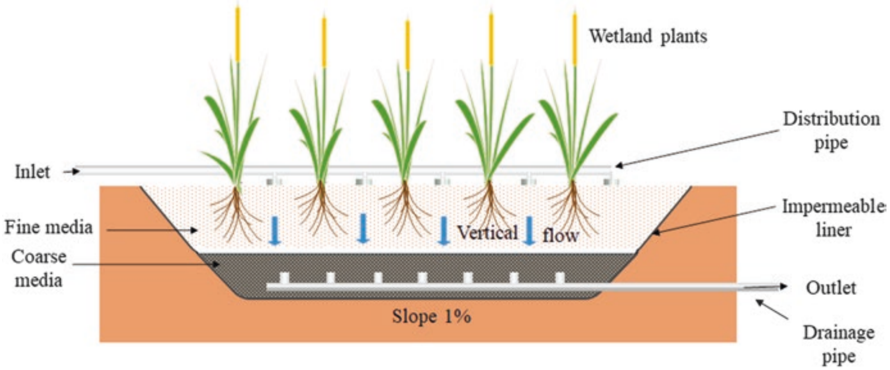


Fig. 2.4 Vertical subsurface flow constructed wetland (VSSCW)

2.3.4 *Advanced CWs*

Other than the main classification of CW, advanced CWs are used to improve organic removal and nutrient removal from various types of wastewater. To achieve efficient removal treatment, improved CWs with artificial aeration, flow with baffle, feed in step mode and flow in circular have been proposed (Wu et al. 2014). Multi-stage CWs comprises more than three stages CWs. For example, Saeed et al. (2012) performed a HCW system that consists of VSSCW, followed by HSSCW and VSSCW. They achieved good removal efficiency of organic materials such as nitrate and phosphorous across the whole hybrid system. Hybrid system of integrated vertical flow CW was introduced to improve the treatment efficiency (Wu 2008). A novel design of HSSCW comprises vertical baffles placed beside the width of CW (Tee et al. 2012). In this design, wastewater is feed into CW as it flows up and down mode and it reaches the outlet. This design type allows wastewater goes in aerobic, anoxic and anaerobic conditions in sequences which allow it to have more contact with rhizosphere. In CW, the recirculation of treated wastewater within the system improves the total nitrogen removal (Stefanakis and Tsihrintzis 2009). This recirculation takes place in well-designed special wetlands, known as circular flow corridor CW (Peng et al. 2012). This wetland avoids the negative influence of particles and colloids on wetland, an advantage of other conventional CWs.

2.4 Factors Influencing the Treatment of Industrial Wastewaters by CW

2.4.1 *Organic Loading*

Effluents from industries such as food processing, dairy industry and distillery contain biodegradable substances and solids. Food processing industry wastes contain oil and grease substances with organic matters as carbohydrates. Due to the presence of high organic content in industrial effluents, CWs are mostly designed for secondary or tertiary treatment after conventional primary treatments through activated sludge (Calheiros et al. 2014). High organic loading in CWs may affect the treatment efficiency and also the wetland vegetation (Wu et al. 2015). Organic loading also influences the growth of vegetations in CW. Plants near the outlet show better growth than inlet of CW. This is because decreased organic loading in wastewater moving towards the outlet might decrease stress on vegetation growth (Worku et al. 2018).

2.4.2 Clogging

Clogging is a factor which influences the CW performance while treating industrial effluents. Clogging mainly depends on the substrate need to be treated and hydraulic characteristics of CW. Knowles et al. (2011) reported that clogging happens because of the gathering of solids on the surface, low porosity, poor hydraulic conductivity, biofilm formation, precipitates of chemicals and vegetation. In CW, microbial substances are detached from each other and develop into biofilm on the surface of the gravel. The biofilm occupies the pores of gravels and slowly develops into block. Due to the continuous growth of biofilm, it forms into layer which clogs the system and fails the wetland system. Indeed, the amount or degree of clogging is influenced by the accumulation of solids, while the clogging is influenced by the hydraulic behaviour of the CW.

High clogging may occur at the inlet of CW, because the wastewater enters through the inlet where the solids filtered and retained. At this zone solids overloaded, form clogs and affects the infiltration rate (Pedescoll et al. 2013). Clogging reduces the oxygen infiltration in the growth media which may reduce the efficiency of CW and significantly shortening the life span of CW (Nivala et al. 2012). Clogging reduces the longevity of CW into 8 years (Nivala et al. 2012) and 13 years (Vymazal 2018), but generally CW has the longevity of more than 20 years. Varga et al. (2013) reported that pretreatment is needed to avoid clogging and for the long-term operation of CW with better performance. Herrera-Melián et al. (2015) reported that pretreatment is needed to reduce the concentration of solids before treating the high strength WW in CW. The author also discussed that COD also in minimum level to reduce the development of biofilm.

2.4.3 pH

In CW, pH influences the microbial processes. As a result of various pollutants in industrial wastewaters, it may either acidic or alkaline. Saeed and Sun (2012) reported that ammonification process in CW takes place when pH is 6.5–8.5. Normally in wastewater heterotrophic production rates are high in neutral pH than in acidic pH. Hadad et al. (2018) reported that free floating species in CW adversely affected if pH goes lower than 3 or beyond 9. The authors also reported that *T. domingensis* is a suitable species in treating industrial effluents with high value pH. The most favourable pH range for treatment of wastewater in CW by macrophytes is 6–9. Worku et al. (2018) also discussed that pH was slightly increased from 6.4 at inlet to 8.1 at outlet while treating brewery industry wastewater. This is due to consuming organic acids by microbes in bioremediation process.

2.4.4 Temperature

Temperature effects the microbial growth and metabolic rates in CW. Normally in CW, greater biological activities and growth rates occur at high temperature while low temperature limits the biological activities and leads to organic accumulation (Meng et al. 2014). The author reported that temperature 28–36 °C is optimum for nitrification activity in CW. Temperature above 15 °C is suitable for ammonia oxidizing bacteria in which the bacteria grows faster than nitrite oxidizing; however, the nitrite oxidizing bacteria can be removed at 25 °C. In CW, 15–38 °C is the most favourable temperature range for the wetland plants.

2.5 Pollutant Removal and Operation and Maintenance for CW Treating Industrial Wastewater

CWs are used to remove the pollutants such as organic and inorganic substances, suspended and dissolved solids, pathogens, metals and nutrients from various industrial wastewaters. CW performance may be affected by wetland structure, hydraulic loading, wastewater type, type of vegetation, pollutant concentration and climatic condition (Trang et al. 2010). In particular, pollutant removal in CW mainly depends upon the organic loading, type of wastewater flow and type of vegetation on CW. More hydraulic retention time is required in CW to remove the pollutants efficiently (Kadlec and Wallace 2008). It is necessary to maintain the level of water for the proper development of vegetation growth. Maintaining an optimum loading for flow of substrate and desired vegetation is needed to get good efficient treatment results in CW, otherwise results may lead to system failure. Plantation in CWs plays predominant role in removing pollutants; the key factors identified are conversion of nutrients, converting to low loaded systems by uptaking nutrients, storing of oxygen in root and releasing of organic carbon (Vymazal 2011b). Table 2.2 shows the performance of pilot scale CW treating various industrial wastewater.

CW plants take a main part in pollutant removal by direct intake, by promoting the particle settling and by providing the substrate to microorganisms that break down pollutants. Adsorption, volatilization, degradation, extraction, filtration and

Table 2.2 Performance of pilot scale CW treating various industrial wastewater

Type of CW	Size of CW	Vegetation	Wastewater treated	Removal, %				References
				COD	BOD	Nitrogen	Phosphorus	
SCW	45.5 m^2	*Phragmites australis*	Olive mill	90	–	87	85	Kapellakis et al. (2012)
SCW	50 × 40 × 0.5 m	*Typha domingensis*	Metallurgical	78.2	82.5	66.1	52.8	Maine et al. (2017)
HSSCW	1.5 × 3.5 × 0.3 m	*Typha angustifolia* and *Canna indica*	Pulp and paper	86.6	80.01	–	–	Rani et al. (2011)
HSSCW	0.6 × 0.5 × 2.0 m	*Lolium multiflorum*	Coffee processing	–	–	69	72	Rossmann et al. (2012)
VSSCW	1.21 × 1.21 × 1.21 m	*Brachiaria mutica*	Textile industry	81	72	84	79	Hussain et al. (2018)
VSSCW	4 m^2	*Arundo donax*	Dairy	–	97.8	53.5	97.1	Sharma et al. (2018)
HCW	VF—0.65 m^2 HF—1.33 m^2	*Phragmites australis*	Tannery	98	98	86	87	Saeed et al. (2012)
HCW	VF—30 m^2 HF—100 m^2	*Canna indica L.* and *Symphytum officinale L.*	Piggery	79	–	63	61	Borin et al. (2013)
HCW	VF—50 m^2 HF—100 m^2	*Phragmites australis* and *Juncus effusus*	Winery	73.3	74.2	55.4	17.4	Serrano et al. (2011)

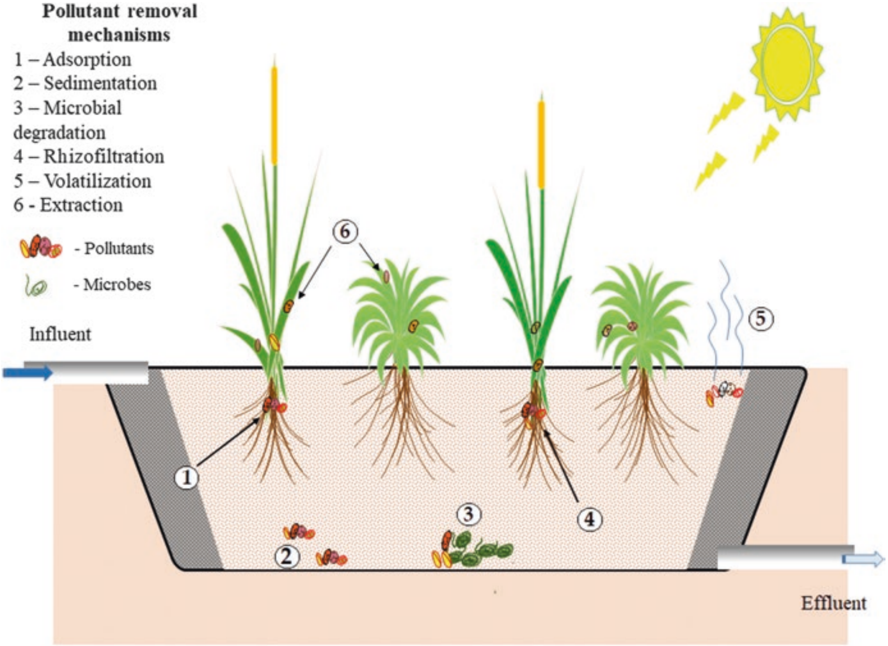


Fig. 2.5 Pollutant removal mechanisms in constructed wetland

sedimentation are the pollutant removal mechanisms take place in CW which is shown in Fig. 2.5. Although nitrogen is removed by various processes like adsorption, volatilization and nitrogen fixation, nitrification and denitrification play a major role in maximum removal of nitrogen in CW compared to other treatment process.

Accumulation of organic matter and development in nutrient removal are promoted due to growth of plants in CWs studied by Tanner (2001) and observed a significant removal of nitrogen treating wastewater (Lv et al. 2013; Chen et al. 2014). HSSF-based CWs treating domestic wastewater was studied by Carballeira et al. (2016) and observed a removal of 91% additional nitrogen, when plotting a graph with the rate of nitrogen removed against the production of biomass. As per plantation and its corresponding reports, it was experimented to be effective in total nitrogen removal, and it ranges from 0.5 to 40.0% (Saeed and Sun 2012). Plants grown above the ground showed sedimentation burial and denitrification which leads to nitrogen removal in CWs with significant improvements (Chen et al. 2014). The increase in nutrient removal shows decline in performance in monitoring the nutrient removal in subsequent year (Zheng et al. 2015). With the help of sedimentation, adsorption, precipitation and dissolution, the microbes in plantation separate phosphorous. Other compounds like phenol are also removed simultaneously.

It was evident that by considering the physicochemical properties, 70% removal was achieved in FCW. Wu et al. (2017) discussed that VSSCW enhances nitrification process by utilizing excess oxygen produced in aeration. Followed by SCW should have a good purpose for ammonia volatilization. Rani et al. (2011) reported about performance of HSSCW treating pulp and paper industry along with the plant species like *Typha angustifolia* and *Canna indica*. The authors also reported that there is a sequential relationship between hydraulic retention time (HRT) and the efficiency of removal. The removal efficiency in low HRT is high as compared to the high HRT. It is possibly due to less supply of nutrients to the microbes at high HRT. Instead, low HRT may lead to the washout of biofilm. Also, the removal efficiency is slightly lower in winter compared to summer. This is because of temperature-dependent microbial activities in CW which are better in summer, because high evapo-transpiration in summer reduces the discharge rate compared with other seasons.

Weerakoon et al. (2013) reported that hydraulic loading rate (HLR) influences the pollutant removal, and it is an important parameter for efficient treatment in HSSCW. The authors constructed a lab-scale HSSCW planted with *T. angustifolia* species which resulted in an efficient removal of pollutants under varying HLR up to 25 cm/day. Appropriate contact of wastewater with the roots of plantation removes the dissolved particles by various microbial communities (Chen et al. 2016). Saeed et al. (2012) performed a HCW system consisting of VSSCW, followed by HSSCW and a VSSCW. The authors used different types of media such as organic coco peat, cupola slag and pea gravel and planted *Phragmites australis* species in HCW. They achieved the removal efficiency of 86% in NH_3–N, 50% in NO_3–N, 98% in biochemical oxygen demand (BOD), 98% in chemical oxygen demand (COD) and 87% in PO_4. Worku et al. (2018) reported the phytoremediation role played by planted species for organic removal in CWs. The authors planted *T. latifolia* and *P. purpureum* in HSSCW for treating brewery industry wastewater, and the removal efficiency of 81% COD and 87% BOD were obtained.

2.6 Economical Consideration of CW for Treating Industrial Wastewater

For the treatment of industrial wastewater through CWs, the investment costs are categorized based on lands, site utility, construction design, earthwork, liners, paving the filtration unit, plantation and equipment dealing with hydraulic monitoring structure, fencing cost and for roads (Wallace and Knight 2006). The proportions of cost for various countries are summarized, and the data available from Vymazal and Kröpfelová (2008) for the United States and the Czech Republic are observed to be in the range of 7–27% followed by Portugal and Spain. The excavation costs ranges between 27 and 53%, liner plantation cost (2–12%), the unit plumbing cost (6–12%), monitoring of structures ranges from (3.1–5.7%) and the mixed costs (1.8–12%).

From economical aspects, the total investment for the CW erection in India was observed to be 29 USD for a square metre (Billore et al. 1999) and evident to be 33 USD per square metre in Costa Rica (Dallas et al. 2004) and proved to be the highest in Belgium with 257 EUR per square metre (Rousseau et al. 2004).

The initial investment cost for subsurface flow CWs is as equal to conventional treatment systems, but the CWs with FWS are comparatively lower due to limited usage of media in rooting of bottom beds. The operation and maintenance costs for CWs are very low compared with concrete and steel technologies. The focus areas monitored were under pretreatment maintenance, less pumping energy, fulfilment in scrutinizing the maintenance work of screens, grit chambers and Imhoff tank and comfort in vegetation harvesting (Kadlec and Wallace 2008). Conservative wastewater treatment plant and activated sludge processes are the effective treatment methods followed in urban areas with economic operation cost. But CWs are affordable for small communities with clear improvement in various aspects such as construction, treatment, maintenance of pumps, vegetation, pest control and less utilization of power. It is observed that only one third of the construction cost occurs in constructing CWs compared to WWTP (Liu et al. 2008).

Comparative study on the economic aspects of CW system and activated sludge process confirm that initial investment cost for CW was relatively half of ASP (Wang et al. 2006). An experimental model CW incorporated with 200 m^{-3} day^{-1} of unit was constructed along Dao River (Beijing, China), and it was estimated that the construction cost was equal to one fifth of that of the existing WWTP (Chen et al. 2008). Land requirement plays a predominant place in deciding the economy of CWs; it is land intensive and normally requires more space (Brissaud 2007); therefore, the expansion in application is progressed to place where land prices are affordable. It is one of the reasonable and cost-effective among all processes, both in case of land availability and in due course with less land requirement. In general it has been constructed only in densely populated areas. In Southern China, an innovative crossbreed CW scheme was constructed with a combination of vertical-baffled flow and HSSF, and this scheme treated domestic wastewater (Vymazal 2011a). The advantage associated with this scheme is that it occupied less land than conventional treatment.

Dallas et al. (2004) constructed a pilot plant treating grey water in Costa Rica, with specialization in cost-effective and energy consumption unit. A comparative study on constructed wetland and a sequential batch reactor (SBR) was performed based on the economic and environmental cost analysis from an industrial wastewater treatment unit by Di Muro et al. (2014). It was observed that the storm water is also routed through the system and the financial result points towards implementing CWs are between the savings meanwhile implementing SBR leads to excessive wastage of multiple of capital amount. The life cycle assessment (LCA) study insists on less energy usage and substance uptake that lead to low eutrophication. Though CWs have some advantages, some limitations need to be considered such as requirement of large area, design criteria for different types of wastewater need to treat and climatic conditions.

2.7 Future Consideration

The water quality standards for wastewater treatments are stricter in coming days, where CWs still need to improve research and development in the area of design and operation. CW implementations are observed to be the reliable treatment technology treating various industrial wastewaters. The sustainability of this treatment system is highly depended on advances in design, which naturally influence the contaminant removal efficiencies and successful operation. In treating high-strength wastewater, the CW performance is observed to be linear and drastic advancement, which is due to framing optimized hydraulic design, method of operation, maintaining proper organic loading and correct selection of substrates and plants. Selection of plants for cultivation in the CWs seems to play a vital role in removing pollutant; hence, proper care must be taken in selecting good species of macrophytes. In general, these species are responsible for eliminating heavy metals and pharmaceuticals through large biomass production, acceptability of high-pollutant loadings with sufficient oxygen and carbon compounds. With toting up non-conventional methods such as wastes from agricultural and industrial by products, with high sorption capacity, needs to be developed and involved in pollutant removal process.

In optimizing the industrial wastewater treatment performance, the parameters such as environment, hydraulic loading and operating conditions play predominant role in forming pathway and mechanism equivalent in pollutant removal. Sustainable technologies such as introduction of diffused aeration, adding external carbon, loading reactor in rhythm, choosing various plant species, amplification of microorganism, choosing variety of substrate, introducing hybrid and baffled flow CWs may be applied for the development and enhancement of CWs treating industrial wastewater. Attention towards selection of suitable plant species which absorbs nutrients and pollutants should be focused because at the time of its death and decay, an appropriate harvest strategies, reclamation and recycling of resources should be disclosed. CWs treating industrial wastewater offer potential for nitrogen removal through anammox and CANON processes.

The process performance and efficiency of this treatment depend on the condition of growth of anammox bacteria and the construction design favouring the replication. In addition the optimized microbial species favouring nitrogen-removing gene should be studied using biogenetics and gene modification. Study on pretreatment methods, planting on new vegetation, introducing different porous media and change in operational strategy are the research areas where future investigation is to focus on for potential innovative applications associated with CWs.

2.8 Summary and Conclusion

For the last five decades, constructed wetland treatment methods have been evolved as a consistent treatment technology treating domestic, industrial and agricultural wastewaters. Special attention has been focused on landfill leachate and storm water runoff. Natural wetlands in general remove pollution, but in CWs the conditions are properly monitored; as a result, the efficiency in pollution removal is drastic. Removing the organics and suspended impurities improves the treatment efficiency also; it is enhanced by adding various types of CWs in combination mode. Introducing special media for the absorption of nitrogen and phosphorous is focused for removal, which are available abundantly and observed to be the major pollutant. The cost for operation and maintenance of CWs are lower as it requires very less power consumption compared with conventional treatment systems. In addition the design is framed in such a way that it is involved in maintaining the environment during floods and provides habitat for wildlife through dual or multipurpose ecosystems.

This chapter illustrates the types of CWs and its operational factors like selection of plant species, specific substrate and level of water to be maintained, rate of loading and hydraulic retention time. They are the key stones to achieve an efficient treatment performance. In the application of CWs, attention should be taken to implement the plant species and specific substrates under real-life condition optimizing the environmental and operational factors in implementing new advanced technologies and maintaining the strategies. The CWs are made to work in all forms of environmental conditions. The organic contents ranging in the form of SS, COD and BOD are proportionally removed based on the application of CWs considering the appropriate design criteria and provided loading rates. CWs are monitored to be the admired alternative technologies rather than conventional type wastewater treatment, and the results treating various industrial effluents almost project the same operational trouble and their margins.

References

Ahmed S, Popov V, Trevedi RC (2008) Constructed wetland as tertiary treatment for municipal wastewater. Inst Civil Eng 77–84:WR2

Ávila C, Salas JJ, Martín I, Aragón C, García J (2013) Integrated treatment of combined sewer wastewater and stormwater in a hybrid constructed wetland system in southern Spain and its further reuse. Ecol Eng 50:13–20

Bharagava RN, Chandra R (2010) Biodegradation of the major color containing compounds in distillery wastewater by an aerobic bacterial culture and characterization of their metabolites. Biodegrad J 21:703–711

Bharagava RN, Saxena G, Chowdhary P (2017) Constructed wetlands: an emerging phytotechnology for degradation and detoxification of industrial wastewaters. In: Bharagava RN (ed) Environmental pollutants and their bioremediation approaches. CRC Press, Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton, pp 397–426

Billore SK, Singh N, Sharma JK, Dass P, Nelson RM (1999) Horizontal subsurface flow gravel bed constructed wetland with *Phragmites karka* in central India. Water Sci Technol 401:73–171

Bojcevska H, Tonderski K (2007) Impact of loads, season, and plant species on the performance of a tropical constructed wetland polishing effluent from sugar factory stabilization ponds. Ecol Eng 29:66–76

Borin M, Politeo M, De Stefani G (2013) Performance of a hybrid constructed wetland treating piggery wastewater. Ecol Eng 51:229–236

Brissaud F (2007) Low technology systems for wastewater perspectives. Water Sci Technol 55(7):1–9

Calheiros CS, Rangel AO, Castro PM (2014) Constructed wetlands for tannery wastewater treatment in Portugal: ten years of experience. Int J Phytorem 16:859–870

Carballeira T, Ruiz I, Soto M (2016) Effect of plants and surface loading rate on the treatment efficiency of shallow subsurface constructed wetlands. Ecol Eng 90:203–214

Chen H (2011) Surface-flow constructed treatment wetlands for pollutant removal: applications and perspectives. Wetlands 31:805–814

Chen ZM, Chen B, Zhou JB, Li Z, Zhou Y (2008) A vertical subsurface-flow constructed wetland in Beijing. Commun Nonlinear Sci Numer Simul 13:1986–1997

Chen Y, Wen Y, Zhou Q, Vymazal J (2014) Effects of plant biomass on nitrogen transformation in subsurface-batch constructed wetlands: a stable isotope and mass balance assessment. Water Res 63:158–167

Chen Z, Cuervo DP, Müller JA, Wiessner A, Köser H, Vymazal J, Kästner M, Kuschk P (2016) Hydroponic root mats for wastewater treatment—a review. Environ Sci Pollut Res 23(16):15911–15928

Chowdhary P, Yadav A, Kaithwas G, Bharagava RN (2017) Distillery wastewater: a major source of environmental pollution and it's biological treatment for environmental safety. In: Singh R, Kumar S (eds) Green technology and environmental sustainability. Springer International, Cham, pp 409–435

Dallas S, Scheffe B, Ho G (2004) Reedbeds for greywater treatment—case study in Santa Elena-Monteverde, Costa Rica, Central America. Ecol Eng 23:55–61

Di Muro JL, Guertin FM, Helling RK, Perkins JL, Romer S (2014) A financial and environmental analysis of constructed wetlands for industrial wastewater treatment. J Ind Ecol 18(5):631–640

Ding Y, Wang W, Song XS, Wang G, Wang YH (2014) Effect of spray aeration on organics and nitrogen removal in vertical subsurface flow constructed wetland. Chemosphere 117:502–505

Fan J, Liang S, Zhang B, Zhang J (2013) Enhanced organics and nitrogen removal in batch-operated vertical flow constructed wetlands by combination of intermittent aeration and step feeding strategy. Environ Sci Pollut Res 20(4):2448–2455

Gikas P, Ranieri E, Tchobanoglous G (2013) Removal of iron, chromium and lead from waste water by horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetlands. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 88(10):1906–1912

Gomes AC, Silva L, Albuquerque A, Simões R, Stefanakis AI (2018) Investigation of lab-scale horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetlands treating industrial cork boiling wastewater. Chemosphere 207:430–439

Hadad HR, Mufarrege MM, Di Luca GA, Maine MA (2018) Salinity and pH effects on floating and emergent macrophytes in a constructed wetland. Water Sci Technol 2017(1):270–275

He LS, Liu HL, Xi BD, Zhu YB (2006) Effects of effluent recirculation in vertical flow constructed wetland on treatment efficiency of livestock wastewater. Water Sci Technol 54(11–12):137–146

Herath I, Vithanage M (2015) Phytoremediation in constructed wetlands. In: Phytoremediation. Springer, Cham, pp 243–263

Herrera-Melián JA, Torres-Padrón ME, Betancor-Abreu A, Sosa-Ferrera Z, Santana-Rodríguez JJ, Martín-González MA, Araña J, Guedes-Alonso R (2015) Clogging reduction and removal of hormone residues with laboratory-scale vertical flow organic-based filter and hybrid wetland. Int J Environ Sci Technol 12(3):1039–1052

Huang J, Cai W, Zhong Q, Wang S (2013) Influence of temperature on micro-environment, plant eco-physiology and nitrogen removal effect in subsurface flow constructed wetland. Ecol Eng 60:242–248

Hussain Z, Arslan M, Malik MH, Mohsin M, Iqbal S, Afzal M (2018) Treatment of the textile industry effluent in a pilot-scale vertical flow constructed wetland system augmented with bacterial endophytes. Sci Total Environ 645:966–973

Jayashree C, Arulazhagan P, Kumar SA, Kaliappan S, Yeom IT, Banu JR (2014) Bioelectricity generation from coconut husk retting wastewater in fed batch operating microbial fuel cell by phenol degrading microorganism. Biomass Bioenergy 69:249–254

Jayashree C, Tamilarasan K, Rajkumar M, Arulazhagan P, Yogalakhsmi KN, Srikanth M, Banu JR (2016) Treatment of seafood processing wastewater using upflow microbial fuel cell for power generation and identification of bacterial community in anodic biofilm. J Environ Manag 180:351–358

Ji CD, Sun TH, Ni JR (2007) Surface flow constructed wetland for heavy oil produced water treatment. Ecol Eng 98:436–441

Jiang Y (2009) China's water scarcity. J Environ Manag 90:3185–3196

Kadlec RH, Wallace SD (2008) Treatment wetlands, 2nd edn. CRC Press, Boca Raton

Kapellakis IE, Paranychianakis NV, Tsagarakis KP, Angelakis AN (2012) Treatment of olive mill wastewater with constructed wetlands. Water 4(1):260–271

Kivaisi AK (2001) The potential for constructed wetlands for wastewater treatment and reuse in developing countries: a review. Ecol Eng 16:545–560

Knowles P, Dotro G, Nivala J, García J (2011) Clogging in subsurface-flow treatment wetlands: occurrence and contributing factors. Ecol Eng 37(2):99–112

Konnerup D, Trang NTD, Brix H (2011) Treatment of fishpond water by recirculating horizontal and vertical flow constructed wetlands in the tropics. Aquaculture 313:57–64

Kumar MD, Gunasekaran M, Rajesh Banu J (2018) Generation of electricity from dye industry wastewater in dual chamber fed batch operating microbial fuel cell. Int J Adv Res Ideas Innov Technol 4(4):902–907

Kumari V, Yadav A, Haq I, Kumar S, Bharagava RN, Singh SK, Raj A (2016) Genotoxicity evaluation of tannery effluent treated with newly isolated hexavalent chromium reducing *Bacillus cereus*. J Environ Manag 183:204–211

Li M, Wu YJ, Yu ZL, Sheng GP, Yu HQ (2009) Enhanced nitrogen and phosphorus removal from eutrophic lake water by Ipomoea aquatica with low energy ion implantation. Water Res 43:1247–1256

Li F, Lu L, Zheng X, Zhang X (2014) Three-stage horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetlands for organics and nitrogen removal: effect of aeration. Ecol Eng 68:90–96

Li M, Wu H, Zhang J, Ngo HH, Guo W, Kong Q (2017) Nitrogen removal and nitrous oxide emission in surface flow constructed wetlands for treating sewage treatment plant effluent: effect of C/N ratios. Bioresour Technol 240:157–164

Liu D, Ge Y, Chang J, Peng C, Gu B, Chan GYS, Wu X (2008) Constructed wetlands in China: recent developments and future challenges. Front Ecol Environ 7:261–268

Lv T, Wu S, Hong H, Chen L, Dong R (2013) Dynamics of nitrobenzene degradation and interactions with nitrogen transformations in laboratory-scale constructed wetlands. Bioresour Technol 133:529–536

Maine MA, Suñe N, Hadad H, Sánchez G (2007) Temporal and spatial variation of phosphate distribution in the sediment of free water surface constructed wetland. Sci Total Environ 380:75–83

Maine MA, Hadad HR, Sánchez GC, Di Luca GA, Mufarrege MM, Caffaratti SE, Pedro MC (2017) Long-term performance of two free-water surface wetlands for metallurgical effluent treatment. Ecol Eng 98:372–377

Mander Ü, Dotro G, Ebie Y, Towprayoon S, Chiemchaisri C, Nogueira SF, Jamsranjav B, Kasak K, Truu J, Tournebize J, Mitsch WJ (2014) Greenhouse gas emission in constructed wetlands for wastewater treatment: a review. Ecol Eng 66:19–35

Mantovi P, Marmiroli M, Maestri E, Tagliavini S, Piccinni S, Marmiroli N (2003) Application of a horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetland on treatment of dairy parlor wastewater. Bioresour Technol 88(2):85–94

Mburu N, Tebitendwa SM, Rousseau DPL, van Bruggen JJA, Lens PNL (2013a) Performance evaluation of horizontal subsurface flow-constructed wetlands for the treatment of domestic wastewater in the tropics. J Environ Eng 139:358–367

Mburu N, Tebitendwa SM, Van Bruggen JJ, Rousseau DP, Lens PN (2013b) Performance comparison and economics analysis of waste stabilization ponds and horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetlands treating domestic wastewater: a case study of the Juja sewage treatment works. J Environ Manag 128:220–225

Meng P, Pei H, Hu W, Shao Y, Li Z (2014) How to increase microbial degradation in constructed wetlands: influencing factors and improvement measures. Bioresour Technol 157:316–326

Meutia AA (2001) Treatment of laboratory wastewater in a tropical constructed wetland comparing surface and subsurface flow. Water Sci Technol 44(11–12):499–506

Mishra S, Bharagava RN, More N, Yadav A, Zainith S, Mani S, Chowdhary P (2018) Heavy metal contamination: an alarming threat to environment and human health. In: Sobti RS, Arora NK, Kothari R (eds) Environmental biotechnology: for sustainable future. Springer Nature Singapore Pvt. Ltd, Singapore, pp 103–125

Mishra S, Saratale GD, Ferreira LFR, Bharagava RN (2019) Plant-microbe interaction: an eco-friendly approach for the remediation of metal contaminated environments. Elsevier, Academic (in press)

Nahlik AM, Mitsch WJ (2006) Tropical treatment wetlands dominated by free floating macrophytes for water quality improvement in Costa Rica. Ecol Eng 28:246–257

Nguyen XC, Chang SW, Nguyen TL, Ngo HH, Kumar G, Banu JR, Vu MC, Le HS, Nguyen DD (2018) A hybrid constructed wetland for organic-material and nutrient removal from sewage: process performance and multi-kinetic models. J Environ Manag 222:378–384

Nikolaou IE, Stefanakis AI (2018) A novel response of industry to wastewater treatment with constructed wetlands: a managerial view through system dynamic techniques. In: Stefanakis AI (ed) Constructed wetlands for industrial wastewater treatment. Wiley, Hoboken, NJ, pp 529–549

Nivala J, Knowles P, Dotro G, García J, Wallace S (2012) Clogging in subsurface-flow treatment wetlands: measurement, modeling and management. Water Res 46(6):1625–1640

Pedescoll A, Sidrach-Cardona R, Sánchez JC, Carretero J, Garfi M, Bécares E (2013) Design configurations affecting flow pattern and solids accumulation in horizontal free water and subsurface flow constructed wetlands. Water Res 47(3):1448–1458

Pempkowiak HO, Gajewska M, Wojciechowska E, Pempkowiak J (2015) Treatment wetlands for environmental pollution control. Springer, Cham

Peng J, Song Y, Liu Z, Gao H, Yu H (2012) Performance of a novel circular-flow corridor wetland toward the treatment of simulated high-strength swine wastewater. Ecol Eng 49:1–9

Rani N, Maheshwari RC, Kumar V, Vijay VK (2011) Purification of pulp and paper mill effluent through Typha and Canna using constructed wetlands technology. J Water Reuse Desal 1(4):237–242

Riggio VA, Ruffino B, Campo G, Comino E, Comoglio C, Zanetti M (2018) Constructed wetlands for the reuse of industrial wastewater: a case-study. J Clean Prod 171:723–732

Rossmann M, de Matos AT, Abreu EC, e Silva FF, Borges AC (2012) Performance of constructed wetlands in the treatment of aerated coffee processing wastewater: removal of nutrients and phenolic compounds. Ecol Eng 49:264–269

Rousseau DPL, Vanrolleghem PA, De Pauw N (2004) Constructed wetlands in Flanders: a performance analysis. Ecol Eng 23:151–163

Saeed T, Sun G (2012) A review on nitrogen and organics removal mechanisms in subsurface flow constructed wetlands: dependency on environmental parameters, operating conditions and supporting media. J Environ Manag 112:429–448

Saeed T, Sun G (2013) A lab-scale study of constructed wetlands with sugarcane bagasse and sand media for the treatment of textile wastewater. Bioresour Technol 128:438–447

Saeed T, Sun G (2017) A comprehensive review on nutrients and organics removal from different wastewaters employing subsurface flow constructed wetlands. Crit Rev Environ Sci Technol 47(4):203–288

Saeed T, Afrin R, Al Muyeed A, Sun G (2012) Treatment of tannery wastewater in a pilot-scale hybrid constructed wetland system in Bangladesh. Chemosphere 88(9):1065–1073

Saxena G, Purchase D, Mulla SI, Saratale GD, Bharagava RN (2019) Phytoremediation of heavy metal-contaminated sites: eco-environmental concerns, field studies, sustainability issues and future prospects. Rev Environ Contam Toxicol 249:71–131

Seidel K (1961) ZurProblematik der Keim- und Pflanzengewasser. Verh Internat. Verein. Limnology 14:1035–1039

Senzia MA, Mashauri DA, Mayo AW (2003) Suitability of constructed wetlands and waste stabilization ponds in wastewater treatment: nitrogen transformation and removal. Phys Chem Earth 28:1117–1124

Serrano L, De la Varga D, Ruiz I, Soto M (2011) Winery wastewater treatment in a hybrid constructed wetland. Ecol Eng 37(5):744–753

Sharma PK, Minakshi D, Rani A, Malaviya P (2018) Treatment efficiency of vertical flow constructed wetland systems operated under different recirculation rates. Ecol Eng 120:474–480

Shrestha RR, Haberl R, Laber J, Manandhar R, Mader J (2001) Application of constructed wetlands for wastewater treatment in Nepal. Water Sci Technol 44(11–12):381–386

Stefanakis AI (2018) Introduction to constructed wetland technology. In: Stefanakis AI (ed) Constructed wetlands for industrial wastewater treatment. Wiley, Hoboken, NJ, pp 1–21

Stefanakis AI, Tsihrintzis VA (2009) Effect of outlet water level raising and effluent recirculation on removal efficiency of pilot-scale, horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetlands. Desalination 248(3):961–976

Stefanakis AA, Tsihrintzis SC, Vassilios A (2014) Vertical flow constructed wetlands. Elsevier Inc, pp 1–16

Tamilarasan K, Arulazhagan P, Sakthivel S, Jamal TM, Banu JR (2018) Deriving electricity from dye processing wastewater using single chamber microbial fuel cell with carbon brush anode and platinum nano coated air cathode. 3 Biotech 8(10):437

Tanner CC (2001) Growth and nutrient dynamics of soft-stem bulrush in constructed wetlands treating nutrient-rich wastewater. Wetl Ecol Manag 9:49–73

Tao M, He F, Xu D, Li M, Wu ZB (2010) How artificial aeration improved the sewage treatment of an integrated vertical-flow constructed wetland. Pol J Environ Stud 19(1):181–189

Tee HC, Lim PE, Seng CE, Nawi MAM (2012) Newly developed baffled subsurface-flow constructed wetland for the enhancement of nitrogen removal. Bioresour Technol 104:235–242

Trang NTD, Konnerup D, Schierup HH, Chiem NH, Tuan LA, Brix H (2010) Kinetics of pollutant removal from domestic wastewater in a tropical horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetland system: effects of hydraulic loading rate. Ecol Eng 36:527–535

Van Oirschot D (2015) RietLand vertical flow wetlands: 16 years of experience in the Netherlands and Belgium. In: Proceedings 12th IWA international conference on wetland systems for water pollution control

Varga DL, Díaz MA, Ruiz I, Soto M (2013) Avoiding clogging in constructed wetlands by using anaerobic digesters as pre-treatment. Ecol Eng 52:262–269

Vymazal J (2005) Horizontal sub-surface flow and hybrid constructed wetlands systems for wastewater treatment. Ecol Eng 25:478–490

Vymazal J (2011a) Constructed wetlands for wastewater treatment: five decades of experience. Environ Sci Technol 45(1):61–69

Vymazal J (2011b) Plants used in constructed wetlands with horizontal subsurface flow: a review. Hydrobiologia 674(1):133–156

Vymazal J (2014) Constructed wetlands for treatment of industrial wastewaters: a review. Ecol Eng 73:724–751

Vymazal J (2018) Does clogging affect long-term removal of organics and suspended solids in gravel-based horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetlands? Chem Eng J 331:663–674

Vymazal J, Kröpfelová L (2008) Wastewater treatment in constructed wetlands with horizontal sub-surface flow. Springer, Dordrecht

Wallace SD, Knight RL (2006) Small scale constructed wetland treatment systems. Feasibility, design criteria, and O&M requirements. Water Environment Research Foundation, Alexandria

Wang L, Peng J, Wang BL, Yang L (2006) Design and operation of an ecosystem for municipal wastewater treatment and utilization. Water Sci Technol 54(11–12):429–436

Wang M, Zhang DQ, Dong JW, Tan SK (2017) Constructed wetlands for wastewater treatment in cold climate-a review. J Environ Sci 57:293–311

Weerakoon GMPR, Jinadasa KBSN, Herath GBB, Mowjood MIM, Van Bruggen JJA (2013) Impact of the hydraulic loading rate on pollutants removal in tropical horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetlands. Ecol Eng 61:154–160

Worku A, Tefera N, Kloos H, Benor S (2018) Constructed wetlands for phytoremediation of industrial wastewater in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia. Nanotechnol Environ Eng 3(1):9

Wu ZB (2008) Integrated vertical-flow constructed wetland. Science Press, Beijing

Wu S, Kuschk P, Brix H, Vymazal J, Dong R (2014) Development of constructed wetlands in performance intensifications for wastewater treatment: a nitrogen and organic matter targeted review. Water Res 57:40–55

Wu S, Wallace S, Brix H, Kuschk P, Kirui WK, Masi F, Dong R (2015) Treatment of industrial effluents in constructed wetlands: challenges, operational strategies and overall performance. Environ Pollut 201:107–120

Wu Y, Han R, Yang X, Zhang Y, Zhang R (2017) Long-term performance of an integrated constructed wetland for advanced treatment of mixed wastewater. Ecol Eng 99:91–98

Yadav AK, Dash P, Mohanty A, Abbassi R, Mishra BK (2012) Performance assessment of innovative constructed wetland-microbial fuel cell for electricity production and dye removal. Ecol Eng 47:126–131

Yadav A, Mishra S, Kaithwas G, Raj A, Bharagava RN (2016a) Organic pollutants and pathogenic bacteria in tannery wastewater and their removal strategies. In: Singh JS, Singh DP (eds) Microbes and environmental management. Studium Press (India) Pvt. Ltd, New Delhi, pp 104–130

Yadav A, Raj A, Bharagava RN (2016b) Detection and characterization of a multidrug and multimetal resistant Enterobacterium *Pantoea sp.* from tannery wastewater after secondary treatment process. Int J Plant Environ 1(2):37–41

Yadav A, Chowdhary P, Kaithwas G, Bharagava RN (2017) Toxic metals in the environment, their threats on ecosystem and bioremediation approaches. In: Das S, Singh HR (eds) Handbook of metal-microbe interaction and bioremediation. CRC Press, Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton, pp 128–141

Yadav AK, Srivastava P, Kumar N, Abbassi R, Mishra BK (2018) Constructed wetland-microbial fuel cell: an emerging integrated technology for potential industrial wastewater treatment and bioelectricity generation. In: Stefanakis AI (ed) Constructed wetlands for industrial wastewater treatment. Wiley, Hoboken, NJ, pp 493–510

Yadav A, Raj A, Purchase D, Ferreira LFR, Saratale GD, Bharagava RN (2019) Phytotoxicity, cytotoxicity and genotoxicity evaluation of organic and inorganic pollutants rich tannery wastewater from a Common Effluent Treatment Plant (CETP) in Unnao district, India using *Vigna radiata* and *Allium cepa*. Chemosphere 224:324–332

Yang ZF, Zheng SK, Chen JJ, Sun M (2008) Purification of nitrate-rich agricultural runoff by a hydroponic system. Bioresour Technol 99:8049–8053

Zhang DQ, Tan SK, Gersberg RM, Zhu JF, Sadreddini S, Li YF (2012) Nutrient removal in tropical subsurface flow constructed wetlands under batch and continuous flow conditions. J Environ Manag 96:1–6

Zhang DQ, Gersberg RM, Ng WJ, Tan SK (2014) Removal of pharmaceuticals and personal care products in aquatic plant-based systems: a review. Environ Pollut 184:620–639

Zhang J, Sun H, Wang W, Hu Z, Yin X, Ngo HH, Guo W, Fan J (2017) Enhancement of surface flow constructed wetlands performance at low temperature through seasonal plant collocation. Bioresour Technol 224:222–228

Zheng Y, Wang CX, Ge Y, Dzakpasu M, Zhao Y, Xiong J (2015) Effects of annual harvesting on plants growth and nutrients removal in surface-flow constructed wetlands in north western China. Ecol Eng 83:268–275

Chapter 3
Application of Nanoparticles in Environmental Cleanup: Production, Potential Risks and Solutions

Lienda Handojo, Daniel Pramudita, Dave Mangindaan, and Antonius Indarto

Abstract Wastes are unavoidable by-products of human production and consumption activities and have been a primary cause of environmental issues. The release of wastes such as pesticides, textile dyes, and heavy metals that end up polluting environment have endangered not only human health but also biodiversity in general. According to recent developments, the use of nanotechnology for environmental cleanup is evidently promising. Enhanced properties of nanoparticles attributed to their larger surface area enable them to perform in a number of remediation methods such as absorption, adsorption, filtration, chemical reaction, and photocatalysis. This chapter focuses on the applications of four groups of nanomaterials: zero-valent iron nanoparticles, carbon nanotubes, zeolites, and metal oxide nanoparticles for environmental remediation. As a growing research priority, the development of nanotechnology for environmental cleanup has also raised significant concerns on nanoparticle production routes that can be technically challenging. Various fabrication methods ranging from conventional pathways such as physical, chemical, and electrochemical to novel production technique involving biosynthesis are discussed in this review. Despite the useful application, exposures to nanomaterials in the environment also bring potential hazards to plants, animals, and humans. This chapter discusses possible solutions for the aforementioned issue and provides a summary of recent developments of nanoparticle utilization for textile dye and toxic pollutant removals.

Keywords Textile dye · Environmental issues · Nanomaterials · Nanotechnology · Environmental remediation

---

L. Handojo · D. Pramudita · A. Indarto (✉)
Department of Chemical Engineering, Institut Teknologi Bandung, Bandung, Indonesia
e-mail: antonius.indarto@che.itb.ac.id

D. Mangindaan
Department of Food Technology, Bina Nusantara University, West Jakarta, Indonesia

R. N. Bharagava (ed.), *Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment*, Microorganisms for Sustainability 18,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-1390-9_3

3.1 Introduction

Wastes, in a broad definition, can be considered as the main cause of environmental problem. They come from human activities of production and consumption, from home scale to industrial scale. Grey water from these production and consumption activities, as well as black water coming directly from humans, has been the main pollutants of water environment. Common contaminants found in grey water are heavy metals, agrochemicals, oil spills, industrial effluents, toxic gases, and organic compounds. The effects of toxins released from or contained in the wastewater are more severe as their concentration is higher, to the extent that the ecological function of the environment can be seriously damaged. Waste handling and treatment, physically, chemically, or biologically, must thus be carried out in a way that ensures that all toxins could be degraded until the contents are below the maximum allowed. Few examples of concerning contaminants are heavy metals, agrochemicals, oil spills, industrial effluents (Handy et al. 2014), toxic gases (Hyung et al. 2005; Indarto et al. 2008; Indarto 2012), and organic compounds (Indarto et al. 2008).

Pesticides and other agrochemicals, which have been used excessively since the green revolution era, are regarded as one of the main causes of ecosystem problems such as reduced population of insect pollinators (Wells 2007), destroyed bird habitats (Palmer et al. 2007), more threats to endangered species (Miller 2004), and declining biodiversity in general. Chemical pesticides such as chlordane, parathion, malathion, atrazine, and dichlorodiphenyldichloroethylene (DDE) are known for their harmful nature to humans and environment (Rawtani et al. 2018). The fat-soluble nature of these chemicals made them stay longer inside the body of organisms, and this causes an accumulation over the levels in food chain. The problems are made worse because of farmers' tendency to use higher dose than actually required. In humans, the effects of pesticides are seen in neural health problems, cancer, hormonal problems, and even death (US EPA 2014). The agricultural labours are the most vulnerable, with more than a million case of pesticide poisoning found each year (Miller 2004).

One class of the dangerous substances that is usually given special attention is heavy metals. The impacts they potentially cause are great even at low concentration, mostly because they cannot be easily degraded. Cadmium, for example, is a mass produced waste coming from battery, fertilizer, and alloy industries, and it has raised concern over its higher-than-allowed concentration found in drinking water (Mahmoud et al. 2011). Conventional heavy metal removal methods such as precipitation, ultrafiltration, reverse osmosis, and ion exchange are still expensive and are considerably not effective enough when the metal concentration is low (Mahmoud et al. 2011).

Various applications of nanotechnology in energy and environmental sectors are quite promising (Yunus et al. 2012; Christian et al. 2013). Application of nanotechnology for environmental remediation methods such as absorption, adsorption, filtration, chemical reactions, and photocatalysis is promising due to the enhanced properties and performances of nanomaterials. It has the advantages of lower costs and less risk, especially for in situ remediation (Guerra et al. 2018). Common approaches of environmental remediation using nanotechnology are presented in Fig. 3.1. The application can be classified into five big categories: sorbents, filtration, chemical reactions, photocatalysis, and adsorption.

In agricultural sector, applications of nanotechnology, especially the emergence of nano-pesticides and nano-fertilizers, have gained considerable attention. Nanotechnology plays a significant role in the effective management of phytopathogens, nutrient utilization, and controlled release of agrochemicals (Kim et al. 2018). Catalysts are often used in dealing with environmental problem, raising the term environmental catalysis. The application of catalysts can be found in waste treatment, soil and water remediation, emission reduction, and environmentally friendly chemical synthesis. Use of nano-catalysts allows more efficient use of energy and material and leads to less chemical wastes and more effective remediation. In 2009, it was reported that more than 44 sites worldwide had been remediated with the use of nanotechnology (Karn et al. 2009), with two thirds of the sites treated by using nZVI. The number has been rapidly increasing since then. The most common contaminants are Cr(VI), nitrate, and chlorinated compounds such as PCE, TCE, or PCBs.

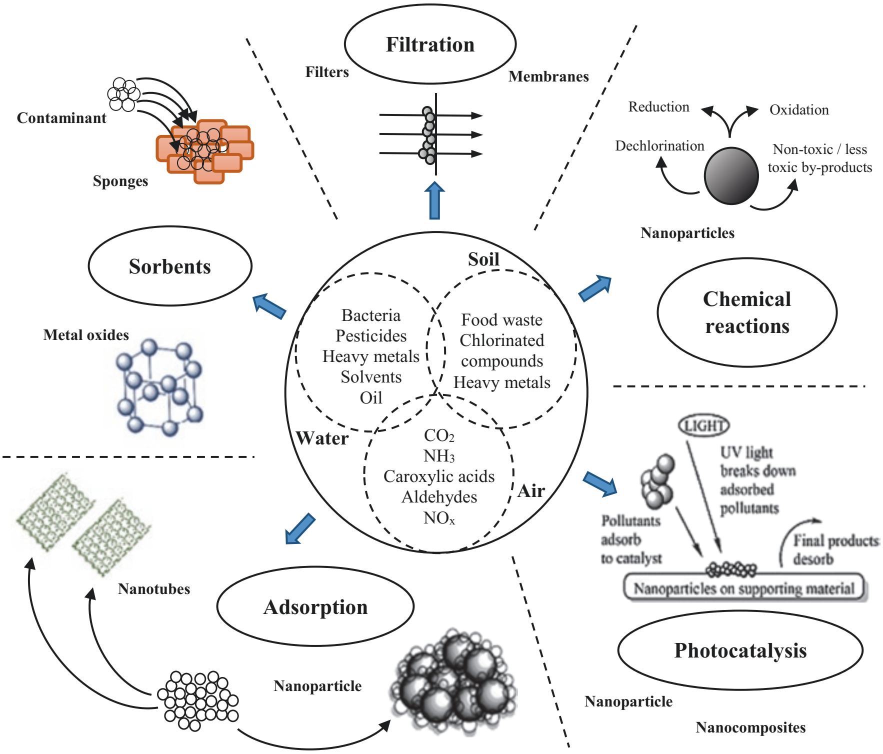


Fig. 3.1 Environmental remediation approaches (Guerra et al. 2018)

Use of nanomaterials for remediation of contaminated soil and groundwater is more quick and cost-effective. Nanomaterials have better adsorption ability due to the high surface-to-volume ratio, as well as better mobility due to the small size. The later characteristic made nanomaterials very suitable for in situ groundwater treatment, because no pumping out of groundwater and no transportation of soil other places are required (Otto et al. 2008).

Researches and utilizations of nanotechnology have been growing rapidly thanks to its potential uses as well as commercialization. The range of applications covers various products, from sophisticated technology product like nano-chips found in computers and other electronic devices to simpler products like paints and lubricants (Ashby et al. 2009).

3.2 A Brief Description of Nanoparticles

The term nanomaterial commonly refers to materials with any external dimension or structure ranging from 1 to 100 nm (ISO TS 8004-1). Further classification of nanomaterial is more loosely defined and has been reviewed in Abdillah et al. (2018). It can be based on physical properties such as the number of dimensions being at the defined nanoscale or the form of the final product. Another classification can be based on the forming material: organic, inorganic, or biological (Kumar and Kumbhat 2016).

Nanomaterials are known for having enhanced or specialized properties that are not found when the materials are engineered at bigger size. Larger surface area and quantum effect have been addressed as the main reasons for this. The large surface area creates a larger number ratio of atoms at the surface to that inside. Interacting directly with the surrounding, the surface atoms have different properties and behaviours compared to the inner ones. The large surface-to-inner atom ratio results in overall properties of the particles that are totally different from that found in macro scale particles. Surface atoms are also less stable than the bulk atoms below them, and as a result, nanomaterials have a more reactive surface (Tantra 2016).

Nanomaterials can be functionalised or engineered to have certain surface functional groups, so that it can target specific substances (pollutants), which make them really efficient for remediation. Its remediating performance can obviously be enhanced by tuning the physical properties. Modifications of the surface groups, structures, sizes, and composition can thus be made to get better or even totally new properties, such as mechanical properties, barrier-permeability, repellent or bonding properties, electromagnetic properties, thermal properties, optical properties, surface reactivity, deliverability, and absorption ability. These peculiar properties are found at certain size range and are non-scalable.

Nanomaterials can manufactured by top-down approach or bottom-up approach. In top-down approach, materials that exist at larger scale are simply made smaller into nanoscale by means of mechanical or chemical processing. Manufacture of the materials at the nanoscale but with the same process used at larger scales also falls into this category. This approach is thus suitable when the bulk properties of the material need to be enhanced but not altered. It is usually used in the production of transistors and in photolithography. The realization of this simple concept is actually technically difficult, costly, and limited by the scale at which material properties do not alter drastically. Bottom-up approach, on the other hand, refers to the process in which the materials are engineered from atomic or molecular level, by means of chemical reaction-based assembly or self-assembly (Kumar and Kumbhat 2016). The materials can be built with even less size limitation and almost without defects. Molecular level assembly also opens the possibility of creating various combinations of biological and inorganic structures, which are not found at larger scales.

3.3 Applications of Nanotechnology for Remediation and the Mechanisms

How nanoparticles enter and are released into the environment is illustrated in Fig. 3.2. The term ‘entry’ refers to the process in which nanoparticles are introduced from outside into the environment, while the term ‘release’ refers to the process of nanoparticle introduction (release) from materials that are already existing in the environment. Nanoparticles can enter the environment from point sources such as production facilities, landfills, and wastewater treatment facilities, as well as from non-point sources, e.g. use of materials containing nanoparticles. Concentration of nanoparticles in the environment can increase when nanoparticle aggregates are formed (Nowack and Bucheli 2007).

Exposure on human can come directly through air, soil, and water or indirectly through animals and plants. One of the health problems associated with nanoparticle entry into human body is decreasing lung efficiency, which leads to asthma and other chronic lung diseases. Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) and carbon-based nanomaterials could potentially cause pneumonia, with stronger response at old ages (Reijnders 2006). There are two variables used to indicate the level of nanomaterial pollution: indicative no-effect concentrations (INECs) and indicative human no-effect levels (INELs). INECs of nanoscale materials, for example, give a threshold limit in the range of ng/L for nano-Ag and nano-ZnO and in the range of μg/L for nano-TiO_2 (Aschberger et al. 2011).

As mentioned earlier, water environment is commonly regarded as the most in need of remediation. There are five mechanisms in water treatment: straining, sedimentation, interception, adhesion, and flocculation (Metcalf and Eddy 2003). In straining, sedimentation, and interception, the media filters pollutants by blocking their flow pathways. The difference compared to adhesion is that the pollutants are simply filtered but not attached onto the media. If the pollutants are small enough, mechanical disturbances can make them flow through the filter. Flocculation, on the other hand, refers to the mechanism in which small pollutants unite into big flocs,

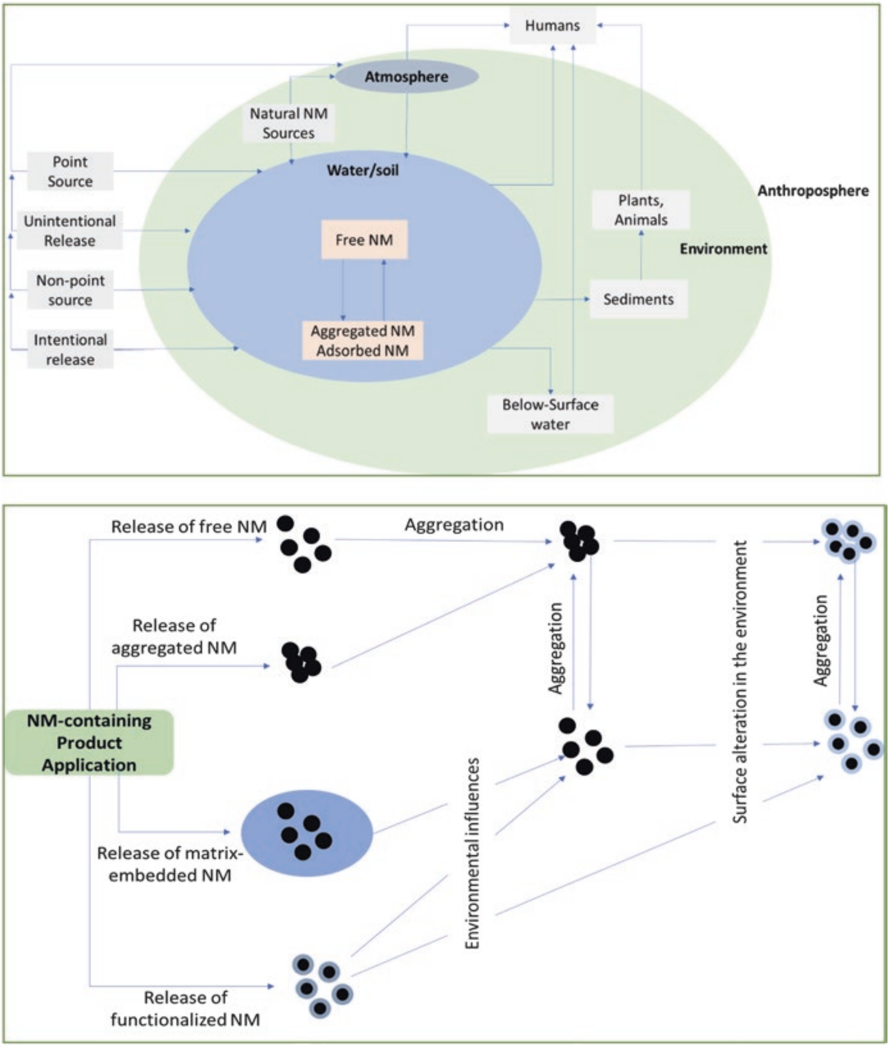


Fig. 3.2 Entry (above) and release (bottom) pathways of nanoparticles into the environment (Nowack and Bucheli 2007)

before attaching to the filter media through another mechanism. Some applications of nanomaterials for water purification are presented in Table 3.1.

Applications of nanoparticles for degradation or removal of textile dyes are tabulated in Table 3.2. The reported data were taken from recent development in the last 2 years (2017–2018) in order to highlight the most advanced nanoparticles for aforementioned particular applications. As shown in the table, the major process for the utilization of nanoparticles for degradation or removal of textile dyes is via photocatalytic process. Generally the degradation of dyes using this method could reach

Table 3.1 Applications of nanomaterials for water purification (reviewed by Annan et al. 2018)

Material	Contaminants	Removal efficiency	References
Adsorption and a combination of adsorption and photocatalysis			
TiO_2	As(III), As(IV) Monomethylarsonic and dimethylarsonic Cd^{2+}	100% 85–95% 142.24 μmol/g	Xu et al. (2007) Gao et al. (2004)
TiO_2/activated carbon	Bisphenol-A	204 mg/g	Lim et al. (2011)
TiO_2/zeolite	Bisphenol-A and intermediate compounds	–	Fukahori et al. (2003)
TiO_2/chitosan	Rhodamine B	94.3%	Zhang et al. (2011)
TiO_2/FeO_3	As(III)	79–80%	Zhou et al. (2008)
	As(IV)	95–99%	
Titanate nanofibers	Sr^{2+}	0.57–0.68 mmol/g	Yang et al. (2008)
	Ba^{2+}	0.95–1.17 mmol/g	
	Pb^{2+}	1.18–1.35 mmol/g	
Fe_3O_4	Cr(IV) As(V)	84.6–99.8%	Hu et al. (2004)
Fe_3O_4/humid acid	Ag(II), Pb(II)	>99%	Liu et al. (2008a, b)
	Cu(II), Cd(II)	>95%	
Fe_2O_3	Cr(IV)	3.86–4.47 mg/g	Zhong et al. (2006)
	As(V)	4.75–5.31 mg/g	
Carbon nanotubes	Atrazine and simazine	>80%	Zhou et al. (2006) Ma et al. (2010) Tofighy and Mohammadi (2011) Kandah and Meunier (2007)
	Anthracene and naphthalene	~100%	
	Cu^{2+}	50.37 mg/g	
	Cd^{2+}	75.84 mg/g	
	Pb^{2+}	101.05 mg/g	
	Zn^{2+}	58 mg/g	
	Co^{2+}	69.63 mg/g	
	Ni^{2+}	12.3–37 mg/g	
Carbon nanotubes—Fe_3O_4 magnetic nanoparticles	Cr(III)	~90%	Gupta et al. (2011); Peng et al. (2005a, b)
	Pb(II)	0.51 mmol/g	
	Cu(II)	0.71 mmol/g	
Carbon nanotubes—ceria nanoparticles	As(V)	78.8–81.9 mg/g	Peng et al. (2005a, b)
Antimicrobial agents			
TiO_2	*E. coli*	7.6% survival ratio	Liu et al. (2008a, b)
TiO_2 shell and nickel ferrite magnetic core	*E. coli*	Decrease in *E. coli* concentration to $<10^6$ CFU/mL	Rawat et al. (2007)
TiO_2/CuO composite	*E. coli* and bacteriophage T4	>9 log reduction	Ditta et al. (2008)

(continued)

Table 3.1 (continued)

Material	Contaminants	Removal efficiency	References
Ag nanoparticles	*B. subtilis*	Susceptibility value of 0.0622 mL/μg	Yoon et al. (2007) Nanda and Saravanan (2009)
		Survival diameter:	
	S. pyogenes	16 mm	
	S. typhi	11 mm	
	K. pneumoniae	0.8 mm	
	V. cholerae	Nil	
	Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus epidermidis*	18 mm	
	Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*	17.5 mm	
ZnO	*L. monocytogenes* *Streptococcus mutans*	1.4 log CFU/mL Minimum bacterial concentration of 500 μg/mL	Jin et al. (2009); Hernández-Sierra et al. (2008)
Photocatalysis			
TiO_2	*Acanthamoeba polyphaga* *Candida albicans* *E. coli* *B. subtilis*	>4 log unit reduction 1.7 log unit reduction	Lonnen et al. (2005)
$g\text{-}C_3N_4$	*E. coli*	2×10^7 CFU/mL	Zhao et al. (2014)
TiO_2–ZnO	*E. coli*	2.2×10^{14} CFU/mL bacterial survival	Karunakaran et al. (2011a)
TiO_2–Cd	*E. coli*	Up to 0 CFU/mL survival	Karunakaran et al. (2011b)
Au–ZnO	Methylene blue	Up to 71% degradation	Pawinrat et al. (2009)
Ag_3PO_4	Rhodamine blue	Up to 100% degradation	Ge et al. (2012)
Ag_2CO_3	Rhodamine blue	Up to 100% degradation	Dai et al. (2012)
TiO_2	Reactive yellow 17	94% degradation	Neppolian et al. (2002)
	Reactive red 2	95% degradation	
	Reactive blue 4	88% degradation	
TiO_2	Cr(VI)	79% removal	Chen and Ray (2001) Yoon et al. (2009) Guan et al. (2012)
	Pb(II)	27.2% removal	
	Fe(III)	100% removal	
	Cr(VI)	100% removal	
	As(III)	500 μm As(V) formed from As(III)	
Carbon nanotubed/ZnO nanocomposite	Cyanide	Up to 90% degradation	Saleh et al. (2010)

Table 3.2 Recent development (2017–2018) of nanoparticles for degradation or removal of textile dyes

S. no.	Process	Note 1	Note 2	Nanoparticle type	Core material	Surrounding material(s)	Dyes	% removal	Removal time (min)	Cycles (90%)	References
1	Photocatalytic degradation	Simulated sunlight	300–800 nm, 1500 W Xe lamp	Powder	MnO_2		Rhodamine B	92	40–60		Gagrani et al. (2018)
2	Photocatalytic degradation	Sunlight	NaBH4 (0.01 M)	Composite	NiO	Polyaniline-reduced graphene oxide	Methylene blue	100	11		Ahuja et al. (2018)
3	Photocatalytic degradation	Sunlight		Composite	Au/ZnO/reduced graphene oxide		Methylene blue	>95	30		Juneja et al. (2018)
4	Photocatalytic degradation	Sunlight		Composite	Poly(vinylidene diflouride)-*co*-trifluoroethylene membrane	TiO_2 (P25)	Tartrazine	80	600		Aoudjit et al. (2018)
5	Photocatalytic degradation	Sunlight		Decorated	Graphene nanosheets	Biphasic TiO_2	Methylene blue Congo red	93–98 93–98	60 60		Alamelu et al. (2018)
6	Photocatalytic degradation	Sunlight	11 am–2 pm	Powder	Ni-doped ZnS		Methylene blue	87	180		Jothibas et al. (2018)
7	Photocatalytic degradation	Sunlight		Powder	Titania nanotubes		Rhodamine B Methyl orange	91 87	180 180		Ali et al. (2018)
8	Photocatalytic degradation	UV light	365 nm, 300 W Hg lamp	Decorated	Montmorillonite	Cube-like AgCl	Acid Red 18	>95	3–10	3	Zhang et al. (2018)
9	Photocatalytic degradation	UV light		Powder	Bismuth-doped zinc aluminate		Methylene blue	>90	140		Kirankumar and Sumathi (2017)

(continued)

Table 3.2 (continued)

S. no.	Process	Note 1	Note 2	Nanoparticle type	Core material	Surrounding material(s)	Dyes	% removal	Removal time (min)	Cycles (90%)	References
10	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible and UV light	For RhB: visible, 500 W Xe lamp. For phenol: UV, 500 W Hg lamp	Composite	CdS/carbon quantum dots/ BiOCl		Rhodamine B	100	50		Pan et al. (2018)
11	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible light	>400 nm, 300 W xenon lamp	Bimetallic	ZnS-Ag_2S		Crystal violet Congo red	80 90	50 50		Abbasi et al. (2018)
12	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible light	400–700 nm, 250 W lamp	Composite	WO_3-graphene		Methylene blue	95	70		Ismail et al. (2018)
13	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible light	400–800 nm, 400 W halogen lamp	Composite	Zn/Ti-layered double hydroxide	Ag-layered double hydroxide	Rhodamine B	>90	60		Zhu et al. (2018)
14	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible light	300 W Xe lamp	Core–shell	ZnO ball-in-ball	ZnO ball-in-ball	Methyl orange	100	60		Wang et al. (2017b)
15	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible light	>400 nm, 300 W xenon lamp	Decorated	Flower-like $BiMoO_6$	CeO_2	Rhodamine B Methyl orange	100 100	90 120	6	Li et al. (2018)
16	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible light	300 W halogen lamp	Decorated	Flower-like NiAl-layered double hydroxide microspheres	Black Cu-doped TiO_2 nanoparticles	Methyl orange	>95	60		Jo et al. (2018)
17	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible light	40 W Hg lamp	Decorated	BiOCl	Titania nanotube	Methyl orange	90	480		Buchholcz et al. (2017)

18	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible light	400–800 nm, 150 W tungsten halogen lamp	Powder	Ag-Zr co-doped TiO_2 nanoparticles		Reactive red 194	>95	420		Naraginti et al. (2018)
19	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible light	400 W metal halide lamp	Powder	WO_3 nanorods		Rhodamine B	>90	300	3	Adhikari et al. (2018)
20	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible light	Cool daylight 15 W lamp	Powder	CdS		Congo red Reactive red 141	96 100	80 240		Senasu et al. (2018)
21	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible light, UV, near-infrared	UV: 365 nm, 5 W Visible: 400–800 nm, 300 W Xe lamp NIR: 800–1100 nm, 300 W Xe lamp	Powder	Gd-Sn co-doped $BiFeO_3$ nanoparticles		Congo red Crystal violet Methyl violet	80–90 55–100 23–60	100–200 100–200 100–200		Irfan et al. (2017)
22	Catalytic degradation	$NaBH_4$		Core–shell	Pd or Pt	Ag	Congo red	90	6–7 (Pd@Ag), 13 (Pt@Ag)		Salem et al. (2018)
23	Catalytic degradation	$NaBH_4$		Powder	Montmorillonite	Ag	Methylene blue	>98	7–9	3	Wang et al. (2017a)
24	Catalytic degradation	$NaBH_4$		Powder	Co	With CTAB or PVA	Congo red	>95	6		Bashir et al. (2017)

(continued)

Table 3.2 (continued)

S. no.	Process	Note 1	Note 2	Nanoparticle type	Core material	Surrounding material(s)	Dyes	% removal	Removal time (min)	Cycles (90%)	References
25	Catalytic degradation	$NaBH_4$ 0.001 M		Composite	Reduced graphene oxide	Bimetallic Au-Cu alloy	Congo red Methyl orange Erichrome black T	>95 >95 >95	2 3 5		Rout et al. (2017)
26	Catalytic degradation	$NaBH_4$ 0.01 M		Decorated	TiO_2	Ag, Cu, and Ag-Cu alloy nanoparticles	Rhodamine B Methyl orange	100 100	<1 <1		Saran et al. (2018)
27	Catalytic degradation	$NaBH_4$ 0.2 M		Decorated	Urchin-like TiO_2 nanosphere	Au	Methylene blue, Auramine O, Basic blue 17 Basic red 5	>95 >95	90 30		Ren et al. (2017)
28	Catalytic degradation	Peroxydisulphate		Decorated	N-doped carbon nanofibers	Ni	Orange II	100	40–80	5	Yao et al. (2018)
29	Catalytic degradation	Peroxymonosulphate and $NaBH_4$	For RhB: PMS. For 4-NP: $NaBH_4$	Composite	Carbonized magnetic cobalt-dipicolinic acid coordination polymer		Rhodamine B	>90	30	5	Wu et al. (2018)
30	Adsorption (enzymatic)	Immobilized enzyme (reusable), $q_{max} = 150$ mg/g		Decorated	Fe_3O_4@SiO_2@APS, Fe_3O_4@SiO_2@MPS	Laccase	Methyl red	42–44	900	2	Lin et al. (2017)
31	Adsorption	For BPB, $q_{max} = 41.2$ mg/g. For CV, $q_{max} = 34.5$ mg/g		Core–shell	SiO_2	Poly β-cyclodextrin	Bromophenol blue Crystal violet	50 90	80 80		Chen et al. (2018)

32	Adsorption	$q_{\max} = 180$ mg/g		Composite	Rice-like TiO_2/graphene hydrogel		Methylene blue	>90	40		Liu et al. (2017)
33	Adsorption	$q_{\max} = 302.6$ mg/g		Powder	SiO_2	Dopamine@poly-((3-acrylamido propyl) trimethylam monium chloride)	Congo red	27–52	70–80		Huang et al. (2017)
34	Ultrafiltration	Transmembrane pressure 5 bar, flux 100 L/mh^2		Composite	Clay-alumina ceramic membrane	Titania nanoparticles (lumen side)	Alizarin red	100	100		Oun et al. (2017)
35	Organic solvent nanofiltration	Permeance 0.39 L/m^{2}h bar (RB), 3.07–3.62 L/m^{2}h bar (SB35)		Composite	P84 polyimide/dopamine/POSS	POSS	Rose Bengal	99			Xu et al. (2017)

high removal performance from 90 to 100%, under reasonable duration (mostly below 300 min). The interesting properties of the photocatalytic degradation of textile dyes in 2017–2018 are the dominance on the quest of honing the potential of visible light, especially sunlight. The developed nanomaterials or composites could destruct several problematic dyes such as rhodamine B and crystal violet and also the popular model dyes such as methylene blue, Congo red, and methyl orange.

Besides the photocatalytic process, there is also catalytic degradation process, which is mainly accompanied with $NaBH_4$ as a strong reducing agent that assists nanoparticles to destruct the dyes. Less popular oxidizing agents that also synergistically break down the harmful dyes via catalytic degradation process are peroxydisulphate and peroxomonosulphate. Different approaches could also be taken to treat the textile dyes in water. The conventional adsorption processes treat the wastewater having textile dyes by adsorbing them into the particles, with uptake capacity ranging from 30 to 300 mg dyes/g nanoparticles. An emerging technology of membrane separation follows a different strategy that is rejecting the dyes in the aquatic phase in order to obtain clean water, with promising rejection of nearly 100%.

From the perspective of the nanomaterials, there are several forms of nanoparticles for the degradation or removal of textile dyes, i.e.

(a) Powder (single core, with or without doping)
(b) Bimetallic (a core composed of two metals)
(c) Decorated (core nanoparticles covered with smaller particles)
(d) Core–shell (core nanoparticles completely covered with other particles)
(e) Composite (core nanoparticles were embedded onto a surface larger than the nanoparticles)

The single cores (powder nanoparticles) in Table 3.2 mostly consist of period 4, 5, and 6 transition metals, e.g. Co, Ni, Pd, Pt, and W, beside the commonly used Ti, Au, Ag, and Cu. While the single-core type is quite common due to the simple fabrication, the recent developments in the last 2 years also open new avenues for the composite type and the decorated type. They enable the use of polymeric and carbonic materials to join force to perform environmental remediation. The employment of these nanoparticles was partially assessed from the point of view of how many cycles that the nanoparticles could withstand and maintain 90% of the degradation or removal performance, which are quite limited in number of reports, ranging from 2 to 6 cycles only. This constraint could be a motivation for improvement in the near future.

Applications of nanoparticles for removing or degrading aromatic pollutants, such as chlorophenol, nitrophenol, bisphenol A, polyaromatic hydrocarbons, and also several antibiotics are tabulated in Table 3.3. Similar to the previous discussion, the main process for degradation utilizing nanoparticles is photocatalytic degradation using visible light, followed by catalytic degradation together with $NaBH_4$, peroxomonosulphate, or peroxidisulphate. The performance of the nanoparticles in degrading the aromatic pollutants are 80–100%, as fast as <10 min, up to 150 min (although for some cases may reach >1000 min). Preferred metal for this application is Ti and also group 1B of transition metals (Ag, Au, and Cu).

Table 3.3 Recent development (2017–2018) for nanoparticles for degradation or removal of organic pollutants

No.	Process	Note 1	Note 2	Nanoparticle type	Core material	Surrounding material(s)	Other pollutants	% removal	Removal time (min)	Cycles (90%)	References
1	Photocatalytic degradation	Simulated sunlight	35 W Xe lamp	Composite	Ag-AgBr/reduced TiO_2 nanotube arrays		4-chlorophenol	100	120		Cheng et al. (2018)
2	Photocatalytic degradation	Sunlight		Composite	ZnSe-WO_3/gum		Bisphenol A	>95	90	6	Kumar et al. (2017)
3	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible and UV light	For RhB: visible, 500 W Xe lamp. For phenol: UV, 500 W Hg lamp	Sandwich	CdS/carbon quantum dots/ BiOCl		Phenol	100	120		Pan et al. (2018)
4	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible light	>400 nm, 300 W xenon lamp	Bimetallic	ZnS-Ag_2S		Polyaromatic hydrocarbons (naphthalene, phenanthrene, pyrene)	80–90	90		Abbasi et al. (2018)
5	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible light	>400 nm, 300 W xenon lamp	Decorated	Flower-like $BiMoO_6$	CeO_2	Tetracycline	80	120	6	Li et al. (2018)
6	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible light	300 W halogen lamp	Decorated	Flower-like NiAl-layered double hydroxide microspheres	Black Cu-doped TiO_2 nanoparticles	Isoniazid	90	120	5	Jo et al. (2018)
7	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible light	400–800 nm, 150 W tungsten halogen lamp	Powder	Ag-Zr co-doped TiO_2 nanoparticles		Sulphamethox azole	>90	420		Naraginti et al. (2018)

(continued)

Table 3.3 (continued)

No.	Process	Note 1	Note 2	Nanoparticle type	Core material	Surrounding material(s)	Other pollutants	% removal	Removal time (min)	Cycles (90%)	References
8	Photocatalytic degradation	Direct sunlight	2 × 12 h (6 am–6 pm)	Core-shell (ethanolic (70%) extract of *Azadirachta indica* leaves)	ZnHCF (zinc hexacyanoferrate) nanocubes	Fe_2O_3	Chrysene	80	1440		Rachna et al. (2018)
9	Catalytic degradation	$NaBH_4$ 0.01 M		Decorated	TiO_2	Ag, Cu, and Ag-Cu alloy nanoparticles	4-Nitrophenol	100	<1		Saran et al. (2018)
10	Catalytic degradation	$NaBH_4$ 0.001 M		Composite	Reduced graphene oxide	Bimetallic Au-Cu alloy	4-nitrophenol	>95	1–7		Rout et al. (2017)
11	Catalytic degradation	Peroxomono sulphate		Core–shell	Dopamine-coated CoFe	Cr Mn Fe Co Ni Cu Zn	*o*-, *m*-, *p*-Nitrophenols				Goyal et al. (2018)
12	Catalytic degradation	Peroxymono sulphate, and $NaBH_4$	For RhB: PMS. For 4-NP: $NaBH_4$	Composite	Carbonized magnetic cobalt-dipicolinic acid coordination polymer		4-Nitrophenol	>90	30	5	Wu et al. (2018)
13	Adsorption	q_{max} 84.55 mg/g		Decorated	Clay	MgO	Metronidazole	97–100	150		Kalhori et al. (2017)

3.4 Common Groups of Nanomaterials Used for Remediation

Nanoparticles utilized for environmental cleanup can be classified based on their base materials. Four big groups are considered here: metal oxide nanoparticles, carbon nanotubes, zeolites nanomaterials, and nanoscale zero-valent iron (nZVI).

3.4.1 Nano Zero-Valent Irons

Nano zero-valent irons (nZVI or Fe^0) are iron-based nanoparticles with a core of Fe^0 and an outer shell of Fe oxides. Reduction effects are made possible by two electrons that are released when Fe^0 reacts with oxidizing agent and alter its oxidation state into ferrous ions (Fe^{2+}). The process is repetitive and takes place during the remediation. Major chemical reaction pathways of nZVI are illustrated in Fig. 3.3. They are corrosion of ZVI, precipitation of Fe(II) and Fe(III) oxyhydroxides, and transformation of Fe oxides in solid phase (Shi et al. 2015).

nZVI reacts very effectively with contaminants and are very stable and difficult to decompose with energetic or thermal treatment (Indarto et al. 2006a, b). Moreover, nZVI can reduce both organic and inorganic contaminants, making it effective as reducing agents in micro and macro scales. Another advantage is its high mobility, which allows easier and more direct injection into below ground, underneath buildings, contaminated plumes, and shallow and deep aquifers. A study has shown how effective the material is in dealing with the pollutants thanks to its faster movement and ability to move with groundwater, which makes treatment over larger areas possible (Mace et al. 2006). The costs of nZWI and other iron-derived nanomaterials are not expensive, in the range of $50–100 per kg.

The use of the more mobile nano-sized ZVI over its macro-sized counterpart has been shown to eliminate the need for a permeable reactive barrier (PRB), which is

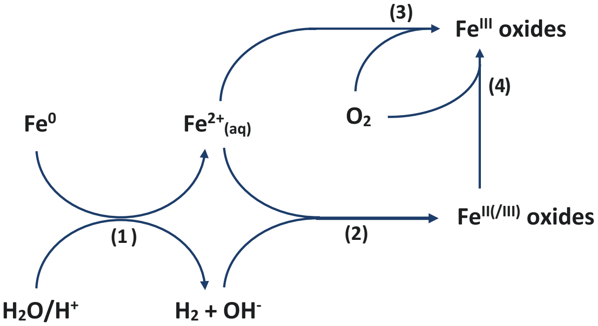


Fig. 3.3 The major chemical reaction pathways of nZVI: (1) corrosion, precipitation of (2) Fe(II) and (3) Fe(III) oxyhydroxides, and (4) transformation of Fe oxides (Shi et al. 2015)

previously a very popular utilization of ZVI for remediation of groundwater and contaminated sides. This old technology has a downside that it can only deal with contaminant that flow through the barrier and does not directly address the contaminating sources (ITRC 2011). The effectiveness is also reduced by sedimentation that occurs often due to its macro-size. Since then the nZVI has become the most commonly used nanomaterial for soil and groundwater remediation (Karn et al. 2009). According to a study by PARS Environmental Inc. (2004), remediation of a single site using pump-and-treat method would cost \$4,160,000 for nZVI and \$2,200,000 for PRB.

Some of the contaminants that can be reduced with nZVI include excessive dissolved oxygen, dyes, brominated methanes, and trihalomethanes. It has been reported effective in removing chlorinated substances such as methanes, ethanes, hydrocarbons, benzenes, and other polychlorinated hydrocarbon pesticides (Zhang 2003), as well as dissolved metals such as Pb^{2+}, Cu^{2+}, Ni^{2+}, and Cr^{6+} (Sun et al. 2006). Others reported their utilization in reducing nitrate (Liou et al. 2006; Sohn et al. 2006), arsenate and arsenite (Jegadeesan et al. 2005; Kanel et al. 2005, 2006), perchlorate, chlorate, and chlorite (Cao et al. 2005), and chromate (Manning et al. 2007). nZVI can be produced from various methods. Physical methods such as grinding, abrasion, and lithography are among the first generation, followed by phase separation, high temperature annealing, and nucleation from homogeneous solutions or gas (Shan et al. 2009).

More recent and frequently used route for nZVI production is chemical reactions. This method has the advantages of being way simpler and capable of producing a homogenous and highly reactive structure (Jamei et al. 2013). An example is by using sodium borohydride ($NaBH_4$) as a reducing agent, according to the following reaction (Wang and Zhang 1997):

$$Fe\left(\mathrm{H_2O}\right)_6^{3+} + 3\mathrm{BH_4^-} + 3\mathrm{H_2O} \rightarrow Fe^0 \downarrow + 3\mathrm{B}\left(OH\right)_3 + 10.5\mathrm{H_2}$$

Other routes are reduction of goethite (a-FeOOH) or hematite (a-Fe_2O_3) with hydrogen at high temperature (Nurmi et al. 2005) and decomposition of iron pentacarbonyl ($Fe(CO)_5$) in organic solvents or argon (Sun et al. 2007).

Alternative methods of nZVI synthesis that are not yet popular but possess some unique advantages are precision milling, carbothermal reduction, enhancement by ultrasound assistance, electrolysis, and biosynthesis (Stefaniuk et al. 2016). Precision milling has the advantages of no needs of any toxic reagents like needed in chemical synthesis, and the applicability on a large scale (Li et al. 2009). Carbothermal reduction of iron compounds requires cheap and easily available materials and is simple. In this method, nanoparticles of iron oxides or hydrous Fe^{2+} salts are reduced to nZVI with the help of gaseous reducing agent and high temperature of above 500 °C (Crane and Scott 2012).

Application of ultrasound made it possible to get a smaller particle size (Tao et al. 1999) and different morphology from spherical, plate, to needle by changing the frequency (Jamei et al. 2014). Electrolysis is very simple, faster, and cheaper compared to chemical reduction methods, although there is tendency of the produced iron atoms to aggregate and form a cluster. Ultrasonic waves and cationic surfactants as a stabilizing agent can be used to overcome this problem (Li et al. 2009). Lastly, biosynthesis route, which is utilization of plant extracts to reduce metal compounds into nanoparticles, is promising because it needs no high pressure or temperature, is environmentally friendly, inexpensive, easy to implement on large scale (Machado et al. 2013, 2014).

3.4.2 Carbon Nanotubes

Carbon nanotubes (CNTs) are carbon-based nanomaterials made of a surface tube and hexagonal arrays of carbon atoms, with specific absorption sites (Agnihotri et al. 2006). Being one of the most researched and produced nanomaterials, CNTs have been effectively used as nanosorbents for soil and groundwater pollutants. Removal of heavy metals like Cr^{3+}, Pb^{2+}, and Zn^{2+}, metalloids like arsenic compounds, volatile organic compounds, and other organic and inorganic pollutants from soil and groundwater with CNTs has been reported (Li et al. 2016). This is attributed to its highly porous and hollow structure, large specific surface area, light mass density, and strong interaction. The main drawback of CNTs is that they are still more expensive than other nanomaterials that are used for remediation.

There are types of CNTs according to their structure: single-walled carbon nanotubes (SWCNTs), multi-walled carbon nanotubes (MWCNTs), carbon beads, carbon fibres, and nanoporous carbon (Gadhave and Waghmare 2014). Use of SWCNTs and MWCNTs as sorbent is very common in the removal of heavy metal from groundwater. Compared to granular activated carbon, another popular sorbent, the SWCNTs and MWCNTs have better capability in absorbing Ni^{2+} in groundwater (Lu et al. 2008).

3.4.3 Zeolites

Zeolites are actually a quite common material used for various purposes. Nanomaterials from zeolites benefit from the high availability and low price, making them stand out among other nanomaterials (Eyde 2010). Zeolites are characterized by the unique structural features of channels and pores, which not only make them lighter than other materials (Liu and Lal 2012a), but also allow introduction of new functional groups, which improves substantially its activity and selectivity for the removal of several substances (Inglezakis and Grigoropoulou 2004). The modification can be made on natural zeolites. Removal of pollutants with zeolites is usually done by adsorption processes, through anion uptakes from the effluents (Haggerty and Bowman 1994). Performance-wise, the most outstanding is their ability of hydration-dehydration and cation exchange with aqueous solutions without really changing the structure, and the high cation-exchange capacities, up to 300 $cmol_c\ kg^{-1}$ (Ming and Allen 2001). This ion exchange capacity also makes zeolites a good fertilizer. A study by Xiong et al. (2015) showed that the remediating effect of nano-sized zeolites was better than that of macro-sized zeolites.

Use of natural and synthetic zeolites as potential remediation agent for heavy metals in soil has been reviewed by Ming and Allen (2001). Uptakes of the heavy metals are reduced by immobilization. For monovalent heavy metal cations of low charge density and divalent cations with lower hydration energy, most natural zeolites can be used as the remediation agent (Colella 1996). Ca-type zeolites are preferred to Na-type zeolites as remediating agent if the contaminated soil is intended for revegetation (Liu and Lal 2012a). Equipped with high selectivity to heavy metals and good ion-exchange capacity, zeolites have the potential for dealing with heavy metals found in ex-mine soil as well.

Moreover, zeolites are also known for the ability to improve physical structures and properties of soil, which is attributed to their unique structural features and size (Liu and Lal 2012a). While adsorbing toxins, zeolites improve the soil structure with increased clay-silt fractions. The overall soil density is reduced with the low density of zeolites. As a result, the soil is more arable, and its water holding capacity is increased, which in turn increases the availability of water and nutrients, or in other words, the soil fertility (Ming and Allen 2001). Poor structures, high bulk density, and low water holding capacity are the common problems found in ex-mine soil. Remediation with zeolites can thus recover the fertility of ex-mine soil and make it possible and safer for plantation and other utilizations. The ability of zeolites to increase the soil's overall pH and nutrient-holding capacity, although still inferior than that of liming materials, is due to the extraordinary capacity in exchanging the H^+ ions with the Ca^{2+} ion (Liu and Lal 2012b; Ming and Allen 2001). Another experimental study by Xiong et al. (2015) shows how application of zeolites could increase soil pH and decrease the concentration of exchangeable Cd in soil and plant.

Zeolites are highly cost-effective in treating solid and liquid wastes in industry and municipality (Liu and Lal 2012a). Depending on the activated compounds present in it, nano-zeolite has the average price of around \$145–\$8000 per tonne. In a study by Zorpas et al. (2000), the ability of zeolites in absorbing toxic metals (Cd, Cu, Cr, Ni, Pb, and Zn) in solid wastes has been proved. Pasini (1991) reported the use of zeolite for the removal of NH^{4+} from municipal and industrial wastewater. Reduction of eutrophic potential of water by phosphate ions and ammonium removal using zeolites has also been carried out in some projects (Ming and Allen 2001). Zeolites can also remove trihalomethanes formed during the disinfection process by chlorine (Ulucan et al. 2013).

3.4.4 Metal Oxides

Metal oxide nanoparticles are known for its effectiveness in bonding with metal ions in contaminants (Liu and Lal 2012a), making them popular as adsorbents for remediation. Common examples are hematite (α-Fe_2O_3), magnetite (Fe_3O_4), and goethite (α-FeOOH), which are naturally present in soil. They act as iron catalyst in hydrogen peroxide oxidation of organic compounds in a soil remediation process (Kong et al. 1998).

The characteristics that make iron oxides effective remediating agents are strong adsorption, large retardation factor, and resistant desorption, which are mainly due to their large surface area (Shipley et al. 2011). It is important to modify their surface to improve their activity and avoid aggregation that may decrease the adsorption efficiency. The modification can be performed by attaching suitable functional groups such as silanol, thio, amine, carboxylic and phosphoric acid, polymer, biomolecules, small organic molecules, and other metal nanoparticles (Dave and Chopda 2014). Coexistence with other assisting materials is another way to improve their performance. For example, the presence of Zn(II) has been shown to enhance the adsorption ability of iron oxides at base soil condition (Carabante et al. 2012).

3.5 Risks of Nanotechnology Application: Cases and Management

Use of nanoparticles for remediation actually possesses a great risk, which is mostly dose-related. Wang et al. (2011), for example, observed the impact of accumulating nano-Al_2O_3 in *Ceriodaphnia dubia*, a species of water flea commonly found in freshwater. Interaction of nano-Al_2O_3 with As (V) is known to increase its toxicity drastically. The materials used for the remediation could potentially become pollutants themselves when they are released to the environment.

High mobility of nanoparticles can be considered a double-edged sword. As easily as they can reach hidden areas, nanoparticles can be over-exposed easily and bring serious damage to the surrounding areas that are actually healthy. Iron oxide nanomaterials, for example, have low solubility and may easily spread bound toxic materials such as copper, which is just second to mercury in toxicity level to algae, phytoplankton, and some plants (Sposito 1989). A study by Auffan et al. (2006) shows how long-term effects such as mutation are triggered in organisms with high exposure to the nanoparticles. Other harmful potentials such as their radical properties need further study.

Side effects of nano-zeolites as remediating agent have not been much studied. While large-sized zeolites are considered non-toxic and thus environmentally friendly, it is still unclear whether at nano-size they possess harmful effects to the environment (Lehman and Larsen 2014). Kihara et al. (2011) showed that nano-sized zeolites have a considerable level of toxicity. Such is not the case with purely siliceous zeolites. Differences in morphology, rather than the surface charge, are said to be the reason. Another example in which useful properties of zeolite can bring such negative effects can be found in applications with vegetation. Cation exchange in plant rhizosphere, which supposedly enhances nutrition absorption, might also result in toxicity due to overexposure to metal ions that come from the zeolites. This can be prevented by preconditioning zeolites into their safer forms, for example preconditioning Na-zeolites to their ammonium form to prevent sodium toxicity. The opposite cases like too much binding of nutritionally important metal ions may bring degradation instead of improvement. Use of zeolites must thus be well designed according to the specific selectivity to the metals to be immobilized.

Just like the case with other nanomaterials, nZVI application also possesses some technical challenges caused by their characteristics. Its use for in situ remediation is limited by microscale aggregation caused by the weak surface charges of Fe nanoparticles. The aggregation is known to reduce the mobility, durability, and mechanical strength of nZVI influences. There have been some efforts to improve material properties by modification (Quinn et al. 2005; Mueller et al. 2012; Fei et al. 2012; Kim et al. 2013; Quan et al. 2014), such as use of metal catalysts such as Ni, Cu, Pd, Pt, Ag, and Au to produce bimetallic nZVI, amorphous type of nZVI, and coating with food-grade surfactant to create emulsified nZVI. Other examples are carbon-supported nZVI, sepiolite, zeolite, and attapulgite. Broad and massive application of nZVI for remediation could in turn create another pollution problem. nZVI redox reaction generates nanoscale Fe oxides that are low soluble. If adsorbed by cells, the oxides can interfere with biological systems and cause cell mutation or even death (Auffan et al. 2006).

Setting up a guideline for nanotechnology application for healthy environmental remediation process is therefore a big task to be done. Some organizations and institutes have been established to deal with the issues related to safe uses and environmental impacts of nanotechnology. Nanotechnology Core Facility (https://www.fda.gov), for example, is an institute established by collaboration of National Center for Toxicological Research (NCTR), which is a research centre under the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA), and the Office of Regulatory Affairs (ORA). Its mission is to ‘support nanotechnology toxicity studies, develop analytical tools to quantify nanomaterials in complex matrices, and develop procedures for characterizing nanomaterials in FDA-regulated products’. Similar step has been made by the US Department of Health and Human Services by setting up the so-called National Toxicology Program (NTP) Nanotechnology Safety Initiative (NTP 2006). The program is aimed at potential human health hazards associated with the manufacture and use of nanoscale materials. The US National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) published a report in 2009 titled ‘Approaches to Safe Nanotechnology: Managing the Health and Safety Concerns Associated with Engineered Nanomaterials’ (NIOSH 2009). The report provides comprehensive information related to the health and safety issues when working with or being exposed to nanomaterials.

In Europe, the European Commission considered nanotechnology one of key enabling technologies (KETs). Joint Research Center of the European Commission has been actively carrying out researches related to nanotechnology applications and its impacts on human health and environment. It focuses on the development of methods for assessing and characterizing nanomaterials, and methods for analysing their interactions with biological systems. The research group acts as the main advisor in the making EU's nanotechnology-related policies, by contributing to the development of tools, databases, and regulations. A comprehensive review on the regulatory aspects and research needs in Europe Union has been published by Rauscher et al. (2017).

To answer the problem of nanomaterials potentially becoming pollutants themselves, development of biodegradable nanomaterials have been encouraged (Guerra et al. 2018). The approach of this green fabrication may vary from utilizing extract of plants or fruits, immobilizing enzymes in order to improve the recyclability, and employing microorganisms. Liu and Lal (2012a) recommend mixing the nanoparticles with small quantities of conventional amendment materials such as fly ash, manures, composts, or biosolids. This practice is similar to that found in fertilizer application in agricultural soil. Before application for soil remediation, the mixture must be stabilized to a certain degree, and the heavy metals and toxin contained in it must be completely removed.

A new class of green-fabricated nanoparticles for dye removal is tabulated in Table 3.4. The produced nanoparticles were also in par with those prepared via conventional routes, with the removal of several dyes from 60 to 95%, in 1.5–600 min through photocatalytic and catalytic degradation processes. Moreover, some nanoparticles are in the inception phase of novel degradation process (enzymatic degradation and biogenic process) which may consume more than 1000 min to perform well (80–95% degradation).

3.6 Conclusions

It has been shown how promising the application of nanotechnology for environmental cleanup is. Enhanced properties attributed to their larger surface-area-to-volume ratio allow them to perform better than the more common larger particles in many remediation processes. The potential and spectrum of the applications have brought them to a level that makes nanomaterials for cleanup a top priority for research. The risks associated with the utilization of nanomaterials have raised some concern. However, they are answered with the advancement in novel production and application methods, as well as movements to ensure safer utilization. Despite all the risks and drawbacks, remediation using nanomaterial still has bright future especially for large contaminated sites because it can significantly reduce cleanup time, has very high contaminant reduction rate and effectivity, more efficient, and more practical.

Table 3.4 Recent development (2017–2018) of green-fabricated nanoparticles for degradation or removal of textile dyes

No.	Process	Note 1	Note 2	Nanoparticle type	Core material	Biological component	Dye	% removal	Removal time (min)	References
1	Photocatalytic degradation	Sunlight		Powder	Fe_2O_3	Ficus carica extract	Acid blue	87	360	Tharunya et al. (2017)
2	Photocatalytic degradation	Visible and UV light	For MO: 450 nm, 8 × 40 W. For CBBG-250: UV, 365 nm, 2 × 40 W	Powder	Ag	Ethanolic (70%) extract of Psidium guajava L. leaves	Methyl orange Coomassie brilliant blue G-250	60 70	600 360	Wang et al. (2018a)
3	Catalytic degradation	Peroxodisulphate and peroxomono sulphate		Powder	Cu	Extract of Azadirachta indica leaves	Methyl orange	>80	30	Nagar and Devra (2017)
4	Catalytic degradation	$NaBH_4$ 0.1 M		Powder	Pd	Carboxymethyl cellulose	Scarlet 3G Reactive yellow 179	93 91	1.5 4.5	Li et al. (2017)
5	Catalytic degradation	Bio-Au NP as catalyst, 303 K, shaking 150 rpm		Powder	Au	Trichoderma sp. WL-Go	Acid brilliant scarlet GR, acid red B, acid orange G, acid black 1, reactive red X-3B, reactive black, reactive red, cation red	41–94	100–180	Zazouli et al. (2017)
6	Biogenic reaction	Pd + *K. oxytoca*		Powder	Biogenic Pd nanoparticles	Biogenic reaction involving *Klebsiella oxytoca* GS-4-08 (CGMCC 5237)	Acid blue 113 Reactive black 5 Methyl orange Acid red 1	>95 >95 >95 >95	1440–2880 1440–2880 1440–2880 1440–2880	Wang et al. (2018b)
7	Enyzmatic reaction	40 °C		Decorated	Fe_3O_4	Laccase, TEMPO	Acid fuchsin	Up to 80%	1080	Gao et al. (2018)

References

Abbasi M, Rafique U, Murtaza G (2018) Synthesis, characterization and photocatalytic performance of ZnS coupled Ag_2S nanoparticles: a remediation model for environmental pollutants. Arab J Chem 11:827–837

Abdillah F, Pramudita D, Indarto A (2018) Nanotechnology: an emerging technology for bioremediation of environmental pollutants. In: Recent advances in environmental management. CRC Press, p 35

Adhikari S, Sarath CK, Kim DH (2018) Understanding the morphological effects of WO_3 photocatalysts for the degradation of organic pollutants. Adv Powder Technol 29:1591–1600

Agnihotri S, Mota JPB, Rostam-Abadi M (2006) Theoretical and experimental investigation of morphology and temperature effects on adsorption of organic vapors in single-walled carbon nanotubes. J Phys Chem B 110(15):7640–7647

Ahuja P, Ujjain SK, Arora I (2018) Hierarchically grown NiO-decorated polyaniline-reduced graphene oxide composite for ultrafast sunlight-driven photocatalysis. ACS Omega 3:7846–7855

Alamelu K, Raja V, Shiamala L (2018) Biphasic TiO_2 nanoparticles decorated graphene nanosheets for visible light driven photocatalytic degradation of organic dyes. Appl Surf Sci 430:145–154

Ali S, Granbohm H, Lahtinen J (2018) Titania nanotubes prepared by rapid breakdown anodization for photocatalytic decolorization of organic dyes under UV and natural solar light. Nanoscale Res Lett 13:179

Annan E, Agyei-Tuffor B, Bensah YW (2018) Application of clay ceramics and nanotechnology in water treatment: a review. Cogent Eng 5(1):1–35

Aoudjit L, Martins PM, Madjene F (2018) Photocatalytic reusable membranes for the effective degradation of tartrazine with a solar photoreactor. J Hazard Mater 344:408–416

Aschberger K, Micheletti C, Sokull-Klüttgen B (2011) Analysis of currently available data for characterising the risk of engineered nanomaterials to the environment and human health—lessons learned from four case studies. Environ Int 37:1143–1156

Ashby MF, Ferreira PJ, Schodek DL (2009) Nanomaterials, nanotechnologies, and design. Elsevier, Oxford

Auffan M, Decome L, Rose J (2006) In vitro interactions between DMSA-coated maghemite nano particles and human fibroblast: a physico-chemical and cyto-genotoxical study. Environ Sci Technol 40(14):4367–4373

Bashir O, Khan MN, Khan TA (2017) Influence of stabilizing agents on the microstructure of co-nanoparticles for removal of Congo red. Environ Technol Innov 8:327–342

Buchholcz B, Haspel H, Oszko A (2017) Titania nanotube stabilized BiOCl nanoparticles in visible-light photocatalysis. RSC Adv 7:16410–16422

Cao J, Elliott D, Zhang W (2005) Perchlorate reduction by nanoscale iron particles. J Nanopart Res 7:499–506

Carabante I, Grahn M, Holmgren A (2012) Influence of Zn(II) on the adsorption of arsenate onto ferrihydrite. Environ Sci Technol 46(24):13152–13159

Chen D, Ray AK (2001) Removal of toxic metal ions from wastewater by semiconductor photocatalysis. Chem Eng Sci 56(4):1561–1570

Chen J, Pu Y, Wang C (2018) Synthesis of a novel nanosilica-supported poly β-cyclodextrin sorbent and its properties for the removal of dyes from aqueous solution. Colloids Surf A Physicochem Eng Asp 538:808–817

Cheng Q, Deng X, Zhang H (2018) Microwave assisted construction of Ag-AgBr/reduced TiO_2 nano-tube arrays photoelectrode and its enhanced visible light photocatalytic performance for degradation of 4-chlorphenol. Sep Purif Technol 193:255–263

Christian F, Edith S, Adityawarman D, Indarto A (2013) Application of nanotechnologies in the energy sector: a brief and short review. Front Energy 7(1):6–18

Colella C (1996) Ion-exchange equilibria in zeolite minerals. Mineral Deposita 31(6):554–562

Crane RA, Scott TB (2012) Nanoscale zero-valent iron: future prospects for an emerging water treatment technology. J Hazard Mater 211–212:112–125

Dai G, Yu J, Liu G (2012) A new approach for photocorrosion inhibition of Ag_2CO_3 photocatalyst with highly visible-light-responsive reactivity. J Phys Chem C 116(29):15519–15524

Dave PN, Chopda LV (2014) Application of iron oxide nanomaterials for the removal of heavy metals. J Nanotechnol 2014:1–14

Ditta IB, Steele A, Liptrot C (2008) Photocatalytic antimicrobial activity of thin surface films of TiO_2, CuO and TiO_2/CuO dual layers on *Escherichia coli* and bacteriophage T4. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 79(1):127

Eyde TH (2010) Zeolites. Miner Eng 62:86

Fei X, Cao L, Zhou L (2012) Degradation of bromamine acid by nanoscale zero-valent iron (nZVI) supported on sepiolite. Water Sci Technol 66:2539–2545

Fukahori S, Ichiura H, Kitaoka T (2003) Capturing of bisphenol A photodecomposition intermediates by composite TiO_2-zeolite sheets. Appl Catal B Environ 46(3):453–462

Gadhave A, Waghmare J (2014) Removal of heavy metal ions from wastewater by carbon nanotubes. Int J Chem Sci Appl 5:56–67

Gagrani A, Zhou J, Tsuzuki T (2018) Solvent free mechanochemical synthesis of MnO_2 for the efficient degradation of Rhodamine-B. Ceram Int 44:4694–4698

Gao Y, Wahi R, Kan AT (2004) Adsorption of cadmium on anatase nanoparticles effect of crystal size and pH. Langmuir 20(22):9585–9593

Gao Z, Yi Y, Zhao J (2018) Co-immobilization of laccase and TEMPO onto amino-functionalized magnetic Fe_3O_4 nanoparticles and its application in acid fuchsin decolorization. Bioresour Bioprocess 5:27

Ge M, Zhu N, Zhao Y (2012) Sunlight-assisted degradation of dye pollutants in Ag_3PO_4 suspension. Ind Eng Chem Res 51(14):5167–5173

Goyal A, Sharma R, Bansal S et al (2018) Functionalized core-shell nanostructures with inherent magnetic character: outperforming candidates for the activation of PMS. Adv Powder Technol 29:245–256

Guan X, Du J, Meng X (2012) Application of titanium dioxide in arsenic removal from water: a review. J Hazard Mater 215:1–16

Guerra FD, Attia MF, Whitehead DC (2018) Nanotechnology for environmental remediation: materials and applications. Molecules 23(7):1760

Gupta V, Agarwal S, Saleh TA (2011) Chromium removal by combining the magnetic properties of iron oxide with adsorption properties of carbon nanotubes. Water Res 45(6):2207–2212

Haggerty MG, Bowman SR (1994) Sorption of chromate and other inorganic anions by organozeolite. Environ Sci Technol 28(3):452–458

Handy H, Santoso A, Widodo A, Palgunadi J, Soerawidjaja TH, Indarto A (2014) H_2S–CO_2 separation using room temperature ionic liquid [BMIM][Br]. Sep Sci Technol 49:2079–2084

Hernández-Sierra JF, Ruiz F, Pena DCC (2008) The antimicrobial sensitivity of S*treptococcus mutans* to nanoparticles of silver, zinc oxide, and gold. Nanomedicine 4(3):237–240

Hu J, Lo I, Chen G (2004) Removal of Cr (VI) by magnetite. Water Sci Technol 50(12):139–146

Huang Q, Liu M, Mao L (2017) Surface functionalized SiO_2 nanoparticles with cationic polymers via the combination of mussel inspired chemistry and surface-initiated atom transfer radical polymerization: characterization and enhanced removal of organic dye. J Colloid Interface Sci 499:170–179

Hyung KS, Choi J-W, Lee H, Indarto A (2005) Gliding arc plasma processing for decomposition of chloroform. Toxicol Environ Chem 87(4):509–519

Indarto A (2012) Heterogeneous reactions of HONO formation from NO_2 and HNO_3: a review. Res Chem Intermed 38:1029–1041

Indarto A, Choi JW, Lee H, Song HK (2006a) Decomposition of CCl_4 and $CHCl_3$ on gliding arc plasma. J Environ Sci 18(1):83–89

Indarto A, Choi JW, Lee H, Song HK (2006b) Treatment of CCl_4 and $CHCl_3$ emission in a gliding-arc plasma. Plasma Dev Oper 14(1):1–14

Indarto A, Choi J-W, Lee H, Song HK (2008) The kinetic studies of direct methane oxidation to methanol in the plasma process. Sci Bull 53(18):2783–2792

Indarto A, Lee H, Choi J-W, Song HK (2015) Partial oxidation of methane with yttria-stabilized zirconia catalyst in a dielectric barrier discharge. Energy Source A 30(17):1628–1636

Inglezakis LV, Grigoropoulou H (2004) Effects of operating conditions on the removal of heavy metals by zeolite in fixed bed reactors. J Hazard Mater 112:37–43

Irfan S, Rizwan S, Shen Y (2017) The gadolinium (Gd^{3+}) and tin (Sn^{4+}) Co-doped $BiFeO_3$ nanoparticles as new solar light active photocatalyst. Sci Rep 7:42493

Ismail AA, Faisal M, Al-Haddad A (2018) Mesoporous WO_3-graphene photocatalyst for photocatalytic degradation of Methylene Blue dye under visible light illumination. J Environ Sci 66:328–337

ITRC: Permeable Reactive Barrier: Technology Update (2011) Interstate Technology & Regulatory Council (website). http://www.itrcweb.org. Accessed 28 July 2017

Jamei MR, Khosravi MR, Anvaripour B (2013) Investigation of ultrasonic effect on synthesis of nano zero valent iron particles and comparison with conventional method: ultrasonic effect on synthesis of nZVI particles. Asia Pac J Chem Eng 8:767–774

Jamei MR, Khosravi MR, Anvaripour B (2014) A novel ultrasound assisted method in synthesis of NZVI particles. Ultrason Sonochem 21:226–233

Jegadeesan G, Mondal K, Lalvani S (2005) Arsenate remediation using nanosized modified zerovalent iron particles. Environ Prog Sustain Energy 24:289–296

Jin T, Sun D, Su JY (2009) Antimicrobial efficacy of zinc oxide quantum dots against *Listeria monocytogenes, Salmonella enteritidis*, and *Escherichia coli* O157: H7. J Food Sci 74(1):M46–M52

Jo WK, Kim YG, Tonda S (2018) Hierarchical flower-like NiAl-layered double hydroxide microspheres encapsulated with black Cu-doped TiO_2 nanoparticles: highly efficient visible-light-driven composite photocatalysts for environmental remediation. J Hazard Mater 357:19–29

Jothibas M, Manoharan C, Jeyakumar SJ (2018) Synthesis and enhanced photocatalytic property of Ni doped ZnS nanoparticles. Sol Energy 159:434–443

Juneja S, Madhavan AA, Ghosal A (2018) Synthesis of graphenized Au/ZnO plasmonic nanocomposites for simultaneous sunlight mediated photo-catalysis and anti-microbial activity. J Hazard Mater 347:378–389

Kalhori EM, Al-Musawi TJ, Ghahramani E (2017) Enhancement of the adsorption capacity of the light-weight expanded clay aggregate surface for the metronidazole antibiotic by coating with MgO nanoparticles: studies on the kinetic, isotherm, and effects of environmental parameters. Chemosphere 175:8–20

Kandah MI, Meunier JL (2007) Removal of nickel ions from water by multi-walled carbon nanotubes. J Hazard Mater 146(1):83–288

Kanel SR, Manning B, Charlet L (2005) Removal of arsenic(III) from groundwater by nanoscale zero-valent iron. Environ Sci Technol 39:129–298

Kanel SR, Greneche J, Choi H (2006) Arsenic(V) removal from groundwater using nano scale zero-valent iron as a colloidal reactive barrier material. Environ Sci Technol 40:2045–2050

Karn B, Kuiken T, Ott M (2009) Nanotechnology and in situ remediation: a review of the benefits and potential risks. Environ Health Perspect 117(12):1813–1831

Karunakaran C, Abiramasundari G, Gomathisankar P (2011a) Preparation and characterization of ZnO–TiO_2 nanocomposite for photocatalytic disinfection of bacteria and detoxification of cyanide under visible light. Mater Res Bull 46(10):1586–1592

Karunakaran C, Vijayabalan A, Manikandan G (2011b) Visible light photocatalytic disinfection of bacteria by Cd–TiO_2. Catal Commun 12(9):826–829

Kihara T, Zhang Y, Hu Y (2011) Effect of composition, morphology and size of nanozeolite on its in vitro cytotoxicity. J Biosci Bioeng 111(6):725–730

Kim SA, Kamala-Kannan S, Lee KJ (2013) Removal of Pb (II) from aqueous solution by a zeolite–nanoscale zero-valent iron composite. Chem Eng J 217:54–60

Kim DY, Kadam A, Shinde S (2018) Recent developments in nanotechnology transforming the agricultural sector a transition replete with opportunities. J Sci Food Agric 98(3):849–864

Kirankumar VS, Sumathi S (2017) Catalytic activity of bismuth doped zinc aluminate nanoparticles towards environmental remediation. Mater Res Bull 93:74–82

Kong SH, Watts RJ, Choi JH (1998) Treatment of petroleum-contaminated soils using iron mineral catalyzed hydrogen peroxide. Chemosphere 37(8):1473–1482

Kumar N, Kumbhat S (2016) Essentials in nanoscience and nanotechnology. Wiley, Hoboken

Kumar A, Naushad M, Rana A (2017) ZnSe-WO_3 nano-hetero-assembly stacked on Gum ghatti for photo-degradative removal of Bisphenol A: symbiose of adsorption and photocatalysis. Int J Biol Macromol 104:1172–1184

Lehman SE, Larsen SC (2014) Zeolite and mesoporous silica nanomaterials: greener syntheses, environmental applications and biological toxicity. Environ Sci Nano 1:200–213

Li S, Yan W, Zhang W (2009) Solvent-free production of nanoscale zero-valent iron (nZVI) with precision milling. Green Chem 11:1618–1626

Li YH, Zhu Y, Zhao Y (2016) Different morphologies of carbon nanotubes effect on the lead removal from aqueous solution. Diam Relat Mater 15(1):90–94

Li G, Li Y, Wang Z (2017) Green synthesis of palladium nanoparticles with carboxymethyl cellulose for degradation of azo-dyes. Mater Chem Phys 187:133–140

Li S, Hu S, Jiang W (2018) Facile synthesis of cerium oxide nanoparticles decorated flower-like bismuth molybdate for enhanced photocatalytic activity toward organic pollutant degradation. J Colloid Interface Sci 530:171–178

Lim TT, Yap PS, Srinivasan M (2011) TiO_2/AC composites for synergistic adsorption photocatalysis processes: present challenges and further developments for water treatment and reclamation. Crit Rev Environ Sci Technol 41(13):1173–1230

Lin J, Lai Q, Liu Y (2017) Laccase-methacrylyol functionalized magnetic particles: highly immobilized, reusable, and efficacious for methyl red decolourization. Int J Biol Macromol 102:144–152

Liou Y, Lo S, Kuan W (2006) Effect of precursor concentration on the characteristics of nanoscale zerovalent iron and its reactivity of nitrate. Water Res 40:2485–2492

Liu R, Lal R (2012a) Nanoenhanced materials for reclamation of mine lands and other degraded soils: a review. J Nanotechnol 2012:1–17

Liu R, Lal R (2012b) A laboratory study on improvement of mine soil quality for re-vegetation through various amendments. In: Proceedings of the ASA-CSSA-SSSA international annual meetings, Cincinnati

Liu JF, Zhao ZS, Jiang GB (2008a) Coating Fe_3O_4 magnetic nanoparticles with humic acid for high efficient removal of heavy metals in water. Environ Sci Technol 42(18):6949–6954

Liu Y, Wang X, Yang F (2008b) Excellent antimicrobial properties of mesoporous anatase TiO_2 and Ag/TiO_2 composite films. Microporous Mesoporous Mater 114(1):431–439

Liu Y, Gao T, Xiao H (2017) One-pot synthesis of rice-like TiO_2/graphene hydrogels as advanced electrodes for supercapacitors and the resulting aerogels as high-efficiency dye adsorbents. Electrochim Acta 229:239–252

Lonnen J, Kilvington S, Kehoe S (2005) Solar and photocatalytic disinfection of protozoan, fungal and bacterial microbes in drinking water. Water Res 39(5):877–883

Lu C, Liu C, Rao GP (2008) Comparisons of sorbent cost for the removal of Ni^{2+} from aqueous solution by carbon nanotubes and granular activated carbon. J Hazard Mater 151:239–246

Ma J, Xiao R, Li J (2010) Determination of 16 polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in environmental water samples by solid-phase extraction using multi-walled carbon nanotubes as adsorbent coupled with gas chromatography-mass spectrometry. J Chromatogr A 1217(34):5462–5469

Mace C, Desrocher S, Gheorghiu F (2006) Nanotechnology and groundwater remediation: a step forward in technology understanding. Remediation 16(2):22–33

Machado S, Pinto SL, Grosso JP (2013) Green production of zero-valent iron nanoparticles using tree leaf extracts. Sci Total Environ 445–446:1–8

Machado S, Grosso JP, Nouws HPA (2014) Utilization of food industry wastes for the production of zero-valent iron nanoparticles. Sci Total Environ 496:233–240

Mahmoud MM, Osman M, Ahmed SB (2011) Improved adsorptive removal of cadmium from water by hybrid chemically and biologically carbonaceous sorbents. Chem Eng J 175:84–94

Manning B, Kiser J, Kwon H (2007) Spectroscopic investigation of Cr (III)- and Cr(VI)-treated nanoscale zerovalent iron. Environ Sci Technol 4:586–592

Metcalf EE, Eddy H (2003) Wastewater engineer treatment disposal, reuse. McGraw, New York

Miller GT (2004) Sustaining the earth, 6th edn. Thompson Learning, California

Ming DW, Allen ER (2001) Use of natural zeolites in agronomy, horticulture and environmental soil remediation. Rev Mineral Geochem 45(1):619–654

Mueller NC, Braun J, Bruns J (2012) Application of nanoscale zero valent iron (nZVI) for groundwater remediation in Europe. Environ Sci Pollut Res 19:550–558

Nagar N, Devra V (2017) Activation of peroxodisulfate and peroxomonosulfate by green synthesized copper nanoparticles for Methyl Orange degradation: a kinetic study. J Environ Chem Eng 5:5793–5800

Nanda A, Saravanan M (2009) Biosynthesis of silver nanoparticles from *Staphylococcus aureus* and its antimicrobial activity against MRSA and MRSE. Nanomedicine 5(4):452–456

Naraginti S, Li Y, Puma GL (2018) Photocatalytic mineralization and degradation kinetics of sulphamethoxazole and reactive red 194 over silver-zirconium co-doped titanium dioxide: reaction mechanisms and phytotoxicity assessment. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 159:301–309

National Toxicology Program (2006) NTP nanotechnology safety initiative. https://ntp.niehs.nih.gov/ntp/factsheets/nanocolor06srch.pdf

Neppolian B, Choi HC, Sakthivel S (2002) Solar/UV-induced photocatalytic degradation of three commercial textile dyes. J Hazard Mater 89(2):303–317

NIOSH (2009) Approaches to safe nanotechnology: managing the health and safety concerns associated with engineered nanomaterials. https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/docs/2009-125/pdfs/2009-125.pdf

Nowack B, Bucheli TD (2007) Occurrence, behaviour and effects of nanoparticles in the environment. Environ Pollut 150(1):5–22

Nurmi JT, Tratnyek PG, Sarathy V (2005) Characterization and properties of metallic iron nanoparticles: spectroscopy, electrochemistry, and kinetics. Environ Sci Technol 39:1221–1230

Otto M, Floyd M, Bajpai S (2008) Nanotechnology for site remediation. Rem 19(1):99–108

Oun A, Tahri N, Mahouche-Chergui S (2017) Tubular ultrafiltration ceramic membrane based on titania nanoparticles immobilized on macroporous clay-alumina support: elaboration, characterization and application to dye removal. Sep Purif Technol 188:126–133

Palmer WE, Bromley PT, Brandenburg RL (2007) Wildlife & pesticides—Peanuts. North Carolina Cooperative Extension Service.

Pan J, Liu J, Zuo S (2018) Structure of Z-scheme CdS/CQDs/BiOCl heterojunction with enhanced photocatalytic activity for environmental pollutant elimination. Appl Surf Sci 444:177–186

PARS Environmental Inc. (2004) NanoFe™: an innovative remediation technology for soils and groundwater. http://www.parsenviro.com/nanofeaw-1.html

Pasini M (1991) Natural zeolites as cation exchangers for environmental protection. Mineral Deposita 31(6):563–575

Pawinrat P, Mekasuwandumrong O, Panpranot J (2009) Synthesis of Au–ZnO and Pt–ZnO nanocomposites by one-step flame spray pyrolysis and its application for photocatalytic degradation of dyes. Catal Commun 10(10):1380–1385

Peng X, Luan Z, Di Z (2005a) Carbon nanotubes-iron oxides magnetic composites as adsorbent for removal of Pb (II) and Cu (II) from water. Carbon 43(4):880–883

Peng X, Luan Z, Ding J (2005b) Ceria nanoparticles supported on carbon nanotubes for the removal of arsenate from water. Mater Lett 59(4):399–403

Quan G, Zhang J, Guo J (2014) Removal of Cr(VI) from aqueous solution by nanoscale zero-valent iron grafted on acid-activated attapulgite. Water Air Soil Pollut 225:1–11

Quinn J, Geiger C, Clausen C (2005) Field demonstration of DNAPL dehalogenation using emulsified zero-valent iron. Environ Sci Technol 39(5):1309–1318

Rachna, Rani M, Shanker U (2018) Enhanced photocatalytic degradation of chrysene by Fe2O3@ZnHCF nanocubes. Chem Eng J 348:754–764

Rauscher H, Rasmussen K, Sokull-Klüttgen B (2017) Regulatory aspects of nanomaterials in the EU. Chem Ing Tech 89(3):224–231

Rawat J, Rana S, Srivastava R (2007) Antimicrobial activity of composite nanoparticles consisting of titania photocatalytic shell and nickel ferrite magnetic core. Mater Sci Eng C 27(3):540–545

Rawtani D, Khatri N, Tyagi S (2018) Nanotechnology-based recent approaches for sensing and remediation of pesticides. J Environ Manag 206:749–762

Reijnders L (2006) Cleaner nanotechnology and hazard reduction of manufactured nanoparticles. J Clean Prod 14(2):124–133

Ren ZH, Li HT, Gao Q (2017) Au nanoparticles embedded on urchin-like TiO_2 nanosphere: an efficient catalyst for dyes degradation and 4-nitrophenol reduction. Mater Des 121:167–175

Rout L, Kumar A, Dhaka RS (2017) Bimetallic Au-Cu alloy nanoparticles on reduced graphene oxide support: synthesis, catalytic activity and investigation of synergistic effect by DFT analysis. Appl Catal A Gen 538:107–122

Saleh TA, Gondal M, Drmosh Q (2010) Preparation of a MWCNT/ZnO nanocomposite and its photocatalytic activity for the removal of cyanide from water using a laser. Nanotechnology 21(49):495705

Salem MA, Bakr EA, El-Attar HG (2018) Pt@Ag and Pd@Ag core/shell nanoparticles for catalytic degradation of Congo red in aqueous solution. Spectrochim Acta A Mol Biomol Spectrosc 188:155–163

Saran S, Manjari G, Devipriya SP (2018) Synergistic eminently active catalytic and recyclable Ag, Cu and Ag-Cu alloy nanoparticles supported on TiO_2 for sustainable and cleaner environmental applications: a phytogenic mediated synthesis. J Clean Prod 177:134–143

Senasu T, Hemavibool K, Nanan S (2018) Hydrothermally grown CdS nanoparticles for photodegradation of anionic azo dyes under UV-visible light irradiation. RSC Adv 8:22592–22605

Shan G, Yan S, Tyagie RD (2009) Applications of nanomaterials in environmental science and engineering: review. Pract Period Hazard Toxic Radioact Waste Manag 13(2):110–119

Shi Z, Fan D, Johnson RL (2015) Methods for characterizing the fate and effects of nano zerovalent iron during groundwater remediation. J Contam Hydrol 181:17–35

Shipley HJ, Engates KE, Guettner AM (2011) Study of iron oxide nanoparticles in soil for remediation of arsenic. J Nanopart Res 13(6):2387–2397

Sohn K, Kang S, Ahn S (2006) Fe(0) nanoparticles for nitrate reduction: stability, reactivity, and transformation. Environ Sci Technol 40:5514–5519

Sposito G (1989) The chemistry of soils. Oxford University Press, New York

Stefaniuk M, Oleszczuk P, Ok YS (2016) Review on nano zerovalent iron (nZVI): from synthesis to environmental applications. Chem Eng J 287:618–632

Sun YP, Li X, Cao J (2006) Characterization of zero-valent iron particles. Adv Colloid Interf Sci 120:47–56

Sun YP, Li XQ, Zhang WX (2007) A method for the preparation of stable dispersion of zero-valent iron nanoparticles. Colloids Surf A Physicochem Eng Asp 308:60–66

Tantra R (2016) Nanomaterial characterization: an introduction. Wiley, Hoboken

Tao NR, Sui ML, Lu J (1999) Surface nanocrystallization of iron induced by ultrasonic shot peening. Nanostruct Mater 11:433–440

Tharunya P, Subha V, Kirubanandan S (2017) Green synthesis of superparamagnetic iron oxide nanoparticle from *Ficus carica* fruit extract, characterization studies and its application on dye degradation studies. Asian J Pharm Clin Res 10:125–128

Tofighy MA, Mohammadi T (2011) Adsorption of divalent heavy metal ions from water using carbon nanotube sheets. J Hazard Mater 185(1):140–147

U.S. EPA (2014) Human health issues related to pesticides. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC. https://www.epa.gov/pesticide-science-and-assessing-pesticide-risks/human-health-issues-related-pesticides

Ulucan K, Noberi C, Coskun T (2013) Disinfection by-products removal by nanoparticles sintered in zeolite. J Clean Energy Technol 1(2):120–123

Wang CB, Zhang W (1997) Synthesizing nanoscale iron particles for rapid and complete dechlorination of TCE and PCBs. Environ Sci Technol 31:2154–2156

Wang D, Hu J, Forthaus BE (2011) Synergistic toxic effect of nano-Al_2O_3 and As(V) on *Ceriodaphnia dubia*. Environ Pollut 159(10):3003–3008

Wang N, Hu Y, Zhang Z (2017a) Sustainable catalytic properties of silver nanoparticles supported montmorillonite for highly efficient recyclable reduction of methylene blue. Appl Clay Sci 150:47–55

Wang S, Zhang X, Li S (2017b) C-doped ZnO ball-in-ball hollow microspheres for efficient photocatalytic and photoelectrochemical applications. J Hazard Mater 331:235–245

Wang L, Lu F, Liu Y (2018a) Photocatalytic degradation of organic dyes and antimicrobial activity of silver nanoparticles fast synthesized by flavonoids fraction of *Psidium guajava L.* leaves. J Mol Liq 263:87–19

Wang PT, Song YH, Fan HC (2018b) Bioreduction of azo dyes was enhanced by in-situ biogenic palladium nanoparticles. Bioresour Technol 266:176–180

Wells M (2007) Vanishing Bees Threaten U.S. Crops. http://news.bbc.co.uk/2/hi/americas/6438373.stm

Wu CH, Lin JT, Lin KYA (2018) Magnetic cobaltic nanoparticle-anchored carbon nanocomposite derived from cobalt-dipicolinic acid coordination polymer: an enhanced catalyst for environmental oxidative and reductive reactions. J Colloid Interface Sci 517:124–133

Xiong SJ, Xu WH, Xie WW (2015) Effect of nano zeolite on chemical fractions of cd in soil and its uptake by cabbage. Huan Jing Ke Xue 36(12):4630–4641

Xu T, Cai Y, O'Shea KE (2007) Adsorption and photocatalyzed oxidation of methylated arsenic species in TiO_2 suspensions. Environ Sci Technol 41(15):5471–5477

Xu YC, Tang YP, Liu LF (2017) Nanocomposite organic solvent nanofiltration membranes by a highly-efficient mussel-inspired co-deposition strategy. J Membr Sci 526:32–42

Yang D, Zheng Z, Liu H (2008) Layered titanate nanofibers as efficient adsorbents for removal of toxic radioactive and heavy metal ions from water. J Phys Chem C 112(42):16275–16280

Yao Y, Zhang J, Gao M (2018) Activation of persulfates by catalytic nickel nanoparticles supported on N-doped carbon nanofibers for degradation of organic pollutants in water. J Colloid Interface Sci 529:100–110

Yoon KY, Byeon JH, Park JH (2007) Susceptibility constants of *Escherichia coli* and *Bacillus subtilis* to silver and copper nanoparticles. Sci Total Environ 373(2):572–575

Yoon J, Shim E, Bae S (2009) Application of immobilized nanotubular TiO_2 electrode for photocatalytic hydrogen evolution: reduction of hexavalent chromium (Cr (VI)) in water. J Hazard Mater 161(2):1069–1074

Yunus LS, Harwin, Kurniawan A (2012) Nanotechnologies in water and air pollution treatment. Environ Technol Rev 1:136–148

Zazouli MA, Ghanbari F, Yousefi M (2017) Photocatalytic degradation of food dye by Fe_3O_4-TiO_2 nanoparticles in presence of peroxymonosulfate: the effect of UV sources. J Environ Chem Eng 5:2459–2468

Zhang WX (2003) Nanoscale iron particles for environmental remediation: an overview. J Nanopart Res 5(3):323–332

Zhang X, Zhao X, Su H (2011) Degradation characteristic of TiO_2-chitosan adsorbent on Rhodamine B and purification of industrial wastewater. Korean J Chem Eng 28(5):1241–1246

Zhang C, Yu Y, Wei H (2018) In situ growth of cube-like AgCl on montmorillonite as an efficient photocatalyst for dye (Acid Red 18) degradation. Appl Surf Sci 456:577–585

Zhao H, Yu H, Quan X (2014) Fabrication of atomic single layer graphitic-C_3N_4 and its high performance of photocatalytic disinfection under visible light irradiation. Appl Catal B Environ 152–153(Suppl C):46–50

Zhong LS, Hu JS, Liang HP (2006) Self-assembled 3D flowerlike iron oxide nanostructures and their application in water treatment. Adv Mater 18(18):2426–2431

Zhou Q, Xiao J, Wang W (2006) Determination of atrazine and simazine in environmental water samples using multiwalled carbon nanotubes as the adsorbents for preconcentration prior to high performance liquid chromatography with diode array detector. Talanta 68(4):1309–1315

Zhou W, Fu H, Pan K (2008) Mesoporous $TiO_2/\alpha\text{-}Fe_2O_3$: bifunctional composites for effective elimination of arsenite contamination through simultaneous photocatalytic oxidation and adsorption. J Phys Chem C 112(49):19584–19589

Zhu Y, Zhu R, Zhu G (2018) Plasmonic Ag coated Zn/Ti-LDH with excellent photocatalytic activity. Appl Surf Sci 433:458–467

Zorpas AA, Constantinides T, Vlyssides AG (2000) Heavy metal uptake by natural zeolite and metals partitioning in sewage sludge compost. Bioresour Technol 72(2):113–119

Chapter 4
Efficiency of Algae for Heavy Metal Removal, Bioenergy Production, and Carbon Sequestration

Ankit, Nirmali Bordoloi, Jaya Tiwari, Sanjeev Kumar, John Korstad, and Kuldeep Bauddh

Abstract Environmental contamination is one of the paramount concerns engulfing the entire world. Being nondegradable in nature, heavy metals (e.g., Ni, Cd, Cu, As, Hg, and Pb) are significant pollutants of soil and aquatic ecosystems. Although numerous technologies have been employed to remove toxic metals from contaminated sites, there is still need for more efficient and ecologically sound methods. The use of algal species for the removal of heavy metals as well as other contaminants like dyes, nutrients, ions etc. from water and wastewater, which is popularly known as phycoremediation, has been found to be eco-friendly, ecologically sound, and a value-added tool. The common algal species which are being used for phycoremediation are *Chlorella*, *Scenedesmus*, *Oscillatoria*, *Lyngbya*, *Gloeocapsa, Spirulina*, *Chroococcus*, *Synechocystis*, and *Anabaena*. The use of algae for the removal of pollutants also helps in carbon sequestration and biofuel production. This chapter discusses the removal of toxic metals from contaminated aquatic ecosystems using various species of micro- and macroalgae along with factors that influence the process of phycoremediation and the role of algae in biofuel production and carbon sequestration.

Keywords Biofuels · Heavy metals · Microalgae · Macroalgae · Wastewater · Phycoremediation

---

Ankit and Nirmali Bordoloi contributed equally.

Ankit · N. Bordoloi · S. Kumar · K. Bauddh (✉)
Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Jharkhand, Ranchi, India
e-mail: kuldeep.bauddh@cuj.ac.in

J. Tiwari
School of Biological Sciences, AIPH University, Bhubaneswar, Orissa, India

J. Korstad
Department of Biology and Renewable Energy, Oral Roberts University, Tulsa, OK, USA

R. N. Bharagava (ed.), *Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment*, Microorganisms for Sustainability 18,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-1390-9_4

4.1 Introduction

Industrialization and urbanization have caused overload of contaminants into the environment. In the last few decades, the pollutants have led to deterioration of many natural ecosystems. Because of their nondegradable nature, heavy metals are a special category of environmental pollutants. They enter ecosystems through a number of anthropogenic activities such as mining, smelting, refining, and electroplating industries. Due to their non-degradable nature, heavy metals accumulate in the soil and sediments and bioaccumulate in the flora and fauna of aquatic ecosystems (Forster and Wase 1997; Chandra et al. 2009; Yadav et al. 2017). Various scientific methods have been investigated for the removal of heavy metals from the contaminated water bodies: physicochemical techniques like chemical oxidation/reduction, electrochemical treatment, precipitation, ion exchange, ultrafiltration, reverse osmosis, and bio-membrane (Ahluwalia and Goyal 2007; Barakat 2011; Saxena et al. 2020). However, these technologies are found to have numerous limitations such as their non-eco-friendly nature, high operational costs, low efficiency, and other concerns (Khoshmanesh et al. 1996; Chong et al. 2000).

Application of living organisms for the removal of toxic metals from contaminated water bodies has been identified as a promising alternative of these physicochemical techniques (Mishra and Bharagava 2016). The use of algae for the remediation of aquatic contaminants from water and wastewater is known as phycoremediation. Along with the removal of toxic metals, it has been observed that algae, especially microalgae, are ideal for sequestration of nitrogen (N) and phosphorus (P) from wastewater because they require these elements as growth nutrients (Mehta and Gaur 2005; Ruiz-Marin et al. 2010; Xin et al. 2010; Pittman et al. 2011; Babu et al. 2018). This chapter highlights the removal of several toxic heavy metals by various algal species and their metal removal potential along with different factors that influence the process. The potential of carbon sequestration and biofuel production as value-added properties of phycoremediation are also discussed in this chapter.

4.2 Sources of Heavy Metals

The origin of heavy metals can be both natural and anthropogenic and have widespread environmental distribution. Natural sources of heavy metals occur through geological and geographical processes like nonuniform formation of parent rock, stratigraphy, topography, weather, erosion, volcanic eruptions, forest fires, aerosol particulates, uptake of metals by plants, subsequent release through decomposition, and other natural sources (Fig. 4.1). In the environment, rocks and soils are the primary natural sources of heavy metals. Hazardous impacts of volcanic eruption affect the environment and health which are exposed to heavy metals. During volcanic eruption, various gases like SO_2, CO_2, and CO, various organic

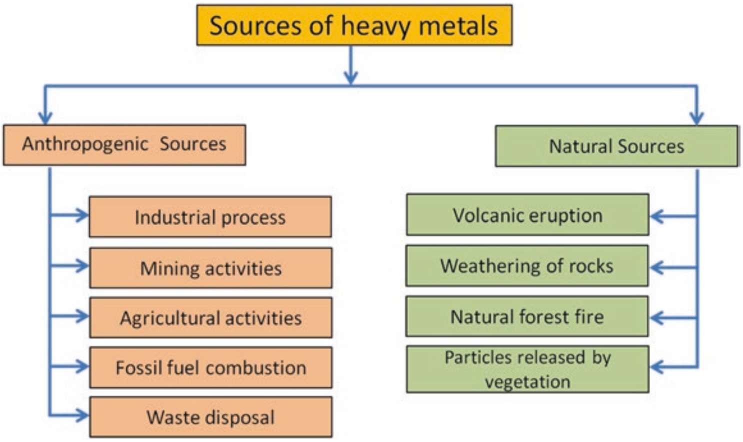


Fig. 4.1 Sources of heavy metals in the environment

compounds (VOCs), and heavy metals like Hg, Pb, Cd, and Au are released into the environment. Various heavy metals enter vegetation through root uptake in the soil or aerial deposition onto leaves and subsequent absorption or drainage into open stomata (Sardar et al. 2013).

Anthropogenic sources of toxic metals include industrial processes; mining and extraction operations; textile activities; landfill leaches; sewage discharge; urban runoff; industrial and municipal wastewater; fossil fuel combustion; wastewater application on agricultural land; application of fertilizers, insecticides, and pesticides; and other human sources (Morais et al. 2012). The main heavy metals found at polluted sites are Cd, As, Cr, Pb, Cu, Zn, Hg, and Ni (Wuana and Okieimen 2011; Bharagava and Mishra 2018).

Arsenic is a naturally occurring metalloid. Arsenic rarely exists as a free element in nature, but rather as a powdery amorphous and crystalline form in ores. The natural sources of arsenic are contributed by weathering of rocks, forest fires, volcanic eruptions, and geothermal waters. Beside natural sources, anthropogenic activities like mining and smelting processes, metallurgical operations and coal combustion, wood preservatives, and use of herbicides and pesticides play an important role in arsenic contamination in the environment (McArthur et al. 2001; Bhattacharyya et al. 2003; Kossoff and Hudson-Edwards 2012; Sailo and Mahanta 2014).

Cadmium finds its way into the environment through natural as well as anthropogenic sources. Natural sources include volcanic eruption, oceanic spray, and forest fires. The key anthropogenic sources of Cd contamination to the environment are coal mining, metal-ore refining, fossil fuel combustion, cadmium-containing pigments, phosphate fertilizers, alloys, electronic compounds, detergents, and rechargeable batteries. Chromium enters the environment naturally by weathering of rocks, oil and coal burning, volcanic eruption, soil and sediments, and anthropogenically enters from sewage, fertilizers, combustion of fossil fuels, manufacturing of plastics, chromate production, and metal electroplating (Mishra and Bharagava 2016). Paper, pulp, and rubber manufacturing, and use of chromium in the leather and tannery industries (Mohan et al. 2006; Saxena et al. 2017), are further anthropogenic sources. A large amount of wastewater is discharged from industries due to extensive use of chromium compounds which contain toxic chromium species.

Lead is a common, abundant, and toxic heavy metal. In the earth's crust, 0.1% by weight lead occurs in rocks and soil. Lead is also found naturally in some plants. Exposure to lead is associated with more than 900 industries, and it accumulates in soil as dust. Anthropogenic sources include mining, smelting, refining, and battery manufacturing (Karrari et al. 2012). Applications in fertilizers and pesticides, sewage sludge application as irrigation from polluted water bodies, effluent discharge from industries to rivers, and coal-based thermal power plants contribute to soil lead pollution (Jalali and Khanlari 2008).

Three forms of mercury exist in nature-elemental (metallic), inorganic salts, and organomercurial compounds. An average of 0.08 mg kg^{-1} Hg is present in the earth's crust and enters the environment from ocean evaporation, weathering of rocks and soils, forest fires, and volcanic gases. Anaerobic bacteria convert soil-bound Hg into dimethyl mercury. Plants take up Pb and release it as mercury vapour during transpiration. Mercury reaches the environment through anthropogenic activities like agriculture, burning of fossil fuels, municipal and industrial wastewater discharge, paper manufacturing, extensive use of the metal in industries, mining, and electrical appliances (Chen et al. 2012).

Naturally, nickel is found in soil and volcanic rock and enters into rivers and other water bodies through leaching of minerals and weathering of rocks and soils. Zinc is an essential element that occurs naturally in soil (approximately 70 mg kg^{-1} in crustal rocks) (Davies and Jones 1998). Zn enters the environment through industrial applications in mining and metallurgical processing of zinc ores and coal burning. Anthropogenic origin of these heavy metals in the soil tends to be more mobile and bioavailable than natural ones (Kuo et al. 1983).Table 4.1 shows the major heavy metals and their different sources.

4.3 Toxicity of Heavy Metals

The most abundant and commonly found heavy metals at contaminated sites are Pb, Hg, As, Cr, Cd, Zn, and Cu (USEPA 1996). Heavy metals are oxidized to carbon (IV) oxide in soil by the action of microorganisms. However, most of the heavy metals are not degraded by chemical or microbial action and their concentrations persist in soil for long periods of time (Adriano 2003). Metal toxicity affects many aquatic bodies as well as water quality criteria, and these problems are exacerbated because metals can transport along with sediments, enter into the environment, and finally bioaccumulate in the food chain. The presence of heavy metals in the soil, air, and water pose a serious threat to humans through skin absorption, contact with contaminated soil, direct ingestion of contaminated foods through bioaccumulation up the food chain, and drinking of contaminated ground water. Heavy metals may come in contact with humans through residential activities (e.g. fertilizers and pesticides),

Table 4.1 Different sources of heavy metals

Metal	Various sources
Aluminium	Cooking utensils, city water supplies, ore smelting plants, anti-perspirants, cosmetics, automotive exhausts, pesticides
Arsenic	Fuel burning, mining, thermal power plants, smelting operations, combustion of coal, production of iron and steel, tobacco smoke, metal foundries, specialty glass products, ore smelting plants, weed killers, pesticides, fungicides, wood preservatives
Cadmium	Waste batteries, e-waste, welding, electroplating, ceramic glazes/enamels, cigarette smoke, food (from cadmium-contaminated soil), tap and well water, pesticides, fungicides, sewage, paints sludge, mines, incinerations and fuel combustion, power and smelting plants, seafood
Chromium	Mines, mineral sources, industrial coolants, chromium salts used in manufacturing, leather tanning, sewage, and fertilizers
Copper	Copper cookware, jewellery, dental alloys, water from copper pipe, mining, electroplating, smelting operations, fungicides, pesticides
Lead	Fuel combustion, lead in industrial processes, gasoline, smelting operations, solid waste combustion, metal plating and finishing operations, used in ceramics and dishware, PVC mini-blinds, coal-based thermal power plants, fertilizers, pesticides
Mercury	Solid waste combustion, mining, smelting, thermal power plants, fluorescent lamps, batteries, thermometers, barometers, dental amalgam fillings, cosmetics, pesticides, insecticides, fungicides, paints, laxatives, fish, shellfish, tap and well water, thermostats, vaccines
Zinc	Metal plating, electroplating, smelting, refineries, plumbing, brass manufacture
Nickel	Thermal power plants, electroplating, smelting, batteries

industrial processes (e.g., manufacturing), pharmaceuticals, and agriculture. Heavy metals enter into human body through ingestion and absorption, and it becomes injurious to human health when their rate of accumulation outnumbers the rate of discharge.

4.3.1 Toxicity of Heavy Metals to Animals

Generally, small amounts of heavy metals are necessary for good health, but prolonged exposure and higher concentrations become toxic or detrimental to human health. Toxicity of heavy metals can cause chronic, degenerative conditions, reduced energy levels, damage vital organs, and lower blood quality. Prolonged exposure of heavy metals can cause physical, muscular, and neurological degenerative problems, cancer-like diseases, and eventually death (Jarup 2003). Examples of health effects of heavy metals and route of entry to the human body are summarized in Table 4.2.

Table 4.2 Route of entry and the health effects of important heavy metals

Metal	Route of entry	Health effects	Symptoms/disease	References
Pb	Inhalation of dust particles or aerosols, consumption of Pb-contaminated food, water, and dermal contact	Higher concentration of the metal may damage the foetus and central nervous system. Lead toxicity harms kidneys, liver, haemoglobin synthesis, endocrine system, reproductive system, irreversible brain damage	Irritability, headache, poor attention span, dullness and memory loss, nausea, insomnia, anorexia, anaemia	NSC (2009); Wuana and Okieimen (2011)
Cr	Inhalation, through the skin	Higher concentrations cause skin ulceration, damage the kidney and affect the central nervous system. Occupational and environmental exposure to Cr (VI)-containing compounds cause asthma, allergy, and cancer	Vomiting, persisting diarrhoea, anaemia, irritation, and ulcers in the stomach	Goyer (2001)
As	Inhalation, ingestion, dermal contact, and the parenteral route to some extent	Carcinogen to skin, lung, bladder, kidney, gastrointestinal damage, birth defects, diarrhoea, severe vomiting, and death	Weakness, skin lesions, sloughing, fever, hypovolemic shock, anorexia, gastrointestinal pain, peripheral vascular disease, pulmonary disease, diabetes mellitus, hypertension, cardiovascular disease, hematemesis, haemolysis, jaundice, proteinuria, haematuria	Tchounwou et al. (1999); Smith et al. (2000)
Zn	Ingestion	Increased cholesterol levels and anaemia	Abdominal pain, lack of muscular coordination, nausea, and vomiting in children	Wuana and Okieimen (2011)
Cd	Inhalation and ingestion	Renal dysfunction, lung cancer, increase blood pressure, oxidative stress, and enzymatic systems of cells	Headaches, weakness, chills, vomiting, nausea, diarrhoea, pulmonary oedema. “Itai-Itai” disease caused by Cd toxicity results in multiple fractures arising from osteomalacia	Murata et al. (1970)

(continued)

Table 4.2 (continued)

Metal	Route of entry	Health effects	Symptoms/disease	References
Cu	Ingestion of Cu-contaminated food	Irritation of stomach and intestine, anaemia, kidney and liver damage, central nervous system damage, and depression	Vomiting, diarrhoea, and loss of strength	Wuana and Okieimen (2011)
Hg	Absorption through skin, inhalation, ingestion, consumption of contaminated aquatic animals	Methyl mercury is highly toxic and harmful to the central nervous system and causes adverse neurological and behavioural changes; DNA damage, brain dysfunction, reproductive effects (i.e. birth defects, miscarriages, and sperm damage)	Symptoms: itching, rashes, redness, skin peeling to the nose and soles of the feet, tension, headaches, sleeplessness, vomiting, irritability, fatigue. Methyl mercury toxicity causes Minamata disease in Japan	Jan et al. (2015)

4.3.2 Toxicity of Heavy Metals to Plants

Plants require trace amounts of certain heavy metals like Zn, Cu, Fe, Mo, Mn, Ni, and Co for their growth, but higher level of these metals may be harmful and toxic to the plants. Forest canopy trees capture the air pollutants that get accumulated on their leaf surface. Concentrations of metals higher than optimum levels adversely affect the plant both directly and indirectly. Some examples of negative impacts caused by heavy metals on plants are inhibition of cytoplasmic enzymes and plant growth by chromium; photosynthesis inhibition by Cu and Hg; inhibition of seed germination and decrease of lipid content by Cd; structural damage of cells due to oxidative stress; decrease of plant growth and reduction of chlorophyll content by Pb; and reduction of seed germination by Ni (Gardea-Torresdey et al. 2005). Indirect effects include affecting microbial activities that affect plant growth and replacement of important nutrients at the cation exchange sites of the plants (Taiz and Zeiger 2002).

In plants, cadmium, lead, and nickel are highly toxic at comparatively lower levels. Cadmium is bio-persistent and has a high residence period. Plants grown in soil contaminated with Cd gradually take up the metal, which accumulate in their tissue. Noticeable symptoms like growth inhibition, chlorosis, root tip browning, and finally death commonly follows due to Cd toxicity. Cd adversely affects enzymatic activities, creating oxidative stress leading to nutritional deficiency in plants (Irfan et al. 2013). High concentration of Cd within plants reduced the nitrate reductase enzyme activity in shoots, resulting in the reduction of nitrate absorption and its transport from roots to shoots.

Most of the lead absorbed from the soil remains in plant roots. Lead toxicity affects plant morphology, growth, and photosynthetic processes and causes abnormal morphology and lignification of cortical parenchyma (Paivoke 1983). High Pb concentrations induce reactive oxygen species (ROS) and damage the lipid membrane, which causes adverse impacts to chlorophyll and inhibits photosynthetic processes and ultimately affects the overall plant development (Najeeb et al. 2014). Production of ROS may also damage nucleic acids and proteins and cause structural damage to cells. Nickel is essential in small doses; however, high concentrations of Ni in soil cause some physiological alterations in plants, chlorosis, and necrosis symptoms (Rahman et al. 2005). Ni toxicity changes water balance, reduces enzyme activity, and decreases chlorophyll content and stomatal conductance in pigeon pea (*Cajanus cajan*).

Chromium toxicity includes inhibition of seed germination, leaf chlorosis, root growth reduction, and reduction in plant biomass. Chlorosis and necrosis symptoms are found due to chromium toxicity in plants (Ghani 2011). Oxidative stress caused by chromium toxicity leads to degradation of photosynthetic pigments in plants. Higher concentration of zinc in soil inhibits plant metabolic activities, resulting in leaf senescence, and retarded root and shoot growth. Toxicity of zinc causes chlorosis in younger leaves, and after prolonged exposure, it extends to older leaves (Ebbs and Kochian 1997).

4.4 Remediation of Heavy Metals from Water and Wastewater

The majority of heavy metals cause adverse impacts on living organisms at very low doses and their remediation from the contaminated sites is a challenging but pivotal task. Several methods have been investigated for detoxification of heavy metals present in aquatic ecosystems. Physicochemical methods include adsorption, filtration, chemical precipitation/coagulation, membrane separation, and solvent extraction (Table 4.3).

Phytoremediation has been popularized for the remediation of toxic substances from the contaminated environment while being environmentally friendly and cost-effective (Bauddh and Singh 2012; Bauddh et al. 2016; Bharagava et al. 2017a, b). Although it is a slow process, it provides several value-added benefits such as carbon and nutrient sequestration, biofuel production, and aesthetic values (Bauddh et al. 2015; Chakravarty et al. 2017; Kumar et al. 2017).

Application of algae for the removal of water contaminants is currently observed in wastewater ecosystems. This process of remediation is termed ‘phycoremediation’ in which micro- or macro-algae are used for the decontamination of wastewater. Phycoremediation is used for the removal of excess nutrients, heavy metals, pesticides, dyes, and metal nanoparticles (Ettajani et al. 2001; Pawlik-Skowronska 2003; Chakravarty et al. 2015; Hultberg et al. 2016; Delgadillo-Mirquez et al. 2016;

Table 4.3 Conventional methods for the removal of heavy metals from contaminated water and wastewater (Volesky 2001; O'Connell et al. 2008; Monteiro et al. 2012)

Name of method	Mechanism	Advantage	Disadvantage
Adsorption	Removal by binding of contaminants on the surface of adsorbents	Applicable to wide range of contaminants	Adsorbent dependent
Membrane filtration	Removing contaminants from water by membrane filtration	No waste as by-product	High cost and difficult maintenance
Ion exchange	Exchange of water contaminants as ions by non-hazardous/beneficial ions	High efficiency	High cost and difficult maintenance
Reverse osmosis	Applied high pressure to contaminants from high concentration towards low concentration	High efficiency	High cost
Electrochemical treatment	Applied electricity to remove the dissolved contaminants	No chemicals required for the process	Expensive

Babu et al. 2018). The wastewater is rich in nutrients that are required for algal growth and development like nitrogen, phosphorous, potassium, and other chemicals (Becker 1994; Dominic et al. 2009; Renuka et al. 2013, 2015; Whitton et al. 2015). The cultivation of algae in wastewater also reduces the cost of biodiesel production that requires significant quantities of water, nutrients, light, and energy for equipment (Gupta et al. 2015, 2016). Several researchers have studied using wastewater as a medium for the cultivation of algae for the production of biofuels (Chevalier et al. 2000; Xin et al. 2010; Park et al. 2010; Zhou et al. 2011; Gupta et al. 2015, 2016), which further reduces the cost of phycoremediation.

4.5 Phycoremediation

Wastewater bears diverse groups of inorganic and organic chemicals that can serve as suitable growth conditions for both micro and macroalgae (Olguí 2003; Cai et al. 2013; Gupta et al. 2016). The use of algae for the decontamination of majority of wastewater has been proved to be very effective by several researchers (Cai et al. 2013; Gupta et al. 2016). Algae-based removal of heavy metals works on two major processes: first is through metabolism-dependent uptake and second is biosorption (i.e. adsorption of metals on the algal cells) (Matagi et al. 1998; Afkar et al. 2010). A number of algal species like *Scenedesmus acutus, Chlorella vulgaris*, *Lemna minor, Nostoc muscorum*, *Phormidium ambiguum*, *Pseudochlorococcum typicum*, *Scenedesmus quadricauda,* and *Spirogyra hyaline* have been found to have excellent abilities to extract toxic metals from water and wastewater (Travieso et al. 1999; Peña-Castro et al. 2004; Kumar and Oommen 2012; Shanab et al. 2012; Dixit and Singh 2014; Singh et al. 2016; Gupta et al. 2017; Samadani et al. 2018).

Samadani et al. (2018) studied the bioaccumulation of Cd in *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii* and an acid-tolerant strain CPCC 121 during 48 h at two different pH conditions. *C. reinhardtii* was found to bear a greater Cd uptake in comparison with the strain CPCC 121. Ajayan et al. (2015) used Scenedesmus sp. for the remediation of Cr, Cu, Pb, and Zn from tannery wastewater. *Scenedesmus* removed Cr by 81.2–96%, Cu by 73.2–98%, Pb by 75–98%, and Zn by 65–98%.

Ajayan et al. (2011) studied the accumulation of Cu, Co, Zn, and Pb by *Scenedesmus bijuga* and *Oscillatoria quadripunctulata* through cultivating them in sewage water and petrochemical effluent. They found that both the species accumulated significant amounts of all the studied heavy metals, and the rate of accumulation from sewage wastewater and petrochemical effluent was 37–50, 20.3–33.3, 34.6–100, and 32.1–100%, respectively, for *O. quadripunctulata* and 60–50, 29.6–66, 15.4–25 and 42.9–50%, respectively, for *S. bijuga*. In a study conducted by Singh et al. (2016), *Lemna minor*, an aquatic plant commonly known as Duckweed, was found to accumulate As up to 735 mg kg^{-1} in its leaves. *Lemna minor* was cultivated in an aquatic area naturally contaminated by As. Kim et al. (2003) evaluated heavy metal (Cu, Cd, Cr, Zn, and Pb) accumulation potential of the brown macroalga *Sargassum horneri*. The metal accumulated was in the order of Zn > Cu > Cr > Pb > Cd. Chen and Pan (2005) examined applicability of the Cyanobacteria genus *Spirulina* for the removal of Pb from wastewater. Adsorption rate of *Spirulina* was found 74% of Pd and the maximum biosorption efficiency of *Spirulina* cells was 0.62 mg Pb per 10^5 algal cells.

The microalga *Scenedesmus incrassatulus* was used to remove three heavy metals (Cu, Cd, and Cr) growing in wastewater (Peña-Castro et al. 2004). Cr and Cd were found to bear significant positive interaction which enhanced the removal of both metals. *S. incrassatulus* efficiently removed the metals by 25–78%. Travieso et al. (1999) studied the effects of Cd, Cr, and Zn on the growth of *Scenedesmus acutus* and *Chlorella vulgaris* and their metal accumulation capacity. Both microalgae had good metal tolerance capacity, allowing these algae to remove higher concentrations of these toxic metals. Maximum Cd, Zn, and Cr removal efficiency of *Chlorella vulgaris* was 38–78% and for *Scenedesmus acutus* was 31–91%. Three microalgae (*Pseudochlorococcum typicum, Phormidium ambiguum*, and *Scenedesmus quadricauda*) were studied for the removal of Hg, Pb, and Cd in aqueous solutions by Shanab et al. (2012). They found that Hg caused severe toxic effects even at low concentration. However, initial concentrations of two other metals (Pb and Cd) increased algal growth. The removal of Hg, Pb, and Cd by *P. typicum* was highest 97% for Hg, followed by 86% for Cd, and 70% for Pb in the first 30 min of contact time. Azizi et al. (2012) used Oscillatoria sp. for biosorption of Cd cultivated in artificial aqueous solution. They observed that this alga has good potential for biosorption of the metal, and various factors influence the biosorption rate.

Kumar and Oommen (2012) used dry biomass of *Spirogyra hyaline* for the removal of five metals Hg, Cd, Pb, As, and Co. The highest amount of metals such as As, Cd, and Hg were removed at lower metal concentrations (i.e. 40 mg L^{-1}); however, Co and Pb exhibited the highest removal at 80 mg L^{-1}. The metal adsorption by dry biomass was found in order of Hg > Pb > Cd > As > Co. In a study conducted by Rehman and Shakoori (2004), *Chlorella* sp. found to have substantial tolerance against Cd at the concentration of 10 mg/mL and Ni at the concentration of 12 mg mL^{-1}. Chlorella removed significant amounts of both the metals. The reduction of Cd after 28 days from solution was up to 96%, and in the reduction of Ni from the medium after 28 days was 94%. *Tetraselmis suecica* and *Skeletonema costatum* were found to be hyperaccumulators of Cd (Ettajani et al. 2001). Zhou et al. (2012) studied Zn and Cu removal potential by two marine algae *Chlorella pyrenoidosa* and *Scenedesmus obliquus*. Both the species were found to bear approximately 100% metal removal ability. The applications of algal species in the removal of various heavy metals are shown in Table 4.4.

4.5.1 Factors Influencing Phycoremediation

Removal of toxic metals by using algae is a natural and cost-effective technique, and it depends on several factors like type and level of contaminants, algal species, algal biomass, temperature, pH, presence of nutrients, and other factors (Selatina et al. 2004; Murugesan et al. 2006; Zeraatkar et al. 2016; Samadani et al. 2018). Biological factors like interspecies competition and presence of microorganisms (bacteria, viruses, and fungi) influence the growth of the phycoremediator algal species and may create noticeable limiting parameters (Grobbelaar 2000; González-Fernández et al. 2011).

4.5.1.1 Effect of pH

Among various factors that can influence the biosorption of metal ions, pH of the solution is a pivotal parameter (Matheickal and Yu 1996; Selatina et al. 2004; Samadani et al. 2018). pH alters the properties of the growing medium, metal binding sites of the sorbents, as well as properties of the metal ions (Esposito et al. 2001; Selatina et al. 2004; Vijayaraghavan and Yun 2008; Monteiro et al. 2012). Several studies reported that metal removal rate is enhanced with increased pH, while decreased pH values reduce the metal sorption efficiency of algal species (Mehta and Gaur 2001; Chojnacka et al. 2005; Gupta et al. 2006; Doshi et al. 2007; Liping et al. 2008; Abdel-Aty et al. 2013; Li et al. 2017). Sheng et al. (2004) reported that optimum pH for highest biosorption for Pb and Cu is 5.0 and for Cd, Zn, and Ni is pH 5.5 for marine algae *Padina* sp., *Gracilaria* sp., *Sargassum* sp., and *Ulva* sp.

Many researchers have observed that increased pH (5.0–6.0) reduces electrostatic repulsions between the adsorbents' surface and metals, resulting in increased metal removal by the algae (Ibrahim 2011; Momcilovic et al. 2011; Hassan et al. 2014). Samadani et al. (2018) studied phycoremediation potential of two algal species (*Chlamydomonas reinhardtii* and CPCC 121, an acid-tolerant strain) in two pH conditions (pH 4 and pH 7). At pH 7, Cd removal ability of *C. reinhardtii* was found

Table 4.4 Application of several algal species for the removal of heavy metal

Algal species	Metal(s)	Medium of cultivation	References
Scenedesmus acutus and *Chlorella vulgaris*	Cd, Zn, and Cr	Synthetic growth medium	Travieso et al. (1999)
Nostoc rivularis and *N. linckia*	Cd and Zn	Sewage water	El-Enany and Issa (2000)
Sargassum horneri	Cu, Cd, Cr, Zn, and Pb	Natural coast	Kim et al. (2003)
Scenedesmus incrassatulus	Cr, Cd, and Cu	Artificial wastewater	Peña-Castro et al. (2004)
Chlorella sp.	Cd and Ni	Synthetic growth medium	Rehman and Shakoori (2004)
Anabaena subcylindrica and *Nostoc muscorum*	Cu, Mn, Co, and Pb	Industrial wastewater and Sewage	El-Sheekh et al. (2003)
Spirulina sps	Pb	Synthetic growth medium	Chen and Pan (2005)
Cladophora fascicularis	Pb and Cu	Aqueous solution	Liping et al. (2008)
Scenedesmus bijuga and *Oscillatoria quadripunctulata*	Cu, Co, Pb, Zn	Sewage water	Ajayan et al. (2011)
Caulerpa racemosa and *Sargassum wightii*	Cr, Pb, and Cd	Aqueous solution	Tamilselvan et al. (2012)
Oscillatoria sp.	Cd	Artificial aqueous solution	Azizi et al. (2012)
Spirogyra hyalina	Cd, Hg, P, As, and Co	Artificial aqueous solution	Kumar and Oommen (2012)
Ulva lactuca	Cd	Artificial aqueous solution	Lupea et al. (2012)
Pseudochlorococcum typicum, Phormidium ambiguum, and *Scenedesmus quadricauda*	Hg, Pb, and Cd	Artificial aqueous solution	Shanab et al. (2012)
Chlorella pyrenoidosa and *Scenedesmus obliquus*	Zn and Cu	Artificial aqueous solution	Zhou et al. (2012)
Nostoc muscorum	Cd and Pb	Metal solution	Dixit and Singh (2014)
Spirulina platensis	Cd	Artificial aqueous solution	Al-Homaidan et al. (2015)
Scenedesmus sp.	Cr, CU, Pb, and Zn	Tannery wastewater	Ajayan et al. (2015)
Lemna minor	As	Natural contaminated area	Singh et al. (2016)
Chlamydomonas reinhardtii	Cd	Artificial aqueous solution	Samadani et al. (2018)

to be limited due to its toxicity that was also dependent on exposure time and concentration of the metal in the growing medium. Rangsayatorn et al. (2004) reported insignificant removal of Cd by *Spirulina platensis* at pH 3.0; however, at higher pH up to 8.0, Cd adsorption increased substantially.

4.5.1.2 Effect of Temperature

Temperature of the medium is also an important limiting factor for the removal of metal contaminants of the aquatic ecosystems. Temperature may alter the metal removal potential of algal species and the chemistry of heavy metals. Higher temperature increased metal-binding ability of algae by enhancing surface activity as well as kinetic energy of the contaminants (Skowronski 1986; Sag and Kutsal 2000; Mehta et al. 2002; Vijayaraghavan and Yun 2007). Few studies indicate that the sorption of metal ions reduced with increased temperature (Suhasini et al. 1999; Benquell and Benaissa 2002; Sari et al. 2007; Herrero et al. 2008).

4.5.1.3 Effect of Contact Time

Heavy metal removal efficiency of algal biomass is influenced by contact time (Murugesan et al. 2006; Aroua et al. 2008; Wu et al. 2008; Saif et al. 2012). Ibrahim (2011) observed that *Ulva lactuca* and its activated carbon have maximum sorption capacity at a contact time of 60 min for Cd, Cr, Pb, and Cu ions. They also reported that after 60 min the adsorption rate was almost constant. Abdel-Aty et al. (2013) studied the impact of contact time on removal of Pb and Cd by *Anabaena sphaerica*. They found that the biosorption of the metals was faster in the initial 20 min, and after that it was gradually increased up to 60 and 90 min for Cd and Pb, respectively. Chen et al. (2008) reported a similar trend of Ni and Cu removal by *Undaria pinnatifida* and contact time.

4.5.1.4 Effect of Biomass Concentration

In phycoremediation, biomass concentration has been found to be a strong metal biosorption-influencing factor (Nuhoglu et al. 2002; Gong et al. 2005; Karthikeyan et al. 2007; Sari and Tuzen 2008; Abdel-Aty et al. 2013). Increased biomass in the growing medium adversely influences the biosorption (Hamdy 2000; Nuhoglu et al. 2002; Gong et al. 2005). This is probably due to the aggregate's formation of the biosorbent at higher biomass that decreases the surface area of the biosorbents (Karthikeyan et al. 2007; Sari and Tuzen 2008). Abdel-Aty et al. (2013) found that the biosorption of Pb and Cd by *Anabaena sphaerica* was enhanced by increasing biosorbent and became constant at higher dosage from 0.1 g 100 mL^{-1} for Pb and 0.2 g 100 mL^{-1} for Cd. Al-Homaidan et al. (2015) reported that the biosorption efficiency of *Spirulina platensis* for Cd increases with higher biomass from 0.25 to 2 g; however, at 1.75 and 2 g doses, no substantial change occurred during the study. Solisio et al. (2008) observed that the dose of 2.0 g of *Spirulina platensis* is sufficient for the removal of Cd up to 98%.

4.5.1.5 Effect of Metal Ion Concentration

The removal of metal ions basically depends on the concentration of metal present in the medium (Saleem and Bhatti 2011; Al-Homaidan et al. 2015). Generally, the biosorption of metal ions increases if the metal concentration in the medium increases, but this is up to a certain limit, and thereafter, the biosorption may be saturated or decreased (Aloysius et al. 1999; Saleem and Bhatti 2011; Lupea et al. 2012; Al-Homaidan et al. 2015). Biosorption of Cd by *Ulva lactuca* increased at metal concentration from 22.53 to 540.62 mg L^{-1}; however, Cd removal decreased from 80.78 to 42.43% at higher doses of the metal (Lupea et al. 2012). Ibrahim (2011) reported that the biosorption of Cu, Cr, Cd, and Pb by *Ulva lactuca* increased in the beginning and achieved maximum removal by 87.5% at 60 mg L^{-1}. After this dose of metal ions, the rate of adsorption was largely unchanged. Further increased metal level decreased the adsorption process.

4.6 Carbon Sequestration Potential of Algae

Climate change is a serious global issue. Some debate that it is caused by various natural internal or external processes, but the majority of credible scientists that the main driver of global climate change (GCC) is anthropogenic. CO_2 is the chief greenhouse gas (GHG), and its sequestration through algae is an important tool for mitigation of GHG (Eloka-Eboka and Inambao 2017). Although the global warming potential of CO_2 is lower than methane (CH_3), increased sources emitting CO_2 is what makes it the most serious GHG. The option of sequestering CO_2 naturally through biological means is attractive because plants naturally capture CO_2 through photosynthesis (Maraskolhe et al. 2012). Carbon capture along with bioenergy production (creating biofuel through algal oils) can play a pivotal role for CO_2 mitigation (Moreira and Pires 2016).

In aquatic ecosystems, both macro- and microalgae play a significant role in capturing carbon. The carbon is sequestered by these algal species in the form of bicarbonates (HCO_3) or CO_2. Carbon is the basic constituent of all organic molecules. Accumulated stored oils can be harvested to produce bioethanol, biodiesel, polyunsaturated fatty acids, and other bio-products (Spolaore et al. 2006; Milledge 2011; Razzak et al. 2013; Klinthong et al. 2015).

Different species of algae have different tolerance levels for CO_2. Ono and Cuello (2003) found that *Cyanidium caldarium* was the most CO_2-tolerant species they studied. However, several other species like *Scenedesmus* sp., *Chlorococcum* *littorale, Synechococcus elongatus,* and *Euglena gracilis* have also been found to have good tolerance levels (60–80%).

Creating a huge carbon sink would require large areas of aquatic habitat as well as large capital expense. The use of algae has been seen as an economical and feasible solution in this regard. Microalgae are more photosynthetically efficient than terrestrial plants because they have greater access to nutrients, water, and CO_2 and can thus more efficiently convert solar energy into biomass (Maraskolhe et al. 2012). It has been estimated that about 173 Tg C year^{-1} of CO_2 could be globally sequestered by macroalgae. They can fix CO_2 from various sources like industrial exhaust, soluble carbonate salts, and other sources. Generally used microalgae include Chlorophyceae (green algae), Cyanophyceae (blue-green algae, which are actually photosynthetic bacteria), Bacillariophyceae (diatoms), and Chrysophyceae (golden algae).

The carbon sequestration potential of algae can be further enhanced by manipulating key enzymes through genetic engineering (Bajhaiy et al. 2017). The amount of CO_2 fixation plays an important role in affecting various metabolic processes of the cell including carbohydrate, lipid, and biomass synthesis (Wang et al. 2008). One of the advantages associated with capturing carbon in aquatic habitats is the efficiency to sequester CO_2 in the non-gaseous form of bicarbonates that fertilizes algal growth. At pH ≥ 7 and temperature <30 °C, bicarbonate is the dominant form of CO_2 in water. Algae have active pumps for bicarbonate, and they have the ability to concentrate bicarbonates into their cell. This bicarbonate is then dehydrated, either by carbonic anhydrase or spontaneously, resulting in CO_2 trapped by the Calvin cycle. 1.6–2.0 g of CO_2 can be trapped per gram of algae biomass (Herzog and Golomb 2004).

Flue gas emitted from fossil fuel power plants has high emissions of CO_2 along with SOx and NOx gases. When this flue gas is injected into algal ponds, it increases algal biomass yield by almost threefold, but this requires a large amount of energy (Jeong et al. 2003). There are multiple factors that influence CO_2 sequestration, such as pH, temperature, oxides of sulphur (SOx), and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) in the flue gas, light, and other factors. It can be concluded that algae have a high carbon sequestration potential provided there are optimum conditions.

4.7 Bioenergy Production by Algae

Demand for energy has seen an unprecedented rise in the recent past, resulting in increased consumption of fossil fuel. There is still a sufficient supply of fossil fuel available economically, but using fossil fuel at this rapid rate is not safe for longer periods of time mainly due to rising GHG emissions. GHGs pose a severe impact on the environment through contributions to GCG. Therefore, there is a dire need to identify alternative sources of renewable energy that are economical as well as carbon neutral (Voloshin et al. 2016).

Biofuels are available for usage at a commercial scale such as bioethanol obtained from corn starch or sugarcane and biodiesel from oil crops, but crop-based biofuels raise critical ‘food versus fuel’ impacts on society (Demirbas 2009; Pittman et al. 2011). The advantages of using microalgae to sequester CO_2 and provide biofuel and other by-products is that they are not considered a ‘food’ crop for humans, they grow rapidly, and different species can be grown in saltwater, freshwater, and in polluted sewage and industrial water.

There are a number of advantages of using biodiesel produced from algae, including it does not have sulphur content; it is a ‘drop-in’ fuel (i.e. its chemical composition is quite similar to fossil fuel gasoline and can thus be used with little modification in internal combustion engines); and it generates less CO, SOx, NOx, and hydrocarbons emissions than combusting fossil fuels (Tokusoglu and Una 2003). Thus, biofuels obtained from cultivation of algae provides an alternative fuel that does not negatively affect agriculture. Algae like *Scenedesmus, Botryococcus,* and *Chlorella* have been tested for the production of biodiesel (Wang et al. 2013; Nascimento et al. 2013). Currently, researchers are focussing on maximizing the biodiesel yield from suitable species of algae, and much research and development is being done to increase the biodiesel production through cheaper and more effective technology. Biodiesel feedstock obtained from plants like Jatropha and Karanja needs to be pre-treated before production of biodiesel, which is not required for algae, which is yet another advantage (Delucchi 2003).

Wastewater proves to be an encouraging resource for the cultivation of microalgae (Chen et al. 2015). Combining cultivation of microalgae with treatment of wastewater (Fig. 4.2) can help in reducing CO_2 emissions, reduce nutrient pollution, and lowering the cost of biofuel production through not having to add fertilizer to enhance algal growth.

Some species of algae can accumulate high amount of lipids (Table 4.5) within their cells that may be exploited as feedstock for producing biodiesel, but intensive research is required to support this potential and optimize the systems of cultivation and harvesting of biomass (Simionato et al. 2013; Kumar et al. 2015). Production of biodiesel by lipid extracted from microalgae can be coupled with other energy processes that can make biodiesel a sustainable and economical product (Ansari et al. 2017).

Microalgal biotechnology shows a way forward as it can increase lipid and biomass productivity. Despite tremendous potential, traditional approaches are in dire need of improvement for increased lipid accumulation, so that they can be used for commercialization of biodiesel (Ravindran et al. 2017). However, production of biofuel has received a lot of attention currently, and it has the potential to replace the fossil fuels (Milano et al. 2016). Despite algae being considered as an alternative fuel, they are yet to attain techno-economic sustainability. Currently, the production of algal biofuel is costly (Lundquist et al. 2010). Biomass production faces a few technical issues with biomass production, processing of lipids, production of biofuel, and harvesting (Shriwastav and Gupta 2017).

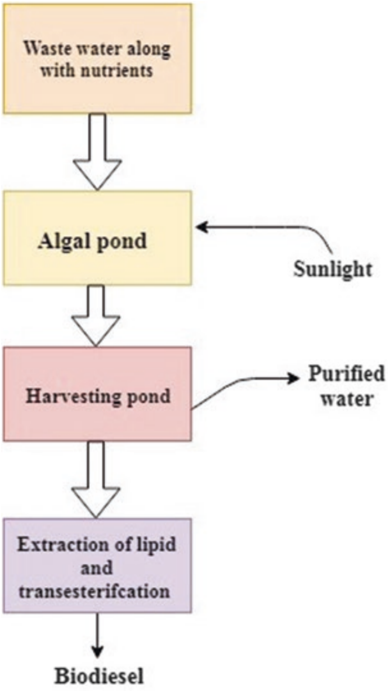


Fig. 4.2 A flowchart illustrating the production of biodiesel from algae in wastewater systems

Table 4.5 The lipid content of some microalgae (Gouveia and Oliveira 2009)

Species	Lipids (% dry matter)
Spirulina maxima	4–9
Chlorella minutissima	57
Dunaliella salina	14–20
Chlorella vulgaris	14–40/56
Chlorella emersonii	63
Chlorella sorokiniana	22
Dunaliella bioculata	8
Neochloris oleoabundans	3565
Scenedesmus obliquus	11–22/35–55
Chlorella protothecoides	23/55
Scenedesmus dimorphus	6–7/16–40

4.8 Conclusion

Toxic metal contamination of aquatic habitats is a severe environmental issue. Remediation of these contaminants through environmentally friendly technologies is a challenging task. Phycoremediation, especially of heavy metals, has emerged as a promising method that can synergistically remediate global environmental pollution through removing toxic metals along with other water contaminants like nutrients, dyes, pesticides, and metal nanoparticles; and coupling phycoremediation of contaminated water and wastewater with bioenergy production. Continued research advancements will hopefully remove the toxic heavy metals from contaminated water and wastewater by algae feasible and attractive for at commercial scale biodiesel production.

References

Abdel-Aty AM, Ammar NS, Ghafar HHA, Ali RK (2013) Biosorption of cadmium and lead from aqueous solution by fresh water alga *Anabaena sphaerica* biomass. J Adv Res 4(4):367–374

Adriano DC (2003) Trace elements in terrestrial environments: biogeochemistry, bioavailability and risks of metals, 2nd edn. Springer, New York

Afkar E, Ababna H, Fathi AA (2010) Toxicological response of the green alga *Chlorella vulgaris* to some heavy metals. Am J Environ Sci 6(3):230–237

Ahluwalia SS, Goyal D (2007) Microbial and plant derived biomass for removal of heavy metals from wastewater. Bioresour Technol 98:2243–2257

Ajayan KV, Selvaraju M, Thirugnanamoorthy K (2011) Growth and heavy metals accumulation potential of microalgae grown in sewage wastewater and petrochemical effluents. Pak J Biol Sci 14(16):805–811

Ajayan KV, Selvaraju M, Unnikannan P, Sruthi P (2015) Phycoremediation of tannery wastewater using microalgae *Scenedesmus* species. Int J Phytoremediation 17:907–916

Al-Homaidan AA, Alabdullatif JA, Al-Hazzani AA, Al-Ghanayem AA, Alabbad AF (2015) Adsorptive removal of cadmium ions by *Spirulina platensis* dry biomass. Saudi J Biol Sci 22(6):795–800

Aloysius R, Karim MIA, Arif AB (1999) The mechanism of cadmium removal from aqueous solution by non-metabolising free and immobilized live biomass of *Rhizopus oligosporus*. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 15:571–578

Ansari FA, Shek AY, Gupta SK, Bux F (2017) Microalgae for biofuels: applications, process constraints and future needs. In: Gupta SK, Malik A, Bux F (eds) Algal biofuels. Springer Nature, Switzerland AG, pp 57–76

Aroua MK, Leong SP, Teo LY, Yin CY, Daud WM (2008) Real-time determination of kinetics of adsorption of lead (II) onto palm shell-based activated carbon using ion selective electrode. Bioresour Technol 99:5786–5792

Azizi SN, Colagar AH, Hafeziyan SM (2012) Removal of Cd (II) from aquatic system using Oscillatoria sp. biosorbent. ScientificWorldJournal 2012:347053. https://doi.org/10.1100/2012/347053

Babu A, Katam K, Gundupalli MP, Bhattacharyya D (2018) Nutrient removal from wastewater using microalgae: a kinetic evaluation and lipid analysis. Water Environ Res 90(6):520–529

Bajhaiy AK, Mandotra SK, Ansolia A, Barsana A (2017) Recent advances in improving ecophysiology of microalgae for biofuels. In: Gupta SK, Malik A, Bux F (eds) Algal biofuels. Springer Nature, Switzerland AG, pp 141–162

Barakat MA (2011) New trends in removing heavy metals from industrial wastewater. Arab J Chem 4:361–377

Bauddh K, Singh RP (2012) Growth, tolerance efficiency and phytoremediation potential of Ricinus communis (L.) and Brassica juncea (L.) in salinity and drought affected cadmium contaminated soil. Ecotoxcol Environ Saf 85:13–22

Bauddh K, Singh K, Singh B, Singh RP (2015) *Ricinus communis*: a robust plant for bio-energy and phytoremediation of toxic metals from contaminated soil. Ecol Eng 84:640–652

Bauddh K, Singh B, Singh RP (2016) Ricinus communis L. as a value-added alternative for restoration of cadmium contaminated and degraded agricultural ecosystem. Bull Arch Environ Contam Toxicol 96(2):265–269

Becker EW (1994) Microalgae: biotechnology and microbiology. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp 1–293

Benquell B, Benaissa H (2002) Cadmium removal from aqueous solution by chitin: kinetic and equilibrium studies. Water Res 36:2463–2474

Bharagava RN, Mishra S (2018) Hexavalent chromium reduction potential of *Cellulosimicrobium* sp. isolated from common effluent treatment plant of tannery industries. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 147:102–109

Bharagava RN, Chowdhary P, Saxena G (2017a) Bioremediation: an eco-sustainable green technology, it's applications and limitations. In: Bharagava RN (ed) Environmental pollutants and their bioremediation approaches. CRC Press, Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton. ISBN 9781138628892

Bharagava RN, Saxena G, Chowdhary P (2017b) Constructed wetlands: an emerging phytotechnology for degradation and detoxification of industrial wastewaters. In: Bharagava RN (ed) Environmental pollutants and their bioremediation approaches. CRC Press, Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton. ISBN 9781138628892

Bhattacharyya R, Chatterjee D, Nath B, Jana J, Jacks G, Vahter M (2003) High arsenic groundwater: Mobilization, metabolism and mitigation – an overview in the Bengal Delta Plain. Mol Cell Biochem 253(1/2):347–355

Cai T, Park SY, Li Y (2013) Nutrient recovery from wastewater streams by microalgae: status and prospects. Renew Sust Energy Rev 19:360–369

Chakravarty P, Bauddh K, Kumar M (2015) Remediation of dyes from aquatic ecosystems by biosorption method using algae. In: Singh B, Bauddh K, Bux F (eds) Algae and environmental sustainability. Springer, New Delhi, pp 97–106

Chakravarty P, Bauddh K, Kumar M (2017) Phytoremediation: a multidimensional and ecologically viable practice for the clean-up of environmental contaminants. In: Bauddh K, Singh B, Korstad J (eds) Phytoremediation potential of bioenergy plant. Singapore, Springer Nature, pp 1–46. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-10-3084-0_1

Chandra R, Bharagava RN, Yadav S, Mohan D (2009) Accumulation and distribution of toxic metals in wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) and Indian mustard (*Brassica campestris* L.) irrigated with distillery and tannery effluents. J Hazard Mater 162:1514–1521

Chen H, Pan S (2005) Bioremediation potential of Spirulina: toxicity and biosorption studies of lead. J Zhejiang Univ Sci B 6(3):171–174

Chen Z, Ma W, Han M (2008) Biosorption of nickel and copper onto treated alga (*Undaria pinnatifida*): application of isotherm and kinetic models. J Hazard Mater 155:327–333

Chen CW, Chen CF, Dong CD (2012) Distribution and accumulation of mercury in sediments of Kaohsiung River Mouth, Taiwan. APCBEE Proc 1:153–158

Chen G, Zhao L, Qi Y (2015) Enhancing the productivity of microalgae cultivated in wastewater toward biofuel production: a critical review. Appl Energy 137:282–291

Chevalier P, Proulx D, Lessard P, Vincent WF, de la Noue J (2000) Nitrogen and phosphorus removal by high latitude mat-forming cyanobacteria for potential use in tertiary wastewater treatment. J Appl Phycol 12:105–112

Chojnacka K, Chojnacki A, Górecka H (2005) Biosorption of Cr^{3+}, Cd^{2+} and Cu^{2+} ions by blue-green algae *Spirulina* sp.: kinetics, equilibrium and the mechanism of the process. Chemosphere 59:75–84

Chong AMY, Wong YS, Tam NFY (2000) Performance of different microalgal species in removing nickel and zinc from industrial wastewater. Chemosphere 41:251–257

Davies BE, Jones LHP (1998) Micronutrients and toxic elements. In: Wild A (ed) Russell's soil conditions and plant growth, 11th edn. Wiley; Interscience, New York, pp 781–814

Delgadillo-Mirquez L, Lopes F, Taidi B, Pareau D (2016) Nitrogen and phosphate removal from wastewater with a mixed microalgae and bacteria culture. Biotechnol Rep 11:18–26

Delucchi MA (2003) A lifecycle emissions model (LEM): lifecycle emissions from transportation fuels, motor vehicles, transportation modes, electricity use, heating and cooking fuels. Main report UCD-ITS-RR-03-17

Demirbas A (2009) Biofuels securing the planet's future energy needs. Energy Convers Manag 50:2239–2249

Dixit S, Singh DP (2014) An evaluation of phycoremediation potential of cyanobacterium *Nostoc muscorum*: characterization of heavy metal removal efficiency. J Appl Phycol 26:1331–1342

Dominic VJ, Murali S, Nisha MC (2009) Phycoremediation efficiency of three micro algae *Chlorella vulgaris, Synechocystis salina* and *Gloeocapsa gelatinosa*. SB Acad Rev XVI(1–2):138–146

Doshi H, Ray A, Kothari IL (2007) Bioremediation potential of live and dead Spirulina: spectroscopic, kinetics and SEM studies. Biotechnol Bioeng 96(6):1051–1063

Ebbs SD, Kochian LV (1997) Toxicity of zinc and copper to *Brassica species*: implications for phytoremediation. J Environ Qual 26:776–781

El-Enany AE, Issa AA (2000) Cyanobacteria as a biosorbent of heavy metals in sewage water. Environ Toxicol Pharmacol 8(2):95–101

Eloka-Eboka AC, Inambao FL (2017) Effects of CO2 sequestration on lipid and biomass productivity in microalgal biomass production. Appl Energy 195:1100–1111

El-Sheekh MM, El-Naggar AH, Osman MEH, El-Mazaly E (2003) Effect of cobalt on growth, pigments and the photosynthetic electron transport in *Monoraphidium minutum* and *Nitzschia perminuta*. Braz J Plant Physiol 15:159–166

Esposito A, Pagnanelli F, Lodi A, Solisio C, Veglió F (2001) Biosorption of heavy metals by *Sphaerotilus natans*: an equilibrium study at different pH and biomass concentrations. Hydrometallurgy 60(2):129–141

Ettajani H, Berthet B, Amiard JC, Chevolot L (2001) Determination of cadmium partitioning in microalgae and oysters: contribution to the assessment of trophic transfer. Arch Environ Contam Toxicol 40:09–221

Forster CF, Wase AJ (1997) Biosorption of heavy metals: an introduction. In: Wase AJ, Forster CF (eds) Biosorbents for metal ions. Taylor & Francis Publishing, London, pp 1–10

Gardea-Torresdey JI, Peralta-Videa JR, Rosa GD, Parsons JG (2005) Phytoremediation of heavy metals and study of the metal coordination by X-ray absorption spectroscopy. Coord Chem Rev 249(17–18):1797–1810

Ghani A (2011) Effect of chromium toxicity on growth, chlorophyll and some mineral nutrients of *Brassica juncea* L. Egypt Acad J Biol Sci 2(1):9–15

Gong R, Ding Y, Liu H, Chen Q, Liu Z (2005) Lead biosorption and desorption by intact and pretreated *Spirulina maxima* biomass. Chemosphere 58:125–130

González-Fernández C, Sialve B, Bernet N, Steyer JP (2011) Impact of microalgae characteristics on their conversion to biofuel. Part 1: focus on cultivation and biofuel production. Biofuels Bioprod Biorefin 6:105–113

Gouveia L, Oliveira AC (2009) Microalgae as a raw material for biofuels production. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 36(2):269–274

Goyer RA (2001) Toxic effects of metals. In: Klaassen CD (ed) Cassarett and Doull's toxicology: the basic science of Poisons. McGraw-Hill Publisher, New York, pp 811–867

Grobbelaar JU (2000) Physiological and technological considerations for optimizing mass algal cultures. J Appl Phycol 12:201–206

Gupta VK, Rastogi A, Saini VK, Jain N (2006) Biosorption of copper (II) from aqueous solutions by *Spirogyra* species. J Colloid Interf Sci 296:59–63

Gupta SK, Shrivastav A, Kumari S, Ansari FA, Malik A, Bux F (2015) Phycoremediation of emerging contaminants. In: Singh B, Bauddh K, Bux F (eds) Algae: role in sustainable energy production and pollution remediation. Springer Nature, Switzerland AG, pp 129–146. https://doi.org/10.1007/978–18–322–2641–34

Gupta SK, Ansari FA, Shriwastav A, Sahoo NK, Rawat I, Bux F (2016) Dual role of *Chlorella sorokiniana* and *Scenedesmus obliquus* for comprehensive wastewater treatment and biomass production for bio-fuels. J Clean Prod 115:255–264

Gupta SK, Ansari FA, Bauddh K, Singh B, Nema AK, Pant KK (2017) Harvesting of microalgae for biofuels: comprehensive performance evaluation of natural, inorganic, and synthetic flocculants. In: Green technologies and environmental sustainability. Springer Nature, Singapore, pp 131–156

Hamdy AA (2000) Biosorption of heavy metals by marine algae. Curr Microbiol 41:232–238

Hassan AF, Abdel-Mohsen AM, Fouda MMG (2014) Comparative study of calcium alginate, activated carbon, and their composite beads on methylene blue adsorption. Carbohydr Polym 102:192–198

Herrero R, Lodeiro P, Rojo R, Ciorba A, RodeÍguez P, Manuel E, Sastre DEV (2008) The efficiency of the red alga *Mastocarpus stellatus* for remediation of cadmium pollution. Bioresour Technol 99(10):4138–4146

Herzog H, Golomb D (2004) Carbon capture and storage from fossil fuel use. Encycl Energy 1:1–11

Hultberg M, Bodin H, Ardal E, Asp H (2016) Effect of microalgal treatments on pesticides in water. Environ Technol 37(7):893–898

Ibrahim WM (2011) Biosorption of heavy metal ions from aqueous solution by red macroalgae. J Hazard Mater 192:1827–1835

Irfan M, Hayat S, Ahmad A, Alyemeni MN (2013) Soil cadmium enrichment: allocation and plant physiological manifestations. Saudi J Biol Sci 20(1):1–10

Jalali M, Khanlari ZV (2008) Environmental contamination of Zn, Cd, Ni, Cu and Pb from industrial areas in Hamadan Province, western Iran. Environ Geol 55:1537–1543

Jan AF, Azam M, Siddiqui K, Ali A, Choi I, Haq QMR (2015) Heavy metals and human health: mechanistic insight into toxicity and counter defence system of antioxidants. Int J Mol Sci 16(12):29592–29630

Jarup L (2003) Hazards of heavy metal contamination. Br Med Bull 68(1):167–182

Jeong ML, Gillis JM, Hwang JY (2003) Carbon-di-oxide mitigation by microalgal photosynthesis. Bull Korean Chem Soc 24:1763–1766

Karrari P, Mehrpour O, Abdollahi M (2012) A systemic review on status of lead pollution and toxicity in Iran; Guidance for preventive measures. Daru 20(1):2

Karthikeyan S, Balasubramanian R, Iyer CS (2007) Evaluation of the marine algae Ulva fasciata and Sargassum sp. for the biosorption of Cu (II) from aqueous solutions. Bioresour Technol 98:452–455

Khoshmanesh A, Lawson F, Prince IG (1996) Cadmium uptake by unicellular green microalgae. Chem Eng J 62:81–88

Kim SY, Sidharthan M, Yoo YH, Lim CY, Joo JH, Yoo JS, Shin HW (2003) Accumulation of heavy metals in Korean marine seaweeds. Algae 18(4):349–354

Klinthong W, Yang YH, Huang CH, Hung ST (2015) A review: microalgae and their applications in CO capture and renewable energy. Aerosol Air Qual Res 15:712–742

Kossoff D, Hudson-Edwards KA (2012) Arsenic in the environment. In: Santini JM, Ward SM (eds) The metabolism of arsenite, Arsenic in the Environment, vol 5. CRC Press, London, pp 1–23

Kumar JI, Oommen C (2012) Removal of heavy metals by biosorption using freshwater alga *Spirogyra hyalina*. J Environ Biol 33(1):27–31

Kumar D, Singh B, Bauddh K, Korstad J (2015) Bio-oil and biodiesel as biofuels derived from microalgal oil and their characterization by using instrumental techniques. In: Singh B, Bauddh K, Bux F (eds) Algae and environmental sustainability. Springer, New Delhi, pp 87–95

Kumar V, Karela RP, Korstad J, Kumar S, Srivastava R, Bauddh K (2017) Ecological, economical and life cycle assessment of algae and its biofuel. In: Gupta SK, Malik A, Bux F (eds) Algal biofuel, recent advances and future prospects. Springer Nature, Switzerland AG, pp 451–466

Kuo S, Heilman PE, Baker AS (1983) Distribution and forms of copper, zinc, cadmium, iron, and manganese in soils near a copper smelter. Soil Sci 135:101–109

Li Y, Xia L, Huang R, Xiaa C, Song S (2017) Algal biomass from the stable growth phase as a potential biosorbent for Pb (II) removal from water. RSC Adv 7:34600–34608

Liping DB, Xiaobin Z, Yingying SB, Hua SB, Xinting WA (2008) Biosorption and desorption of Cd^{2+} from wastewater by dehydrated shreds of *Cladophora fascicularis*. Chin J Oceanol Limnol 26(1):45–49

Lundquist TJ, Woertz IC, Quinn NWT, Benemann JR (2010) A realistic technology and engineering assessment of algae biofuel production. Energy Biosciences Institute, University of California, Berkeley

Lupea M, Bulgariu L, Macoveanu M (2012) Biosorption of Cd(ii) from aqueous solution on marine green algae biomass. Environ Eng Manag J 11(3):607–615

Maraskolhe VR, Warghat AR, Charan G (2012) Carbon sequestration potential of Scenedesmus species (Microalgae) under the fresh water ecosystem. Afr J Agr Res 18:2818–2823

Matagi SV, Swaiand D, Mugabe R (1998) A review of heavy metal removal mechanisms in wetlands. Afr J Trop Hydrobiol Fish 8:23–35

Matheickal JT, Yu Q (1996) Biosorption of lead from aqueous solutions by marine alga *Ecklonia radiata*. Water Sci Technol 34:1–7

McArthur JM, Ravenscroft P, Safiulla S, Thirlwall MF (2001) Arsenic in groundwater: testing pollution mechanisms for sedimentary aquifers in Bangladesh. Water Resour Res 37(1):109–117

Mehta SK, Gaur JP (2001) Characterization and optimization of Ni and Cu sorption from aqueous solution by *Chlorella vulgaris*. Ecol Eng 18:1–13

Mehta SK, Gaur JP (2005) Use of algae for removing heavy metal ions from wastewater: progress and prospects. Crit Rev Biotechnol 25(3):113–152

Mehta SK, Singh A, Gaur JP (2002) Kinetics of adsorption and uptake of Cu^{2+} by *Chlorella vulgaris*: influence of pH, temperature, culture age and cations. J Environ Sci Health A Tox Hazard Subst Environ Eng 37:399–414

Milano J, Ong HC, Masjuki HH, Chong WT, Lam MK, Loh PK, Vellayan V (2016) Microalgae biofuels as an alternative to fossil fuel for power generation. Renew Sust Energy Rev 58:180–197

Milledge JJ (2011) Commercial application of microalgae other than as biofuels: a brief review. Rev Environ Sci Biotechnol 10:31–41

Mishra S, Bharagava RN (2016) Toxic and genotoxic effects of hexavalent chromium in environment and its bioremediation strategies. J Environ Sci Health C Environ Carcinog Ecotoxicol Rev 34(1):1–32

Mohan D, Singh KP, Singh VK (2006) Trivalent chromium removal from wastewater using low cost activated carbon derived from agricultural waste material and activated carbon fabric cloth. J Hazard Mater B135:280–295

Momcilovic M, Purenovic M, Bojic A, Zarubica AR, Elovic M (2011) Removal of lead (II) ions from aqueous solutions by adsorption onto pine cone activated carbon. Desalination 276:53–59

Monteiro CM, Castro PML, Malcata FX (2012) Metal uptake by microalgae: underlying mechanisms and practical applications. Biotechnol Prog 28(2):299–311

Morais S, Costa FG, Pereira ML (2012) Heavy metals and human health. In: Oosthuizen J (ed) Environmental health—emerging issues and practice. InTech, Europe University Campus, Croatia, pp 227–246

Moreira D, Pires JCM (2016) Atmospheric CO2 capture by algae: negative carbon dioxide emission path. Bioresour Technol 215:371–379

Murata I, Hirano T, Saeki Y, Nakagawa S (1970) Cadmium enteropathy, renal osteomalacia ("Itai-Itai" disease) in Japan. Bull Soc Int Chir 1:34

Murugesan GS, Sathiskumar M, Swaminathan K (2006) Arsenic from ground water by pretreated waste tea fungal biomass. Bioresour Technol 97(3):483–487

Najeeb U, Ahmad W, Zia MH, Malik Z, Zhou W (2014) Enhancing the lead phytostabilization in wetland plant *Juncus effusus* L. through somaclonal manipulation and EDTA enrichment. Arab J Chem 10:S3310–S3317

Nascimento IA, Marques SSI, Cabanelas ITD, Pereira SA, Druzian JI, deSouza CO, Vich DV, deCarvalho GC, Nascimento MA (2013) Screening microalgae strains for biodiesel production: lipid productivity and estimation of fuel quality based on fatty acids profiles as selective criteria. Bioenergy Res 6(1):1–13

NSC, Lead Poisoning, National Safety Council (2009). http://www.nsc.org/newsresources/Resources/Documents/LeadPoisoning.pdf

Nuhoglu Y, Malkoc E, Gürses A, Canpolat N (2002) The removal of Cu (II) from aqueous solution by *Ulothrix zonata*. Bioresour Technol 85:331–333

O'Connell DW, Birkinshaw C, O'Dwyer TF (2008) Heavy metal adsorbents prepared from the modification of cellulose: a review. Bioresour Technol 99:6709–6724

Olguí EJ (2003) Phycoremediation: key issues for cost-effective nutrient removal processes. Biotechnol Adv 22(1):81–91

Ono E, Cuello JL (2003) Selection of optimal microalgae species for CO2 sequestration. In: 2nd annual conference on carbon sequestration, Alexandria, pp 1–7

Paivoke H (1983) The short-term effect of zinc on growth anatomy and acid phosphate activity of pea seedlings. Ann Bot 20:307–309

Park J, Jin H, Lim B, Park K, Lee K (2010) Ammonia removal from anaerobic digestion effluent of livestock waste using green alga Scenedesmus sp. Bioresour Technol 101:8649–8657

Pawlik-Skowronska B (2003) When adapted to high concentration the periphytic green alga Stigeoclonium tenue produces high amounts of novel phytochelatin-related peptides. Aquat Toxicol 62:155–163

Peña-Castro JM, Martinez-Jeronimo F, Esparza-Garcia F, Canizares-Villanueva RO (2004) Phenotypic plasticity in *Scenedesmus incrassatulus* (Chlorophyceae) in response to heavy metals stress. Chemosphere 57:1629–1636

Pittman JK, Dean AP, Osundeko O (2011) The potential of sustainable algal biofuel production using wastewater resources. Bioresour Technol 102:17–25

Rahman H, Sabreen S, Alam S, Kawai S (2005) Effects of nickel on growth and composition of metal micronutrients in barley plants grown in nutrient solution. J Plant Nutri 28:393–404

Rangsayatorn N, Pokethitiyook P, Upatham S, Lanza G (2004) Cadmium biosorption by cells of Spirulina platensis TISTR 8217 immobilized in alginate and silica gel. Environ Int 30(1):57–63

Ravindran B, Kurade MB, Kabra AN, Jeon BH, Gupta SK (2017) Recent advances and future prospects of microalgal lipid biotechnology. In: Gupta SK, Malik A, Bux F (eds) Algal biofuels. Springer International, Cham, pp 1–37

Razzak SA, Hossain MM, Lucky RA, Bassi AS (2013) Integrated CO2 capture, wastewater treatment and biofuel production by microalgae culturing—a review. Renew Sust Energy Rev 27:622–653

Rehman A, Shakoori AR (2004) Tolerance and uptake of cadmium and nickel by Chlorella sp., isolated from tannery effluents. Pak J Zool 36(4):327–331

Renuka N, Sood A, Ratha SK, Prasanna R, Ahluwalia AS (2013) Nutrient sequestration, biomass production by microalgae and phytoremediation of sewage water. Int J Phytoremediation 15(8):789–800

Renuka N, Sood A, Prasanna R, Ahluwalia AS (2015) Phycoremediation of wastewaters: a synergistic approach using microalgae for bioremediation and biomass generation. Int J Environ Sci Technol 12:1443–1460

Ruiz-Marin A, Mendoza-Espinosa LG, Stephenson T (2010) Growth and nutrient removal in free and immobilized green algae in batch and semi-continuous cultures treating real wastewater. Bioresour Technol 101:58–64

Sag YI, Kutsal T (2000) Determination of biosorption heats of heavy metal ions on *Zoogloea ramigera* and *Rhizopus arrhizus*. Biochem Eng J 6(2):145–151

Saif M, Kumar N, Prasad M (2012) Binding of cadmium *to Strychnos potatorum* seed proteins in aqueous solution: adsorption kinetics and relevance to water purification. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 94:73–79

Sailo L, Mahanta C (2014) Arsenic mobilization in the Brahmaputra plains of Assam: groundwater and sedimentary controls. Environ Monit Assess 186(10):6805–6820

Saleem N, Bhatti HN (2011) Adsorptive removal and recovery of U (VI) by citrus waste biomass. BioRes 6(3):2522–2538

Samadani M, Perreault F, Oukarroum A, Dewez D (2018) Effect of cadmium accumulation on green algae *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii* and acid-tolerant *Chlamydomonas* CPCC 121. Chemosphere 191:174–182

Sardar K, Ali S, Hameed S, Afzal S, Fatima S, Shakoor MB, Bharwana SA, Tauqeer HM (2013) Heavy metals contamination and what are the impacts on living organisms. Greener J Environ Manag Public Saf 2(4):172–179

Sari A, Tuzen M (2008) Biosorption of total chromium from aqueous solution by red algae (*Ceramium virgatum*): equilibrium, kinetic and thermodynamic studies. J Hazard Mater 160:349–355

Sari A, Tuzen M, Uluözlü ÖD, Soylak M (2007) Biosorption of Pb (II) and Ni (II) from aqueous solution by lichen (*Cladonia furcata*) biomass. Biochem Eng J 37:151–158

Saxena G, Chandra R, Bharagava RN (2017) Environmental pollution, toxicity profile and treatment approaches for tannery wastewater and its chemical pollutants. Rev Environ Contam Toxicol 240:31–69

Saxena G, Purchase D, Mulla SI, Saratale GD, Bharagava RN (2020) Phytoremediation of heavy metal-contaminated sites: eco-environmental concerns, field studies, sustainability issues and future prospects. Rev Environ Contam Toxicol 249:71–131. https://doi.org/10.1007/398_2019_24

Selatina A, Boukazoula A, Kechid N, Bakhti MZ, Chergui A, Kerchich Y (2004) Biosorption of lead (II) from aqueous solution by a bacterial dead *Streptomyces rimosus* biomass. Biochem Eng J 19(2):127–135

Shanab S, Essa A, Shalaby E (2012) Bioremoval capacity of three heavy metals by some microalgae species (Egyptian Isolates). Plant Signal Behav 7(3):392–399

Sheng PX, Ting YP, Chen JP, Ibrahim HL (2004) Sorption of lead, copper, cadmium, zinc, and nickel by marine algal biomass: characterization of biosorptive capacity and investigation of mechanisms. Colloid Interface Sci 275:131–141

Shriwastav A, Gupta SK (2017) Key issues in pilot scale production, harvesting and processing of algal biomass for biofuels. In: Gupta SK, Malik A, Bux F (eds) Algal biofuels. Springer Nature, Switzerland AG, pp 247–258

Simionato D, Basso S, Giacometti GM, Morosinotto T (2013) Optimization of light use efficiency for biofuel production in algae. Biophys Chem 182:71–78

Singh NK, Raghubanshi AS, Upadhyay AK, Rai UN (2016) Arsenic and other heavy metal accumulation in plants and algae growing naturally in contaminated area of West Bengal, India. Ecotoxicol Environ Safety 130:224–233

Skowronski T (1986) Influence of some physico-chemical factors on cadmium uptake by the green alga *Stichococcus bacillaris*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 24:423–425

Smith AH, Lingas EO, Rahman M (2000) Contamination of drinking-water by arsenic in Bangladesh: a public health emergency. Bull World Health Organ 78(9):1093–1103

Solisio C, Lodi A, Soletto D, Converti A (2008) Cadmium biosorption on *Spirulina platensis* biomass. Bioresour Technol 99:5933–5937

Spolaore P, Joannis-Cassan C, Durnan E, Isambert A (2006) Commercial applications of microalgae-review. J Biosci Bioeng 101:87–96

Suhasini IP, Sriram G, Asolekar SR, Sureshkumar GK (1999) Biosorptive removal and recovery of cobalt from aqueous systems. Proc Biochem 34(3):239–247

Taiz L, Zeiger E (2002) Plant physiology. Sinauer Associates, Sunderland

Tamilselvan N, Saurav K, Kannabiran K (2012) Biosorption of Cr (VI), Cr (III), Pb (II) and Cd (II) from aqueous solutions by *Sargassum wightii* and *Caulerpa racemosa* algal biomass. J Ocean Univ China 11(1):52–58

Tchounwou PB, Wilson B, Ishaque A (1999) Important considerations in the development of public health advisories for arsenic and arsenic-containing compounds in drinking water. Rev Environ Health 14(4):211–229

Tokusoglu O, Una MK (2003) Biomass nutrient profiles of three microalgae: *Spirulina platensis, Chlorella vulgaris,* and *Isochrisis galbana*. J Food Sci 68(4):1144–1148

Travieso L, Cañizares RO, Borja R, Benítez F, Domínguez AR, Dupeyrón R, Valiente YV (1999) Heavy metal removal by microalgae. Bull Environ Contam Toxicol 62:144–151

USEPA (1996) Report: Recent developments for in situ treatment of metals contaminated soils. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Solid Waste and Emergency Response

Vijayaraghavan K, Yun YS (2007) Utilization of fermentation waste (*Corynebacterium glutamicum*) for biosorption of Reactive Black 5 from aqueous solution. J Hazard Mat 141(1):45–52

Vijayaraghavan K, Yun YS (2008) Bacterial biosorbents and biosorption. Biotechnol Adv 26:266–291

Volesky B (2001) Detoxification of metal-bearing effluents: biosorption for the next century. Hydrometallurgy 59:203–216

Voloshin R, Rodionova MV, Zharmukhamedov SK, Veziroglu TN, Allakhverdiev SI (2016) Biofuel production from plant and algal biomass. Int J Hydrogen Energy 41(39):17257–17273

Wang B, Li Y, Wu N, Lan CQ (2008) CO2 bio-mitigation using microalgae. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 79:707–718

Wang H, Gao L, Chen L, Guo F, Liu T (2013) Integration process of biodiesel production from filamentous oleaginous microalgae *Tribonema minus*. Bioresour Technol 142:39–44

Whitton R, Ometto F, Pidou M, Jarvis P, Villa R, Jefferson B (2015) Microalgae for municipal wastewater nutrient remediation: mechanisms, reactors and outlook for tertiary treatment. Int J Phytoremediation 4(1):133–148

Wu Y, Zhang S, Guo X, Huang H (2008) Adsorption of chromium (III) on lignin. Bioresour Technol 99:7709–7715

Wuana RA, Okieimen FE (2011) Heavy metals in contaminated soils: a review of sources, chemistry, risks and best available strategies for remediation. ISRN Ecol 2011:402647

Xin L, Hong-ying H, Ke G, Ying-xue S (2010) Effects of different nitrogen and phosphorus concentrations on the growth, nutrient uptake, and lipid accumulation of a freshwater microalga Scenedesmus sp. Bioresour Technol 101:5494–5500

Yadav A, Chowdhary P, Kaithwas G, Bharagava RN (2017) Toxic metals in the environment, their threats on ecosystem and bioremediation approaches. In: Das S, Singh HR (eds) Handbook of metal-microbe interaction and bioremediation. CRC Press, Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton, pp 128–141

Zeraatkar AK, Ahmadzadeh H, Talebi AF, Moheimani NR, McHenry MP (2016) Potential use of algae for heavy metal bioremediation, a critical review. J Environ Manag 181:817–831

Zhou W, Li Y, Min M, Hu B, Chen P, Ruan R (2011) Local bioprospecting for high-lipid producing microalgal strains to be grown on concentrated municipal wastewater for biofuel production. Bioresour Technol 102:6909–6919

Zhou G, Peng F, Zhang L, Ying G (2012) Biosorption of zinc and copper from aqueous solutions by two freshwater green microalgae *Chlorella pyrenoidosa* and *Scenedesmus obliquus*. Environ Sci Pollut Res Int 19:2918–2929

Chapter 5
Advances in Plant–Microbe-Based Remediation Approaches for Environmental Cleanup

Sanjeev Kumar, Nisha Kumari, Susmita Karmakar, Ankit, Ritu Singh, Monalisha Behera, Anita Rani, and Narendra Kumar

Abstract In the present era, one of the most concerning issues is environmental contamination which is endangering human health and the ecosystem, thus the identification and proper implementation of suitable technologies for remediation of contaminated sites is a prerequisite for sustainable development. In this context, several methods have been developed for the mitigation of the adverse impacts of toxic/hazardous contaminants. In the past decade, lot of research have been focused over improving the performance of established remedial technologies with the objective of eliminating the drawbacks and reducing the contaminant concentration to acceptable limits. Plant–microbe interaction has not been extensively studied in agriculture field only but another area in which the partnerships of plants and microbes have been explored is environmental cleanup. Plant–microbe interaction has been found to be a promising approach for in situ remediation of various organic/inorganic pollutants. It offers several ecological and cost-associated benefits. Plant–microbe-assisted phytoremediation could be improved further through genetically modified plants and microbes. The present chapter reviews the role of plant–microbe partnership in removal/detoxification/degradation of different category of contaminants. Additionally, the advancements made in microbe-assisted phytoremediation through the use of transgenic recombinants and integrated nanotechnology are also discussed.

S. Kumar · S. Karmakar · Ankit
Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Jharkhand, Ranchi, India

N. Kumari · R. Singh (✉) · M. Behera
Department of Environmental Science, School of Earth Sciences, Central University of Rajasthan, Ajmer, Rajasthan, India
e-mail: ritu_ens@curaj.ac.in

A. Rani
Department of Botany, Dyal Singh College, University of Delhi, New Delhi, India

N. Kumar
Department of Environmental Sciences, Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

R. N. Bharagava (ed.), *Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment*, Microorganisms for Sustainability 18,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-1390-9_5

Keywords Plant–microbe partnership · Remediation · Transgenic plants · Phytoremediation

5.1 Environmental Pollution and Its Effect on Organisms: An Overview

Our earth is getting progressively polluted with different types of inorganic and organic compounds, primarily as a result of anthropogenic activities (Kumar et al. 2017a, 2019). Natural resources (soil, air, and water) have faced a tremendous amount of pressure because of the rising human population and their associated activities. Uncontrolled discharge of effluent from industries in water led to a rapid increase in effluent concentration which alters the nature of ecosystem and adversely affects the health of human beings, plant, and animals (Kumar et al. 2014, 2019; Yadav et al. 2019). There are several ways by which huge amount of toxic compounds enter into the environment.

Industrial processing, facilities for sewage as well as waste water detoxification, accidental oil and chemical spillage, mining processes, military operations, and mobile sources are the pathways for wide range of contaminants through which they enter into different environmental matrices (Kumar et al. 2013, 2014, 2015, 2018a; Singh and Chandra 2019). After getting into the environment, the contaminants can be consumed or inhaled or absorbed by primary consumers that sequentially enter the food chain and get bioaccumulated and then biomagnified at successive trophic levels (Ghavri et al. 2013; Ren et al. 2017). If the adulterants enter the sediments, they could potentially affect the costal bodies and larger water bodies which in turn can have adverse impact on human health (Singh and Chandra 2019). There are some naturally occurring contaminants whose availability and mobility towards food chain may be enhanced due to human activity (Ren et al. 2017).

Contaminants including a wide range of various heavy metals, polyaromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), persistent organic pollutants (POPs), and polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) have already been proven to remain in food chain (Ren et al. 2017; Yadav et al. 2016a, El-Shahawi et al. 2010). Among several toxic contaminants, heavy metal or metalloid, and organic pollutant pose serious threat to plants and animals including humans (Kumar et al. 2014, 2015; Cherian and Oliveira 2005; Yadav et al. 2016b, 2017; Mishra et al. 2018). Heavy metal toxicity in environment is considerably higher due to mining activities (Shahid et al. 2015). Common heavy metals including lead, arsenic, chromium, nickel, zinc, manganese, mercury, aluminum, cadmium, and cobalt occur naturally. As per USEPA (2004) and ATSDR (2012), lead, arsenic, cadmium, and mercury are considered as most significant among top major 20 hazardous adulterants. Human beings are being exposed to the risk of heavy metal toxicity through the uptake of contaminated vegetables, cereals, and pulses (Kumar et al. 2014, 2015; Pierart et al. 2015; Xiong et al. 2016). A lot of serious health disorders viz., nervous system impairment, anemia, cancer, kidney dysfunctions, cognitive impairment, and damage of brain, etc. have been documented as a result of heavy metal toxicity (Jarup 2003).

Generally, inorganic contaminants remain persistent in nature and could pose genotoxic, carcinogenic, mutagenic, and teratogenic effects even at low concentration (Saxena et al. 2019). They also act as endocrine disruptors and persuade developmental as well as neurological disorders, and hence their removal from environment is of prime importance for the betterment of the human society (Saxena et al. 2019). On the other hand, organic pollutants are mostly human generated and have been widely used as industrial solvents, fuel components, and intermediates. Lots of manufactured products such as paints, adhesives, gasoline, and plastics contain harmful organic compounds (Collins et al. 2002; Chandra et al. 2011). Organic compounds like PCBs, TCE, PCE, chloroform, etc. are carcinogenic and neurotoxic in nature (Männistö et al. 2001). Pesticides like atrazine, 2-4 dichloroethane, and hexachlorocyclohexane which are widely used in both agriculture and forestry for pest control have also been reported to have carcinogenic and mutagenic properties (Mauriz et al. 2006).

Soil is the basic requirement for agricultural framework, food security, and environmental sustainability. However, rapid rate of urbanization and imprudent industrialization have rendered this utmost valuable resource contaminated with organic pollutants and heavy metals, debilitating the soil quality, human well-being, and biological systems (Kumar et al. 2017a, 2019). Soil ecosystem degradation may emerge due to buildup of excess heavy metals and organic contaminants within soil. Persistence of the toxicants within soil system is greatly influenced by physical and chemical soil characteristics (Kumar et al. 2018b). Microbial and enzymatic activities within soil may also be hampered due to the accumulation of heavy metals (Kumar et al. 2018b). So, it is indispensable to create an efficient and environment friendly technique to remediate the contaminated soil (Oh et al. 2014). In this regard, several conventional methods like soil excavation and landfilling, soil washing, immobilization, or extraction by physicochemical techniques have been used to clean up the environment, but most of them are costly and require high capital investment.

In recent times, various remedial techniques have been evolved and successfully deployed for environmental cleanup (Kumari et al. 2016; Sabir et al. 2015; Verbruggen et al. 2009). These methods are helpful to ameliorate the available fraction of contaminants within environment as well as can subsequently diminish the rate of bioaccumulation and bio-magnification of environmental contaminants in successive trophic levels (Bhargava et al. 2012). One of these methods that represents an eco-friendly, cost-effective, and eco-sustainable alternative to the conventional methods of treatment is phytoremediation (Pilon-Smits 2005). Certain plants are capable of accumulating inorganic pollutants in their root and shoot systems while degrading the organic pollutants in the surrounding zones. Plant–microbe interaction plays a key role in enhancing the efficiency of phytoremediation in degrading pollutants. Plant–microbe partnership has improved the remediation process to a quite great extent.

Introducing nanotechnology in the transgenic plants is like cherry on the cake. When both these technologies are combined, the contaminants get removed effectively consuming less time and posing no harmful threats on the environment. The present chapter gives a brief overview of existing remedial techniques followed by detailed description of role of plant–microbe partnership in plant-assisted remediation. Further, the impression of transgenic plants and nanotechnology in boosting phytoremediation capacities of plants has been discussed.

5.2 Remediation Strategies for Environmental Cleanup

A systematic approach is required for effective cleanup of contaminated soil and/or ground water. An appropriate remedial action is selected on the basis of contaminants' concentration and the risk to environment likely to be emerged from the consequence of contamination. Site characterization and risk assessment are two important tasks to be done prior to the selection of a particular remedial measure. Both of these actions confirm the actual toxic level of contaminants at a particular environment and their probable risk to environment and human well-being. Depending on the existing risk, suitable remediation strategies are developed. Although remedial measures could not result in absolute cleanup of the contaminated area, however these actions potentially curtail the contaminants' concentration to match the regulatory considerations. This can be achieved through limiting the downward movement of toxicants and/or expelling them. Remediation strategies can be categorized as physicochemical, biological, electro-kinetic, and thermal approaches which are discussed briefly in the following sections.

5.3 Physicochemical Approaches

5.3.1 Replacement and Treatment of Contaminated Soil

This is the simplest technique. The process includes the removal of contaminated soil, disposal of the same, and restoring the area with fresh soil. The evacuated contaminated soil is disposed to landfill site and/or often subjected to soil washing. This approach is apt when the contaminated area is very small (Asquith and Geary 2011).

5.3.2 Soil Washing

This method is appropriate for the soil having inorganic, organic, and radioactive contaminants and lower amount of clay content. If clay content is higher in soil, then a dispersion material is added to break them into fine particles prior to chemical washing of the contaminants. For organic contaminants, a surfactant can be added as a washing agent. During ex situ remediation, the solvent and contaminated soil are mixed up in an extractor vessel (Pavel and Gavrilescu 2008; Balba et al. 1998). The solute and the solvent are treated after separation. Efficiency of the method is increased by using hot water (Wood 2002). It is often applied as a pretreatment approach for soil remediation. In case of in situ soil washing method, solvent or water including additives are injected within the contaminated soil which washes the contaminants. The additives are used for easy release of contaminants.

5.3.3 Solidification and Stabilization

Solidification and stabilization are a source control remediation measure and have already been applied at nearly about 160 superfund sites (Dadrasnia et al. 2013). The process involves the immobilization of toxic contaminants. It can be performed by two ways either through mixing the contaminated soil with a particular additive to make it immobile and insoluble or the contaminated soil converted to insoluble and nonreactive mass prior to solidification. Soil physicochemical characteristics can significantly influence in situ solidification and stabilization action. The ex situ technique includes grinding, dispersing, mixing up with binder material, and disposing off in a landfill. Fly ash, lime, clay, and cement can be used as inorganic binder while resins and bitumen are examples of organic binders (Sun et al. 2016). This method is applicable for remediation of organics, inorganics, semi-volatile, and radioactive contaminants.

5.3.4 Vacuum Extraction

This is a cost-effective in situ remediation measure. Soil and/or ground water contaminated with volatile and semi-volatile organic elements are effectively remediated through vacuum extraction technique. The outline of vacuum extraction technique is shown in Fig. 5.1. The extraction well is fixed at vadose zone (soil water zone). The contaminated soil water and/or volatile compounds are extracted by an injecting medium. Oxygen and nitrogen are commonly used as injecting medium (Reddi and Inyang 2000). Aerobic biodegradation is increased with the use of oxygen as injecting medium. Soil structure and properties of volatile organic components often affect the extraction method. Vacuum extraction is often called as air sparging when air is injected underneath the water table to restore the contaminated groundwater.

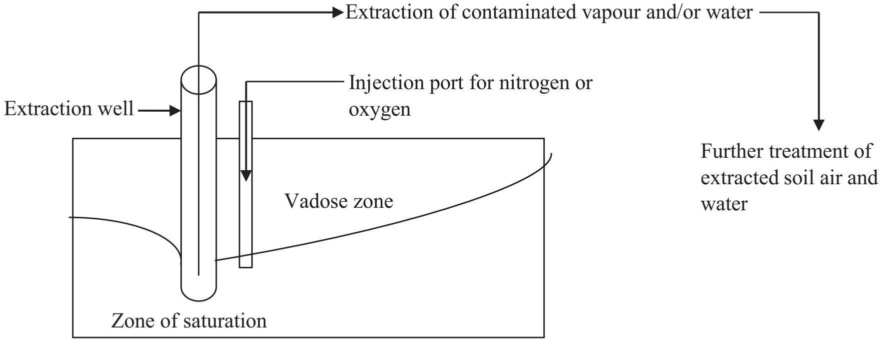


Fig. 5.1 Vacuum extraction technique

5.3.5 Chemical Decontamination

This method is performed to treat the soil having higher concentration of inorganic heavy metals. Selection of extractants is important for sequential extraction of heavy metals from contaminated soil. Oxidizing and reducing agents, electrolytes, acids, etc. can be used as extractants depending upon the heavy metal concentration and soil characteristics. Reduction in heavy metal mobility within the contaminated soil can also be done by introducing immobilizing agents, viz. zeolites, minerals, industrial residues, etc. (Anoduadi et al. 2009). After reducing the mobility of the metals within the soil, contaminated soil can be encapsulated in solid blocks and disposed off to a landfill (Ucaroglu and Talinli 2012). Some additives like concrete, asphalt, or lime are mixed up with the contaminated soil to encapsulate it.

Lime and concrete are applied to the soil having higher oil and heavy metal concentration while, for hydrocarbon contamination, asphalt coating is generally used (Khalid et al. 2017). Now, silica-based coating of contaminated soil is also popularized as it contains various carboxylic groups which act as effective adsorbent for metal ions (Kuang et al. 2015). Sometimes, permeable reactive barriers are used to decontaminate the ground water. Through the process of adsorption, complexation, and precipitation reaction, the inorganic heavy metals are retained in the packing materials of permeable reactive barriers. Most common materials used in permeable reactive barriers are activated carbon, ferric oxides, resins, zeolites, etc.

5.3.6 Electro-Kinetic Method

Electro-kinetic approach is an emerging popular technique to clean up a contaminated soil especially granular soil through electrical principles. An electric field is established within contaminated soil-water system by inserting two electrodes within it. Low direct electric current is applied which results in ion migration and electro-osmosis. Based on the charges, the ionic contaminants are transported to electrodes which are recovered later (Alshawabkeh 2009). Often complexing agents are used to enhance the movements of toxicants. Heavy metals like mercury and uranium contaminants in soil are recovered commercially through electrokinetic method.

5.3.7 Thermal Methods

Thermal remedial techniques are applicable for the contaminants having higher volatilization potential (Evangelou 1998). In case of thermal desorption process, contaminated soil is heated up at 200–1000 °F temperature to separate the contaminants physically from the soil. Most of the contaminants become vaporized during thermal desorption. To decontaminate the remaining toxic elements, secondary treatment techniques like re-ignition, condensation, catalytic oxidation, etc. are used. This method is often applied for petroleum contaminated area. Thermal stripping is also used for treating the volatile and semi-volatile contaminants. Often hot water is injected within contaminated soil matrix to enhance the volatilization potentiality of the contaminants.

High temperature is required for incineration. Incineration can break down the toxic components to basic components like hydrogen, nitrogen, and carbon which react with oxygen to form water, nitrogen oxides, and carbon dioxide. Evaporative loss of volatile compounds during incineration process sometimes makes it inappropriate (Ezeji et al. 2007). Moreover, it is a costly measure requiring larger area for completing the entire process, and it poses threats to environment by emitting pollutants (Bassam and Battikhi 2005).

5.3.8 Biological Methods

Biological treatments are often applicable for the remediation of organic contaminants present in the soil. Bioaugmentation, biostimulation, biofilters, bioventing, bioreactors, and phytoremediation are most commonly applied biological approach to remediate contaminated soil. These biological techniques can be ex situ or in situ in nature. Examples of ex situ bioremediation approaches include anaerobic digestion, land farming, bioreactors, composting, biosorption, etc. Biostimulation, bioventing, and phytoremediation are examples of in situ bioremediation (Table 5.1).

5.3.8.1 Bioremediation

Bioremediation is one of the feasible and eco-friendly ways to remediate or degrade the pollutant with the help of microorganisms (Bharagava et al. 2017; Chowdhary et al. 2017). Bacteria, fungi, and many types of organisms are found to successfully

Table 5.1 Some remediation strategies for environmental cleanup

Remediation strategies	Explanation	References
Bioremediation **Ex situ**—Biopile, windrow, bioreactor, land farming, composting **In situ**—Bioventing, bioslurping	Encourage the development of microorganisms in the contaminated region for degradation/remediation of target pollutants	Azubuike et al. (2016); Sharma et al. (2019)
Phytoremediation	For the direct use of living green plants for remediation of pollutant in soil, mud, sediment, sludge, surface water and groundwater	Yadav et al. (2018); Ashraf et al. (2019)

degrade the complex form to the simpler forms and incorporating the breakdown products into their metabolism. This process is divided into two types. One is ex situ bioremediation wherein the contaminated material is removed from the contaminated sites and bioremediation process is started off site, for example, biopile, windrow, bioreactor, land farming, and composting. Another is in situ bioremediation wherein bioremediation is initiated in the contaminated zone itself, for example, bio-venting and bio-slurping (Sharma et al. 2019; Azubuike et al. 2016).

Bioremediation process has been used in number of contaminated sites of developed and developing countries (Verma and Kuila 2019; Ying and Wei 2019), which showed variable mark of success. Some of the specific requirements of bioremediation include (1) the condition of contaminated area should be suitable for growth and metabolism of microbial population and (2) the availability of the contaminants should be enough for the growth of microbial population. The environmental factors such as soil types and texture, temperature, pH and EC, moisture content, and the presence of oxygen and nutrients play an important role in the degradation of pollutant by the help of microorganisms.

5.3.8.2 Phytoremediation

In 1991, the word phytoremediation has been introduced which is derived from two words “phyto” means plant and “remediation” means recovery. Phytoremediation is a green technology in which plants (hyperaccumulators) and their associated microbes are used to remediate the contaminated site to safeguard the environment (Saxena et al. 2019). It has great remedial potential especially for those pollutants which remains close to the roots of the plant. Over and above, phytoremediation is an economical tool, as it requires less energy as well as an esthetically pleasing technique for remediating polluted sites (Mojiri et al. 2013).

The process of phytoremediation has several mechanisms through which plants accumulate, translocate, and degrade the toxicants like metals, hydrocarbons, pesticides, and chlorinated solvents (Fig. 5.2). This process mainly includes five mechanisms which are as follows:

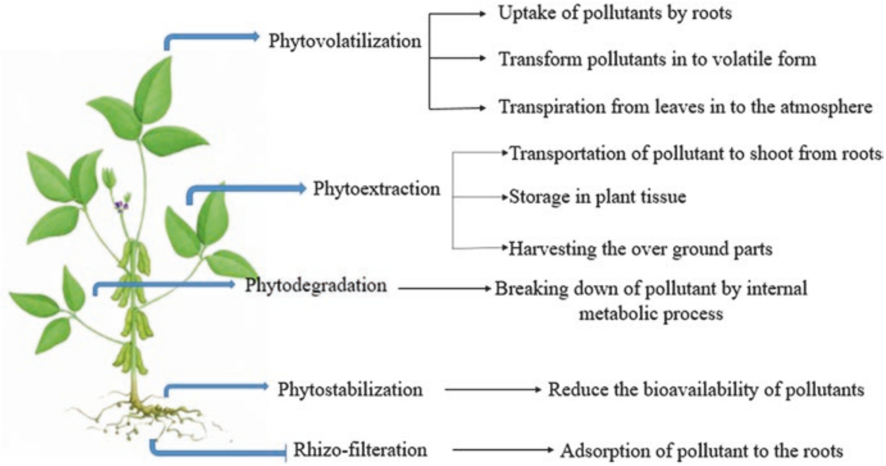


Fig. 5.2 Phytoremediation processes and their mechanisms

(a) **Phytoextraction/Phytoaccumulation:** pollutants in soil, groundwater can be taken up inside plant tissues and accumulated in different plant parts.
(b) **Phytostabilization:** restricts the migration of contaminants in soil and also reduces the bioavailability of pollutants.
(c) **Phytodegradation:** mainly degrades aromatic pollutant (carbon tetrachloride, hexachloroethane, DDT, etc.) by the microorganism in the root zone.
(d) **Phytovolatilization:** converts a contaminant into a volatile form.
(e) **Rhizofiltration:** contaminants adsorbed to the roots (Susarla et al. 2002; Schwarzenbach et al. 2006; Van Aken 2008; Khalid et al. 2017).

5.4 Plant–Microbe Partnership for Improved Remediation of Pollutants

Plant and microbial partnership is a great approach for the removal of several groups of pollutants from the different environmental matrix. There are several reports present in the literature that showed the utility of plants for the removal of inorganic and organic pollutants from contaminated sites (Mishra et al. 2019; He et al. 2019; Navarro-Torre et al. 2017; Barac et al. 2004). Plants give shelter and food/nutrients to their adjacent rhizospheric and endophytic microbe. In exchange of that, the microbes support the plant growth by degrading and detoxifying the contaminants (Arslan et al. 2017; Vangronsveld et al. 2009; Shehzadi et al. 2014). Bacterial and PGPR associations interact with plants and can directly increase the remediation process by altering the metal availability through the production of phytohormones, phytochelors, change of pH, etc. Batty and Dolan (2013). In addition, bacteria associated with plants can degrade catabolic diversity, accumulate, and transform the organic compounds like PCBs, PAHs, pesticides, petroleum hydrocarbon, etc. (Hussain et al. 2018; Ibáñez et al. 2014; Abhilash et al. 2013; Männistö et al. 2001).

Dzantor (2007) reported that the microbial activity associated with plants can enhance the phytoremediation of organic xenobiotic compounds in the rhizosphere and stabilize them into less harmful metabolites. Heavy metals can be degraded up to a remarkable extent by plant-associated microbes such as rhizobacteria, mycorrhizae, and endophytic bacteria (Yousaf et al. 2014). The microbes have the capacity to modify the solubility and bioavailability of the heavy metals and also release some chelating substances that can change the redox potential of the soil. Abou-Shanab et al. (2003) reported that microbes like *Sphingomonas macrogoltabidus*, *Microbacterium liquefaciens*, and *M. arabinogalactanolyticum* reduce the soil pH to enhance the Ni uptake in *Alyssum murale* grown in serpentine soil. There are some other microbes like *Cellulosimicrobium cellulans,* a Cr-tolerant bacterium which has the ability to transform toxic Cr^{6+} to nontoxic Cr^{3+} form and also increased its uptake in the root and shoot parts of green chili (Chatterjee et al. 2009).

Similarly, *Bacillus* sp. and *Geobacillus* sp. isolated from As-contaminated soils have the capacity to biotransform toxic As^{3+} to its lesser toxic form As^{5+} (Majumder et al. 2013). The accumulation of heavy metals in the vacuoles of the plant is also reported such as vacuolar accumulation of Zn, Cu, and Cd was noticed in extraradical mycelium of *Rhizophagus irregularis* (Mishra et al. 2017) and Cd in *R. irregularis* in symbiosis with clover (Yao et al. 2014). It is evident that rhizospheric microbes have their own metabolic pathway that can degrade most of the organic pollutants. Chaudhry et al. (2005) reported that there is a significant decrease in the concentration of dichlorodiphenyldichloroethylene (DDE) in the rhizospheres of lucerne and ryegrass, zucchini, pumpkin, and spinach in the near-root zone as compared to that in bulk soil. Hsu and Bartha (1979) also noticed that organophosphorus insecticides like diazinon and parathion and herbicide 2,4-D not only got accumulated in the rhizosphere of bush bean (*Phaseolus vulgaris*) and sugar cane (*Saccharum officinarum*) but also degraded completely. A degradation study of 17α-ethynylestradiol (EE2) revealed that, when the microbe, *Hyphomicrobium* sp. combined with a hyperaccumulator plant like *Lolium perenne,* the remediation efficacy gets increased greatly (He et al. 2019).

Plant–microbe association has shown success in case of pharmaceuticals and personal care products (PPCPs) also, which have been categorized as emerging pollutants (Gerhardt et al. 2017); Liu and Wong 2013). For example, carbamazepine could be degraded with an endophytic bacteria isolated from *P. australis*. It has the capacity to degrade carbamazepine concentration by 35–66% from its initial concentration within 1–4 days (Sauvêtre and Schröder 2015). Many other endophytic microbes have also been reported to degrade carbamazepine, remarkably, like *Diaphorobacter nitroreducens*, *Achromobacter mucicolens*, *Chryseobacterium taeanense*, *Rhizobium daejeonense*, and *Pseudomonas moorei* (Nguyen et al. 2019). Another PPCP is ibuprofen (IBU) that can be degraded aerobically via species of family *Flavobacteriaceae, Methylococcaceae* etc. and anaerobically by family *Spirochaetaceae* and genus *Clostridium* (Li et al. 2013). Zhao et al. (2015) reported

90% degradation of Triclosan with three different wetland species, namely emergent *T. angustifolia*, submerged *Hydrilla verticillata*, and floating plant *Salvinia natans* in association with beta-, delta-, and gamma-Proteobacteria, Sphingobacteria, and Cyanobacteria. Several other examples of plant microbe association-mediated remediation are present in the literature, which are listed in Table 5.2.

Table 5.2 Plant-microbe interaction for remediation of pollutant

Pollutant	Microbes used	Plants used for phytoremediation	References
Cd	*Hyphomicrobium* sp. GHH	Ryegrass	He et al. (2019)
As, Cr, Cu, Ni, Pb, Zn	*V. kanaloae*, *Pseudoalteromonas*, *P. prydzensis*, *S. Warneri*, *K. marisflavi*, *M. aloeverae*, *B. vietnamensis*, *H. zincidurans*	*Arthrocnemum macrostachyum*	Navarro-Torre et al. (2017)
Chlorpyrifos	*Mesorhizobium* sp.	Ryegrass (*Lolium multiflorum*)	Jabeen et al. (2016)
Phenol	*Bacillus* spp.	*Vicia sativa*	Ibáñez et al. (2014)
Hexachloro-cyclo-hexane	*Sphingomonas herbicidovorans*	Maize (*Zea mays*)	Abhilash et al. (2013)
Trichloroethylene (TCE)	*Enterobacter* sp.	Poplar (*Populus trichocarpa*)	Kang et al. (2012)
VOCs and toluene	*Burkholderia cepacia*	Yellow lupine (*Lupinus luteus*)	Barac et al. (2004)
PCBs, Trichlorophenol (TCP)	*Herbaspirillum* sp.	Wheat (*Triticum aestivum*)	Männistö et al. (2001)
PCBs	*Pseudomonas fluorescens* sp.	Alfalfa (*Medicago sativa*)	Villacieros et al. (2005)
PCBs	*Pseudomonas putida*	*Arabidopsis*	Narasimhan et al. (2003)
Aroclor compounds (e.g., 1242, 1248, 1254, and 1260)	*Sinorhizobium meliloti*	Alfalfa (*Medicago sativa*)	Mehmannavaz et al. (2002)
Trichloroethylene (TCE) and Ni	*Burkholderia cepacia VM1468*	*Lupinus luteus*	Weyens et al. (2010)
Toluene	*Burkholderia cepacia*	*Zea mays* and *Triticum* sp.	Wang et al. (2010)
2,4,6-Trinitrotoluene	*Consortium*	*Agrostis* sp.	Thijs et al. (2014)
Pentachlorophenol (PCP)	*Sphingobium chlorophenolicum*	*Triticum aestivum*	Dams et al. (2007)
Bisphenol-A and (PCP)	*Coriolus versicolor*	Tobacco (*Nicotiana tabacum*)	Bhatia and Kumar (2011)

5.5 Transgenic Technology for Enhanced Phytoremediation

Although phytoremediation has been an efficient method for mitigation of water as well as soil pollution, the transfer of this technology from lab scale studies to field scale implementation is still a challenge. The introduction of transgenic plants in the field of environmental remediation has enhanced the practical applicability of plant-mediated treatment methods. The transfer of specific traits to transgenic plants not only alleviates the degradation of toxic/hazardous contaminants but also makes the process more time and cost efficient. The whole process of making a transgenic plant includes identification of specific catabolic genes responsible for carrying out degradation/mineralization, their isolation from plants/animals/microbes, and then transferring them to a suitable plant species (Aken et al. 2010).

Initially, transgenic plants were developed to reduce insect and pest damages and to increase crop yield in agriculture (Paul et al. 2017), but later on, they gained attention for environmental cleanup and were subsequently used in remediating contaminated soils (Kawahigashi (2009). The first report on transgenic plants was released in 1984 (Horsch et al. 1984). In 1986, France and the United States conducted the first field trials on tobacco, which was the first genetically engineered plant, aimed to induce resistance against herbicides in plant species. In 1992, China introduced a virus-resistant tobacco plant and became the first country to launch transgenic plant in commercial market. The first transgenic plant commercialized in Europe was a genetically modified tobacco plant which had tolerance against bromoxynil, an herbicide (Schütte et al. 2017). The European Union also gave its consent for its marketing, and subsequently, in 1995, the US Environment Protection Agency (EPA) too approved the Bt-Potato (Agnihotri and Seth 2019).

About 25% genera of the *Brassicaceae* family comprising of around 90 species have been identified as efficient hyperaccumulators for various heavy metals. *Brassicaceae* can accumulate selenium up to 100 times more if it is grown in seleniferous soils (Pilon-Smits and Quinn 2010). Brooks et al. (1998) mentioned that *Brassicaceae* family includes a large number of Ni-accumulating plants as well. Similarly, Nouairi et al. (2006) reported that *B. juncea* and *B. napus* can accumulate 1450 and 555 μg Cd/g dry wt., respectively. Species of genera like *Brassica, Arabidopsis, Alyssum,* and *Noccaea* are known to accumulate, remove, sequester, transform, and/or detoxify majority of heavy metals (Agnihotri and Seth 2019). The high capacity of plants belonging to *Brassicaceae* family towards metal accumulation indicate that the development of transgenic plants from *Brassicaceae* family having high rate of heavy metal accumulation such as *Noccaea caerulescens, Arabidopsis halleri*, and *Populus trichocarpa*, along with fast rate of growth and high biomass could be a solution for remediation of heavy metal contaminated soil in a much effective and time-efficient manner.

Apart from members of *Brassicaceae* family, there are other plant species also, which have been used successfully for the development of transgenic plants having improved phytoremediation potential. For instance, yeast cadmium factor (YCF1) protein which is known for its high tolerance towards Pb and Cd was transferred from yeast to *Arabidopsis thaliana* and was studied for the removal of Pb and Cd from contaminated soil (Bhuiyan et al. 2011). The results revealed that the YCF1 active plants have relatively high tolerance capacity against Pb and Cd, suggesting that these transgenic plants could be a potential tool for phytoremediation of other heavy metals also (Chen et al. (2013). It was further observed that the efficiency of YCF1 protein get enhanced up to 9 times when it was inserted into a vector named as YCF1-deletion mutant DTY167 (Bhuiyan et al. 2011). Transgenic *Arabidopsis* and tobacco plants were reported to overexpress the nicotinamine synthase gene, which is responsible for increased synthesis of nicotinamine in host plant.

The alleviated levels of nicotinamine subsequently enhances detoxification of metals particularly nickel (Kim et al. 2005). Another gene phytochelatin synthases gene (PCS) is known for regulating metal tolerance in plants. Zhang et al. (2018) isolated PCS (VsPCS1) from *Vicia sativa* for checking its role in regulating Cd tolerance in *Arabidopsis thaliana* and found a positive correlation between Cd tolerance and phytochelatin content in plants. Laccase (LAC) belonging to ceruloplasmin oxidase family regulates oxidation of monolignols to higher order lignins which are significant for plant development as well as metal tolerance. Liu et al. (2017) reported that OsLAC10 increases the process of root lignification in *Arabidopsis*, inhibiting excessive absorption of Cu, thereby improving the overall tolerance of the plant against Cu.

Transgenic plants have not shown success for heavy metal removal only, but organic contaminants have also been reported to degrade using transgenic methods. One of the genes, which has been reported to show tolerance against wide group of herbicides and pesticides, is cytochrome P450 monooxygenase (Zhang et al. 2015; Hussain et al. 2018). For instance, bispyribac sodium herbicide responsible for inhibiting the activity of acetolactate synthase could be detoxified using CYP72A31 present in indica variety of transgenic *Oryza Sativa* (Saika et al. 2014). Similarly, CYP72A31 present in transgenic *Arabidopsis* has also shown tolerance against bensulfuron methyl, an herbicide (Saika et al. 2014).

Genetically transformed tobacco plants having mammalian cytochrome P450 2E1 have been reported to degrade wide range of halogenated organic compounds like trichloroethylene, ethylene dibromide, carbon tetrachloride, chloroform, etc. (Doty et al. 2000). Singh et al. (2011) demonstrated enhanced tolerance of transgenic tobacco plants having CYP 2E1, against an organichlorine pesticide, Lindane in soil and hydroponic solution. Germaine and coworkers (2006) successfully degrade 2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid (2,4-D) by the insertion of *Pseudomonas putida* (endophytic bacterium) strain VM1450 in to pea plant. Table 5.3 enlists different kinds of transgenes derived from source species and then inserted into target plant species to enhance phytoremediation capability of plant species. There are several other studies available in the literature which suggests that development of transgenic plants through recombinant DNA technology is a promising approach for improving the phytoremediation potential of plants.

Table 5.3 Different transgenes obtained from source species and inserted into a target plant to enhance phytoremediation potential

Source species	Target species	Transgenes used	Remarks	References
Thaliana	*N. tabacum*	Nicotianamine synthase (NAS1)	Increased Fe level in leaves of adult plants, enhanced accumulation of Zn and Mo, increased Ni tolerance	Douchkov et al. (2005)
E. coli	*B. juncea*		Accumulate more Se in their leaves.	Banuelos et al. (2007)
Arabidopsis	*N. tabacum*	Phytochelatin synthase (AtPCS1)	Cd^{2+} tolerance was increased, twofold increase in Cd^{2+} accumulation was observed in roots and shoots at seedling stage	Pomponi et al. (2006)
B. campestris	*A. thaliana*	Metallothioneins (MtTs) two MT genes, *BcMT1* and *BcMT2*	Improved Cd and Cu tolerance in transgenic plant	Lv et al. (2013)
A. thaliana	*N. tabacum*	AtMt2b	Increased transport of Cd and Zn to shoot	Grispen et al. (2011)
S. cerevisiae	*A. thaliana*	Protein YCF1, member of the ATP-binding cassette (ABC)	Enhanced tolerance towards Pb and Cd	Song et al. (2003)
Arabidopsis	*A. thaliana*	xcd2-D, codes for a zinc-finger transcription factor called as ZAT6	Increased Cd accumulation	Chen et al. (2016)
Bacillus megaterium	*A. thaliana*	Protein (MerP)	Higher tolerance and accumulation potential for Hg, Cd, and Pb	Hsieh et al. (2009)
Arabidopsis thaliana	*Oryza sativa*	AtPCS	Enhanced tolerance towards Cd stress	Venkataramaiah et al. (2011)
Cajanus cajan	*Arabidopsis thaliana*	Metallothioneins MT1	Better tolerance and accumulation against Cu and Cd	Sekhar et al. (2011)
Enterobacter cloacae	*B. napus*	ACC deaminase	Boosted tolerance and accumulation against As(V)	Nie et al. (2002)
Pseudomonas putida	*B. napus*	ACC deaminase	Enhanced tolerance and accumulation against Ni	Agnihotri and Seth (2019)

5.6 Nanotechnology to Enhance the Efficiency of Phyto-bio Remediation

Nanotechnology is a wide area focused on materials occurring on a very small scale. It deals with a structure which is having at least one dimension is in the range of nanoscale, i.e., 1–100 nm (Yadav et al. 2018). Nanoparticles (NPs) can be broadly divided into two parts: organic NPs; carbon NPs, i.e., fullerenes; inorganic NPs: magnetic NPs, metal NPs (Au, Ag), semiconductor (TiO_2, ZnO) (Lin and Xing 2007). Srivastava et al. (2018) reported that NPs are of three types: natural (e.g., volcanic or lunar dust, mineral composites), incidental (resulting from anthropogenic activity, e.g., diesel exhaust, coal combustion, welding fumes), and engineered (quantum dots, nanogold, nano zinc, nano aluminum, TiO_2, ZnO, and Al_2O_3). Nanoparticles exhibit a number of special properties such as high surface to-volume ratio, small enough to generate quantum effects, unique physicochemical properties, etc. and that is the reason nanoparticles are getting increasing interest in the field of science, engineering, cosmetics, pharmaceuticals, drug delivery, and also in environmental cleanup Das et al. (2015). In the area of environmental remediation, several types of nanoparticles such as metals (Zn, Fe, Ni, Pd, etc.), metal oxides (TiO_2, ZnO, Fe_2O_3, Fe_3O_4, MnO_2, etc.), and bimetallic (Pd/Fe, Fe/Ag, Cu/Ni, etc.) nanoparticles have been used successfully for the removal/degradation of wide array of inorganic and organic contaminants. The mechanism of nanoparticle-mediated remediation generally includes oxidation-reduction, ab/adsorption, precipitation, co-precipitation, catalytic degradation, etc. (Crane and Scott 2012; Singh and Misra 2016).

Basically cleanup process of contaminants is called as remediation. If a biological agent is involved in the removal of the pollutant/s, then it is called as bioremediation, whereas if it is done with the involvement of a plant species, then it will be referred as phytoremediation. The integration of nanotechnology with either of these methods has been proved as an effective alternative to the existing conventional methods of remediation. For instance, Jiamjitrpanich et al. (2013) combined nanotechnology and phytotechnology for remediation of trinitrotoluene (TNT) contaminated soil. When nanoscale zero-valent iron (nZVI) was added at different concentrations to the TNT-contaminated soil, the uptake of TNT by the roots of *Panicum maximum* was comparatively increased than those without nanoparticles. The removal efficiency was observed to be higher when the TNT-nZVI ratio was kept at 1:10. Another study also demonstrated that nZVI effectively improved the efficiency of different plant species like *Alpinia calcarata, Cymbopogan citratus*, and *Ocium sanctum* against the removal of an organochlorine pesticide, endosulphan (Pillai and Kottekottil 2016).

Similar kind of enhanced remedial efficiency has been reported in another study wherein Ag nanoparticles enhanced the accumulation of Pd, Ni, and Cd in maize inoculated with *Pseudomonas and Bacillus cereus*, respectively (Khan and Bano 2016). The increased efficiency of integrated method could be ascribed to nanoparticle-induced alleviated production of phytochromes [abscisic acid (ABA),

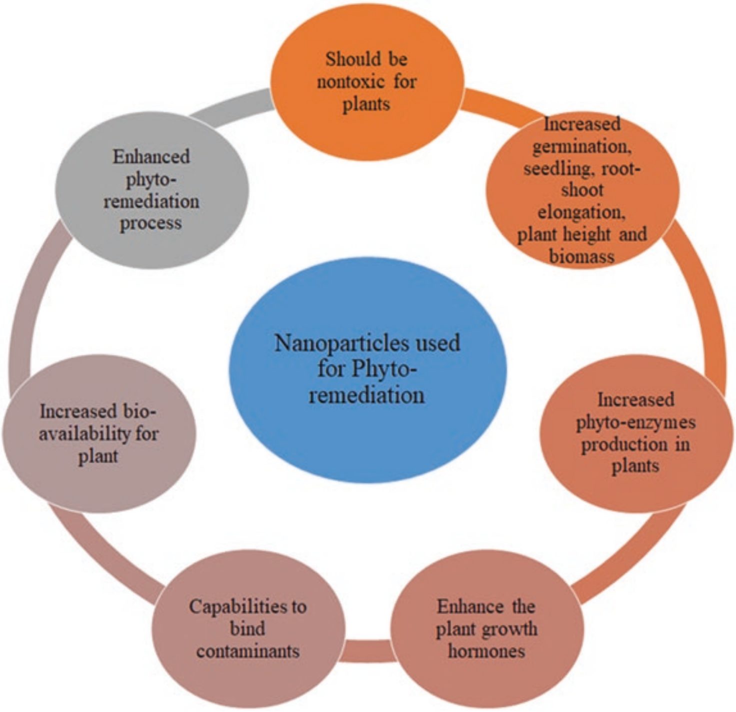


Fig. 5.3 Characteristics of nanoparticles suitable for phytoremediation

indole acetic acid (IAA), and Gibberellin (GA)] and proline in PGPR along with reduced oxidative stress. Salicylic acid nanoparticles were reported to enhance As tolerance in *Isatis cappadocica* (Souri et al. 2017). Similarly, nZVI showed positive effect on stabilization in sunflower rhizosphere (Vitkova et al. 2018). The major characteristics that should be present in nanoparticles to be used for enhancing phytoremediation potential of plant are presented in Fig. 5.3.

El-Kassas et al. (2016) biologically synthesized Fe_3O_4 NPs using two seaweeds, namely *Padina pavonica* (Linnaeus) *Thivy* and *Sargassum acinarium* (Linnaeus) and compared their Pb removal capacity. The findings revealed that Fe_3O_4 NPs entrapped alginate beads prepared from *P. pavonica* were smaller in size and have relatively higher Pb removal capacity (91%) than that of *S. acinarium* (78%). Liang et al. (2017) reported that nano-hydroxyapatite elevates Pb accumulation capacity (up to 46.55%) in Ryegrass plant species. In another phytoremediation study, the impact of different concentrations of nZVI (0, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000 mg/kg) on Pb accumulation capacity of Ryegrass species was studied for 45 days. Maximum Pb accumulation was noticed at nZVI concentration of 100 mg/kg. It was further noticed that lower nZVI concentration boosts Pd accumulation, but as the concentration goes up, the remedial efficacy of the plant gets reduced (Ding et al. (2017). The probable reason for decreased removal could be attributed to the critical oxidative stress caused by the higher concentration of nanoparticles in the plant (Huang et al. 2018).

The experimental study by Vasantharaj et al. (2019) is mainly focused on synthesizing eco-friendly and nontoxic metallic nanoparticles. The plant extracts of *R. tuberosa* was used to produce FeO NPs that were reported to be effectively used for bioremediation application. It showed potential antimicrobial activity against different Gram-positive and Gram-negative pathogens and also promoted successful degradation of synthetic dye like crystal violet. Table 5.4 enlists more examples of nano-phytoremediation below. Though nanotechnology has been evolved as a promising approach in the integrated phytoremediation study, the effect of nanoparticles on the non-target species is yet to be explored. There is a need for further research in this field to fully investigate the fate of nanoparticles in the environment.

5.7 Conclusions

Pollutants are ever increasing in the environmental ecosystem due to rapid industrialization, urbanization, non-mechanized agricultural practices, vehicular emissions, etc. In natural ecosystem, the speedy cleanup of the environment and stabilization of pollutant is extremely needed to support the sustainability of environmental ecosystems. Phytoremediation is a widely used remediation technique over the period of time, but the need of faster contaminant removal, consuming less time is a bit difficult to achieve with this technique leading further research in this domain. The presence of living plants and its association with native microbes in polluted region assist the phytoremediation technology making it more efficient in remediating organic and inorganic pollutants. Plant–microbial partnership could be further enhanced through genetic engineering which led the way for the development of transgenic plants. These plants are quite superior to the plants that naturally degrade the toxicants in terms of efficiency and time consumption. Besides, transgenic plants also facilitate the plant–microbe interaction and improve the microbial activities at rhizosphere for increased pollutant uptake and their removal from environmental systems. Though transgenic plant systems are much hyped removal technology to the date, the biochemical activities and transport mechanism inside the plant are still not fully explored and need further research to make them more pollutant selective and transferring it to target cell type without interfering in other cell functions. Integrated nano-phytoremediation technology also holds great promises towards environmental cleanup; however, uncertain fate of nanoparticles in the environment and toxicity towards non-targeted species is not fully understood and yet to be explored further.

Table 5.4 List of species and nanomaterials used for contaminant removal

Species	Nanomaterials	Contaminants	Remarks	References
Alpinia calcarata, Ocimum sanctum, Cymbopogon citratus	nZVIs	Endosulfan	Removal efficiency is ≈100 (%), 76.28 (%), 86.16 (%) respectively	Srivastava et al. (2018)
Panicum (*Panicum maximum Jacq*.)	nZVI	Trinitrotoluene (TNT)	The removal efficiency of TNT increased from 85.7 to 100% after 120 days	Jiamjitrpanich et al. (2013)
Maize (*Zea mays L*.)	Silver nanoparticles	Cd, Pb, and Ni	Enhanced accumulation of Cd, Pb, and Ni in shoot	Khan and Bano (2016)
Ryegrass (*Lolium perenne L*.)	Nano hydroxyapatite	Pb	Removal efficiency was increased from 11.67 to 21.97% under Pb stress of 800 mg/kg	Jin et al. (2016)
Sunflower (*Helianthus annuus L*.) and ryegrass (*Lolium perenne L*.)	nZVI	As, Cd, Pb, and Zn	The concentrations of As, Cd, Pb, and Zn in roots and shoots decreased by 50–60% as compared to the control sample	Vitkova et al. (2018)
Collard greens (*Brassica oleracea L*.)	Multiwall carbon nanotubes	Carbamazepine	The functionalization of carbon nanotubes enhanced carbamazepine translocation	Jin et al. (2016)
Zucchini (*Cucurbita pepo L*.) and soya bean [*Glycine max (L.) Merr*.]	Ag nanoparticles	p,p'-DDE	Decreased the uptake and accumulation of p,p'-DDE in both the plants	Jiamjitrpanich et al. (2013)
Ramied seed (*Boehmeria nivea*)	Starch stabilized nZVI	Cd	Increase Cd-accumulation in roots, stems and leaves by 16–50%, 29–52%, 31–73% respectively in Ramied seed	Gong et al. (2017)
Soya bean plant (*Glycine max*)	TiO_2 NPs	Cd	Accumulation of Cd in the roots, stems, and leaves of soya bean increased by 2.5, 2.6, and 3.3 times, respectively	Singh and Lee (2016)
Eastern cottonwood (*Populus deltoids*)	Fullerene NPs	Trichloroethylene	Uptake increased from 26 to 82%	Ma and Wang et al. (2010)

References

Abhilash PC, Singh B, Srivastava P, Schaeffer A, Singh N (2013) Remediation of lindane by Jatropha curcas L: utilization of multipurpose species for rhizoremediation. Biomass Bioenergy 51:189–193

Abou-Shanab RA, Angle JS, Delorme TA, Chaney RL, van Berkum P, Moawad H, Ghanem K, Ghozlan HA (2003) Rhizobacterial effects on nickel extraction from soil and uptake by Alyssum murale. New Phytol 158(1):219–224

Agnihotri A, Seth CS (2019) Transgenic Brassicaceae: a promising approach for phytoremediation of heavy metals. In: Transgenic plant technology for remediation of toxic metals and metalloids. Academic. pp 239–255

Aken BV, Correa AP, Schnoor JL (2010) Phytoremediation of polychlorinated biphenyls: new trends and promises. Environ Sci Technol 44(8):2767–2776

Alshawabkeh AN (2009) Electrokinetic soil remediation: challenges and opportunities. Sep Sci Technol 44(10):2171–2187

Anoduadi CO, Okenwa LB, Okieimen FE, Tyowua AT, Uwumarongie-Ilori EG (2009) Metal immobilization in CCA contaminated soil using laterite and termite mound soil: evaluation by chemical fractionation. Niger J Appl Sci 27:77–87

Arslan M, Imran A, Khan QM, Afzal M (2017) Plant–bacteria partnerships for the remediation of persistent organic pollutants. Environ Sci Pollut Res 24(5):4322–4336

Ashraf S, Ali Q, Ahmad Z, Ashraf S, Asghar N (2019) Phytoremediation: environmentally sustainable way for reclamation of heavy metal polluted soils. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 174:714–727

Asquith EA, Geary P (2011) Comparative bioremediation of petroleum hydrocarbon-contaminated soil by biostimulation, bioaugmentation and surfactant addition. In: 4th international contaminated site remediation conference, Clean up. Adelaide. pp 261–262

ATSDR (2012) Agency for Toxic Substance and Disease Registry, U.S. toxicological profile for cadmium. Department of Health and Humans Services, Public Health Service, Centers for Disease Control, Atlanta

Azubuike CC, Chikere CB, Okpokwasili GC (2016) Bioremediation techniques–classification based on site of application: principles, advantages, limitations and prospects. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 32(11):180

Balba MT, Al-Awadhi N, Al-Daher R (1998) Bioremediation of oil-contaminated soil: microbiological methods for feasibility assessment and field evaluation. J Microbiol Methods 32(155):164

Banuelos G, Leduc DL, Pilon-Smits EA, Terry N (2007) Transgenic Indian mustard overexpressing selenocysteine lyase or selenocysteine methyltransferase exhibit enhanced the potential for selenium phytoremediation under field conditions. Environ Sci Technol 41(2):599–605

Barac T, Taghavi S, Borremans B, Provoost A, Oeyen L, Colpaert JV, Vangronsveld J, van der Lelie D (2004) Engineered endophytic bacteria improve phytoremediation of water-soluble, volatile, organic pollutants. Nat Biotechnol 22:583–588

Bassam M, Battikhi MN (2005) Biodegradation of total organic carbons (TOC) in Jordanian petroleum sludge. J Hazard Mater 120:127–134

Batty LC, Dolan C (2013) The potential use of phytoremediation for sites with mixed organic and inorganic contamination. Crit Rev Environ Sci Technol 43(3):217–259

Bharagava RN, Chowdhary P, Saxena G (2017) Bioremediation: an eco-sustainable green technology, it's applications and limitations. In: Bharagava RN (ed) Environmental pollutants and their bioremediation approaches. CRC Press, Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton, pp 1–22

Bhargava A, Carmona FF, Bhargava M, Srivastava S (2012) Approaches for enhanced phytoextraction of heavy metals. J Environ Manag 105:103–120

Bhatia D, Kumar MD (2011) Plant-microbe interaction with enhanced bioremediation. Res J Biotechnol 6(4):72–79

Bhuiyan MSU, Min SR, Jeong WJ, Sultana S, Choi KS, Song WY, Liu JR (2011) Overexpression of a yeast cadmium factor 1 (YCF1) enhances heavy metal tolerance and accumulation in Brassica juncea. Plant Cell Tissue Organ Cult 105(1):85–91

Brooks RR, Chambers MF, Nicks LJ, Robinson BH (1998) Phytomining. Trends Plant Sci 3(9):359–362

Chandra R, Bharagava RN, Kapley A, Purohit HJ (2011) Bacterial diversity, organic pollutants and their metabolites in two aeration lagoons of common effluent treatment plant during the degradation and detoxification of tannery wastewater. Bioresour Technol 102:2333–2341

Chatterjee S, Sau GB, Mukherjee SK (2009) Plant growth promotion by a hexavalent chromium reducing bacterial strain, Cellulosimicrobium cellulans KUCr3. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 25:1829–1836

Chaudhry Q, Blom-Zandstra M, Gupta SK, Joner E (2005) Utilising the synergy between plants and rhizosphere microorganisms to enhance breakdown of organic pollutants in the environment. Environ Sci Pollut Res 12(1):34–48

Chen Y, Xu W, Shen H, Yan H, Xu W, He Z (2013) Engineering arsenic tolerance and hyper accumulation in plants for phytoremediation by a PvACR3 transgenic approach. Environ Sci Technol 47(16):9355–9362

Chen J, Yang L, Yan X, Liu Y, Wang R, Fan T, Ren Y, Tang X, Xiao F, Liu Y, Cao S (2016) Zinc-finger transcription factor ZAT6 positively regulates cadmium tolerance through the glutathione-dependent pathway in arabidopsis. Plant Physiol 171(1):707–719

Cherian S, Oliveira MM (2005) Transgenic plants in phytoremediation: recent advances and new possibilities. Environ Sci Technol 39(24):9377–9390

Chowdhary P, Yadav A, Kaithwas G, Bharagava RN (2017) Distillery wastewater: a major source of environmental pollution and it's biological treatment for environmental safety. In: Singh R, Kumar S (eds) Green technology and environmental sustainability. Springer International, Cham, pp 409–435

Collins C, Laturnus F, Nepovim A (2002) Remediation of BTEX and trichloroethene. Environ Sci Pollut Res 9:86–94

Crane RA, Scott TB (2012) Nanoscale zero-valent iron: future prospects for an emerging water treatment technology. J Hazard Mater 211:112–125

Dadrasnia A, Shahsavari N, Emenike CU (2013) Remediation of contaminated sites. https://doi.org/10.5772/51591

Dams RI, Paton GI, Killham K (2007) Rhizoremediation of pentachlorophenol by Sphingobium chlorophenolicum ATCC 39723. Chemosphere 68:864–870

Das S, Sen B, Debnath N (2015) Recent trends in nanomaterials applications in environmental monitoring and remediation. Environ Sci Pollut Res 22(23):18333–18344

Ding L, Li J, Liu W, Zuo Q, Liang S (2017) Influence of nano-hydroxyapatite on the metal bioavailability, plant metal accumulation and root exudates of ryegrass for phytoremediation in lead-polluted soil. Int J Environ Res Public Health 14(5):532

Doty SL, Shang TQ, Wilson AM, Tangen J, Westergreen AD, Newman LA, Gordon MP (2000) Enhanced metabolism of halogenated hydrocarbons in transgenic plants containing mammalian cytochrome P450 2E1. Proc Natl Acad Sci 97(12):6287–6291

Douchkov D, Gryczka C, Stephan U, Hell R, Baumlein H (2005) Ectopic expression of nicotianamine synthase genes results in improved iron accumulation and increased nickel tolerance in transgenic tobacco. Plant Cell Environ 28:365–374

Dzantor EK (2007) Phytoremediation: the state of rhizosphere "engineering" for accelerated rhizodegradation of xenobiotic contaminants. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 82:228–232

El-Kassas HY, Aly-Eldeen MA, Gharib SM (2016) Green synthesis of iron oxide (Fe3O4) nanoparticles using two selected brown seaweeds: characterization and application for lead bioremediation. Acta Oceanol Sin 35(8):89–98

El-Shahawi MS, Hamza A, Bashammakh AS, Al-Saggaf WT (2010) An overview on the accumulation, distribution, transformations, toxicity and analytical methods for the monitoring of persistent organic pollutants. Talanta 80:1587–1597

Evangelou VP (1998) Environmental soil and water chemistry: principles and applications. Wiley-Inderscience, New York

Ezeji EU, Anyadoh SO, Ibekwe VI (2007) Clean-up of crude oil contaminated soil. Terr Aquat Environ Toxicol 1(2):54–59

Gerhardt KE, Gerwing PD, Greenberg BM (2017) Opinion: taking phytoremediation from proven technology to accepted practice. Plant Sci 256:170–185

Germaine KJ, Liu X, Cabellos GG, Hogan JP, Ryan D, Dowling DN (2006) Bacterial endophyte-enhanced phytoremediation of the organochlorine herbicide 2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 57:302–310

Ghavri SV, Kumar S, Bauddh K, Singh RP (2013) Enrichment coefficient and translocation factors of Fe and Cu in weeds growing on Sandila Industrial Area, India. Geophytology 43(2):153–161

Gong X, Huang D, Liu Y, Zeng G, Wang R, Wan J, Xue W (2017) Stabilized nanoscale zerovalent iron mediated cadmium accumulation and oxidative damage of Boehmeria nivea (L.) Gaudich cultivated in cadmium contaminated sediments. Environ Sci Technol 51:11308–11316

Grispen VM, Hakvoort HW, Bliek T, Verkleij JA, Schat H (2011) Combined expression of the Arabidopsis metallothionein MT2b and the heavy metal transporting ATPase HMA4 enhances cadmium tolerance and the root to shoot translocation of cadmium and zinc in tobacco. Environ Exp Bot 72(1):71–76

He S, Li Y, Guo H, Lu L, Yang C (2019) Combined effect of ryegrass and *Hyphomicrobium sp.* GHH on the remediation of EE2-Cd co-contaminated soil. J Soils Sediments. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11368-019-02358-8

Horsch RB, Fraley RT, Rogers SG, Sanders PR, Lloyd A, Hoffmann N (1984) Inheritance of functional foreign genes in plants. Science 223(4635):496–498

Hsieh JL, Chen CY, Chiu MH, Chein MF, Chang JS, Endo G (2009) Expressing a bacterial mercuric ion binding protein in the plant for phytoremediation of heavy metals. J Hazard Mater 161(2–3):920–925

Hsu TS, Bartha R (1979) Accelerated mineralization of two organophosphate insecticides in the rhizosphere. Appl Environ Microbiol 37:36–41

Huang D, Qin X, Peng Z, Liu Y, Gong X, Zeng G, Hu Z (2018) Nanoscale zero-valent iron assisted phytoremediation of Pb in sediment: impacts on metal accumulation and antioxidative system of Lolium perenne. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 153:229–237

Hussain I, Alet G, Naidu R, Puschenreiter M, Mahmood Q, Rahman MM, Wang F, Shaheen S, Syed JH, Reichenauer TG (2018) Microbe and plant assisted-remediation of organic xenobiotics and its enhancement by genetically modified organisms and recombinant technology: a review. Sci Total Environ 628–629:1582–1599

Ibáñez SG, Merini LJ, Barros GG, Mediana MI, Agostini E (2014) Vicia sativa–rhizospheric bacteria interactions to improve phenol remediation. Int J Environ Sci Technol 11:1679

Jabeen H, Iqbal S, Ahmad F, Afzal M, Firdous S (2016) Enhanced remediation of chlorpyrifos by ryegrass (Lolium multiflorum) and a chlorpyrifos degrading bacterial endophyte Mezorhizobium sp. HN3. Int J Phytoremediation 18:126–133

Jarup L (2003) Hazards of heavy metal contamination. Br Med Bull 68:167–182

Jiamjitrpanich W, Parkpian P, Polprasert C, Kosanlavit R (2013) Trinitrotoluene and its metabolites in shoots and roots of Panicum maximum in nano-phytoremediation. Int J Environ Sci Dev Monit 4(1):7

Jin Y, Liu W, Li X, Shen S, Liang S, Liu C, Shan L (2016) Nano-hydroxyapatite immobilized lead and enhanced plant growth of ryegrass in a contaminated soil. Ecol Eng 95:25–29

Kang JW, Khan Z, Doty SL (2012) Biodegradation of trichloroethylene by an endophyte of hybrid poplar. Appl Environ Microbiol 78(9):3504–3507

Kawahigashi H (2009) Transgenic plants for phytoremediation of herbicides. Curr Opin Biotechnol 20(2):225–230

Khalid S, Sahid M, Niazi NK, Murtaza B, Bibi I, Dumat C (2017) A comparison of technologies for remediation of heavy metal contaminated soils. J Geochem Explor 182(Part B):247–268

Khan N, Bano A (2016) Role of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria and Ag-nano particle in the bioremediation of heavy metals and maize growth under municipal wastewater irrigation. Int J Phytoremediation 18(3):211–221

Kim S, Takahashi M, Higuchi K, Tsunoda K, Nakanishi H, Yoshimura E et al (2005) Increased nicotianamine biosynthesis confers enhanced tolerance of high levels of metals, in particular nickel, to plants. Plant Cell Physiol 46(11):1809–1818

Kuang Y, Du J, Zhou R, Chen Z, Megharaj M, Naidu R (2015) Calcium alginate encapsulated Ni/Fe nanoparticles beads for simultaneous removal of Cu (II) and monochlorobenzene. J Colloid Interface Sci 447:85–91

Kumar N, Bauddh K, Kumar S, Dwivedi N, Singh DP, Barman SC (2013) Extractability and phytotoxicity of heavy metals present in petrochemical industry sludge. Clean Technol Environ Policy 15(6):1033–1039

Kumar N, Kumar S, Bauddh K, Dwivedi N, Singh DP, Barman SC (2014) Toxicity assessment of effluent from flash light manufacturing industry by bioassays tests in methi (Trigonella foenumgracum). J Environ Biol 35:1107–1113

Kumar N, Kumar S, Bauddh K, Dwivedi N, Singh DP, Barman SC (2015) Toxicity assessment and accumulation of metals in Raphanus sativus L. irrigated with battery manufacturing industry effluent. Int J Veg Sci 21(4):373–385

Kumar D, Kumar S, Kumar N (2017a) Adaptation strategies of plants against common inorganic pollutants and metals. In: Shukla, V, Kumar S, Kumar N (eds) Plant adaptations strategies in changing environment. Springer Publication, pp 315–328

Kumar D, Kumar S, Kumar N (2017b) Common weeds as potential tools for in situ phytoremediation and eco-restoration of industrially polluted sites. In: Chandra R, Dubey NK, Kumar V (eds) Phytoremediation of environmental pollutants. CRC Press, Taylor and Francis Group, New York, pp 271–284

Kumar N, Kulsoom M, Shukla V, Kumar D, Priyanka, Kumar S, Tiwari J, Dwivedi N (2018a) Profiling of heavy metal and pesticide residues in medicinal plants. Environ Sci Pollut Res 25(29):29505–29510. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11356-018-2993-z

Kumar S, Kumar M, Singh R, Kumar D, Prasad R, Ankit, Rani A, Kumar N (2018b) Plant microbe symbiosis: a synergistic approach for heavy metal bioremediation. In: Recent advances in environmental management. CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp 293–309

Kumar S, Singh R, Behera M, Kumar V, Sweta RA, Kumar N, Bauddh K (2019) Restoration of pesticide contaminated sites through plants. In: Pandey VC, Bauddh K (eds) Phytomanagement of polluted sites. Elsevier Publication, Amsterdam, pp 313–327

Kumari V, Yadav A, Haq I, Kumar S, Bharagava RN, Singh SK, Raj A (2016) Genotoxicity evaluation of tannery effluent treated with newly isolated hexavalent chromium reducing *Bacillus cereus*. J Environ Manag 183:204–211

Li A, Cai R, Cui D, Qiu T, Pang C, Yang J, Ma F, Ren N (2013) Characterization and biodegradation kinetics of a new cold-adapted carbamazepine-degrading bacterium, Pseudomonas sp. CBZ-4. J Environ Sci (China) 25:2281–2290

Liang J, Yang Z, Tang L, Zeng G, Yu M, Li X, Luo Y (2017) Changes in heavy metal mobility and availability from contaminated wetland soil remediated with combined biochar-compost. Chemosphere 181:281–288. https://doi.org/10.1016/chemosphere.2017.04.081

Lin DH, Xing BS (2007) Phytotoxicity of nanoparticles: inhibition of seed germination and root growth. Environ Pollut 150(2):243–250

Liu JL, Wong MH (2013) Pharmaceuticals and personal care products (PPCPs): a review on environmental contamination in China. Environ Int 59:208–224

Liu Q, Luo L, Wang X, Shen Z, Zheng L (2017) Comprehensive analysis of rice laccase gene (OsLAC) family and ectopic expression of OsLAC10 enhances tolerance to copper stress in Arabidopsis. Int J Mol Sci 18(2):209

Lv Y, Deng X, Quan L, Xia Y, Shen Z (2013) Metallothioneins BcMT1 and BcMT2 from Brassica campestris enhance tolerance to cadmium and copper and decrease the production of reactive oxygen species in Arabidopsis thaliana. Plant Soil 367(1–2):507–519

Majumder A, Bhattacharyya K, Bhattacharyya S, Kole SC (2013) Arsenic-tolerant, arsenite-oxidising bacterial strains in the contaminated soils of West Bengal, India. Sci Total Environ 46:1006–1014

Männistö MK, Tiirola MA, Puhakka JA (2001) Degradation of 2, 3, 4, 6-tetrachlorophenol at low temperature and low dioxygen concentrations by phylogenetically different groundwater and bioreactor bacteria. Biodegradation 12:291–301

Mauriz E, Calle A, Montoya A, Lechuga LM (2006) Determination of environmental organic pollutants with a portable optical immunosensor. Talanta 69:359–364

Mehmannavaz R, Prasher SO, Ahmad D (2002) Rhizospheric effects of alfalfa on biotransformation of polychlorinated biphenyls in a contaminated soil augmented with Sinorhizobium meliloti. Process Biochem 37:955–963

Mishra J, Singh R, Arora NK (2017) Alleviation of heavy metal stress in plants and remediation of soil by rhizosphere microorganisms. Front Microbiol 8:1706

Mishra S, Bharagava RN, More N, Yadav A, Zainith S, Mani S, Chowdhary P (2018) Heavy metal contamination: an alarming threat to environment and human health. In: Sobti RS, Arora NK, Kothari R (eds) Environmental biotechnology: for sustainable future. Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd, Singapore, pp 103–125

Mishra S, Saratale GD, Ferreira LF, Bharagava RN (2019) Plant-microbe interaction: an Ecofriendly approach for the remediation of metal contaminated environments. In: Choudhury I, Hashm S (eds) Reference Module in Materials Science and Materials Engineering. Elsevier, Academic. (in press). https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-803581-8.11508-5

Mojiri A, Aziz HA, Zahed MA, Aziz SQ, Selamat MRB (2013) Phytoremediation of heavy metals from urban waste leachate by southern cattail (Typha domingensis). Int J Sci Res Environ Sci 1(4):63–70

Narasimhan K, Basheer C, Bajic VB, Swarup S (2003) Enhancement of plant-microbe interactions using a rhizosphere metabolomics-driven approach and its application in the removal of polychlorinated biphenyls. Plant Physiol 132:146–153

Navarro-Torre S, Barcia-Piedras JM, Caviedes MA, Pajuelo E, Redondo-Gómez S, Rodríguez-Llorente ID, Mateos-Naranjo E (2017) Bioaugmentation with bacteria selected from the microbiome enhances Arthrocnemum macrostachyum metal accumulation and tolerance. Mar Pollut Bull 117:340–347

Nguyen PM, Afzal M, Ullah I, Shahid N, Baqar M, Arslan M (2019) Removal of pharmaceuticals and personal care products using constructed wetlands: effective plant-bacteria synergism may enhance degradation efficiency. Environ Sci Pollut Res Int 26(21):21109–21126

Nie L, Shah S, Rashid A, Burd GI, Dixon DG, Glick BR (2002) Phytoremediation of arsenate contaminated soil by transgenic canola and the plant growth-promoting bacterium Enterobacter cloacae CAL2. Plant Physiol Biochem 40(4):355–361

Nouairi I, Ammar WB, Youssef NB, Daoud DBM, Ghorbal MH, Zarrouk M (2006) Comparative study of cadmium effects on the membrane lipid composition of Brassica juncea and Brassica napus leaves. Plant Sci 170:511–519

Oh K, Cao T, Li T, Cheng H (2014) Study on application of phytoremediation technology in management and remediation of contaminated soils. J Clean Energy Technol 2(3):216–220

Paul MJ, Nuccio ML, Basu SS (2017) Are GM crops for yield and resilience possible? Trends Plant Sci 23(1):1016

Pavel LV, Gavrilescu M (2008) Overview of ex situ decontamination techniques for soil cleanup. Environ Eng Manag 7:815–834

Pierart A, Shahid M, Séjalon-Delmas N, Dumat C (2015) Antimony bioavailability: knowledge and research perspectives for sustainable agricultures. J Hazard Mater 289:219–234

Pillai HP, Kottekottil J (2016) Nano-phytotechnological remediation of endosulfan using zero valent iron nanoparticles. J Environ Prot 7:734–744

Pilon-Smits E (2005) Phytoremediation. Annu Rev Plant Biol 56:15–39

Pilon-Smits EAH, Quinn CF (2010) Selenium Metabolism in Plants. In: Hell R, Mendel RR (eds) Cell biology of metals and nutrients. Plant cell monographs, vol 17. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg

Pomponi M, Censi V, Di Girolamo V, De Paolis A, Di Toppi LS, Aromolo R (2006) Overexpression of Arabidopsis phytochelatin synthase in tobacco plants enhances Cd21 tolerance and accumulation but not translocation to the shoot. Planta 223(2):180–190

Reddi LN, Inyang HI (2000) Geoenvironmental engineering: principles and applications. Marcel Dekker Inc., New York

Ren J, Wang XP, Wang C, Gong P, Wang X, Ya T (2017) Biomagnification of persistent organic pollutants along a high-altitude aquatic food chain in the Tibetan Plateau: processes and mechanisms. Environ Pollut 220:636–643

Sabir M, Waraich EA, Hakeem KR, Öztürk M, Ahmad HR, Shahid M (2015) Phytoremediation, soil remediation and plants. Elsevier Inc. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-799937-1.00004-8

Saika H, Horita J, Taguchi-Shiobara F, Nonaka S, Nishizawa-Yokoi A, Iwakami S, Yano M (2014) A novel rice cytochrome P450 gene, CYP72A31, confers tolerance to acetolactate synthase-inhibiting herbicides in rice and Arabidopsis. Plant Physiol 166(3):1232–1240

Sauvêtre A, Schröder P (2015) Uptake of carbamazepine by rhizomes and endophytic bacteria of Phragmites australis. Front Plant Sci 6:83

Saxena G, Purchase D, Mulla SI, Saratale GD, Bharagava RN (2019) Phytoremediation of heavy metal-contaminated sites: eco-environmental concerns, field studies, sustainability issues, and future prospects. In: de Voogt P (ed) Reviews of environmental contamination and toxicology, vol 249, pp 71–131

Schütte G, Eckerstorfer M, Rastelli V, Reichenbecher W, Restrepo VS, Ruohonen LM, Mertens M (2017) Herbicide resistance and biodiversity: agronomic and environmental aspects of genetically modified herbicide-resistant plants. Environ Sci Eur 29(1):5

Schwarzenbach RP, Escher BI, Fenner K, Hofstetter TB, Johnson CA, Von Gunten U, Wehrli B (2006) The challenge of micropollutants in aquatic systems. Science 313(5790):1072–1077

Sekhar K, Priyanka B, Reddy VD, Rao KV (2011) Metallothionein 1 (CcMT1) of pigeonpea (Cajanus cajan, L.) confers enhanced tolerance to copper and cadmium in Escherichia coli and Arabidopsis thaliana. Environ Exp Bot 72(2):131–139

Shahid M, Khalid S, Abbas G, Shahid N, Nadeem M, Sabir M, Aslam M, Dumat C (2015) Heavy metal stress and crop productivity. In: Hakeem KR (ed) Crop production and global environmental issues. Springer International Publishing, Cham, pp 1–25

Sharma B, Dang AK, Shukla P (2019) Contemporary enzyme based technologies for bioremediation: a review. J Environ Manag 210:10–22

Shehzadi M, Afzal M, Khan MU, Islam E, Mobin A, Anwar S, Khan QM (2014) Enhanced degradation of textile effluent in constructed wetland system using Typha domingensis and textile effluent-degrading endophytic bacteria. Water Res 58:152–159

Singh AK, Chandra R (2019) Pollutants released from the pulp paper industry: aquatic toxicity and their health hazards. Aquat Toxicol 211:202–216

Singh J, Lee BK (2016) Influence of nano-TiO2 particles on the bioaccumulation of Cd in soybean plants (Glycine max): a possible mechanism for the removal of Cd from the contaminated soil. J Environ Manag 170:88–96

Singh R, Misra V (2016) Stabilization of zero-Valent Iron nanoparticles: role of polymers and surfactants. In: Aliofkhazraei M (ed) Handbook of nanoparticles. Springer, Cham

Singh S, Sherkhane PD, Kale SP, Eapen S (2011) Expression of a human cytochrome P4502E1 in Nicotiana tabacum enhances tolerance and remediation of γ hexachlorocyclohexane. Nat Biotechnol 28(4):423–429

Song WY, Sohn EJ, Martinoia E, Lee YJ, Yang YY, Jasinski M (2003) Engineering tolerance and accumulation of lead and cadmium in transgenic plants. Nat Biotechnol 21(8):914

Souri Z, Karimi N, Sarmadi M, Rostami E (2017) Salicylic acid nanoparticles (SANPs) improve growth and phytoremediation efficiency of Isatis cappadocica Desv, under As stress. IET Nanobiotechnol 11:650–655

Srivastav A et al (2018) Nano-phytoremediation of pollutants from contaminated soil environment: current scenario and future prospects. In: Ansari A, Gill S, Gill R, Lanza RG, Newman L (eds) Phytoremediation. Springer, Cham

Sun L, Wu Q, Liao K, Yu P, Cui Q, Rui Q, Wang D (2016) Contribution of heavy metals to toxicity of coal combustion related fine particulate matter (PM 2.5) in Caenorhabditis elegans with wild-type or susceptible genetic background. Chemosphere 144:2392–2400

Susarla S, Medina VF, McCutcheon SC (2002) Phytoremediation: an ecological solution to organic chemical contamination. Ecol Eng 18(5):647–658

Thijs S, Van Dillewijn P, Sillen W, Truyens S, Holtappels M, D'Haen J, Carleer R, Weyens N, Ameloot M, Ramos J-L, Vangronsveld J (2014) Exploring the rhizospheric and endophytic bacterial communities of Acer pseudoplatanus growing on a TNT-contaminated soil: towards the development of a rhizocompetent TNT-detoxifying plant growth promoting consortium. Plant Soil 385:15–36

Ucaroglu S, Talinli I (2012) Recovery and safer disposal of phosphate coating sludge by solidification/stabilization. J Environ Manag 105:131–137

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) (2004) Risk assessment guidance for superfund (Rags). Human Health Evaluation Manual (Part E, Supplemental Guidance for Dermal Risk Assessment) Interim. I. http://www.epa.gov/oswer/riskassessment/ragse

Van Aken B (2008) Transgenic plants for phytoremediation: helping nature to clean up environmental pollution. Trends Biotechnol 26(5):225–227

Vangronsveld J, Herzig R, Weyens N, Boulet J, Adriaensen K, Ruttens A, Thewys T, Vassilev A, Meers E, Nehnevajova E, Van Der Lelie D, Mench M (2009) Phytoremediation of contaminated soils and groundwater: lessons from the field. Environ Sci Pollut Res 16:765–794

Vasantharaj S, Sathiyavimal S, Senthilkumar P, LewisOscar F, Pugazhendhi A (2019) Biosynthesis of iron oxide nanoparticles using leaf extract of Ruellia tuberosa: antimicrobial properties and their applications in photocatalytic degradation. J Photochem Photobiol B Biol 192:74–82

Venkataramaiah N, Ramakrishna SV, Sreevathsa R (2011) Overexpression of phytochelatin synthase (AtPCS) in rice for tolerance to cadmium stress. Biologia 66(6):1060

Verbruggen N, Hermans C, Schat H (2009) Molecular mechanisms of metal hyperaccumulation in plants. New Phytol 181:759–776

Verma S, Kuila A (2019) Bioremediation of heavy metals by microbial process. Environ Technol Innov 14:100369

Villacieros M, Whelan C, Mackova M, Molgaard J, Sánchez-Contreras M, Lloret J, Aguirre de Cárcer D, Oruezábal RI, Bolaños L, Macek T, Karlson U, Dowling DN, Martín M, Rivilla R (2005) Polychlorinated biphenyl rhizoremediation by Pseudomonas fluorescens F113 derivatives, using a Sinorhizobium meliloti nod system to drive bph gene expression. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:2687–2694

Vitkova M, Puschenreiter M, Komarek M (2018) Effect of nano zero-valent iron application on As, Cd, Pb, and Zn availability in the rhizosphere of metal(loid) contaminated soils. Chemosphere 200:217–226

Wang Y, Xu M, Jin J, He S, Li M, Sun Y (2010) Concentrations and relationships between classes of persistent halogenated organic compounds in pooled human serum samples and air from Laizhou Bay, China. Sci Total Environ 482–483:276–282

Weyens N, Croes S, Dupae J, Newman L, van der Lelie D, Carleer R, Vangronsveld J (2010) Endophytic bacteria improve phytoremediation of Ni and TCE co-contamination. Environ Pollut 158(7):2422–2427

Wood (2002) Overview of remediation technology. Terra Resources, Ltd, Wolvernia, Palmer, 6 p. www.terrawash.com/twp2.htm

Xiong T, Austruy A, Pierart A, Shahid M (2016) Kinetic study of phytotoxicity induced by foliar lead uptake for vegetables exposed to fine particles and implications for sustainable urban agriculture. J Environ Sci 46:16–27

Yadav A, Mishra S, Kaithwas G, Raj A, Bharagava RN (2016a) Organic pollutants and pathogenic bacteria in tannery wastewater and their removal strategies. In: Singh JS, Singh DP (eds) Microbes and environmental management. Studium Press (India) Pvt. Ltd, New Delhi, pp 104–130

Yadav A, Raj A, Bharagava RN (2016b) Detection and characterization of a multidrug and multimetal resistant Enterobacterium *Pantoea sp.* from tannery wastewater after secondary treatment process. Int J Plant Environ 1(2):37–41

Yadav A, Chowdhary P, Kaithwas G, Bharagava RN (2017) Toxic metals in the environment, their threats on ecosystem and bioremediation approaches. In: Das S, Singh HR (eds) Handbook of metal-microbe interaction and bioremediation. CRC Press, Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton, pp 128–141

Yadav KK, Gupta N, Kumar A, Reece LM, Singh N, Rezania S, Khan SA (2018) Mechanistic understanding and holistic approach of phytoremediation: a review on application and future prospects. Ecol Eng 120:274–298

Yadav A, Raj A, Purchase D, Ferreira LFR, Saratale GD, Bharagava RN (2019) Phytotoxicity, cytotoxicity and genotoxicity evaluation of organic and inorganic pollutants rich tannery wastewater from a Common Effluent Treatment Plant (CETP) in Unnao district, India using *Vigna radiata* and *Allium cepa*. Chemosphere 224:324–332

Yao Q, Yang R, Long L, Zhu H (2014) Phosphate application enhances the resistance of arbuscular mycorrhizae in clover plants to cadmium via polyphosphate accumulation in fungal hyphae. Environ Exp Bot 108:63–70

Ying T, Wei C (2019) Soil microbiomes—a promising strategy for contaminated soil remediation: a review. Pedosphere 299(3):283–297

Yousaf S, Afzal M, Anees M, Malik RN, Campisano A (2014) Ecology and functional potential of endophytes in bioremediation: a molecular perspective. In: Verma VC, Gange AC (eds) Advances in endophytic research. Springer, New Delhi, pp 301–320

Zhang Y, He Z, Wang H, Qi L, Liu G, Zhang X (2015) Applications of hollow nanomaterials in environmental remediation and monitoring: a review. Front Environ Sci Eng 9(5):770–783

Zhang X, Rui H, Zhang F, Hu Z, Xia Y, Shen Z (2018) Overexpression of a functional Vicia sativa PCS1 homolog increases cadmium tolerance and phytochelatins synthesis in Arabidopsis. Front Plant Sci 9:107

Zhao C, Xie HJ, Xu J, Xu X, Zhang J, Hu Z, Liu C, Liang S, Wang Q, Wang J (2015) Bacterial community variation and microbial mechanism of triclosan (TCS) removal by constructed wetlands with different types of plants. Sci Total Environ 505:633–639

Chapter 6
Bioprocessing of Cane Molasses to Produce Ethanol and Its Derived Products from South Indian Distillery

**Sankaran Krishnamoorthy, Premalatha Manickam,
and Vijayasekaran Muthukaruppan**

Abstract Ethanol is a primary renewable fuel and it has become a basic chemical for the production of various valuable products. It poses the same chemical properties regardless of the feedstocks from which it is produced. The production of ethanol is largely carried out by fermenting the sugars and starch in distilleries. This technique is considered as a matured technology which includes the steps like feed preparation, fermentation, distillation, and dehydration. This chapter deals with the industrial scale practice of producing ethanol and its derived product in southern Indian distilleries. It also explains the practical treatment of wastewater generated out from the ethanol industry. As the ethanol market is steadily increasing, there are potential opportunities to increase the production efficiency of ethanol and to reduce the associated cost besides increasing the number. The boom in ethanol production has believed to be a driver of economic development by adding substantial value to agricultural commodities.

Keywords Ethanol · Fermentation · Distillation · Dehydration · Wastewater treatment

---

S. Krishnamoorthy (✉) · P. Manickam
Algae Biotechnology Laboratory, Department of Energy and Environment, National Institute of Technology, Tiruchirappalli, Tamil Nadu, India

V. Muthukaruppan
Research and Development, Trichy Distilleries and Chemicals Ltd,
Tiruchirappalli, Tamil Nadu, India

R. N. Bharagava (ed.), *Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment*, Microorganisms for Sustainability 18,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-1390-9_6

6.1 Ethanol

Ethanol or ethyl alcohol (formula: C_2H_5OH) is a clear, colorless liquid with a characteristic sweet flavor in dilute aqueous solution and it gives a burning taste in more concentrated forms (https://www.calstatela.edu/sites/default/files/dept/chem/07summer/158/25-words ethanol.pdf 2018). Ethanol is the intoxicating component in the alcoholic beverages such as beer, wine, and others. It is also been used as a biofuel in many countries across the world. Ethanol molecule contains carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen atoms in its structure (Fig. 6.1).

Single lines between the atoms denote single covalent bond. Each carbon atom has four bonds; oxygen atom has two bonds; hydrogen atom has one bond. In the initial days, ethanol is produced from ethene (obtained from fractionation of crude oil) with steam. Phosphoric acid is used as a catalyst in this reaction which is written as follows,

$$C_2H_4 + H_2O \overset{H_3PO_4}{\rightarrow} C_2H_5OH \tag{6.1}$$

In this process, ethanol is the only product and ethene and steam are the reactant. Though it is an efficient process, ethene is fractionated from crude oil and thus, it is a non-renewable source. The depletion of non-renewable source is a major threat for this process and so there is a need to search for alternatives (http://www.bbc.co.uk/schools/gcsebitesize/science/aqa/substancesfromcrudeoil/polymersandethanolrev4.shtml 2018).

Yeast is found to be a natural catalyst which can convert sugar from plant material to ethanol and carbon dioxide by the process of fermentation. The fermentation reaction is given below:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 \rightarrow 2C_2H_5OH + 2CO_2 \tag{6.2}$$

Unlike the chemical process, the process does not require reaction at higher temperature and it occurs in ambient temperature. Further, the sugar from plant material is a renewable one (http://www.bbc.co.uk/schools/gcsebitesize/science/aqa/substancesfromcrudeoil/polymersandethanolrev4.shtml 2018). Ethanol can be produced from many kinds of plant materials that contain sugar, starch, or cellulose

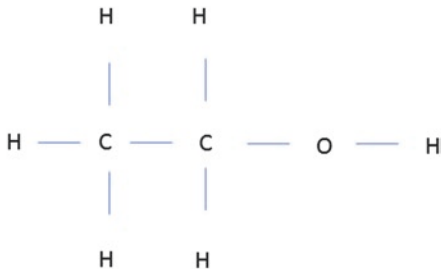


Fig. 6.1 Structural formula of ethanol

(Naik et al. 2010). Plant materials can be categorized into three groups from which ethanol can be produced:

1. sugar materials such as sugarcane, beet, sweet sorghum, and fruits;
2. starchy materials such as wheat, corn, rice, potato, cassava, sweet potatoes; and
3. cellulose materials such as wood used paper, agricultural crop residues.

Ethanol produced from the first and second group of plant materials are referred as first generation ethanol. The third groups of cellulosic materials are obtained in the form of biomass. The ethanol production from the biomass or the waste is now considered with high importance.

6.2 Ethanol in India

Ethanol production in distilleries depends on the local source of plant material and its growth on the prevailing environmental conditions and sustainability. The distilleries use molasses, cereals, and other agricultural products for the production of alcoholic beverages. Molasses based distilleries are prevalent in India. Molasses are obtained from sugar industries and have the source either from sugarcane or beet sugar. Many industries in India utilize sugarcane molasses for the production of ethanol.

A large number of sugar industries are established in the country since 1932 and the major industries are located in the state of Maharashtra and Uttar Pradesh. Both the states are having good irrigation facilities for the cultivation of sugarcane. During recent years, India has become the largest producer of sugarcane in the world. This resulted in the large availability of cane molasses to produce ethanol. Thus, distilleries are encouraged to utilize the molasses for the production of ethanol. Distilleries are more in the state of Maharashtra, Uttar Pradesh, Andhra Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, and Karnataka (Shrivastava et al. 2011).

There are 325 distilleries in India that approximately produce 2.7 billion liters of ethanol and 40 billion liters of wastewater yearly. Of the total output of ethanol, 50–52% is utilized by the industry for the production of derived products such as acetaldehyde, acetic acid, and ethyl acetate. The rest of ethanol is used for potable purposes for the preparation of wine, whisky, and brandy (Sankaran et al. 2014). The application of ethanol now becomes widespread and it acts as a basic material for rapidly developing chemical and bio industry. Further, ethanol is an important available source of energy. Therefore, in the present scenario, the demand for the ethanol will increase rapidly and it forces the increase of a number of distilleries in India. As the production increases, the wastewater generation will also increase which needs proper treatment before disposal.

6.3 Ethanol Production in South Indian Distilleries

In industrial scale, ethanol is produced by the fermentation of sugarcane molasses. Molasses are said to be the mother liquor left after the crystallization of sugarcane juices. It is a dark brown color viscous liquid which contains around 60% of fermentable sugars. The flow diagram (Fig. 6.2) illustrates the ethanol production process in a southern Indian distillery (M/s Trichy Distilleries and Chemicals Ltd.)

6.3.1 Feed Preparation

The first step in the ethanol production is to prepare the feedstock. Cereal grains such as corn, rice, barley, soybean, wheat, and molasses are the major sources of the feedstock. Molasses is diluted with water in the ratio of 1:5 (v/v) and the nitrogen content is checked. If it is less, then the molasses is fortified with diammonium phosphate or urea to provide adequate nitrogen supply to yeast cells. Then the pH is further adjusted by adding sulfuric acid which favors the growth of yeast and minimizes the growth of contaminating bacteria. The molasses solution is clarified and heated to a high temperature for 20–30 min to avoid bacterial contamination.

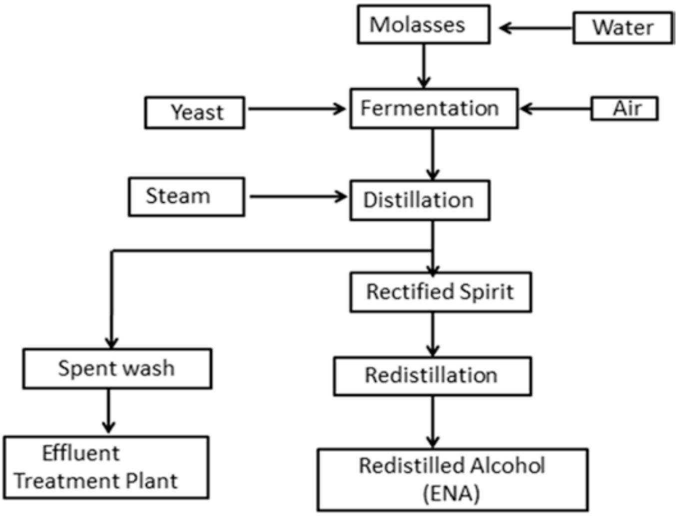


Fig. 6.2 Flow diagram of ethanol production in a distillery

6.3.2 Fermentation of Sugars by Yeast: Ethanol Production

The contamination free molasses solution is added with activated yeast in a larger reactor at 30 °C. The fermentation is carried out for 2–3 days in a closed reactor. Molasses have 50–55% concentration of sucrose with the chemical formula $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$. Enzymes from the yeast cells (*Saccharomyces cerevisiae*) such as invertase and zymase act on the molasses and convert it into ethanol in two steps as per the reaction is given below:

$$C_{12}H_{22}O_{11} + H_2O \xrightarrow{\text{Invertase}} C_6H_{12}O_6 + C_6H_{12}O_6 \tag{6.3}$$

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 \xrightarrow{\text{Zymase}} 2C_2H_5OH + 2CO_2 \tag{6.4}$$

The fermentation process also has a side reaction given below

$$2C_6H_{12}O_6 + H_2O \rightarrow ROH + RCHO\left(\text{high molecular weight alcohols}\right) \tag{6.5}$$

The process of fermentation can be carried out in (1) batch mode and (2) continuous mode. Figure 6.3a, b illustrates the fermentation process of ethanol production.

Other chemicals used in the fermentation process are listed below:

- Sodium metabisulfite (SMBS): antibiotic for the fermentation process
- Caustic soda NaOH: cleaning purpose
- Boiler chemicals: oxygen scavenger, anti-scaling agent
- Sodium chloride (NaCl): softener regeneration

It is important to note that the impure culture of yeast may produce varying amounts of other substances which include glycerin, methanol, and various organic acids. After fermentation process, the fermented liquid is subjected to the process of distillation to separate ethanol from the fermented liquid.

6.3.3 Distillation Process

6.3.3.1 Rectified Spirit

Ethanol obtained from the fermentation is called as “fermented wash” which has the purity only up to 14%. The balance portion majorly contains water and other fermented compounds. Distillation helps to separate ethanol from other components. The boiling point of ethanol is 78.4 °C which is lower than the boiling point of pure water (100 °C).

Modern distillation systems are multistage, continuous, countercurrent, vapor-liquid contacting systems that operate within the physical laws which state that

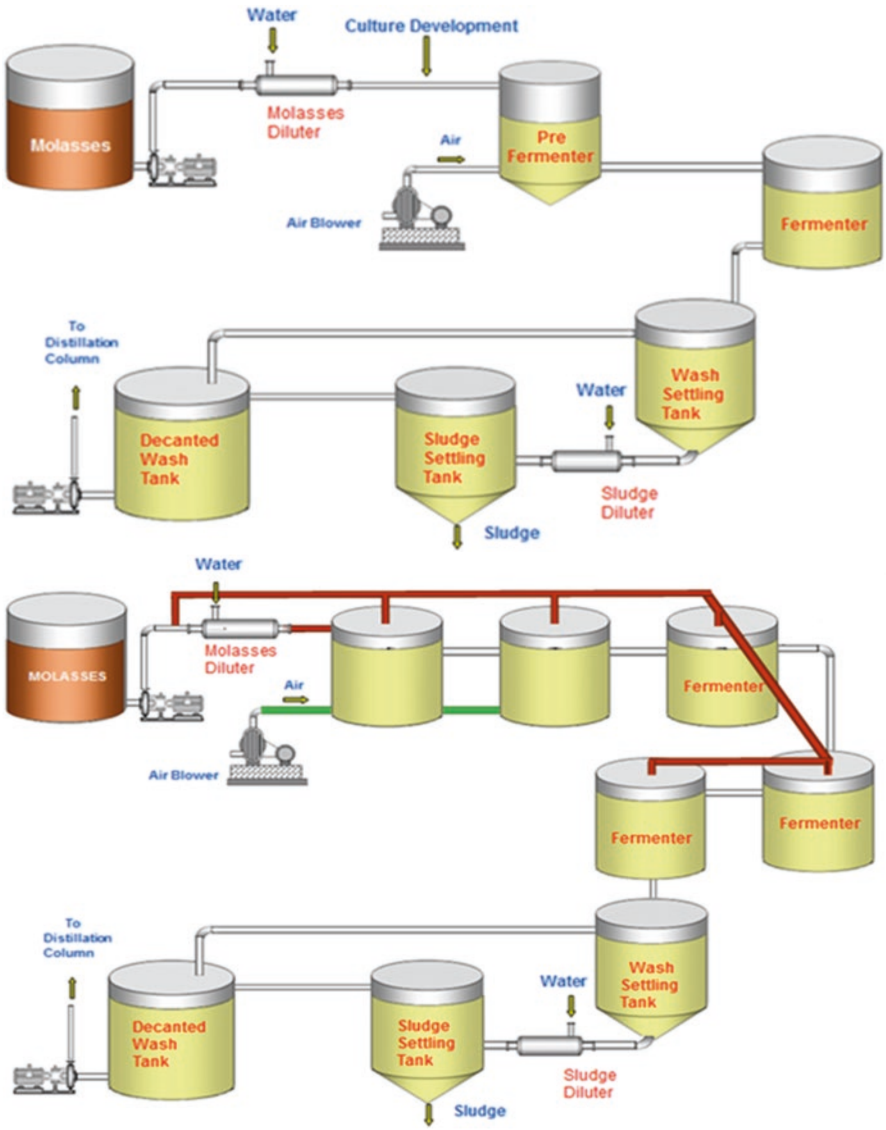


Fig. 6.3 (**a**) Batch fermentation. (**b**) Continuous fermentation. (Source: M/s Trichy Distilleries and Chemicals Ltd. (TDCL), Tiruchirappalli, India)

different materials boil at different temperatures (Fig. 6.4). A feed composed of two components which are to be separated. An energy source is required for driving the process (in the majority of the cases, this energy source is a steam which can enter either directly from the base of the tower or transferring its energy to the tower contents through a reboiler). An overhead purified product consisting primarily of the feed component with the lower boiling point, a bottom product containing the

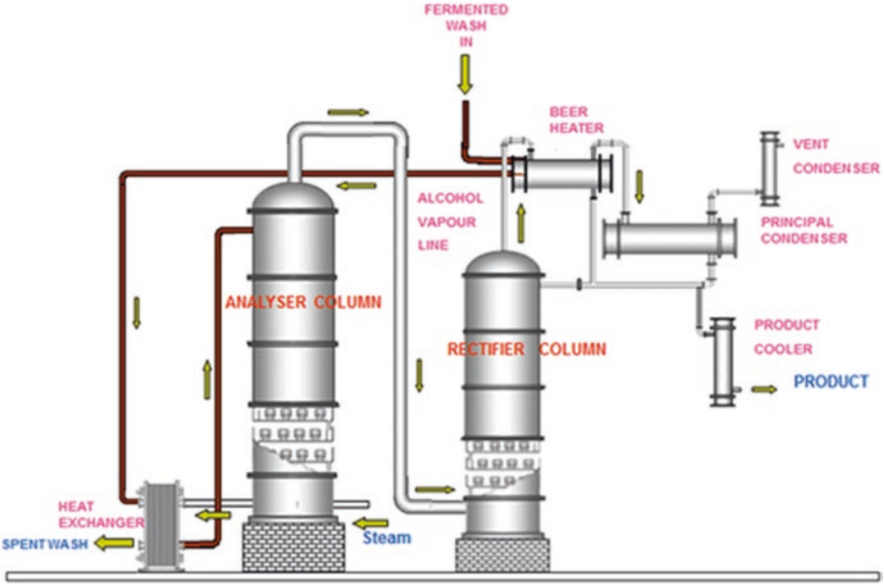


Fig. 6.4 Distillation process and separation of rectified spirit. (Source: M/s Trichy Distilleries and Chemicals Ltd. (TDCL))

component of the feed possessing the higher boiling point, an overhead heat exchanger (condenser), normally water cooled, to condense the vapor resulting from the boiling created by the energy input.

The overhead after condensation is split into two streams. One stream is the product from overhead and the other one is the reflux that is returned to the top of the tower for supplying the downflow liquid required in the upper portion of the tower. The distillation operation leads to obtaining the ethanol up to the concentration of 95–96% since the boiling point is not differing largely and it forms an azeotropic mixture with water. Ethanol of this purity is generally referred as “*Rectified spirit”* or “*Rectified Alcohol*.”

The ISI (Indian Standards Institution) specification of rectified spirit is given in Table 6.1.

6.3.3.2 Neutral Spirit or Neutral Alcohol

Rectified spirit is not completely neutral as it has a lot of impurities. Rectified spirit is redistilled to produce neutral alcohol or extra neutral alcohol (ENA). Figure 6.5 shows the production of ENA at *M/s* Trichy Distilleries and Chemicals Ltd.

The ISI specification for neutral spirit is given in Table 6.2.

Table 6.1 The ISI (Indian Standards Institution) specification of rectified spirit

S. no.	Characteristics	Requirement
1	Appearance	Clear, colorless
2	Ethyl alcohol content in degrees over proof	66.0° OP (min)
3	Specific gravity at 60 °F	0.8171 (max)
4	Miscibility with water (1:19) by volume	Miscible
5	Alkalinity	Nil
6	Acidity, percent by weight as acetic acid	0.002 (max)
7	Residue on evaporation percent by weight	0.005 (max)
8	Aldehydes content gram per 100 mL	0.006 (max)
9	Methyl alcohol content	Passes the test
10	Fuel oil	Passes the test
11	Furfural content	Passes the test
12	Ester content g per 100 mL of ethyl acetate	0.020 (max)
13	Copper content g per 100 mL	0.0004 (max)
14	Lead content g per 100 mL	0.001 (max)

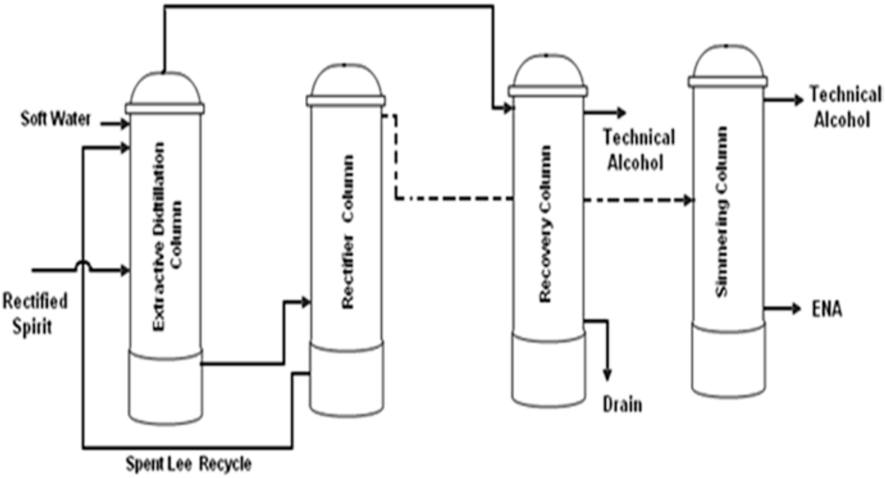


Fig. 6.5 Distillation process: extra neutral alcohol

6.3.4 Dehydration of Ethanol

Ethanol in pure form is not obtained from distillation since it forms an azeotrope with water (96% v/v). Absolute ethanol can be produced by dehydration of rectified spirit. Major Indian industries follow two methods to dehydrate the rectified spirit:

Table 6.2 The ISI specification for neutral spirit

S. no.	Characteristics	Requirement
1	Relative density at 15 °C	0.81245–0.81679
2	Ethyl alcohol content % by volume at 15.6 °C	94–96
3	Miscibility with water	Miscible
4	Alkalinity	Nil
5	Acidity (as CH_3COOH) g/100 mL	0.002 (max)
6	Residue on evaporation g/100 mL	0.002 (max)
7	Esters (as $CH_3COOC_2H_5$) g/100 mL	0.002 (max)
8	Lead (as pb) g/100 mL	Nil
9	Methyl alcohol content	Passes the test
10	Furfural content	Passes the test
11	Permanganate reaction time	30 min (max)
12	Aldehydes (as CH_3CHO) g/100 mL	0.004 (max)
13	Copper (as cu) g/100 mL	0.0002 (max)
14	Isopropyl alcohol acetone and other ketones	Passes the test

- Azeotropic distillation
- Molecular sieve technology

6.3.4.1 Azeotropic Distillation

This technology applies the use of a third substance called“entrainer” such as trichloroethylene, benzene, toluene, cyclohexane, and other to dehydrate the azeotropic mixture of ethanol with water. The entrainer alters the relative volatility of water and breaks the azeotropic point of ethanol and water. For instance, the ethanol–water system forms a minimum-boiling azeotropic mixture at 89.4 mole% ethanol at 78.15 °C. Benzene (80.2 °C) addition acts as the entrainer that forms a new minimum-boiling azeotrope with 23.3 mole % water, 22.8 mole % ethanol, and 53.9 mole % benzene. This mixture boils at 64.86 °C leaving as the product obtained from the overhead of the first column. Relatively pure ethanol leaves the column as a bottom product.

6.3.4.2 Molecular Sieve Technology

The molecular sieve technology uses the phenomenon of adsorption to dehydrate the azeotropic mixture of ethanol with water. It has become the best attractive option for industries due to less energy requirement compared to azeotropic distillation, less operational cost, and the technology is free from added chemicals. The industrial process of dehydrating ethanol using molecular sieve technology essentially involved introducing the azeotropic ethanol through a column of molecular sieve (zeolite balls) which adsorbs the water molecules on its surface from the mixture while passing the ethanol molecules. The dehydration unit operates with two adsorbers with the alternate steps of adsorption and desorption. Adsorption occurs in the vapor phase and under pressure. Desorption regenerates the water saturated molecular sieves. This step is performed under vacuum. Thus the drying out of ethanol is taking place.

6.4 Derived Products from Ethanol

6.4.1 Acetaldehyde

Acetaldehyde is produced by oxidation with air in the gas phase using a silver catalyst. The reaction is highly exothermic. The reaction mixture contains mainly unconverted ethanol and the acetaldehyde which is absorbed in an ethanol–water mixture and distilled to give acetaldehyde. Ethanol is recovered from the bottom stream and it is recycled to the process (https://chematur.se/process-areas/bio-chemicals 2018). The reaction is given below:

$$C_2H_5OH + \frac{1}{2}O_2 \rightarrow CH_3CHO + H_2O \tag{6.6}$$

The flow diagram explains the industrial process of acetaldehyde production from ethanol (Fig. 6.6).

6.4.2 Acetic Acid

Acetic acid is obtained by oxidizing acetaldehyde with air in the liquid phase using a dissolved catalyst (magnus acetate/potassium permanganate). The product from the reaction contains acetic acid, unreacted acetaldehyde, and peracetic acid which is further heated and passed through an another reactor in which the peracetic acid is reduced to acetic acid. Acetaldehyde is stripped away and it is recycled to the process. In a final distillation, the water is removed leaving glacial acetic acid (99.5%) as the bottom product which is further cooled and sent to storage (https://chematur.se/process-areas/bio-chemicals 2018). The reaction is given below:

$$CH_3CHO + \frac{1}{2}O_2 \rightarrow CH_3COOH \tag{6.7}$$

The flow diagram for the process is given in Fig. 6.7.

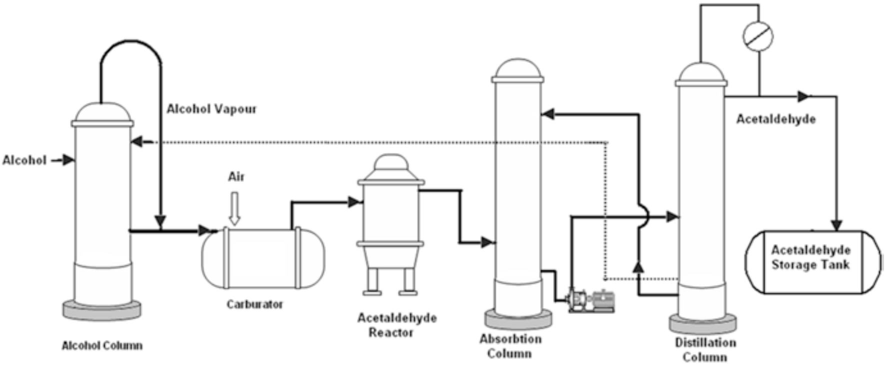


Fig. 6.6 Acetaldehyde production from ethanol

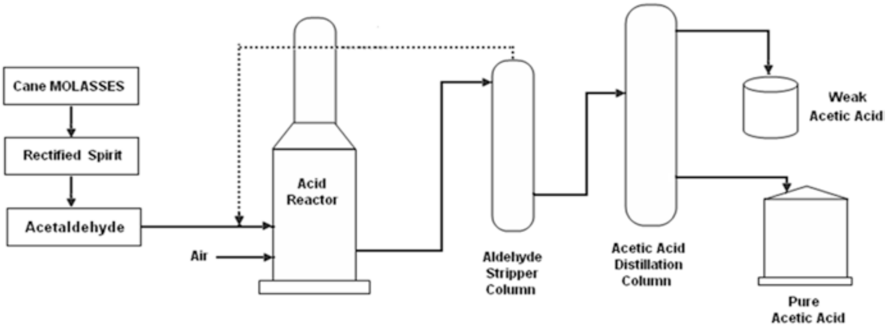


Fig. 6.7 Acetic acid production from acetaldehyde

6.4.3 *Ethyl Acetate*

Ethyl acetate is produced by esterification of acetic acid with ethanol using sulfuric acid as a catalyst. Ethanol and acetic acid are continuously fed to a reactor heated with steam. The ethyl acetate so formed is removed from the top of the reactor column together with some ethanol and water. The oily phase is further separated and washed and then sent to the ester column where the product is removed from the bottom. Water phases from decanters are sent to the recovery column in which ethanol is recovered and sent back to the reactor. The bottom water phase is sent out as a wastewater (https://chematur.se/process-areas/bio-chemicals 2018). The reaction is given below:

$$C_2H_5OH + CH_3COOH \rightarrow CH_3COOC_2H_5 + H_2O \qquad (6.8)$$

The flow diagram for the process is given in Fig. 6.8.

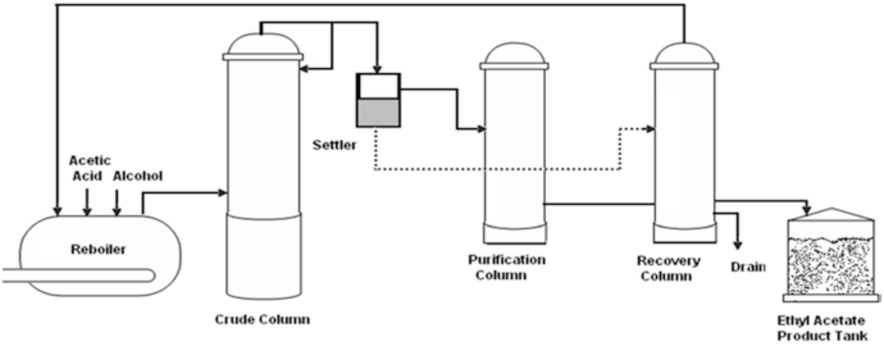


Fig. 6.8 Ethyl acetate production from ethanol and acetic acid

6.5 Uses of Ethanol

Besides ethanol proportion in alcoholic beverages listed in Table 6.3, it is largely used in personal care and pharmaceutical industries.

Personal care products such as hairspray, mouth wash, many deodorants, hand sanitizers, shampoos, soaps, perfumes, and aftershave lotions use ethanol in large amounts. Ethanol is used as a prime carrier for whole spectrum of medicine that includes cough, decongestants, and iodine solution. In addition, it is used as a solvent in processing vaccines, antibiotics, vitamins, and tablet. Household disinfectant spray and other cleaning agents use maximum proportion of ethanol. Ethanol is widely used as an available fuel. It is most often used as a motor fuel, mainly as a biofuel additive to gasoline. Ethanol has a gasoline gallon equivalency of 1.5 (1 volume of gasoline is equal to 1.5 times volume of ethanol in terms of energy).

Fiat 147 is the first car run entirely on ethanol and was introduced in the market in the year 1978 by Fiat in Brazil. In the USA, most cars on the road can run on fuel blended with 10% ethanol. Nowadays, many flexible vehicles are coming to the market which will run entirely on ethanol. The application of ethanol keeps increasing day by day. So, the production of ethanol is expected to increase in near future and thus the generation of wastewater also increases. Distillery adopts series of treatment steps to achieve zero liquid discharge (ZLD) as instructed by Central Pollution Control Board (CPCB).

6.6 Wastewater Generation from Ethanol Production and Its Treatment Practices

There are two types of wastewater generated in ethanol producing industry (Distillery). One is the non-processed wastewater which is relatively pure and it can be recycled. Another one is the processed wastewater that consists of fermented

Table 6.3 Ethanol proportion in alcoholic beverages

S. no.	Beverages	Alcohol by volume (ABV) range (%)
1	Beers	3–15
2	Wines	8–17
3	Fortified wines	15–22
4	Spirits	30–40
5	Fruit juices	<0.1
6	Cider, wine coolers	4–8

Table 6.4 Spent wash characteristics from a distillery—Analyzed as per APHA Protocol, 21st Edition, 2005

Parameters	Concentration range
Color	Dark brown
Odor	Sugar smell
Temperature	80–90 °C
pH	4–4.6
Conductivity	26–31 mS/cm
Inorganic TDS	17,160–20,460 ppm
TDS	85,000–1,10,000 ppm
TSS	4500–7000 ppm
COD	85,000–1,10,000 ppm
Acidity	5200–8000 ppm
BOD	25,000–35,000 ppm
Sulfate	13,100–13,800 ppm
Ammoniacal nitrogen	800–1100 ppm
Chlorides	4500–8400 ppm
Phenols	3000–4000 ppm
Phosphate	1500–2200 ppm
Total nitrogen	4200–4800 ppm

Note: *°C* degree celsius, *mS/cm* millisiemens/centimeter, *ppm* parts per million

sludge, spent less, and spent wash. Fermented sludge majorly contains yeast cell which can be recycled to the fermentation unit after dilution. Spent less is released from the rectified column of distillation unit may be cooled and recycled. The spent wash is largely released from the distillery and it counts approximately 15 KL for the production of 1 KL of ethanol.

The reason for the higher pollution load in the spent wash is due to the presence of organic compounds such as polysaccharides, reduced sugars, lignin, melanoidin, waxes, and inorganic compounds such as potassium, chlorides, sulfates, and phosphates (Bharagava and Chandra 2010; Sankaran et al. 2014). The characteristics of spent wash are given in Table 6.4.

Many technologies are providing the promising treatment strategy for the distillery wastewater. However, it is not taken to industrial scale so far. Distilleries at the southern region of India achieve ZLD mainly through anaerobic digestion, reverse osmosis (RO) plant followed by biocomposting since it possesses various advantages that include the generation of biogas, recovery of clean water, and biocompost, respectively (Sankaran et al. 2017). Figure 6.9 illustrates the stages of wastewater treatment in a distillery.

6.6.1 *Anaerobic Digestion*

It is a very conventional technique and still holds good in tackling the spent wash (wastewater) generated after ethanol separation. Anaerobic digestion effectively removes up to 90% of chemical oxygen demand (COD), 80–90% of biological or biochemical oxygen demand (BOD) along with the biogas generation up to 85–90%. The generated biogas can further be used to generate electricity and helping the distillery to meet out power requirement (Pant and Adholeya 2007). The anaerobic digestion process is mediated by methanogenic bacteria and the process of digestion is given in Fig. 6.10. Various configurations of anaerobic digesters are in use to serve the purpose in a more efficient way (Satyawali and Balakrishnan 2008).

6.6.2 *Reverse Osmosis*

Reverse osmosis is a separation process where dissolved inorganic substances such as salts are removed from a solution such as water. The RO Plant consists of the filter pump, prefilters (sand and cartridge filter), high-pressure pump, DT-modules (membranes), servo motor control valve, controls, and externally fitted degasser.

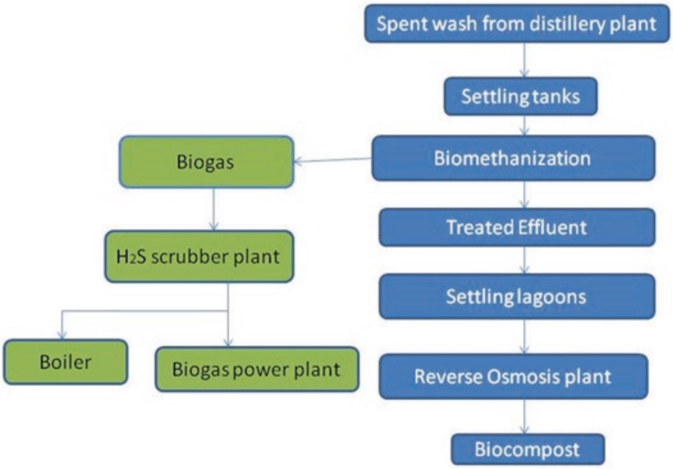


Fig. 6.9 Wastewater treatment stages of a distillery wastewater treatment plant

The components are mounted on skid frames. The units are programmed and controlled by a control unit which is fitted inside the control cabinet. The treated wastewater from the anaerobic digestion is passed to the RO plant. As a result, the pure water (permeate) is removed from the wastewater and recycled back to the fermentation unit. The concentrated wastewater (reject) is further sent for biocomposting.

6.6.3 Biocomposting

Scientific composting can overcome the problem of disposal of spent wash. It converts the organic waste into valuable resources. The spent wash is mixed with press mud (other waste received from sugar industry) for biocomposting. The process detail is highlighted below:

- Spent wash to press mud ratio is 2.5: 1 for 45 days cycle.
- Then windrows are prepared with press mud on biocompost yard.
- Sufficient space is given for aerotiller movement in between two windrows.
- Fresh press mud has 70–80% moisture, and it is reduced up to 50% by drying. Then increase the moisture up to 70% by spraying the distillery wastewater (spent wash).
- Thereafter, inoculum is added (1 kg inoculums/metric tonne of press mud) and properly mixed with the help of aerotiller. When the temperature gets increased it indicates that the microorganisms' activation has started.
- During the process, 50% moisture is maintained with the help of spent wash spraying. When the temperature gets decreased it indicates that the biocomposting

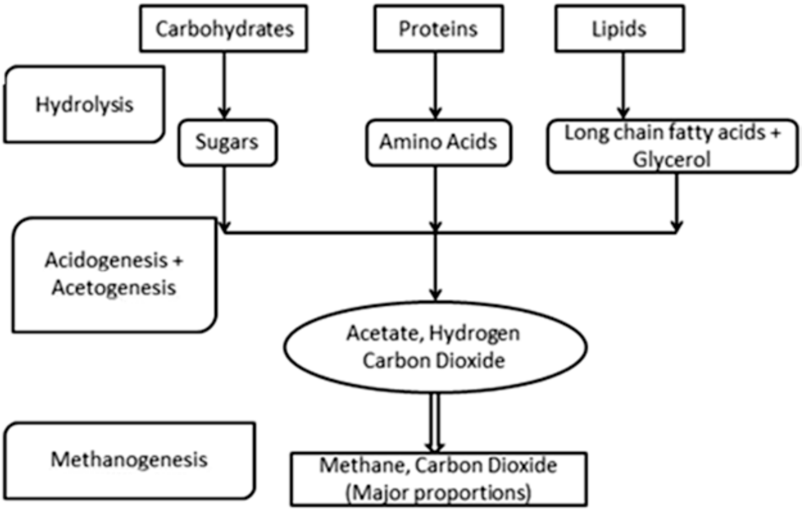


Fig. 6.10 The process of anaerobic digestion used for the treatment of distillery wastewater

process is completed. Then stop the spent wash spraying and reduce the moisture up to 30% in compost by drying.
- The biocompost also helps to improve the soil fertility.

Factors affecting the composting process include: (a) oxygen and aeration; (b) nutrients (C: N ratio); (c) moisture; (d) porosity, structure, texture, and particle size; (e) temperature; and (f) time duration.

6.7 Concluding Remarks

The demand for ethanol is steadily improving which in turn reflects the distillery not only to increase the number but also look for the new feed stocks and continuous improvement in the microbiological processes which include genetic manipulation of yeast cell and utilization of other microorganisms for ethanol production. The process of ethanol generation has been considered a mature technology. However, there are opportunities to take up the research in the area of reduction of sugar losses, avoidance of bacterial contamination, engineering yeast cells, development of fermentation process for alternative feed stocks, reduction of wastewater volume, novel techniques to generate energy from the wastewater and the recovery of valuable products from the wastewater. This movement of technology will improve the efficiency of process and the cost reduction. Thus, the fusion of research and transfer of technology to distillery will ensure the sustainable production of ethanol in the near future.

Acknowledgements Authors acknowledge the respective research laboratory and the Institution for providing the necessary facilities to write this book chapter. Authors also thank the technicians and Research and Development personnel of *M/s* Trichy Distilleries and Chemicals Ltd. (TDCL), Tiruchirappalli, Tamil Nadu, India.

References

Bharagava RN, Chandra R (2010) Effect of bacteria treated and untreated post-methanated distillery effluent (PMDE) on seed germination, seedling growth and amylase activity in *Phaseolus mungo* L. J Hazard Mater 180:730–734

Ethanol and its properties (2018). https://www.calstatela.edu/sites/default/files/dept/chem/07summer/158/25-words ethanol.pdf. 04-11

Naik SN, Goud VV, Rout PK, Dalai AK (2010) Production of first and second generation biofuels: a comprehensive review. Renew Sust Energ Rev 14(2):578–597

Pant D, Adholeya A (2007) Biological approaches for treatment of distillery wastewater: a review. Bioresour Technol 98:2321–2334

Polymers and ethanol (2018). http://www.bbc.co.uk/schools/gcsebitesize/science/aqa/substancesfromcrudeoil/polymersandethanolrev4.shtml. 04-18

Sankaran K, Premalatha M, Vijayasekaran M, Somasundaram VT (2014) DEPHY project: distillery wastewater treatment through anaerobic digestion and phycoremediation—a green industrial approach. Renew Sustain Energy Rev 37:634–643. Chematur Engineering-Biochemicals 2018. https://chematur.se/process-areas/bio-chemicals/. 04-27

Sankaran K, Premalatha M, Vijayasekaran M (2017) Characterization of distillery wastewater—an approach to retrofit existing effluent treatment plant operation with phycoremediation. J Clean Prod 148:735–750

Satyawali Y, Balakrishnan M (2008) Wastewater treatment in molasses-based alcohol distilleries for COD and color removal: a review. J Environ Manag 86:481–497

Shrivastava AK, Srivastava AK, Solomon S, Sawnanai A, Shukla SP (2011) Sugarcane cultivation and sugar Industry in India: historical perspectives. Sugar Technol 13:266–274

Chapter 7
Biological and Nonbiological Approaches for Treatment of Cr(VI) in Tannery Effluent

Asma Kalsoom and Rida Batool

Abstract Leather tanneries are major source of hexavalent chromium contamination in the biosphere. Chromium (Cr) is being considered as an essential heavy metal extensively used in different industrial sectors for example, leather, paint, textile, and electroplating. A characteristic feature of chromate is its environmental mobility and consequently is a cause of environmental risk. Cr(VI) belongs to group A human carcinogen due to its mutagenicity, carcinogenicity, and teratogenicity in plants, animals, and humans, therefore causing serious health issues in all living beings. Conventional methods for chromate removal includes ion exchange, chemical precipitation, reverse osmosis, and electrochemical from tannery effluents. These procedures are effective but require high energy and chemical consumption that may produce secondary problems such as corrosion, spillage, and toxicity. So, the need of the hour is to develop eco-friendly techniques for efficient Cr(VI) removal. Therefore, bioremediation is an effective alternate for reclamation of contaminated sites. Bioremediation is the biological approach to degrade heavy metals using indigenous microorganisms. Microbes such as bacteria, fungi, yeast, and algae have the ability to survive under harsh environmental conditions. These microbes are proficient to reduce toxic Cr(VI) into less toxic Cr(III) by various cellular mechanisms. Therefore, environment friendly, economical, and effective strategies are needed to reduce chromate pollution in the surroundings. Thus, this chapter gives detailed information on production and properties of tannery effluent, environmental pollution, and health hazards of tannery effluent, biological and nonbiological methodologies for the effluent remediation. Moreover, the pros and cons of current processes have also been briefly discussed in this chapter.

Keywords Tannery effluent · Hexavalent chromium · Environmental and health issues · Bioremediation · Conventional methods

---

A. Kalsoom · R. Batool (✉)
Department of Microbiology and Molecular Genetics, University of the Punjab,
Lahore, Pakistan
e-mail: rida.mmg@pu.edu.pk

R. N. Bharagava (ed.), *Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment*, Microorganisms for Sustainability 18,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-1390-9_7

7.1 Introduction

Chromium (Cr) is a heavy metal naturally present in two oxidation states i.e., Cr(III) and Cr(VI). Cr is generally dispersed in fresh water, rocks, and oceans (Krishnamurthy and Wilkens 1994; Saxena et al. 2019; Mishra and Bharagava 2016). Nutritionally, trivalent chromium is an essential part of balanced diet for humans and animals that maintains and inhibits adverse effect on metabolic processes of fats, carbohydrates, and protein synthesis (such as raised fasting insulin, reduced glucose tolerance, high cholesterol and triglycerides, and hypoglycemic symptoms) (Raman et al. 2018; Anderson 1989, 1997). Cr is also used for production of cement, stainless steel, paint pigments, wood preservatives, leather, etc. The dissemination and concentration of Cr in different environmental samples is summarized in Table 7.1. For freshwater life, the recommended guidelines are 8 μg/L for Cr(III) and 1 μg/L for Cr(VI), for marine life 50 μg/L for Cr(III) and 1 μg/L for Cr(VI), for irrigation water 5 μg/L for Cr(III) and 8 μg/L for Cr(VI), and for drinking water is 50 μg/L for Cr(VI) (Krishnamurthy and Wilkens 1994; Pawlisz 1997).

For the past few years, anthropogenic activities have contributed to ecological contamination, causing an increase in concentration of various heavy metals for example, chromium, selenium, lead, cadmium, mercury, etc. Industrial waste is disposed of in the nearby water bodies and ultimately absorbed in the surroundings. These heavy metals are utilized in several industries such as tanneries, electroplating, mining, textiles, pesticide industries, etc. (Vendruscolo et al. 2017; Kishor et al. 2019). Environmental pollution has affected various illnesses as they have crossed the recommended threshold limit value given by WHO (World Health Organization) (Witek-Krowiak et al. 2011; Mishra and Bharagava 2016; Saxena et al. 2017; Joshi

Table 7.1 The distribution and recommended concentration of chromium in various environments (Krishnamurthy and Wilkens 1994)

Sample type	Concentration
Natural soils	5–1000 mg kg^{-1}
	5–3000 mg kg^{-1}
	5–1500 mg kg^{-1}
	30–300 mg kg^{-1}
	Trace to 5.23%
Serpentine soils	634–125,000 mg kg^{-1}
World soils	200 mg kg^{-1} (mean)
	100–300 mg kg^{-1}
	10–150 mg kg^{-1} (mean 40 mg kg^{-1})
Sediments	0–31,000 mg kg^{-1}
Fresh water	0–117 μg L^{-1} (average 9.7 μg L^{-1})
Sea water	0–0.5 μg L^{-1}
Air	1–545,000 ng m^3
	100 ng m^3
Plants	0.006–18 mg kg^{-1}
Animals	0.03–1.6 mg kg^{-1}

2018). Cr (VI) pollution is of utmost concern worldwide, as it is considered extremely toxic, mutagenic, and carcinogenic for living organisms. For the last 15 years, chromium has been classified among the 20 most lethal environmental contaminants (Chrysochoou et al. 2012).

Effluents of manufacturing industries such as textiles, tanneries, electroplating, tanneries, paint, etc., contains large percentage of Cr(VI) (Mohapatra et al. 2017; Kishor et al. 2019). These industries are releasing their effluents continuously in their surroundings, which is a leading threat to environmental safety. Because chromium is a nondegradable pollutant as it persists in the environment (Ran et al. 2016).

Hexavalent chromium can cause severe infections such as, skin and lung cancers, hepatic diseases and bronchial tract infections, etc. (Ali et al. 2016). However, trivalent chromium is less toxic and exists in oxides and hydroxides which is insoluble at pH >5 (Mohapatra et al. 2017). As a result, Cr(III) is not capable of entering into the cells and removed easily. Hexavalent to trivalent chromium reduction can be achieved by physiochemical, electrochemical, and biological processes (Habibul et al. 2016). Several physiochemical techniques are used such as chemical precipitation, membrane separation, solvent extraction, and ion exchange (Witek-Krowiak et al. 2011). These methods are inadequate and ineffective for chromate removal, due to high cost and energy consumption, incomplete removal and formation of other toxic compounds.

Cr(VI) removal has also being carried out through biological techniques. These techniques are environment friendly, cost-effective, safe, and free from toxic side products formation (Eccles 1995; Shakoori et al. 2000). Various studies have investigated plants, yeasts, fungi, and bacteria for remediation. Microbes are being exploited for beneficial purposes. Bacteria develop different mechanisms to overcome metal toxicity such as intracellular and extracellular reduction of Cr(VI), metal efflux, DNA repair enzymes, and detoxification enzymes for reactive oxygen species (ROS) (Thatoi et al. 2014). Heavy metal ions accumulate in bacterial cells in both soluble as well as in particulate form (Devi et al. 2017). Microbes convert toxic hexavalent chromium into less toxic trivalent chromium either by direct method that involves enzymatic reduction or by indirect process that consist of formation of complex compounds with metabolites (Bento et al. 2005; Pei et al. 2009; Soni et al. 2013; Chandra et al. 2011). Several bacteria such as *Agrobacterium*, *Bacillus*, *Deinococcus*, *Enterobacter*, *Escherichia*, *Pseudomonas*, *Shewanella,* etc., are reported to show high Cr(VI) reduction potential (Thatoi et al. 2014). Cr(VI) reduction greatly depends on temperature, pH, and chromium salt concentrations (Wani et al. 2018).

The process of removal of heavy metals through biological materials is termed as biosorption. This technology is very operative for detoxification of toxic industrial effluents. Agricultural wastes are efficient biosorbent materials and have low cost such as rice husk, exhausted coffee, peat moss (Dakiky et al. 2002), rice hulls and soybean hulls (Marshall and Champagne 1995; Tarley and Arruda 2004), and wheat bran (Iqbal et al. 2002). These biosorbent materials are used in combination with Cr(VI) reducing bacteria for efficient removal of chromate from environment.

Thus, this chapter describes the properties of tannery effluents, hexavalent chromium as major pollutant, health risks, and effect of Cr compounds on the biosphere and remediation of tannery effluents by biological and nonbiological methodologies. The purpose of this chapter is to give complete information about tannery effluents and related issues that are required for further research and development.

7.2 Production and Properties of Tannery Effluent

In Pakistan, tanning industries are the leading cause of pollution due to disposal of unprocessed wastes in water bodies and on land. Developing countries have been observed with an increase in leather production as compared to developed nations. Pakistan has gained an increase in leather export from US$ 672 million to US$ 1.13 billion, indicating a cost increase of 68% in a 5-year span (2002–2007) (Haydar and Aziz 2009). Currently, there are about 2500 leather manufacturing units in Pakistan. From year 1999 to 2015, number of tanning units have raised from 529 to 800 (Padda and Asim 2019; Bharagava et al. 2018). In tanning process, animal hides are transformed through various chemical reactions to leather. Four major steps are involved for production of leather i.e., beams house operation (pre-tanning), lanyard processes, retaining, and finishing (US EPA 1986; Tunay et al. 1995; Cooman et al. 2003; Saxena et al. 2017) (Fig. 7.1). The hide is processed through various chemicals such as NaOCl, NaOH, H_2SO_4, chlorides, enzymes, lime, formic acid, chlorobenzene, ammonium salts, kerosene, tenso-active compounds to remove fat, meat, and hair. The hide is then subjected to mineral salts, chromium [Cr(III)], and dyes to leather. Thus, effluent generated has a large quantity of Cr(III), sulfates, sodium, and chlorides. However, the end products of each step produce different kind of waste materials and concentration may vary (Tunay et al. 1995). Basaran et al.

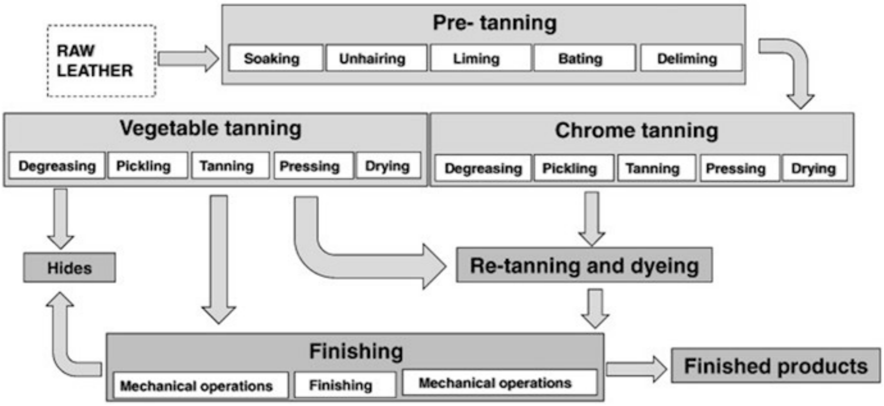


Fig. 7.1 Flow sheet of leather tannery industry (Lofrano et al. 2013)

(2008) and Saravanabhavan et al. (2004) described similar procedures for leather tanneries situated in Turkey and India, respectively.

7.3 Environmental Pollution and Health Hazards of Tannery Effluent

Anthropogenic activities are causing heavy metal contamination in the environment globally and are one of the primary sources of metal ion uptake in the food chain leading to serious diseases. In Pakistan, heavy metal contamination has created a serious situation regarding human health, environment, and economy. The disposal of untreated industrial effluent from leather tanneries has caused an accumulation of chromium (Cr) compounds in the areas near tanneries. Previous studies by Pakistan EPA has reported Cr values in the tannery waste, which are significantly higher than the safe limits established by nation standards (EPA 1990). Tannery wastewater is a potential noxious waste. It has created severe ecological problems that are linked to high concentration of chrome together with its rich coloration and high chemical oxygen demand (COD). Cr(III) is extensively utilized as tanning agent in leather tanneries as it forms complex compounds with proteins and amino acids (Song et al. 2000). This trace element is necessary for normal development of human and animals. In the pure state, Cr(III) has no harmful effect. When present in large quantity, it shows little toxic effect. Generally, Cr is not completely integrated into the leather and comparatively large quantity of Cr is discharged into the effluents. About 2% Cr is present in hide dust in the effluent and other wastes. Effluents from leather tanneries end up in the surroundings and large quantity of Cr is accumulated that are converted into more toxic and insoluble form with time because of complex structures formation with hydroxyl ions (Khan 2001).

Hexavalent chromium compounds are responsible for both acute and chronic toxicity. The interaction of Cr(VI) compounds by contact, ingestion, or inhalation causes severe illnesses such as eczematous and allergic skin reactions, dermatitis, damage to the nasal septum, mucous and skin ulcers, bronchial infections, allergies, hepatocellular deficiency, inflammation of stomach and intestines, etc. (Khan 2001; Chandra et al. 2009).

7.4 Cr(VI) as a Major Pollutant in Tannery Effluent

Environmental damage caused by tannery discharge has created a critical problem in Pakistan and signifies a technical challenge for an efficient and safe cleaning process. Chromium, a brittle,, and shiny metal is present in environment in combined form around 0.1–0.3 mg/kg of earth's surface. It exists in several oxidation states (−2 to +6) and the most stable are Cr(III) and Cr(VI) (Molokwane et al. 2008).

Cr(III) solubility is affected by the formation of oxides and hydroxides. Chromium is mainly employed in the metallurgy industry, particularly stainless steel production. Other Cr salts are used for manufacturing of pigments, leather tanning, metal finishing, etc. Tanned hide is approximately 80–90% made from chromium compounds (Papp 2004). Discharged effluents from tanneries contain about 40% of Cr as Cr(III) and Cr(VI). For each 200 kg of hide, more than 600 kg of waste is produced by a tannery (Khan 2001). Cr chemicals have also been used for the production of metal castings and mortars, refractory bricks, and as wood preservative.

Conversely, the US Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA) has prohibited the use of Cr(VI) compounds as a wood preservative regarding health issues. Because of wide applications, huge amount of Cr wastes is released into the environment each year. In 2003, US EPA declared about 32,589.6 metric tons of Cr compounds was disposed of and half of the quantity was landfilled in the surroundings (US Environmental Protection Agency 2005). Potable water guidelines by the WHO states 0.05 mg/L as the maximum permissible limit for total chromium. Cr is hazardous, but also spreads fast over aquatic systems and underground waterways. Consequently, Cr has been recognized as toxic environmental pollutant by US EPA (Narayani and Shetty 2013).

7.4.1 Impact of Chromium Compounds on Environment

Chromate is present naturally but anthropogenic activities give rise to Cr(VI) pollution in the environment. Natural sources contribute 54,000 tons of chromium. Studies showed that atmospheric Cr comes back to soil and water bodies by rain. Cr estimated time to reside in the atmosphere is less than 10 days (Agency for Toxic Substance and Disease Registry (ATSDR) 2015). Chromate present in soils can seep into surface water because of its highly soluble and mobile nature (Coetzee et al. 2018). It is a common practice to irrigate agricultural land by wastewater. Tannery effluents has large content of valuable nutrients, however it also contains toxins such as Cr that might damage soil quality and crop production (Alvarez-Bernal et al. 2006). High percentage of Cr in soils can prevent germination of seeds and growth of seedling. The toxic effects of Cr are less apparent on seed development than on growth of seedling. Barley seeds were able to germinate in soil under chromate stress of 100 mg/kg. However it showed slow growth due to Cr(VI) inhibition of diastase that is necessary for mobilizing the starch reserved for early growth (Zayed and Terry 2003).

In plants, the toxicity of Cr is greatly dependent on ionic species of element. Hauschild (1993) analyzed the effect of Cr(VI) toxicity in barley and rape plants provided in hydroponic culture. Cr(VI) and Cr(III) were supplied in the range of 0–100 mg/kg. When chromate (100 mg/L) stress was applied to plants, up to 3000–5000 mg/kg of Cr(VI) was accumulated and was up to 300–400 mg/kg when Cr(III) (100 mg/L) stress was applied in hydroponic culture. These high levels of chromium caused leaf chlorosis, reduced root and shoot growth, stimulation of chitinase activity, and low levels of water content in leaves (Zayed and Terry 2003).

7.4.2 *Health Hazards of Chromium Compounds*

A characteristic feature of chromium is its environmental mobility and consequently is a cause of environmental risk. Cr(VI) belongs to group A human carcinogen due to its mutagenicity, carcinogenicity, and teratogenicity nature in plants, animals, and humans (Narayani and Shetty 2013) (Fig. 7.2).

The ingestion of Cr(VI) leads to severe illness and can even causes death. Oral toxicity (LD_{50}) of Cr(VI) was reported to be 50–100 mg/kg and for C(III) 1900–3300 mg/kg in rats (NIOSH 1977). Cr(VI) ions readily solubilize in water and hence can pass through the cell permeability barriers (Thacker et al. 2006). In the living cells, oxyanions of heavy metals has impact on the metabolism of structurally associated nonmetals. Hexavalent chromium toxicity is linked to its capability to induce oxidative stress and damage DNA in cells (Reynolds et al. 2009). Previous studies have extensively described the development of oxidative stress that led to membrane damage for example, loss of membrane potential or inhibition of electron transport chain (ETC) both in prokaryotes and eukaryotes.

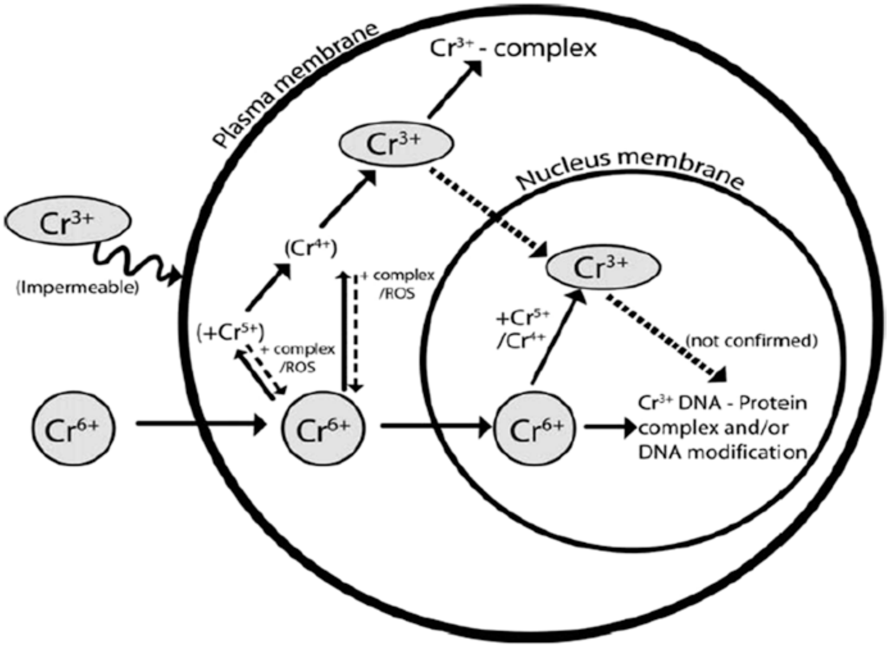


Fig. 7.2 A schematic diagram showing mutagenicity and toxicity of chromate ions (Narayani and Shetty 2013)

Hexavalent chromium is a carcinogen based on studies regarding respiratory cancer in individuals that are occupationally exposed to it (Mishra and Bharagava 2016; Chandra et al. 2011; Langard 1983). A temporary exposure levels of Cr(VI) beyond maximum contaminant level can lead to skin irritation or ulceration also called as chrome holes. Whereas, long-term exposure beyond maximum contaminant level can contribute to nerve tissue damage, kidney circulation, damage to the liver, and death (Kotas and Stasicka 2000). Individuals exposed to Cr(VI) could also suffer from nasal septum lesions. The improper waste disposal, poor storage, and leakage have made chromate as one of the most commonly recorded pollutant at waste areas (Narayani and Shetty 2013).

7.5 Nonbiological Methodologies for Effluent Remediation

Environmental protection agencies have concerns about waste treatment. Industrial effluents have bad impact on the surroundings, if strict regulatory standards are enforced then it will surely contribute to increase waste removal costs. Therefore, effluent processing is essential for long-term organization benefit. For controlling Cr pollution in countries where leather is produced at large-scale, tannery effluent treatment has become a critical issue, because of its substantial toxic content. Various leather fabricating activities and procedures bring about the generation of different types of fluid discharge. A difference in fluid volume will cause a significant effect on toxin concentrations (Springer 1994; Song et al. 2000).

Usually, tannery effluents containing high concentration of Cr (VI) compounds are processed by different physiochemical approaches for example, ion exchange, reduction, adsorption, precipitation, and electrodialysis and reverses osmosis that is expensive and has other disadvantages. These disadvantages include high reagent consumption, partial metal removal, energy requirements, and production of toxic sludge. Moreover, the majority of these strategies has some limitations and only applied at high/moderate concentration of heavy metals as compared to low concentrations (1–100 mg/Z) (Addour et al. 1999; Narayani and Shetty 2013).

Few of these methods are described below;

7.5.1 Chemical Precipitation

Chemical precipitation is a commonly used technique for removal of heavy metals from waste water. In this technique, dissolved pollutants are transformed into insoluble compounds, thus enabling subsequent removal of contaminant from the effluent by physical methods, for example, filtration (NEESA 1993). In precipitation process, precipitants particles (also known as flocculants and coagulants) size is increased by aggregation. The treatment process is directly dependent on alkalinity and pH of effluent as this will determine the amount of chemical that will be used for metal removal. Generally, sodium hydroxide or lime is used to precipitate heavy metals in water in neutralization process. But this process is not effective (incomplete precipitation) particularly when complexing agents are present (EPA 2000; Xu and Xu 2008).

For many years, chemical precipitation has been utilized as a prime technique for heavy metal removal. Groundwater contaminated with heavy metals has been remediated by chemical methods in column and pilot scale experiments. In one such analysis, calcium carbonate and granulated lime were used as coagulants (Lee et al. 2007). Moreover, a few researchers have created and specifically utilized 1, 3-benzenedaimidoethathiol dianion (industrially known as Metx) that irreversibly binds metals in aqueous solutions. In an investigation by Matlock et al. (2002), Metx showed more than 90% removal of toxic metals from acid mine wastes. Precipitation with sulfide is described to be one of the most effective processes. This is a due to its low solubility to destabilize solvent complexes. Regardless of the simplicity, this process is not suggested for use since lethal compounds could be discharged in acidic pH, subsequently leads to great risks in case of occurrence of accidental discharge or over dosage.

The best alternative recommended to conventional sulfide treatment is dithiocarbonate precipitation (Metalsorb 2004). Metals chemical precipitation methods have low costs and could be done by a pH alteration. Irrespective of these advantages, compound precipitation of metals in water still has few limitations such as production of large volume of sludge, leading to additional up to 50% effluent disposal costs (EPA 2000). Each dissolved heavy metal consists of different pH level for hydroxide precipitation. This procedure requires corrosive chemicals, therefore causing safety concerns (EPA 2000; Metalsorb 2004).

7.5.2 Ion Exchange

A reversible chemical reaction in which the ions from wastewater are exchanged by a similar charged species attached to an immobile solid particle. These exchanged particles are either synthetically manufactured resin or naturally present inorganic salts. This process is primarily similar to biosorption therefore the latter is known to work mainly on basis of ion exchange. Ion exchange mostly uses hydrocarbon-derived polymeric resins (Volesky 2003). This method has been effectively used for removal of heavy metals from waste water. Vaca et al. (2001) have described the interactions of chromium, cadmium, and lead, while competing for ion exchange active sites in naturally present clinoptilolite. Their investigation showed efficient removal of dissolved metals within 18 h in batch reactors, with the percent removal of more than 95% in acidic pH.

7.5.3 Reverse Osmosis

Reverse osmosis consists of a membrane that functions as a molecular filter to eliminate 99% of all dissolved heavy metals in a solution. In this procedure, the water goes through the film while the dissolved and particulate compounds are filtered out. This procedure is very efficient for ionic species removal from aqueous solutions. The subsequent by-product solutions make it more feasible for effective recovery of heavy metals. Regardless of the adequacy, these membranes are generally expensive. This technique is costly due to the use of elevated pressure, which makes it sensitive to working conditions.

An important advantage of reverse osmosis as compared to other effluent treatment systems is the capability to reduce the other ionic pollutant concentrations as well as dissolved organic compounds (Volesky 2003; Pawlak et al. 2005). Reverse osmosis has been used in small and large-scale experiments for heavy metal removal. Pawlak et al. (2005) conducted a study in which they checked reverse osmosis membrane module for removal of total arsenic concentration in feed water over a period of 30 days. The concentration of arsenic was reduced from 60 ppb on average to 1 ppb in the treated water.

7.5.4 In Situ Chemical Sorption

In situ chemical sorption (ISCS) is also a significant method for immobilization of Cr(VI). Activated carbon displays a significantly high adsorption capability for Cr (VI) with two mechanisms of adsorption and for other inorganic compounds. Firstly, Cr(VI) ions are adsorbed on the inner carbon surface, subsequently reduced to Cr(III), later these Cr(III) ions move to outer carbon surface (Mohan and Pittman Jr 2006). GAC (granular initiated carbon) in permeable reactive barrier (PRB) systems is extremely appropriate for hexavalent chromium removal from ground waters (Han et al. 2000). If treating naturally occurring zeolites with cationic surfactants, they can gain a positive charge on its surface, bringing about an enhanced sorption affinity for anionic metals, such as chromate. They are known as surface-modified zeolites (SMZs) and can be effectively used for chromate immobilization. PRBs filled with SMZ have been successfully used for remediation of a Cr(VI) polluted aquifer.

Another effective material for chromate ions adsorption from solutions is unrefined tamarind fruit shells (CTFS) and pretreated with hydrochloric acid. Moreover, peat has been used in commercial applications for reduction and removal of chromate from polluted groundwater (Theologou et al. 2013). Ferrous materials can also be utilized for ISCS such as mixed magnetite and maghemite nanoparticles. The use of magnetite-maghemite nanoparticles is an efficient method for chromate adsorption from aqueous solutions and can also be used for treating ground water (Chowdhury and Yanful 2010). They also demonstrated that under controlled (acidic) pH conditions, the chromate ion take-up ranges between 96 and 99%.

7.5.5 Electrochemical Technique

Electrochemical techniques give a different approach for remediation of Cr(VI) contaminated sites as it represents both electrical and chemical reactions simultaneously. Electrochemical treatment procedures have considered well due to their adaptability and ecological compatibility, which makes the removal of heavy metals from solids, liquids, and gases possible. Actually, the fundamental reagent is the electron, which is a clean reagent (Barrera-Dıaz et al. 2003). Electrochemical Cr (VI) removal strategies can be utilized in various ways depending upon the electrode material, pH of the aqueous solution, and the intensity of the current density employed. In this way different chemical reactions can occur simultaneously on electrode surface or in the aqueous solution (Barrera-Díaz et al. 2012). Electrochemical treatment was considered as rapid, need few chemicals, giving high removal and selectivity of metals, and produce less secondary compounds. Conversely, this technique requires high initial capital cost and production of spongy deposits (Madhavi et al. 2013).

7.6 Biological Methodologies for Effluent Remediation

Immensely growing population, industrialization, and deforestation have led to serious ecological problems. One of them is improper waste disposal of toxic effluents of industries into the environment. These toxic effluents mainly consist of complex mixtures of heavy metals that greatly affect living beings. Cr is major heavy metals chemical toxin, present in effluents of paint, textile, dying, and leather industries. Manufacturing and industrial activities discharged more than 0.17 million tons of Cr waste in the biosphere. Due to the relatively less toxic nature and thermodynamic stability of Cr(III) than Cr(VI), discharge of tannery effluents in water bodies and on land has created high levels of Cr (30,000 mg/kg or more) (Naidu et al. 2000).

Cr is one of the micronutrient essential for proper growth and development of human body. However, exceeding a certain limit has led to various health issues. Chromium is considered toxic in its hexavalent form and can cause skin ulcers. Prolong exposure can possibly lead to lung cancer and asthma. Hence, the regulatory authorities have emphasis on rehabilitation and remediation of Cr polluted sites (Kamaludeen et al. 2003; Chandra et al. 2009). Various strategies have been developed for removal of heavy metals from the environment. Conventional remediation treatment processes for heavy metals removal includes flocculation, chemical precipitation, evaporative recovery, coagulation, electrodialysis, floatation, reverse osmosis, nano-filtration, ion exchange and ultrafiltration, etc. These procedures are effective, however, high chemical and energy requirement makes them inefficient for remediation of polluted areas. Moreover, production of highly toxic by-products and sludge makes them even more ineffective. Therefore, environment friendly, economical, and effective strategies are needed which can reduce chromate pollution in the surroundings.

Bioremediation is the biological approach to degrade heavy metals using indigenous microorganisms (Xie et al. 2010; Bharagava et al. 2014; Raman et al. 2018). The fundamental principle of bioremediation is the use of microbes (mostly bacteria) for the removal or transfer of hazardous contaminants to less toxic forms. These microbes can only destroy harmful compounds when minerals and nutrients are available to them for growth and development of cells. Microbes have the ability to produce oxidized or reduced species that precipitate the metals (National Research Council 1993).

Microorganisms including bacteria, yeasts, fungi, and algae are capable of reducing Cr(VI) (Cervantes et al. 2001). Microbial reduction of Cr(VI) to Cr(III) has been extensively studied (Cheung and Gu 2007). Two different processes are followed by microbes for Cr (VI) reduction, i.e., direct and indirect reduction. The former process comprises various reductase bacteria that obtain electrons from reduced organic substrates (nucleotides, sugars, amino acids, vitamin, organic acids, or glutathione) (Ramírez-Díaz et al. 2008). While in the indirect process bacterial metabolism produced reducing agents (Fe^{2+} and HS^{-}) that causes Cr(VI) to reduce to Cr(III) (Prevot et al. 2018).

7.6.1 Bacterial Removal of Chromate Ions

Hexavalent chromium is known for its strong oxidizing ability and toxicity to living cells (Kotas and Stasicka 2000). Bacteria can survive and grow under harsh environmental conditions. Cr(VI) toxicity causes development of various resistance mechanisms in bacteria. Several studies reported Cr(VI) resistant bacteria that gain resistivity growing in chromate contaminated sites. *Pseudomanas* sp., was the first Cr(VI) reducing bacterial species isolated by Romanenko and Koren'kov (1977) from industrial effluents. Since then many chromium reducing bacteria have been isolated from various sources and could be applied in remediation processes (Chen and Hao 1998; Chandra et al. 2011; Narayani and Shetty 2013; Coetzee et al. 2018). Many bacterial species are known to have enhanced Cr (VI) reduction potential under aerobic and anaerobic conditions (Cheung and Gu 2007).

Microorganisms, especially bacteria, exhibit various metabolic pathways that use different toxic chemical compounds as energy source through fermentation, respiration, and co-metabolism for growth and development (Ayangbenro and Babalola 2017). These resistance mechanisms includes active efflux system, formation of complexes with thiol-containing molecules, mobilization/immobilization of heavy metals, DNA repair enzymes, intra or extracellular sequestration, detoxifying enzymes for reactive oxygen species (ROS), and transformation of toxic heavy metals into less toxic compounds (Fig. 7.1) (Bento et al. 2005; Pei et al. 2009; Soni et al. 2013).

Bioremediation involves Cr(VI) to Cr(III) reduction by microorganisms and involves an additional mechanism i.e., chromate resistance. Different bacterial species are reported for chromate reduction for example, *Escherichia*, *Deinococcus*, *Arthrobacter* spp., *Bacillus cereus*, *Burkholderia* spp., *Sporosarcina ginsengisoli*, *Kocuria flava*, *and Pseudomonas veronii* (Chandra et al. 2011; Thatoi et al. 2014).

For evaluation of chromate resistant bacteria for bioremediation purposes, Salunkhe et al. (1998) took sewage sludge sample and isolated *P. mendocina* and investigated Cr(VI) reduction potential in soil microcosm study. Their investigation showed that *P. mendocina* has the potential to immobilize 100 mg/kg Cr(VI) in 8 h. After treating Cr(VI) polluted soil with bacteria, wheat seedling growth was supported without giving any toxic effects. These findings clearly exhibited the beneficial use of bacterial treatment in remediating Cr(VI) sites (Salunkhe et al. 1998; Zayed and Terry 2003). Schematic diagram of isolation of chromate resistant bacteria from tannery wastes is shown in Fig. 7.3 (Narayani and Shetty 2013).

7.6.1.1 Bacterial Biomass Used for Bulk Removal of Metal Ions

Bacteria, algae, fungi, agricultural wastes, etc. are commonly used as biosorbent materials and possess strong ability for reclaiming heavy metals contaminated sites. These materials have wide variety of sorption sites that retain metal ions and other compounds (San Keskin et al. 2018). This technology is very effective for detoxification of toxic industrial effluents. Agricultural wastes are efficient biosorbent materials and have low cost for example, straw, coconut husks, rice husk, exhausted coffee, peat moss (Dakiky et al. 2002), coconut fiber, walnut skin, waste tea (Jouraiphy et al. 2005), rice hulls, defatted rice bran, cotton seed hulls and soybean hulls (Tarley and Arruda 2004), mustard seed cakes, and wheat bran (Iqbal et al. 2002). These materials are also processed with strong alkali to increase metal binding capacity from aqueous solutions. The binding/uptake of metals to cellular compartments is usually termed as biosorption.

Biosorbents are naturally occurring ion exchange materials which mostly comprise of weak acidic and basic functional groups. Metals can be reclaimed from the matrix by treating with HCl or H_2SO_4, NaOH/complexing agents, on dead biomass or live bacteria (Coelho et al. 2015).

Plants are also capable of heavy metal removal from polluted sites. Under metal stress condition, they produce peptide molecules that are rich in cysteine amino acids for example, metallothioneins (MTs), glutathione (GSH), and phytochelatins (PCs) that readily bind and remove metal ions in biologically inactive forms. A study showed MTs over expression in recombinant bacterial cells that increase metal ions uptake, therefore giving an opportunity to develop microbial-based biosorbents for reclamation of polluted sites (Zayed and Terry 2003).

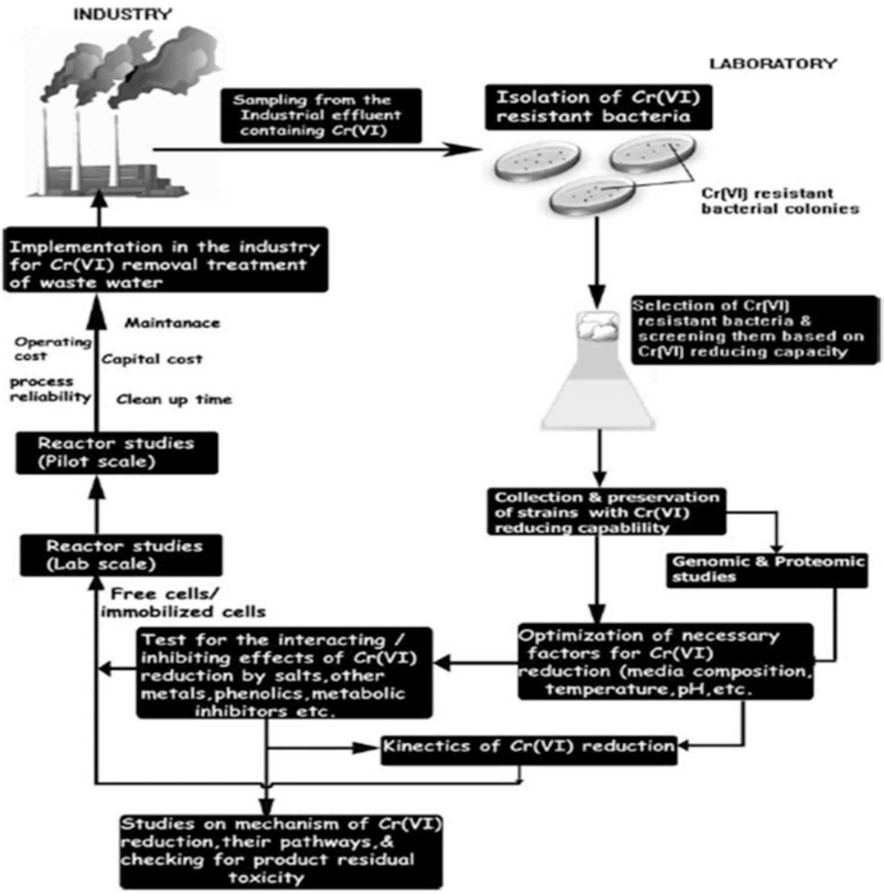


Fig. 7.3 Schematic diagram of isolation of Cr(VI) resistant bacteria from tannery wastes (Narayani and Shetty 2013)

7.6.2 *Fungal and Yeast Removal of Chromate Ions*

Fungi and yeasts have been equally known for Cr(VI) removal from contaminated environments. The beneficial characteristics of fungi are its high variability and ranging in size form microscopic molds to mushrooms. They easily grow and produce significant amount of biomass (Coelho et al. 2015). Various fungal species are reported for Cr(VI) biosorption such as *Aspergillus niger* (Srivastava and Thakur 2006), *Aspergillus oryzae* (Igwe and Abia 2006), *Trichoderma* sp., (Vankar and Bajpai 2008), *Fusarium oxysporum* (Amatussalam et al. 2011), *Aspergillus fumigatus, Aspergillus versicolor*, *Penicillium canescens* (Coelho et al. 2015), and dead fungal biomass for example, *Rhizopus oryzae, Aspergillus niger, Saccharomyces cerevisiae,* and *Penicillium chrysogenum* (Park et al. 2005). The protein molecules present on fungal cell surface comprise different functional groups that adsorb

Cr(VI) by forming chemical bonds. FTIR analysis of fungal cell wall surface showed occurrence of hydroxyl, carboxyl, amino, and carbonyl functional groups that help in the binding of chromate ions (Vankar and Bajpai 2008; Amatussalam et al. 2011).

Various studies have developed biosorbents material by using fungal strains and examined their efficiency for Cr(VI) removal. In a study, *Carica papaya* plant dry stem was used as biosorbent matrix and *F. oxysporum* cells were colonized with it. About 90% chromate biosorption was achieved using this material by the end of fifth day of incubation (Amatussalam et al. 2011). Singh et al. (2016) established *Aspergillus flavus* biosorbent material, incorporated with ferrous ions, improved removal of Cr(VI) along with the adhesiveness of biosorbent material. A study was performed with fungal strains *A. flavus* and *A. niger* associated marine seaweed to investigate for Cr(VI) resistance and accumulation. The results showed that both strains were capable of accumulating more than 25% of Cr provided to them. *Aspergillus flavus* showed maximum accumulation potential (Gupta et al. 2000). Other organisms such as *Hypocrea tawa* (Morales-Barrera et al. 2008) and *Trichoderma inhamatum* (Morales-Barrera and Cristiani-Urbina 2008) were reported for chromate reduction after biosorption process (Jobby et al. 2018). Fungal removal of hexavalent chromium generally depends on anionic biosorption.

However, other studies have suggested the use of fungal mycelia as biosorbent material that involves adsorption-coupled reaction, adsorbing Cr(VI) on biomaterials followed by reduction through non-enzymatic reactions to trivalent chromium with help of electron donors contained by the biomaterial (Park et al. 2007). Cr(VI) reduction by yeast was studied by Martorell et al. (2012). They isolated *Pichia jadinii* M9 and *Pichia anomala* M10 yeast strains from dye industry discharge. These strains also transformed Cr(VI) into Cr(III) by chromate reductase activity. Mahmoud and Mohamed (2017) showed Cr(VI) biosorption by utilizing biomass/polymer matrices beads (BPMB). They synthesized BPMB by immobilizing *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* biomass in 3% alginate extract. Approximately, 85% Cr(VI) reduction was achieved at 200 ppm initial chromate concentration and optimized cultural conditions (Jobby et al. 2018).

7.6.3 Algal Removal of Chromate Ions

Algal biomass are also used for biosorption of Cr(VI) from aqueous solutions such as tannery effluents, contaminated wastewaters, etc. Cr(VI) remediation is achieved by occurrence of functional groups for example, hydroxyl, amino, sulfate, and carbonyl in association with specific molecules phytochelatins, metallothioneins, guluronic acid, alginates, and sulfated polysaccharides solutions. Algal cell surface adsorbs Cr(VI) and then accumulates it intracellularly (Sen and Dastidar 2010; Jyoti and Awasthi 2014). Several biosorbent materials has been established and assessed for maximum Cr(VI) removal by applying biomass of *Euglena*, *Cladophora crispata*, *Dunaliella* sp., *Laurencia obtuse*, *Pachymeniopis* sp., *Scenedesmus incras-*

satulus (Ahluwalia and Goyal 2007), *Ceramium virgatum* (Sari and Tuzen 2008), *Spirogyra* sp., (Gupta et al. 2001), *Nostoc linckia* (Mona et al. 2011), *Spirulina* sp., (Rezaei 2016), *Chlorella vulgaris* (Sibi 2016).

Different studies are reported for batch cultures optimization of different physiochemical parameters (pH, temperature, adsorbent concentration, agitation time, initial chromate concentration, adsorbent dose, and contact time) to achieve maximum chromate adsorption on algal biomaterials. *Cladophora* biomass showed maximum Cr(VI) accumulation i.e., 72% after 15 min, it was followed by *Chlorella vulgaris* 34–48%, and *Selenastrum* with 39% chromate accumulation. *Spirulina* biomass accumulated up to 82.67% of Cr(VI) under optimized conditions at 10 mg/L initial chromate concentration (Rezaei 2016; Jobby et al. 2018).

7.6.4 Phytoremediation of Chromate Ions

Chromium is the second most abundant heavy metal that enters into the agricultural systems by application of Cr contaminated wastewater (Saxena et al. 2017; Gupta et al. 2018). Phytoremediation technique includes the use of plants to remediate heavy metal polluted water and soils through biochemical degradation, uptake, accumulation, or sequestration of heavy metals. The vascular plants are capable of up taking heavy metals, accumulate, and store large amounts through their root systems. The uptake of chromium contaminants in plant has been conducted through various laboratory studies and small-scale field trials (Fruchter 2002). The metal tolerance is greatly influenced by plant species and genotype.

Phytoremediation of Cr(VI) has been investigated in several plants such as *Agave lechuguilla*, *Atriplex canescens*, *Larrea tridentata, Thuja* orientalis, and *Pinus sylvestris* (Madhavi et al. 2013). Romero-González et al. (2006) used *Agave lechuguilla* biomass for chromate biosorption. Cr(VI) absorption was maximum at pH 2.0 either due to electrostatic attraction of positively charged ligands for example, protonated amines to Cr(VI) oxyanions or through Cr(VI) to Cr(III) reduction, consequently resulting in the binding of Cr(III) to the biomass (Romero-González et al. 2006; Madhavi et al. 2013).

Plants are reported to produce specific enzymes that have similar function as chromate reductase produced by bacteria and mediate in chromate reduction (Lytle et al. 1998). Early efforts for phytoremediation of Cr(VI) contaminated sites of Ranipet Tanneries in Tamil Nadu was performed with *Sorghum* by Revathi et al. (2011). They examined the effect of chromate ions on content of chlorophyll and biomass. Increased concentration of Cr(VI) showed significant reduction in plant biomass. The plant biomass was effectively increased by supplementation of vermicompost to the polluted soil, creating more space for accumulation of chromium. Various other plants have been reported for their ability of accumulating Cr includes *Barringtonia acutangula* (Kumar et al. 2014), *Callitriche cophocarpa* (Jobby et al. 2018), *Pterocarpus indicus*, *Jatropha curcas* (Mangkoedihardjo et al. 2008), *Jasminum sambac, Jasminum grandiflorum, Polianthes tuberosa, Nerium oleander,* and *Helianthus* sp. (Jobby et al. 2018). *Callitriche cophocarpa* was reported as best Cr(VI) accumulator showing 27 times greater chromate concentration in fresh shoots as compared to the older ones (Jobby et al. 2018).

Phytoremediation is a low energy, inexpensive, and eco-friendly technique. It causes fewer disturbances in soil ecosystem. It prevents excavation and is generally acceptable and easily maintained. However, this technology is slow and time consuming due to slow growth rate of plants. After remediation, plant biomass needs proper disposal. A change in agro-climatic conditions directly affects phytoremediation. The pollutants can enter soil again by litter formation of these heavy metal accumulating plants. The solubility of contaminants may be increased by root exudates of hyper-accumulating plants and led to dissemination of heavy metals into the soil. Therefore, to improve and make phytoremediation a sustainable technology, plants with high growth rate are required with extensive root system for accumulating high concentration of pollutants. These plants should be able to produce large quantity of biomass and along with that recombinant technology could be used to engineer common plants with hyper accumulating genes (Khan et al. 2009).

7.7 Emerging Trends and Future Prospects

Biotechnological approach such as in situ remediation is applied to reduce or eliminate toxic heavy metals that have led to environmental hazard and risks. In situ remediation involves direct inoculation of microbes and reagents into the polluted aquifer and is becoming progressively a common technique. The cost effectiveness, simplicity of procedure, and least interference of the site give further advantage for the application of this technique. The removal processes that utilize permeable reactive barriers is also gaining acceptance. No single technique is adequate for the removal of majority of the pollutants that might exist at a site or to accomplish compliance with cleanup standards. To accomplish the goals, the use of treatment train strategy is frequently required.

For instance, inorganic reductants might be applied for mass removal of chromate contaminants, followed by the use of anaerobic bioremediation and/or to additionally check natural reduction. This strategy is gaining commercial acceptance and application, particularly at complex sites. On commercial ground, new reagents/chemicals are also added for both bioremediation and inorganic pathways. In various remediation systems, nanotechnology is applied particularly nZVI that is rapidly developing field and an effective approach for reclamation of chromate polluted environments. These materials are costly as compared to conventional materials. However, using nanoparticles in areas where conventional material may not be applied such as fractured rock aquifers. Other nanoparticles such as carbon nanotubes were used for reduction of hexavalent chromium that showed very promising results (Gu et al. 2013). Different reports are available on combination of bioremediation and electro-kinetics with significant outcomes (Fonseca et al. 2011).

Hexavalent chromium reduction can also be achieved by immobilizing microbial cells combined with nanotechnology such as, C-nanotubes impregnated into calcium alginate, significantly improved Cr(VI) reduction and enzyme stability. Nanomaterials donate electrons in enzymatic hexavalent chromium reduction and immobilization (trivalent chromium precipitates) can likewise be applied at chromate contaminated sites for remediation purposes (Igiri et al. 2018).

7.8 Conclusion

The use of biological systems for example, microbes and plants for remediation of Cr(VI) polluted sites is significantly developing and has proven a considerable progress in situ, further combined with field trials at various agro-climatic zones all over the world. Biosorption have been established as an eco-friendly, efficient, and cost-effective technique for reclamation of Cr(VI) polluted environments. Bacterial, algal, fungal, and plant biomass are considered effective for hexavalent chromium transformation. This chapter provides a detailed understanding of Cr(VI) removal through various processes. Therefore, helping in improving current technologies to be more proficient for Cr(VI) remediation.

Acknowledgement The authors would like to thank Higher Education Commission of Pakistan for the financial assistance of the project NRPU (3743).

References

Addour L, Belhoucine D, Bouldries N, Comeau Y, Pauss A, Mameri N (1999) Zinc uptake by *Streptomyces rimosus* biomass using a packed bed column. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 74:1089–1095

Agency for Toxic Substance and Disease Registry (ATSDR) (2015) Toxicological profile for chromium. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Services, ATSDR, Atlanta

Ahluwalia SS, Goyal D (2007) Microbial and plant derived biomass for removal of heavy metals from wastewater. Bioresour Technol 98(12):2243–2257

Ali A, Saeed K, Mabood F (2016) Removal of chromium (VI) from aqueous medium using chemically modified banana peels as efficient low-cost adsorbent. Alex Eng J 55(3):2933–2942

Alvarez-Bernal D, Contreras-Ramos SM, Trujillo-Tapia N, Olalde-Portugal V, Frías-Hernández JT, Dendooven L (2006) Effects of tanneries wastewater on chemical and biological soil characteristics. Appl Soil Ecol 33(3):269–277

Amatussalam A, Abubacker MN, Rajendran RB (2011) In situ *Carica papaya* stem matrix and *Fusarium oxysporum* (NCBT-156) mediated bioremediation of chromium. Indian J Exp Biol 49(12):925–931

Anderson RA (1989) Essentiality of Cr in humans. Sci Total Environ 86:75–81

Anderson RA (1997) Chromium as an essential nutrient for humans. Regul Toxicol Pharmacol 26:S35–S41

Ayangbenro AS, Babalola OO (2017) A new strategy for heavy metal polluted environments: a review of microbial biosorbents. Int J Environ Res Public Health 14(1):94

Barrera-Dıaz C, Urena-Nunez F, Campos E, Palomar-Pardavé M, Romero-Romo M (2003) A combined electrochemical-irradiation treatment of highly colored and polluted industrial wastewater. Radiat Phys Chem 67(5):657–663

Barrera-Díaz CE, Lugo-Lugo V, Bilyeu B (2012) A review of chemical, electrochemical and biological methods for aqueous Cr (VI) reduction. J Hazard Mater 223:1–12

Basaran B, Ulaş M, Bitlisli BO, Aslan A (2008) Distribution of Cr (III) and Cr (VI) in chrome tanned leather. Indian J Chem Technol 15:511–514

Bento FM, Camargo FA, Okeke BC, William FT (2005) Comparative bioremediation of soils contaminated with diesel oil by natural attenuation, biostimulation and bioaugmentation. Bioresour Technol 96(9):1049–1055

Bharagava RN, Yadav S, Chandra R (2014) Antibiotic and heavy metal resistance properties of bacteria isolated from the aeration lagoons of common effluent treatment plant (CETP) of tannery industries (Unnao, India). Ind. J Biotechnol 13:514–519

Bharagava RN, Saxena G, Mulla SI, Patel DK (2018) Characterization and identification of recalcitrant organic pollutants (ROPs) in tannery wastewater and its phytotoxicity evaluation for environmental safety. Arch Environ Contam Toxicol 75(2):259–272

Cervantes C, Campos-García J, Devars S, Gutiérrez-Corona F, Loza-Tavera H, Torres-Guzmán JC, Moreno-Sánchez R (2001) Interactions of chromium with microorganisms and plants. FEMS Microbiol Rev 25(3):335–347

Chandra R, Bharagava RN, Yadav S, Mohan D (2009) Accumulation and distribution of toxic metals in wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) and Indian mustard (*Brassica campestris* L.) irrigated with distillery and tannery effluents. J Hazard Mater 162:1514–1521

Chandra R, Bharagava RN, Kapley A, Purohit HJ (2011) Bacterial diversity, organic pollutants and their metabolites in two aeration lagoons of common effluent treatment plant during the degradation and detoxification of tannery wastewater. Bioresour Technol 102:2333–2341

Chen JM, Hao OJ (1998) Microbial chromium (VI) reduction. Crit Rev Environ Sci Technol 28(3):219–251

Cheung KH, Gu JD (2007) Mechanism of hexavalent chromium detoxification by microorganisms and bioremediation application potential: a review. Int Biodeterior Biodegradation 59(1):8–15

Chowdhury SR, Yanful EK (2010) Arsenic and chromium removal by mixed magnetite-maghemite nanoparticles and the effect of phosphate on removal. J Environ Manag 91:2238–2247

Chrysochoou M, Johnston CP, Dahal G (2012) A comparative evaluation of hexavalent chromium treatment in contaminated soil by calcium polysulfide and green-tea nanoscale zero-valent iron. J Hazard Mater 201:33–42

Coelho LM, Rezende HC, Coelho LM, de Sousa PA, Melo DF, Coelho NM (2015) Bioremediation of polluted waters using microorganisms. In: Advances in bioremediation of wastewater and polluted soil, Naofumi Shiomi, IntechOpen. https://doi.org/10.5772/60770

Coetzee JJ, Bansal N, Chirwa EM (2018) Chromium in environment, its toxic effect from chromite-mining and ferrochrome industries, and its possible bioremediation. In: Exposure and health. pp 1–12

Cooman K, Gajardo M, Nieto J, Bornhardt C, Vidal G (2003) Tannery wastewater characterization and toxicity effects on *Daphnia* spp. Environ Toxicol Int J 18(1):45–51

Dakiky M, Khamis M, Manassra A, Mer'Eb M (2002) Selective adsorption of chromium (VI) in industrial wastewater using low-cost abundantly available adsorbents. Adv Environ Res 6(4):533–540

Devi BD, Thatheyus A, Ramya D (2017) Bioremoval of hexavalent chromium, using *Pseudomonas fluorescens*. J Microbiol Biotechnol Res 2(5):727–735

Eccles H (1995) Removal of heavy metals from effluent streams—why select a biological process? Int Biodeter Biodegr 35(1–3):5–16

EPA (1990) Draft report Government of Punjab, Lahore. Environment Protection Agency, Government of Punjab, Lahore, p 127

EPA (2000) Wastewater technology sheet: chemical precipitation. United State Environmental Protection. EPA 832-F-00-018. http://www.epa.Gov/own/mtb/chemical_precipitation.pdf. Accessed 7 July 2010

Fonseca B, Pazos M, Sanroman MA (2011) Removal of hexavalent chromium of contaminated soil by coupling electrokinetic remediation and permeable reactive biobarriers. Environ Sci Pollut Res Int 19:1800–1808

Fruchter J (2002) Peer reviewed: in-situ treatment of chromium-contaminated groundwater. Environ Sci Technol 36:23

Gu H, Rapole S, Huang Y, Cao D, Luo Z, Suying W, Guo Z (2013) Synergistic interactions between multi-walled carbon nanotubes and toxic hexavalent chromium. J Mater Chem A 1:2011–2021

Gupta R, Ahuja P, Khan S, Saxena RK, Mohapatra H (2000) Microbial biosorbents: meeting challenges of heavy metal pollution in aqueous solutions. Curr Sci 78(8):967–973

Gupta VK, Shrivastava AK, Jain N (2001) Biosorption of chromium (VI) from aqueous solutions by green algae *Spirogyra* species. Water Res 35(17):4079–4085

Gupta P, Rani R, Chandra A, Kumar V (2018) Potential applications of *Pseudomonas* sp. (strain CPSB21) to ameliorate Cr^{6+} stress and phytoremediation of tannery effluent contaminated agricultural soils. Sci Rep 8(1):4860

Habibul N, Hu Y, Wang YK, Chen W, Yu HQ, Sheng GP (2016) Bioelectrochemical chromium (VI) removal in plant-microbial fuel cells. Environ Sci Technol 50(7):3882–3889

Han I, Schlautman MA, Batchelor B (2000) Removal of hexavalent chromium from groundwater by granular activated carbon. Water Environ Res 72:29–39

Hauschild MZ (1993) Putrescine (1,4-diaminobutane) as an indicator of pollution-induced stress in higher plants: barley and rape stressed with Cr(III) or Cr(VI). Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 26:228–247

Haydar S, Aziz JA (2009) Characterization and treatability studies of tannery wastewater using chemically enhanced primary treatment (CEPT)—a case study of Saddiq Leather Works. J Hazard Mater 163(2–3):1076–1083

Igiri BE, Okoduwa SI, Idoko GO, Akabuogu EP, Adeyi AO, Ejiogu IK (2018) Toxicity and bioremediation of heavy metals contaminated ecosystem from tannery wastewater: a review. J Toxicol 2018:2568038

Igwe J, Abia AA (2006) A bioseparation process for removing heavy metals from waste water using biosorbents. Afr J Biotechnol 5(12):1167–1179

Iqbal M, Saeed A, Akhtar N (2002) Petiolar felt-sheath of palm: a new biosorbent for the removal of heavy metals from contaminated water. Bioresour Technol 81(2):151–153

Jobby R, Jha P, Yadav AK, Desai N (2018) Biosorption and biotransformation of hexavalent chromium [Cr (VI)]: a comprehensive review. Chemosphere 207:255–266

Joshi NC (2018) Biosorption: a green approach for heavy metal removal from water and waste waters. Res J Life Sci Bioinform Pharm Chem Sci 4(1):59–69

Jouraiphy A, Amir S, El Gharous M, Revel JC, Hafidi M (2005) Chemical and spectroscopic analysis of organic matter transformation during composting of sewage sludge and green plant waste. Int Biodeter Biodegr 56(2):101–108

Jyoti J, Awasthi M (2014) Bioremediation of wastewater chromium through microalgae: a review. Int J Eng Res Technol 3(6):1210–1215

Kamaludeen SP, Megharaj M, Juhasz AL, Sethunathan N, Naidu R (2003) Chromium-microorganism interactions in soils: remediation implications. Rev Environ Contam Toxicol 178:93–164. Springer, New York

Khan AG (2001) Relationships between chromium biomagnification ratio, accumulation factor, and mycorrhizae in plants growing on tannery effluent-polluted soil. Environ Int 26(5–6):417–423

Khan MS, Zaidi A, Wani PA, Oves M (2009) Role of plant growth promoting rhizobacteria in the remediation of metal contaminated soils. Environ Chem Lett 7(1):1–19

Kishor R, Bharagava RN, Saxena G (2019) Industrial wastewaters: the major sources of dye contamination in the environment, ecotoxicological effects, and bioremediation approaches. In:

Bharagava RN (ed) Recent advances in environmental management. CRC Press Taylor & Francis. ISBN-13: 978-0-8153-8314-7

Kotas J, Stasicka Z (2000) Chromium occurrence in the environment and methods of its speciation. Environ Pollut 107:263–283

Krishnamurthy S, Wilkens MM (1994) Environmental chemistry of Cr. Northeast Geol 16(1):14–17

Kumar D, Tripathi DK, Chauhan DK (2014) Phytoremediation potential and nutrient status of *Barringtonia acutangula* Gaerth. Tree seedlings grown under different chromium (CrVI) treatments. Biol Trace Elem Res 157(2):164–174

Langard S (1983) The carcinogenicity of chromium compounds in man and animals. In: Burrows D (ed) Chromium: metabolism and toxicity. CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp 13–30

Lee M, Paik IS, Kim I, Kang H, Lee S (2007) Remediation of heavy metal contaminated groundwater originated from abandoned mine using lime and calcium carbonate. J Hazard Mater 144(1–2):208–214

Lofrano G, Meriç S, Zengin GE, Orhon D (2013) Chemical and biological treatment technologies for leather tannery chemicals and wastewaters: a review. Sci Total Environ 461:265–281

Lytle CM, Lytle FW, Yang N, Qian JH, Hansen D, Zayed A, Terry N (1998) Reduction of Cr(VI) to Cr(III) by wetland plants: potential for in situ heavy metal detoxification. Environ Sci Technol 32(20):3087–3093

Madhavi V, Reddy AVB, Reddy KG, Madhavi G, Prasad TNKV (2013) An overview on research trends in remediation of chromium. Res J Recent Sci 2277:2502

Mahmoud MS, Mohamed SA (2017) Calcium alginate as an eco-friendly supporting material for Baker's yeast strain in chromium bioremediation. HBRC J 13(3):245–254

Mangkoedihardjo S, Ratnawati R, Alfianti N (2008) Phytoremediation of hexavalent chromium polluted soil using *Pterocarpus indicus* and *Jatropha curcas* L. World Appl Sci J 4(3):338–342

Marshall WE, Champagne ET (1995) Agricultural byproducts as adsorbents for metal ions in laboratory prepared solutions and in manufacturing wastewater. J Environ Sci Health Part A 30(2):241–261

Martorell MM, Fernández PM, Fariña JI, Figueroa LI (2012) Cr (VI) reduction by cell-free extracts of *Pichia jadinii* and *Pichia anomala* isolated from textile-dye factory effluents. Int Biodeter Biodegrad 71:80–85

Matlock MM, Howerton BS, Atwood DA (2002) Chemical precipitation of heavy metals from acid mine drainage. Water Res 36(19):4757–4764

Metalsorb (2004) Heavy metal chelating agents. http://www.snf-group.com/IMG/pdf/Heavy_Metal_-METALSORB_E.pdf. Accessed 9 July 2010

Mishra S, Bharagava RN (2016) Toxic and genotoxic effects of hexavalent chromium in environment and its bioremediation strategies. J Environ Sci Health C Environ Carcinog Ecotoxicol Rev 34(1):1–32

Mohan D, Pittman CU Jr (2006) Activated carbons and low cost adsorbents for remediation of tri- and hexavalent chromium from water. J Hazard Mater 137:762–811

Mohapatra RK, Parhi PK, Thatoi H, Panda CR (2017) Bioreduction of hexavalent chromium by *Exiguobacterium indicum* strain MW1 isolated from marine water of Paradip Port, Odisha, India. Chem Ecol 33(2):114–130

Molokwane PE, Meli KC, Nkhalambayausi-Chirwa EM (2008) Chromium (VI) reduction in activated sludge bacteria exposed to high chromium loading: Brits culture (South Africa). Water Res 42(17):4538–4548

Mona S, Kaushik A, Kaushik CP (2011) Biosorption of chromium (VI) by spent cyanobacterial biomass from a hydrogen fermentor using Box-Behnken model. Int Biodeter Biodegr 65(4):656–663

Morales-Barrera L, Cristiani-Urbina E (2008) Hexavalent chromium removal by a *Trichoderma inhamatum* fungal strain isolated from tannery effluent. Water Air Soil Pollut 187(1–4):327–336

Morales-Barrera L, de Maria Guillen-Jimenez F, Ortiz-Moreno A, Villegas-Garrido TL, Sandoval-Cabrera A, Hernández-Rodríguez CH, Cristiani-Urbina E (2008) Isolation, identification and characterization of a *Hypocrea tawa* strain with high Cr (VI) reduction potential. Biochem Eng J 40(2):284–292

Naidu R, Kookana RS, Cox J, Mowat D, Smith LH (2000) Fate of chromium at tannery waste contaminated sites at Mount Barker, South Australia. In: Naidu R, Willett IR, Mahimairaja S, Kookana RS, Ramasamy K (eds) Towards better management of soils contaminated with tannery waste, proceedings no 88. Australian Council for International Agricultural Research, Canberra, pp 57–70

Narayani M, Shetty KV (2013) Chromium-resistant bacteria and their environmental condition for hexavalent chromium removal: a review. Crit Rev Environ Sci Technol 43(9):955–1009

National Research Council (1993) In situ bioremediation: when does it work? National Academies Press, Stockholm

NEESA (1993) Precipitation of metals from ground water. NEESA Document Number 20.2-051.6. Novel Energy and Environmental Support Activity, Port Hueneme

NIOSH (1977) Registry of toxic effects of chemical substances. DHEW (NIOSH) Pub. 78-104-B. National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Cincinnati 2:296, 590

Padda IUH, Asim M (2019) What determines compliance with cleaner production? An appraisal of the tanning industry in Sialkot, Pakistan. Environ Sci Pollut Res 26(2):1733–1750

Papp JF (2004) Chromium use by market in the United States. In: Paper presented at 10th international ferroalloys congress. Cape Town, South Africa, pp 1–4

Park D, Yun YS, Park JM (2005) Use of dead fungal biomass for the detoxification of hexavalent chromium: screening and kinetics. Process Biochem 40(7):2559–2565

Park D, Lim SR, Yun YS, Park JM (2007) Reliable evidences that the removal mechanism of hexavalent chromium by natural biomaterials is adsorption-coupled reduction. Chemosphere 70(2):298–305

Pawlak Z, Zak S, Zablocki L (2005) Removal of hazardous metals from groundwater by reverse osmosis. Pol J Environ Stud 15(4):579–583

Pawlisz AV (1997) Canadian water quality guidelines for Cr. Environ Toxicol Water Qual 12(2):123–161

Pei QH, Shahir S, Raj AS, Zakaria ZA, Ahmad WA (2009) Chromium (VI) resistance and removal by *Acinetobacter haemolyticus*. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 25(6):1085–1093

Prevot AB, Ginepro M, Peracaciolo E, Zelano V, De Luca DA (2018) Chemical vs bio-mediated reduction of hexavalent chromium. An in-vitro study for soil and deep waters remediation. Geoderma 312:17–23

Raman NM, Asokan S, Sundari NS, Ramasamy S (2018) Bioremediation of chromium (VI) by *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia* isolated from tannery effluent. Int J Environ Sci Technol 15(1):207–216

Ramírez-Díaz MI, Díaz-Pérez C, Vargas E, Riveros-Rosas H, Campos-García J, Cervantes C (2008) Mechanisms of bacterial resistance to chromium compounds. Biometals 21(3):321–332

Ran ZH, Bi WA, Cai QT, Li XX, Min LI, Dong HU, Guo DB, Juan WA, Chun FA (2016) Bioremediation of hexavalent chromium pollution by *Sporosarcina saromensis* M52 isolated from offshore sediments in Xiamen, China. Biomed Environ Sci 29(2):127–136

Revathi K, Haribabu TE, Sudha PN (2011) Phytoremediation of chromium contaminated soil using sorghum plant. Int J Environ Sci 2(2):417

Reynolds MF, Peterson Roth EC, Bespalov IA, Johnston T, Gurel VM, Menard HL, Zhitkovich A (2009) Rapid DNA double-strand breaks resulting from processing of Cr-DNA cross-links by both MutS dimers. Cancer Res 69:1071–1079

Rezaei H (2016) Biosorption of chromium by using *Spirulina* sp. Arab J Chem 9(6):846–853

Romanenko V, Koren'kov V (1977) Pure culture of bacteria using chromates and bichromates as hydrogen acceptors during development under anaerobic conditions. Mikrobiologiia 46:414–417

Romero-González J, Peralta-Videa JR, Rodríguez E, Delgado M, Gardea-Torresdey JL (2006) Potential of *Agave lechuguilla* biomass for Cr(III) removal from aqueous solutions: thermodynamic studies. Bioresour Technol 97(1):178–182

Salunkhe PB, Dhakephalkar PK, Paknikar KM (1998) Bioremediation of hexavalent Cr in soil microcosms. Biotechnol Lett 20:749–751

San Keskin NO, Celebioglu A, Sarioglu OF, Uyar T, Tekinay T (2018) Encapsulation of living bacteria in electrospun cyclodextrin ultrathin fibers for bioremediation of heavy metals and reactive dye from wastewater. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 161:169–176

Saravanabhavan S, Thanikaivelan P, Rao JR, Nair BU, Ramasami T (2004) Natural leathers from natural materials: progressing toward a new arena in leather processing. Environ Sci Technol 38(3):871–879

Sari A, Tuzen M (2008) Biosorption of total chromium from aqueous solution by red algae (*Ceramium virgatum*): equilibrium, kinetic and thermodynamic studies. J Hazard Mater 160(2–3):349–355

Saxena G, Chandra R, Bharagava RN (2017) Environmental pollution, toxicity profile and treatment approaches for tannery wastewater and its chemical pollutants. Rev Environ Contam Toxicol 240:31–69

Saxena G, Purchase D, Mulla SI, Saratale GD, Bharagava RN (2019) Phytoremediation of heavy metal-contaminated sites: eco-environmental concerns, field studies, sustainability issues and future prospects. Rev Environ Contam Toxicol 249:71–131

Sen M, Dastidar MG (2010) Chromium removal using various biosorbents. Iran J Environ Health Sci Eng 7(3):182–190

Shakoori A, Makhdoom M, Haq R (2000) Hexavalent chromium reduction by a dichromate-resistant gram-positive bacterium isolated from effluents of tanneries. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 53(3):348–351

Sibi G (2016) Biosorption of chromium from electroplating and galvanizing industrial effluents under extreme conditions using *Chlorella vulgaris*. Green Energy Environ 1(2):172–177

Singh R, Kumar M, Bishnoi NR (2016) Development of biomaterial for chromium (VI) detoxification using *Aspergillus flavus* system supported with iron. Ecol Eng 91:31–40

Song Z, Williams CJ, Edyvean RGJ (2000) Sedimentation of tannery wastewater. Water Res 34(7):2171–2176

Soni SK, Singh R, Awasthi A, Singh M, Kalra A (2013) In vitro Cr(VI) reduction by cell-free extracts of chromate-reducing bacteria isolated from tannery effluent irrigated soil. Environ Sci Pollut Res 20(3):1661–1674

Springer H (1994) Treatment of industrial waste of the leather industry-is it still a major problem? J Am Leather Chem Assoc 89:153–187

Srivastava S, Thakur IS (2006) Evaluation of bioremediation and detoxification potentiality of *Aspergillus niger* for removal of hexavalent chromium in soil microcosm. J Soil Biol Biochem 38:1904–1911

Tarley CRT, Arruda MAZ (2004) Biosorption of heavy metals using rice milling by-products. Characterization and application for removal of metals from aqueous solutions. Chemosphere 54(7):905–915

Thacker U, Parikh R, Shouche Y, Madamwar D (2006) Hexavalent chromium reduction by *Providencia* sp. Process Biochem 41:1332–1337

Thatoi H, Das S, Mishra J, Rath BP, Das N (2014) Bacterial chromate reductase, a potential enzyme for bioremediation of hexavalent chromium: a review. J Environ Manag 146:383–399

Theologou E, Panagiotakis I, Dermatas D, Chrysochoou M, Toskos T (2013) Remediation technologies for hexavalent chromium contaminated aquifers. In: Proceedings of the 13th international conference on environmental science and technology, Athens, Greece.

Tunay O, Kabdasli I, Orhon D, Ates E (1995) Characterization and pollution profile of leather tanning industry in Turkey. Water Sci Technol 32(12):1

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (2005) Guidelines for carcinogen risk assessment. EPA/630/P-03/001. US EPA, Washington, DC

U.S. EPA (1986) U.S. EPA Guidelines for the health risk assessment of chemical mixtures (PDF) EPA/630/R-98/002 (1986)

Vaca MV, Callejas RLP, Gehr R, Cisneros BJN, Alvarez PJJ (2001) Heavy metal removal with Mexican clinoptilolite: multi-component ionic exchange. Water Res 35(2):373–337

Vankar PS, Bajpai D (2008) Phyto-remediation of chrome-VI of tannery effluent by *Trichoderma* species. Desalination 222(1–3):255–262

Vendruscolo F, da Rocha Ferreira GL, Antoniosi Filho NR (2017) Biosorption of hexavalent chromium by microorganisms. Int Biodeter Biodegr 119:87–95

Volesky B (2003) Sorption and biosorption. BV-Sorbex, Inc., St. Lambert (Montreal). (ISBN 0-9732983-0-8) Quebec, Canada

Wani PA, Wahid S, Singh R, Kehinde AM (2018) Antioxidant and chromium reductase assisted chromium (VI) reduction and Cr (III) immobilization by the rhizospheric *Bacillus* helps in the remediation of Cr(VI) and growth promotion of soybean crop. Rhizosphere 6:23–30

Witek-Krowiak A, Szafran RG, Modelski S (2011) Biosorption of heavy metals from aqueous solutions onto peanut shell as a low-cost biosorbent. Desalination 265(1–3):126–134

Xie X, Fu J, Wang H, Liu J (2010) Heavy metal resistance by two bacteria strains isolated from a copper mine tailing in China. Afr J Biotechnol 9(26):4056–4066

Xu Y, Xu T (2008) Heavy metal complexes wastewater treatment with chelation precipitation. In: 2nd International conference on bioinformatics and biomedical engineering, IEEE, pp 2789–2793

Zayed AM, Terry N (2003) Chromium in the environment: factors affecting biological remediation. Plant Soil 249(1):139–156

Chapter 8
Photocatalysis as a Clean Technology for the Degradation of Petrochemical Pollutants

Zakhele (Zack) Khuzwayo and Evans M. N. Chirwa

Abstract Photocatalysis as a technology does satisfy the criteria as a clean technology in application and is suitable for the degradation of petrochemical pollutants. An ideal photocatalyst is expected to conform to properties of photoactivity, biological and chemical inertness, stability toward photo-corrosion, suitable for visible or near UV light energy harnessing, be low cost and be nontoxic in nature. The high stability of TiO_2 allows diverse applications such as in electro-ceramics, glass and in photocatalytic degradation of chemicals in water and air. The oxide particles can be used in the form of suspensions in slurry reactors as well as thin film coating agents. The suspended photocatalyst has been demonstrated to be very efficient degrading different classes of organic compounds. The major concern of the suspended photocatalyst system is the inability to reclaim the semiconductor catalyst in suspended slurry-type applications. This drawback has been addressed in various ways through innovative developments, which are specifically aimed at addressing this issue.

Keywords Photocatalysis · Photoactivity · Titanium oxide · Petrochemical pollutants · Degradation · Clean technology

8.1 Introduction

In modern society, one of the biggest commercial global industries is the petroleum industry, also commonly referred to as the oil and gas industry. The petroleum industry constitutes of many commercial products, including gasoline, natural gas,

---

Z. Khuzwayo (✉) · E. M. N. Chirwa
Environmental Engineering Sciences and Water Utilisation Engineering, Department of Chemical Engineering, Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment, and Information Technology (EBIT), University of Pretoria, Pretoria, South Africa
e-mail: zack.khuzwayo@up.ac.za

R. N. Bharagava (ed.), *Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment*, Microorganisms for Sustainability 18,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-1390-9_8

naphtha, fuel and lubricating oils, asphalt, paraffin wax, kerosene, and many more chemicals that are produced from petroleum. These chemicals are applied in the manufacture of a large number of consumer products from different sectors, such as the pharmaceuticals, electronics, motor vehicle, health care, household, and home-based manufacturers among others. Petrochemicals are so versatile that they are found in many of the facets of the human environment, these include medicine (where they are used in the production of resins, films, and plastics) (Hess et al. 2011; Frumkin et al. 2007), food (where they are used in the manufacture of food preservatives) (Neff et al. 2011), agriculture (where they are used in plastic sheeting, in pesticides, and fertilizers), household products (where they are used in many ways in the forms of films, rubbers, fibers, and plastics).

It is apparent from the above information that the petrochemical industry performs an important function in the betterment of human society through activities applied in diverse sectors. The major concern proceeding the utilization of the petrochemical functions and the end-user products is their removal from the environment once the many consumer cycles have run their course. Petrochemical industrial activities and the waste associated with it result in significant amounts of harmful substances being transferred to the environment through liquid waste discharges, solid waste and through the atmosphere (Mechhoud et al. 2016; Chen et al. 2014). The harmful petrochemical pollutant substances can pose serious risks to human health and wildlife through different exposure (Álvarez et al. 2016; Haghollahi et al. 2016; Zolfaghari et al. 2016; Hu et al. 2013; Zhong and Zhu 2013). There have been many documentations of exposure to petroleum product's harmful substances leading to severe health conditions such as organ and tissue damage in the form of liver, nerve, birth defects, cancer, asthma, brain and hormonal disorders among many more (Bustillo-Lecompte et al. 2018; Axelsson et al. 2010; Belli et al. 2004; Luginaah et al. 2002; Lin et al. 2001a, b).

Environmental contamination by petrochemical pollutants from industrial chemical plant activities most predominantly occurs through effluent discharges in the form of wastewater. This effluent is formally referred to as industrial discharge and constitutes of the waste liquid matrices produced in the chemical plant's processes, which contains industrial production materials, intermediate compounds products, and the toxic substances produced as part of the production process. The petrochemical industry boasts a diverse repertoire of products that are produced using many different reaction schemes. For this reason, industrial processes discharge wastewater that is made up of a huge range and variety of chemical components, some of which may be resistant to natural degradation processes (Liang et al. 2019; Varjani et al. 2017; Xiaoqiang et al. 2019).

8.2 Petrochemical Pollutants

Petrochemical pollutants are chemical contaminants that are typically present in effluent matrices discharged from industrial activities associated with fossil fuels refinery processes by chemical plants. Various types of chemical plants processes are utilized in efforts to process natural materials toward reusable chemical products. Some of the natural materials converted to chemical products for commercial applications include minerals, metals, natural gases, air, water, and fossil fuel oil. Petrochemical pollutant chemical compounds specifically result from the conversion of natural gas liquids through cracking and distillation processes and through the extraction processes of crude oil. In essence, petrochemicals can be classified as compounds sourced from the hydrocarbons of natural gases and petroleum fractions.

Typical extraction and conversion process from the natural forms of these hydrocarbons toward the desired end products are complex and require many chemical reaction steps. Each of these steps results in the production of multiple and various types of chemical by-products that represent many different chemical groups. Commonly, petrochemicals can be classified into two groups. These classification groups are known as the olefins and the aromatics. Olefins, also termed alkenes, are hydrocarbon chemical species that only contain carbon–carbon double bonds, whereas the alkanes constitute of single bonds (Bruice 2004). Petrochemical olefins include chemical compounds such as propylene, butadiene and ethylene. Aromatic compounds are associated with benzene as the base compound, which has a six-carbon π system in a cyclic form (Bruice 2004). Petrochemical aromatics include chemical compounds such as benzene, xylene and its isomers, ethylbenzene, and toluene.

The above described petrochemical compounds are also referred to as primary petrochemicals; these chemical hydrocarbon molecules are further processed to manufacture petrochemical intermediates (Souza et al. 2014). The manufactured petrochemical intermediates and reaction steps process chemical derivatives produced are products of the primary petrochemical starting products and are referred to as secondary petrochemicals. The secondary petrochemical are also further processed to form daughter products; these are collectively referred to downstream petrochemicals. The term downstream simply means that the particular petrochemical compound is reactively formed later in the sequence of chemical reaction events.

8.3 Diversity of Petrochemical Pollutants

Petrochemical pollutants are sourced and can be sourced from many different hydrocarbon starting materials (primary petrochemicals) of the natural environment. The following brief description will detail some of the sources of petrochemicals that are processed toward usable end products. A subsequent acknowledgement is that due to the diversity of the petrochemical groups that are converted from the different primary petrochemicals, the refining processes generate large quantities of petrochemical wastewater, which upon discharge contaminate natural water bodies, and when discharged toward treatment facilities, the sheer complex nature of the chemical intricacies overwhelms most conventional treatment processes, and/or require large amounts of resources to treat and process to acceptable standards. This is one of the primary drivers with regard to seeking cleaner and less resource-intensive technologies in dealing with petrochemical industrial waste.

8.3.1 Petrochemicals from Downstream Products

Industrial wastewater matrices can be immensely complicated due to the high number of different chemical groups derived from the primary petrochemicals, secondary petrochemicals, and the diverse products formed from the reactions of compounds. The following discussion segment will elucidate the nature of this phenomenon by accounting for some of the products formed from downstream petrochemicals such as methane, ethylene, and benzene. The complex nature of treated petrochemical influent poses a real challenge for most conventional treatment installations, and where advanced treatment technologies are in place, the amount of resources required for the discharged product to meet standard regulation stipulated in the various legislations around the world can be costly. The vast number and the various chemical products derived from downstream reaction processes will be evaluated in an attempt to garner appreciation for the technological challenge of treating petrochemical wastewater.

8.3.1.1 Downstream Petrochemical Products from Methane

Methane is derived from petroleum refining processes in large quantities. Many petrochemical compounds from related groups can subsequently be reactively formed. Some of these products include but not limited to:

- Methyl alcohol—methane is converted to methanol (methyl alcohol) under an oxidative catalyst in the presence of oxygen molecules. Methanol is used in many industrial and commercial products as a versatile solvent. Methanol can also be further oxidized to produce formaldehyde, which is also used as a raw agent for various products.
- Unsaturated hydrocarbons—these are compound complexes that comprise of double and triple bonds. Through pyrolysis protocols and in the presence of suitable catalysts, methane is converted to unsaturated products such as acetylene ethylene and propylene. These unsaturated hydrocarbons are also the starting compounds for many other downstream products.
- Chlorinated products—Chlorinated solvents are formed from the substitution of hydrogen molecules from the methane compound. All four carbon–hydrogen bonds can be replaced to form carbon tetrachloride.
- Hydrogen—the pyrolysis of methane produces hydrogen, the primary application of this form of hydrogen is in the manufacture of ammonia gas. Ammonia is a primary starting compound in the production of many useful products, which themselves serve in the formation of different end-user products
- Carbon black—this substance is used in the pigment industry in the form of ink and in the rubber industry. This is achieved by heat stripping the hydrogen molecules from methane.

8.3.1.2 Downstream Petrochemical Products from Ethylene

Ethylene is the simplest of the olefins group, derived from the pyrolysis of naphtha. It has a carbon–carbon double bond, deeming it very reactive and easily converted to lower-end petrochemical products. It is predominantly applied in the synthesis of products such as paints and cosmetics among many more (Medianu et al. 2012). The more common petrochemical products derived from ethylene include:

- Ethyl benzene—this compound is a reaction of benzene and ethylene, the reaction takes place in the presence of a catalyst. The conversion of ethylbenzene to styrene allows the manufacture of polystyrene.
- Ethyl alcohol—this compound is the product of the hydration of ethylene. It is the solvent used in the manufacture of a large number of compounds, including acetic acid and ethyl acetate.
- Polyethylene—this compound is polymerized to form plastic materials.
- Ethylene oxide—ethylene is reactively oxidized to form ethylene oxide, which is used in the production of ethylene glycol.
- Vinyl chloride—this compound is formed directly from ethylene
- Ethylene glycol—this compound is used in the manufacture of polyester materials.
- Dichloromethane—a reaction of ethylene and chloride produces this compound.

8.3.1.3 Down-Stream Petrochemical Products from Benzene

Benzene is primary produced from naphtha through a process of aromatization, where the aliphatic hydrocarbons from the naphtha are used to produce aromatic hydrocarbons. The more common petrochemicals manufactured from benzene include:

- Chlorobenzene
- Nitrobenzene
- Ethyl benzene
- Cyclohexane
- Alkyl benzenes (linear and branched)

8.3.1.4 Down-Stream Petrochemical Products from Other Primary Compounds

Butadiene, propylene, and acetylene are the other primary chemical compounds that account for numerous downstream petrochemical compounds. The unsaturated hydrocarbons compounds propylene and acetylene are derived from natural gas, while the two carbon–carbon double-bonded butadiene is derived from naphtha.

The more common petrochemical compounds that are produced from these compounds include:

- Butadiene monomers
- Acetaldehyde
- Vinyl acetate
- Acrylonitrile
- Glycerol
- Isopropyl benzene
- Polypropylene
- Isopropyl alcohol

The compounds listed above Sect. 8.3.1 are just some of the many prominent petrochemicals that form part of most chemical plant wastewater constituents. Most of the petrochemicals listed are in a lot of cases the starting products for many simple and complex chemical compounds that are classified as pollutants.

8.4 Treatment of Wastewater and Petrochemical Pollutants

The chains of application of petrochemical compounds utilized in industrial operations are seldom confined to the chemical plants. The manufactured products take on many forms and have variety of application intended for the end users. The eventual end users include both the general public and the privatized firms. Privatized firms typically consume and/or convert the raw acquired product into secondary (downstream) products by further reprocessing these in various ways and forms, which in turn lead to the goods being accessed by the final end users, who are the general public and service provider entities. It should therefore be understood that petrochemical pollution emanating from the manufactured and consumed products exists in the natural environment, meaning that the issue of petrochemical waste treatment directly affects the whole water management cycle. Though it is imperative to stress the importance of petrochemical treatment from the primary sources, these being the oil refinery chemical plants and related facilities, the petrochemical pollutants are also found in secondary sources.

Secondary sources would be those that contribute to wastewater that is generally treated from public households and the commercial sectors. Therefore, different levels of dealing with petrochemical pollution should be recognized. Downstream-level manufactured products that are derived from primary and secondary petrochemicals are conventionally classified separately, and usually form part of larger classification group of these pollutants, one such group for example is the persistent organic pollutants (POPs). POPs are organic compounds with properties that are resistant to environmental degradation using conventional methods. To stay aligned to the subject focus of this chapter, the treatment of downstream-level manufactured products will be limited to comparative referencing with regard to treatment process analysis. The area of interest is the prospect of treating petrochemical industrial effluent using cleaner technologies.

It however should be noted that in most parts of the world, especially in the developing economies, conventional and traditional wastewater are still employed in treating petrochemical waste, without special consideration of the process required. Industrial discharged waste is approached similarly to common waste from the households and commercial environments (Naderi et al. 2017; Stasik et al. 2015; Wu et al. 2015; Viguri et al. 2002; Zheng and Richardson 1999). The analysis of traditional, conventional, and advanced wastewater treatment methodologies should form part of the narrative that promotes the application of cleaner technologies in the degradation of petrochemicals.

8.4.1 Treatment of Wastewater Pollutants

The treatment objective of the wastewater is to remove any and all contaminants that may deem the water not fit for human consumption. There are predominantly two types of wastewater treatment methods, namely, unit operations and unit processes. Methods of treatment in which physical forces predominate are called unit operations, while methods that remove pollutants by chemical or biological reactions are called unit processes (Metcalf and Eddy, Inc. 2003). Typical treatment plants combine physical, chemical, and biological methods in treating wastewater. There are different levels of wastewater treatment; these are described in Table 8.1.

Traditional water and wastewater treatment technologies are designed to deal with particulates, biological removal of pollutants and chemical contaminants dissolved in water. These methods include:

Table 8.1 Wastewater treatment process levels

Treatment level	Description
Preliminary (grit removal and screening)	Removal of solid objects and material, these are floatables, grease, sand, and more. Meant to prevent operational interference
Primary	Removal of suspended solids and organic matter
Advanced primary	Enhanced removal of finer solid particles and organic matter, with the inclusion of chemicals
Secondary	Removal of biodegradable organic matter by dissolution and suspensions
Nutrient removal	Removal of biodegradable organics, suspended solids, and nutrients
Tertiary	Removal of residual suspended solids by filtration methods, and disinfection
Advanced	Removal of remaining material from the treatment processes above, these are dependent on target compounds

- Filtration, the removal of suspended solids from the water by passing water through a porous medium; this process is completely ineffective in removing chemical pollutants.
- Sedimentation, a process that allows the flocculated or coagulated particles time to settle by gravity in a sedimentation tank. Unless the dissolved compounds are precipitated and agglomerated into the flocculants or coagulated particles, this process in mostly ineffective, and in cases where it might be effective for a single class of compounds, it would be impractical to develop a method for each of the multitude of emerging pollutants and known species.
- Flocculation, the agglomeration of particles in water or wastewater to promote settling by using high-molecular-weight materials. Most organic micro-pollutants are unamenable to flocculation.
- Coagulation, this is the process of using physiochemical methods to promote particulate settling by reducing net electrical repulsion forces between particles. This is strictly a solute-based method.
- Activated carbon absorption, this is a process used to remove low concentrations of contaminants from water that are difficult to remove by other means. Given that a suitable material is used, both adsorption and absorption are possible as a means of using surface charges and adhesion to garner particulate and chemical species of relevant properties. Activated carbon can be made extremely porous, thereby creating a very large surface area available for adsorption of contaminants

Tradition chemical processes for water treatment include disinfection as a means of removing living biological specimen that are present in natural waters and the treatment of infrastructure damaging chemical components. Disinfection in conducted in forms of

- Chlorination, hypochlorites and other forms of chloride compound complexes are used to kill harmful bacteria, parasites, and other organisms. Disinfection reactions can lead to the formation of complex intermediates that may need further treatment.
- Ozonation, is a treatment process that kills harmful bacteria and other microorganisms through an infusion of ozone. Ozone (O_3) is a gas created when oxygen molecules are subjected to high electrical voltage.
- Ultraviolet radiation, or UV application, is a disinfection process for water and wastewater treatment that involves passing ultraviolet light through water or wastewater. UV light kills microorganisms present in water. This process in advanced oxidation is called photolysis, though the intended end result in application to advanced oxidation process is different to that of traditional disinfection, the application may be the same, and the UV intensity properties may be a point of interest when applied in advanced oxidation.
- Ion exchange softening, is a process of using either natural or synthetic ion exchange resins to remove hardness from water. The resins exchange non-hardness-causing sodium ions for hardness-causing calcium and magnesium ions.

The primary physical treatment methods, such as screening and centrifugation, and secondary treatment methods, such as clarification, trickling filtration, are not intended for advanced chemical removal and do little to rid water of dissolved pollutants. Traditional physical and chemical water treatment technologies do not affect most organic micro-pollutants, and in some cases through by-product reactions, it exacerbates the toxicity of post-treatment water quality.

8.4.2 Treatment of Petrochemical Pollutants

Discussed earlier are the conventional treatment protocols for general wastewater constituents, and included is the treatment of petrochemical pollutant compounds from secondary source waste. The pertinent challenge under scrutiny is in the treatment and degradation of petrochemicals from primary sources such as the oil refinery and related industries. To obtain a better understanding of the type of waste produced from refining industry processes, a brief description of the core operation processes will be outlined. Refinery chemical plants apply a wide range of physical and chemical processes in their operational processes (Wong 2000). Refinery flow process configurations are therefore guided and determined by the composition of the source feedstock and the desired final petroleum product. Operational processing and auxiliary units in a generic refinery plant follow the treatment process steps as presented below, sourced from the EPA (1977):

Step 1: The separation process ((1) atmospheric distillation; (2) vacuum distillation; (3) recovery, gas processing).
Step 2: The petroleum conversion process ((1) cracking (thermal and catalytic); (2) reforming; (3) alkylation; (4) polymerization; (5) isomerization; (6) cooking; (7) visbreaking).
Step 3: The petroleum treatment process ((1) hydrodesulfurization; (2) hydrotreating; (3) chemical sweetening; (4) acid gas removal; (5) deasphalting).
Step 4: Feedstock and product handling ((1) storage; (2) blending; (3) loading; (4) unloading).
Step 5: Auxiliary facilities ((1) boilers; (2) wastewater treatment; (3) hydrogen production; (4) sulfur recovery).

The above listed steps should give indication to the complex nature of the oil refinery process, and also provide comprehension of the petrochemical pollutants that are produced. Various petrochemical wastewater treatment strategies have been developed in efforts to enhance conventional treatment processes in dealing with these pollutants, some of these strategies include bioelectro-Fenton reactions, biological aerated filters, and anaerobic–aerobic processes (Zhang et al. 2018; Li et al. 2018; Mattiusi et al. 2015; Yang et al. 2015; Mirzaei et al. 2013. The biological treatment process was advocated to be the more environmentally friendlier in the treatment of petrochemicals and boasted advantages such as low operational costs, small occupation, resistance to impact load, and improved efficiency (Jemli et al. 2017; Wang et al. 2016; Lettinga et al. 2001).

8.5 Advance Methods for the Treatment of Petrochemical Pollutants

The term clean technology mostly describes the processing of any material in a manner that reduces waste, minimizes environmental contamination, and requires the utilization of little to no nonrenewable resources. In chemistry terms, clean technology is mostly referred to as green technology or green chemistry, in general. Green chemistry is defined as the "design of chemical products and processes to reduce or eliminate the use and generation of hazardous substances" (Horvath and Anastas 2007). These terms will be used interchangeably in this chapter and will essentially hold the same meaning. Green technology will be used as the expression with regard to clean technology of petrochemical pollution treatment.

There are several new technologies that have been developed aimed at treatment of petrochemical pollutants; however, most of these do not necessarily qualify for the green technology bracket. Below are some of these technologies, adapted from Balasubramani and Sivarajaseka (2018);

- Treatment by the use of wetlands (Knight et al. 1999)
- Sulfide degradation by autotrophic denitrification (Vaiopoulou et al. 2005)
- Anaerobic treatment (Macarie 2005)
- Observer-based time-optimal control of an aerobic SBR (Vargas et al. 2000)
- Enhanced biodegradation using ozonation and BAC advanced treatment systems (Lin et al. 2001a, b)

Dimoglo et al. (2004) published one of the novel works that delved into the treatment of petrochemical wastewater using the concept of clean technologies. An electrochemical reaction protocol was applied toward the removal of hydrocarbons and grease from petrochemical wastewater. The electrolytic process applied demonstrated the successful removal of oil and grease from the chemical plant discharge without the inclusion of any chemical reagents. Advances have since been made in the development of green technology that is primarily focused on the treatment of pollutants resistant to conventional treatment methods. One potential technological area that has proven efficient in achieving this feat is through the application of advanced oxidation processes (AOP) methods. These techniques utilize chemical oxidation processes to treat organic pollutants resulting in noble constituent products, achieving complete mineralization of pollutants.

8.5.1 Advanced Oxidation Processes

There are a range of AOPs reported in literature dealing with treatment of water pollutants. AOPs technologies are generally accepted to be environmental clean-up methods that are both efficient and inexpensive (Tisa et al. 2014; Vaferi et al. 2014). They include catalysis, electrochemical, Fenton's reagent, ferrate ionizing radiation, microwave, photo Fenton's reagent, and photocatalysis. Some of the processes are commercially applied to full scale while others are being tested at pilot scale and at laboratory bench levels (Khuzwayo and Chirwa 2015; Parsons 2004; Andreozzi et al. 1999; Hoffmann et al. 1995). Several other advanced oxidation technologies such as ozonation, ozonation combined with H_2O_2, and certain types of UV irradiation are currently used for disinfection purposes in the water treatment industry (Lazar et al. 2012; Lathasree et al. 2004).

Among the mentioned AOPs, heterogeneous photocatalysis has yielded the most promising efficiencies in degrading a wide range of organic pollutants in the environment. Photocatalysis is so far the only chemical method than has been demonstrated to completely mineralize organic compounds to water and carbon dioxide under ambient operational conditions. In this process, a chemically inert semiconductor metal oxide is used as a catalyst to generate oxidative oxygen species such as OH° and O° radicals. Heterogeneous photocatalysis has been uniquely useful in wastewater and water application as a result of some important features, such as (1) low operational cost and ease of operation of the method; (2) standard operating temperatures and pressure; and (3) complete mineralization achieved without by-products formed.

There are various commercially available semiconductors; titanium dioxide (TiO_2) is the most commercially used, as it offers unique principles, including (Parsons 2004):

- high activity;
- significant stability to light illumination;
- low cost;
- nontoxic and remains stable after repeated catalytic cycles

Titanium dioxide absorbs light in the visible or low-energy range (300–370 nm) of the ultraviolet regions of the spectrum. The mechanism of photocatalysis and the band gap produced has been well documented by Vinod and Anirudhan (2002), Peral et al. (1997) Hoffmann et al. (1995), and Fox and Dulay (1993).

8.5.2 Photocatalytic Degradation of Organic Pollutants

Heterogeneous photocatalysis has grown as a discipline in the last couple of decades. Its relevance to areas related to energy conservation and environmental pollutant remediation has prompted diverse developments in its applications. One of the most significant applications of semiconductor photocatalysis is the purification of water containing low concentrations of chemical contaminants (Ibhadon and Fitzpatrick 2013). The range of applicability of the heterogeneous photocatalytic concept includes surface material physics, surface sciences, photo reaction chemical and physical chemistry, chemical and environmental engineering, and material sciences (Teoh et al. 2012). Such diverse applications are mostly possible because the semiconductor element provides an environment to directly influence the chemical reactivity of a wide range of adsorbates and a means to initiate photoinduced reduction and oxidation reactions (Fox and Dulay 1993).

In the chemistry discipline, photocatalysis is defined as the acceleration of photoreactions in the presence of a catalyst. The natures of reactions that are amenable to the photocatalytic principle include oxidation, dehydrogenation, hydrogen transfer, metal deposition, water detoxification, gaseous pollutant removal, and more. The photocatalysis discipline at present is focused on the development and optimization of the technology in the removal of total organics from aqueous and gas medium systems of; chemical industry waste, water and wastewater, and environmental pollution.

An analytical review by Serpone and Emeline reported that despite many studies conducted on plenty compatible materials, no semiconductor metal oxide besides titanium dioxide (TiO_2) has been discovered that can act as a viable photoanode, with properties of the conduction and valence band edges that straddle the redox potentials of water and where rapid charge-transfer events are the rule and not the exception.

The nucleus of the photocatalytic concepts is embedded on the generation of energy bandgaps upon photon excitation of semiconductor materials. Each semiconductor material has wavelength regions at which directed photons can initiate their most active energy states. When light photons of a sufficient quantum and corresponding wavelength comes into contact with electrons on material surfaces such as semiconductors, the energy carried by the photons is absorbed, which results in the electrons moving to a higher energy state. With additional energy in spin that can overcome the energy difference, the electrons jump to the next higher orbital spin where they re-establish and settle in phase and in wavelength. The additional absorbed energy can also be relinquished by the electrons and dissipated in the form of photon energy, this results in electron descent to lower orbitals where they settle at characteristic ground energy states.

The underlining overall mechanism of the semiconductor photocatalytic process is relatively well understood and documented in scientific literature, though many intricacies about its applications remain unanswered. The champion materials to photocatalytic principle in its current format are semiconductors, those that are amenable to excitation and bandgap formation in the region of the spectrum that can be taken advantage of. These materials have requisitions of reduction potential that are less positive than their oxidation potentials. At the interface between the photocatalyst particle and the present molecules, a double layer of charge exists in metal-liquid medium junctions. This layer can be formed either by adsorption of ions or molecules or by the formation of surface bonds between the solid and the species in solution.

The photocatalytic mechanism of organic substances centers on the generation and formation of hydroxyl ($^{\circ}OH$) radicals. Free hydroxyl radicals are one of the most active nonselective initiators of photocatalytic oxidation; they are efficient hydrogen atom abstractors and attack electron-rich moieties such as complex hydrocarbon compounds (Teoh et al. 2012). Energy from UV radiation of solar sources or artificial sources is used to excite the electrons from the valence band to the conduction band; this produces electron-hole pairs. Figure 8.1 shows some of the reaction pathway platforms that are plausible in heterogeneous photocatalysis. The predominant reaction pathways for the oxidation process take place at the valence band edge of the photocatalysts surface via a positive hole formation mechanism.

The oxidation process as a whole and the efficiency of the reaction process is driven by the prevention of the electron-positive hole recombination process, which is a spontaneous and a very rapid step. The prevention of the recombination step is achieved through the reductive removal of the ejected electron at the valence band edge. This process is known as scavenging, where a scavenging molecule complex is used to occupy the loose electrons through reductive pathways generation. Oxygen molecules are typically used as the electron accepting agents, where trioxygen (O_3) molecules are formed. The trioxygen molecule is also called ozone, and this molecule is formed through the electric discharges and ultraviolet (UV) light actions. Ozone is a good scavenging molecule, due to a much higher oxidation potential than oxygen, and is used in many industrial processes as an oxidation agent.

Gerischer and Heller (1991) reported that the electron transfer to oxygen and subsequent formation of H_2O_2 might be a rate limiting step; this was also substantiated by a follow-up study conducted by Schwitzgebel et al. (1995) on the role of oxygen in photocatalysis. Hydrogen peroxide has been reported to assist in the oxidation of inorganic and organic compound by acting as a direct electron acceptor or as a direct source of hydroxyl radicals. Hydrogen peroxide can be formed via both the conduction band and valence band pathways in oxygenated matrices (Sahel et al. 2016; Lousada et al. 2015; Yamazaki et al. 2008; Hoffmann et al. 1995; Linsebigler et al. 1995). Hydroxyl radicals are formed on the surface of the titanium dioxide particle; the reaction is initiated by the valence band surface holes with titanol groups in the forms of TiOH, adsorbed water and hydroxide molecules.

Secondary radical formations from the oxidation of organic substrates increase the complexity of the photocatalytic reaction mechanism (Teoh et al. 2012; Schwarz and Dodson 1989). The secondary formed radicals can contribute to the current-doubling effect; this is one of the photocatalytic reaction possibilities indicated in Fig. 8.1. In the current-doubling effect, a single photon of light has the capacity to generate two photoelectrons, one from the excitation, ejection, and promotion at the valence band level and another that is sourced from hydroxyalkoxyl radicals in the presence of suitable organic substrates. The photocatalytic mechanism in application is not a simple and straightforward one, as it has been established that surface hydroxyl groups or adsorbed water molecules may contribute to the chemical oxidation process. This section briefly explains some of the underlining principles of the heterogeneous photocatalytic oxidation process for organic molecules in general.

Photocatalysis applications though economical and do present aspects of environmental friendliness, these aspects may qualify it in terms of green chemistry, but do not necessarily deem it a green technology without additional developments. Green technology defined earlier encompasses both the clean technology and green chemistry principles, where clean technologies mostly describe the processing of any material in a manner that reduces waste, minimizes environmental

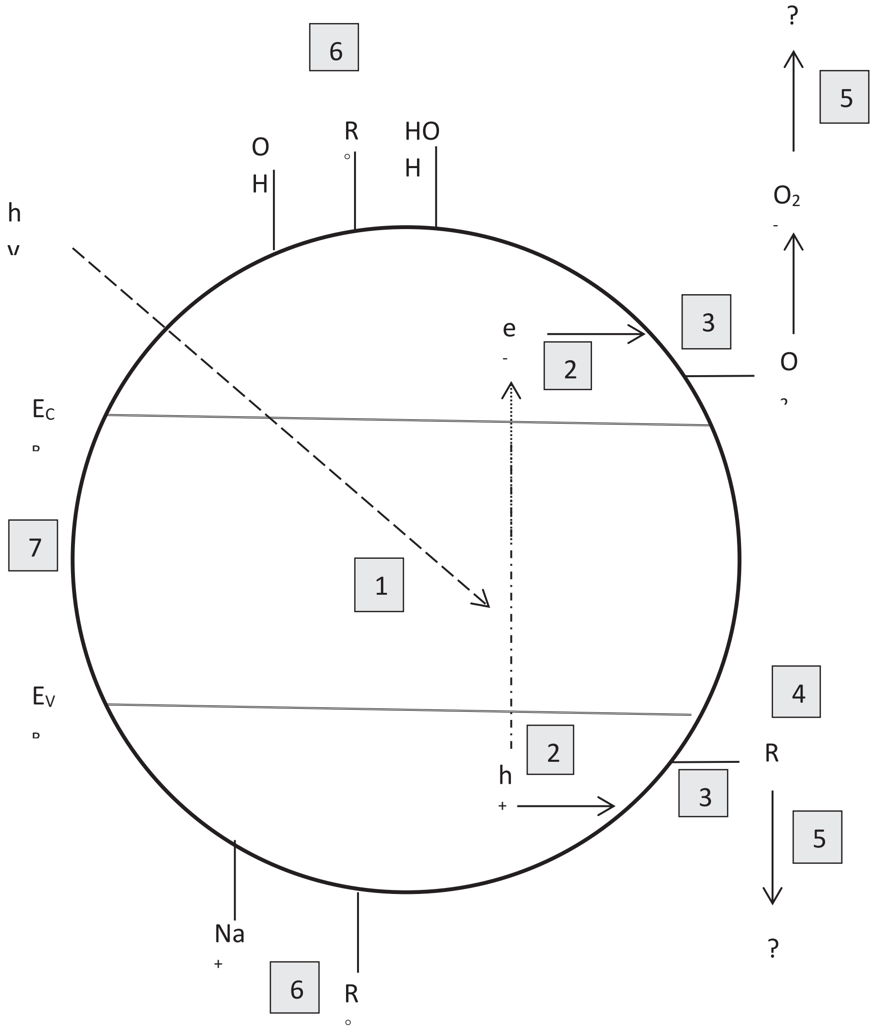


Fig. 8.1 Schematic depicting of the redox steps in the photocatalytic process. (1) Formation of charged carriers (h+ e−) electron–hole pair. (2) Charge transport and trapping. (3) Charge transfer. (4) Chemical adsorption. (5) Redox pathway mechanisms. (6) Scavenger species and reaction promoters. (7) The semiconductor particle surface

contamination, and requires the utilization of little to no nonrenewable resources. Conventional application of the photocatalytic principle requires the activation of the semiconductor photocatalyst using energy in the UV region of the spectrum. The UV sources are predominantly artificial in most research and pilot scale applications, though a fair amount of research by the scientific community is being conducted on the utilization of solar sources (Wang et al. 2018; Pelaez et al. 2012; Chong et al. 2010).

8.5.2.1 Photocatalysis as a Clean Technology

When applied accordingly with the latest technological developments, photocatalysis in its current state qualifies as a clean technology. This is not to be confused with green technology – a working context has been defined for the use of these terms earlier. From a chemical reaction and technological design perspective, the ideal photocatalysts are expected to conform to properties of photoactivity, biological and chemical inertness, stability toward photo-corrosion, suitable for visible or near UV light energy harnessing, be low cost and be nontoxic (Hassan et al. 2016; Aghighi and Haghighat 2015; Ibhadon and Fitzpatrick 2013; Mills and Hunte 1997).

The criterion and feats outlined above have been somewhat achieved through technological developments of titanium dioxide as a most viable semiconductor. The high stability of TiO_2 allows for diverse applications such as in electro-ceramics, glass, and in photocatalytic degradation of chemicals in water and air. The oxide particles can be applied in the form of suspensions in slurry reactors and in the form of thin film coating. The suspended photocatalyst principle has been extensively researched over the years and has been demonstrated to be very efficient degrading different classes of organic compounds. The major concern of the suspended photocatalyst system is the inability to reclaim the semiconductor catalyst in suspended slurry-type applications. This drawback has been addressed in various ways through innovative developments which are specifically aimed at addressing this issue.

In light of the justification above, photocatalysis as a technology does satisfy the criteria as a clean technology in application and is suitable to the degradation of petrochemical pollutants. The only other area of concern with regard to heterogeneous photocatalysis is the energy-intense irradiation in the ultraviolet region of the spectrum required to excite electrons from the semiconductor surface sites to facilitate reduction and oxidation pathways in nonoptimal transparent mediums. This factor is not necessarily a prerequisite for clean technology classification, but would be a requirement for a green technology status classification.

Several studies have investigated the degradation of petroleum waste using heterogeneous photocatalysis and reported success with regard to the removal in the form of COD and TOC (Al-Sabahi et al. 2017; Aljuboury et al. 2015; Tony et al. 2009). Petrochemical organic pollutants are unlike conventional organic chemical contaminants with regard to the treatment reaction protocols used in the degradation process. There is a huge body of scientific knowledge that supports the treatment of organic pollutants using photocatalysis as the successful method of choice. The use of photocatalysis as a clean technology has been demonstrated to be a viable process in the treatment of most organic pollutants.

8.5.2.2 Photocatalysis as a Green Technology

It was alluded that though photocatalysis is in the clean technology bracket, this does not necessarily deem it a green technology, in accordance with the definition context provided. To achieve the green technology status, photocatalysis in application would require the utilization of renewable resources. The major reaction step and element of heterogeneous photocatalysis that has potential in the form of renewable energy is the photo-excitation step. In this step, photon energy is used to create the electron-hole pair that facilitates the oxidation-reduction pathways on the surface of semiconductor photocatalyst. The photon energy required to activate this step falls within the UV region of the light energy spectrum. The UV radiation range of the light spectrum exists at approximately 300 nm (Oppenlander 2003) and has a flux range of 20–30 W/m_2 (De la Cruz et al. 2013).

UV light can naturally be sourced from solar energy, that is, sunlight. Solar radiation constitutes of visible light (43%), infrared light (53%), and UV light (4%). The UV light portion of solar energy can be harnessed and directed toward photocatalytic applications. Various papers have been published on titanium dioxide facilitated oxidation through the application of direct sunlight as the electron energy excitation and promotion step (Blanco-Galvez et al. 2007). Though solar energy is subjected to variations in terms of the geographic latitude, period of the day, cloud cover, atmospheric properties, and seasons (Sirtori et al. 2010), this source of energy qualifies as a green sustainable source.

Advancement of photocatalysis technology toward the utilization of solar energy is the current goal in this sub-discipline. The major obstacle being the amount of energy required to elevate electrons from the valence band edge to the conduction band edge of a semiconductor photocatalyst, such as titanium dioxide. TiO_2, though the most useful and common semiconductor in application, has a relatively large band gap, requiring significant amount of energy in the UV region in order to activate and facilitate the redox reaction schemes. The photon package within the UV domain of solar energy represents a small fraction of this energy requirement, and thus limits the mass transfer efficiency. To fully realize the potential of photocatalysis as a green technology, modifications are required to minimize the energy band gap in order to facilitate visible light absorption. Various scientific literatures have been dedicated to this process with some promising results (Fujishima et al. 2008).

8.6 Challenges in Treatment of Petrochemical Pollutants

The steps involved in petroleum treatment are resource intense. One of the major resource required in the treatment process is water, large amounts of water are used in the refinery process. The principal processes that are responsible for the consumption of most water are hydro-treatment, desalting, distillation, and cooling. In turn, large amount of wastewater effluent are produced from these processes. The wastewater produced from different processes contains constituents indicative to each process and therefore, classified accordingly. In better developed refinery systems, the wastewater from the different petroleum treatment steps is separated and the effluent diverted to different reservoirs. This can allow for treatment of wastewater matrices in accordance to the process of pollutant types. The pollutant loads and the source of the pollutants can determine the level of treatment in the form of the following three treatment step and the preferred methods:

- Primary treatment, the methods that can be applied in this step include buffer tanks, sour water stripper, separators (API/CPI?PPI).
- Secondary treatment, biological treatment and coagulation flocculation-flotation methods are options.
- Tertiary treatment, these include membrane filtration, chemical oxidation, and sand filtration.

Other advantages of such setups are that the loading capacity of wastewater into the treatment plants are reduced thus increasing the efficiency of treatment within unit and allows for a greater variety of reuse options.

Oil and water distribution ratios are another challenge to the treatment of petroleum waste. Treatment of petroleum waste requires insight with regard to the nature of the wastewater in terms of the oil droplet size, distribution, as this has an impact on the efficiency of treatment (Romano 1990). Treatment methods can be configured and adapted in line with the nature of the wastewater from each of the processing units. Several other wastewater chemical treatment methods have been used, such as Fenton process, precipitation, and electrochemical techniques in the treatment of petrochemical waste. These methods have succeeded at producing low quality sludge; the downside of these chemical methods is that they also require large quantities of chemicals, is very costly in terms of operation and maintenance, and requires highly skilled labor (Singh et al. 2016; Hu et al. 2013; El-Naas et al. 2009).

8.7 Conclusion

Photocatalysis as a technology satisfies the criteria of an efficient clean technology, but do not necessarily deem it a green technology without additional developments. As an ideal, photocatalysts are expected to conform to properties of photoactivity, biological, and chemical inertness, stability toward photo-corrosion, suitable for visible or near UV light energy harnessing, be low cost and be nontoxic in nature. The major concern of the suspended photocatalyst system is the inability to reclaim the semiconductor catalyst in suspended slurry-type applications. Several chemical wastewater treatment methods have been used such as Fenton process, precipitation, and electrochemical techniques in treatment of petrochemical pollutants. These methods have succeeded at producing low quality sludge, but the downside of these chemical methods is that these also require large quantities of chemicals, is very costly in terms of operation and maintenance, and highly skilled labors are required.

References

Aghighi A, Haghighat F (2015) Evaluation of nano-titanium dioxide (TiO_2) catalysts for ultraviolet photocatalytic oxidation air cleaning devices. J Environ Chem Eng 3:1622–1629

Aljuboury DA, Palaniandy P, Aziz HBA, Feroz S (2015) Treatment of petroleum wastewater using combination of solar photo-two catalyst TiO_2 and photo-Fenton process. J Environ Chem Eng 3(2):1117–1124

Al-Sabahi J, Bora T, Al-Abri M, Dutta J (2017) Efficient visible light photocatalysis of benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene and xylene (BTEX) in aqueous solutions using supported zinc oxide nanorods. PLoS One 12(12). https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0189276

Álvarez AM, Carral P, Hernández Z, Almendros G (2016) Hydrocarbon pollution from domestic oil recycling industries in peri-urban soils. Lipid molecular assemblages. J Environ Chem Eng 4(1):695–703

Andreozzi R, Caprio V, Insola A, Marotta F (1999) Advanced Oxidation Processes (AOP) for water purification and recovery. Catal Today 53:51–59

Axelsson G, Barregard L, Sallsten G, Holmberg E (2010) Cancer incidence in a petrochemical industry area in Sweden. Sci Total Environ 408(20):4482–4487

Balasubramani K, Sivarajaseka N (2018) A short account on petrochemical industry effluent treatment. Int J Petrochem Sci Eng 3(1):12–13

Belli S, Benedetti M, Comba P, Lagravinese D, Martucci V et al (2004) Case-control study on cancer risk associated to residence in the neighbourhood of a petrochemical plant. Eur J Epidemiol 19(1):49–54

Blanco-Galvez J, Fernández-Ibánez P, Malato-Rodríguez S (2007) Solar photocatalytic detoxification and disinfection of water: recent overview. J Sol Energy Eng 129:4–15

Bruice PY (2004) Organic Chemistry. Upper Saddle River, Pearson/Prentice Hall

Bustillo-Lecompte CF, Kakar D, Mehrvar M (2018) Photochemical treatment of benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene, and xylenes (BTEX) in aqueous solutions using advanced oxidation processes: Towards a cleaner production in the petroleum refining and petrochemical industries. J Clean Prod 186:609–617

Chen YM, Lin WY, Chan CC (2014) The impact of petrochemical industrialisation on life expectancy and per capita income in Taiwan: an 11-year longitudinal study. BMC Public Health 14:247–248

Chong MN, Jin B, Chow CWK, Saint C (2010) Recent developments in photocatalytic water treatment technology: a review. Water Res 44:2997–3027

De la Cruz N, Dantas RF, Gimenez J, Esplugas S (2013) Photolysis and TiO_2 photocatalysis of the pharmaceutical propranolol: solar and artificial light. Appl Catal Environ 130:249–256

Dimoglo A, Akbulut HY, Cihan F, Karpuzcu M (2004) Petrochemical wastewater treatment by means of clean electrochemical technology. Clean Technol Environ Policy 6(4):288–295

El-Naas MH, Al-Zuhair S, Al-Lobaney A, Makhlouf S (2009) Assessment of electrocoagulation for the treatment of petroleum refinery wastewater. J Environ Manage 91:180–185

Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) (1977) Revision of emission factors for petroleum refining, EPA-450/3-77-030. U. S. Environmental Protection Agency, Research Triangle Park

Fox AM, Dulay MT (1993) Heterogeneous photocatalysis. Chem Rev 93:341–357

Frumkin H, Hess J, Vindigni S (2007) Peak petroleum and public health. JAMA 298(14):1688–1690

Fujishima A, Zhang X, Tryk DA (2008) Surf Sci Rep 63:515–582

Gerischer H, Heller A (1991) The role of oxygen in photooxidation of organic molecules on semiconductor particles. J Phys Chem 95:5261–5267

Haghollahi A, Fazaelipoor MH, Schaffie M (2016) The effect of soil type on the bioremediation of petroleum contaminated soils. J Environ Manage 180:197–201

Hassan M, Zhao Y, Xie B (2016) Employing TiO_2 photocatalysis to deal with landfill leachate: Current status and development. Chem Eng J 285:264–275

Hess J, Bednarz D, Bae J, Jessica P (2011) Petroleum and health care: evaluating and managing health care's vulnerability to petroleum supply shifts. Am J Public Health 101(9):1568–1579

Hoffmann RM, Martin ST, Choi W, Bahnemann DW (1995) Environmental applications of semiconductor photocatalysis. Chem Rev 95:65–96

Horvath I, Anastas PT (2007) Introduction: green chemistry. Chem Rev 107:2167–2168

Hu G, Li J, Zeng G (2013) Recent development in the treatment of oily sludge from petroleum industry: a review. J Hazard Mater 261:470–490

Ibhadon AO, Fitzpatrick P (2013) Heterogeneous photocatalysis: recent advances and applications. Catalysts. 3:1–29

Jemli M, Zaghden H, Rezgi F, Kchaou S, Aloui F, Sayadi S (2017) Biotreatment of petrochemical wastewater: a case study from northern Tunisia. Water Environ Res 89:228–237

Khuzwayo Z, Chirwa EMN (2015) Modelling and simulation of photocatalytic oxidation mechanism of chlorohalogenated substituted phenols in batch systems: Langmuir-Hinshelwood approach. J Hazard Mater 300:459–466

Knight RL, Kadlec RH, Ohlendorf HM (1999) The use of treatment wetlands for petroleum industry effluents. Environ Sci Tech 33(7):973–980

Lathasree S, Rao AN, SivaSankar B, Sadasivam V, Rengaraj K (2004) Heterogeneous photocatalytic mineralisation of phenols in aqueous solutions. J Mol Catal A Chem 223:101–105

Lazar MA, Varghese S, Nair SS (2012) Photocatalytic water treatment by titanium dioxide: recent updates. Catalysts 2:572–601

Lettinga G, Rebac S, Zeeman G (2001) Challenge of psychrophilic anaerobic wastewater treatment. Trends Biotechnol 19:363–370

Li XH, Chen S, Angelidaki I, Zhang YF (2018) Bio-electro-Fenton processes for wastewater treatment: advances and prospects. Chem Eng J 354:492–506

Liang J, Mai W, Tang J, Wei Y (2019) Highly effective treatment of petrochemical wastewater by a super-sized industrial scale plant with expanded granular sludge bed bioreactor and aerobic activated sludge. Chem Eng J 360:15–23

Lin CK, Tsai TY, Liu JC, Chen MC (2001a) Enhanced biodegradation of petrochemical wastewater using ozonation and BAC advanced treatment system. Water Res 35(3):699–704

Lin MC, Yu HS, Tsai SS, Cheng BH, Hsu TY et al (2001b) Adverse pregnancy outcome in a petrochemical polluted area in Taiwan. J Toxicol Environ Health A 63(8):565–574

Linsebigler AL, Lu G, Yates JT Jr (1995) Photocatalysis on TiO_2 surfaces - principles, mechanisms, and selected results. Chem Rev 95:735–758

Lousada CM, Brinck T, Jonsson M (2015) Application of reactivity descriptors to the catalytic decomposition of hydrogen peroxide at oxide surfaces. Comput Theoret Chem 1070:108–116

Luginaah IN, Taylor SM, Elliott SJ, Eyles JD (2002) Community reappraisal of the perceived health effects of a petroleum industry. Soc Sci Med 55(1):47–61

Macarie H (2005) Overview of the application of anaerobic treatment to chemical and petrochemical wastewaters. Water Sci Technol 42(5–6):201–214

Mattiusi EM, Kaminari NMS, Ponte MJJS, Ponte HA (2015) Behavior analysis of a porous bed electrochemical reactor the treatment of petrochemical industry wastewater contaminated by hydrogen sulfide (H_2S). Chem Eng J 275:305–314

Mechhoud E-A, Rouainia M, Rodriguez M (2016) A new tool for risk analysis and assessment in petrochemical plants. Alex Eng J 55(3):2919–2931

Medianu S, Mircioiu M, Popescu D (2012) Supervisory control for ethylene production in petrochemical installations. IFAC Proc 45(6):230–235

Metcalf and Eddy, Inc. (2003) Wastewater engineering: treatment and reuse. McGraw-Hill, Boston

Mills A, Le Hunte S (1997) An overview of semiconductor photocatalysis. J Photochem Photobiol A 108:1–35

Mirzaei A, Ebadi A, Khajavi P (2013) Kinetic and equilibrium modeling of single and binary adsorption of methyl tert-butyl ether (MTBE) and *tert*-butyl alcohol (TBA) onto nano-perfluorooctyl alumina. Chem Eng J 231:550–560

Naderi KV, Bustillo-Lecompte CF, Mehrvar M, Abdekhodaie MJ (2017) Combined UV-C/H_2O_2-VUV processes for the treatment of an actual slaughterhouse wastewater. J Environ Sci Health B 52(5):314–325

Neff RA, Parker CL, Kirschenmann FL, Tinch J, Lawrence RS (2011) Peak oil. Food Syst Public Health 101(9):1587–1597

Oppenlander T (2003) Photochemical purification of water and air-advanced oxidation processes (AOPs): principles, reaction mechanisms, reactor concepts. Wiley-VCH, New York

Parsons S (2004) Advanced oxidation processes for water and wastewater treatment. IWA Publishing, London

Pelaez M, Nolan NT, Pillai SC, Seery MK, Falaras P, Kontos AG, Dunlop PSM, Hamilton JWJ, Byrne JA, O'Shea K, Entezari MH, Dionysiou DD (2012) A review on the visible light active titanium dioxide photocatalysts for environmental applications. Appl Catal Environ 125:331–349

Peral J, Domènech X, Ollis DF (1997) Heterogeneous photocatalysis for purification, decontamination and deodorization of air. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 70(2):117–140

Romano F (1990) Oil and water don't mix: the application of oil-water separation technologies in storm water quality management. Metro, Seattle

Sahel K, Elsellami L, Mirali I, Dappozze F, Bouhent M, Guillard C (2016) Hydrogen peroxide and photocatalysis. Appl Catal Environ 188:106–112

Schwarz HA, Dodson RW (1989) Reduction potentials of CO_2^- and the alcohol radicals. J Phys Chem 93:409–414

Schwitzgebel J, Ekerdt JG, Gerischer H, Heller A (1995) Role of oxygen molecule and of the photogenerated electron in TiO_2. Photocatalysed air oxidation reactions. J Phys Chem 99:5633–5638

Singh P, Ojha A, Borthakur A, Singh R, Lahiry D, Tiwary D, Kumar-Mishra P (2016) Emerging trends in photodegradation of petrochemical wastes: a review. Environ Sci Pollut Res 23(22):22340–22364

Sirtori C, Agüera A, Gernjak W, Malato S (2010) Effect of water-matrix composition on trimethoprim solar photodegradation kinetics and pathways. Water Res 44:2735–2744

Souza EC, Vessoni-Penna TC, de Souza Oliveira RP (2014) Biosurfactant-enhanced hydrocarbon bioremediation: an overview. Int Biodeter Biodegr 89:88–94

Stasik S, Wick LY, Wendt-Potthoff K (2015) Anaerobic BTEX degradation in oil sands tailings ponds: impact of labile organic carbon and sulfate-reducing bacteria. Chemosphere 138:133–139

Teoh WY, Amal R, Scott J (2012) Progress in heterogeneous photocatalysis: from classical radical chemistry to engineering nanomaterials and solar reactors. J Phys Chem Lett 3:629–639

Tisa F, Abdul-Raman AA, Wan-Daud WMA (2014) Applicability of fluidized bed reactor in recalcitrant compound degradation through advanced oxidation processes: a review. J Environ Manage 146:260–275

Tony MA, Zhao YQ, Purcell PJ, El-Sherbiny MF (2009) Evaluating the photo-catalytic application of Fenton's reagent augmented with TiO_2 and ZnO for the mineralization of an oil-water emulsion. J Environ Sci Health A 44(5):488–493

Vaferi B, Bahmani M, Keshavarz P, Mowla D (2014) Experimental and theoretical analysis of the UV/H_2O_2 advanced oxidation processes treating aromatic hydrocarbons and MTBE from contaminated synthetic wastewaters. J Environ Chem Eng 2(3):1252–1260

Vaiopoulou E, Melidis P, Aivasidis A (2005) Sulphide removal in wastewater from petrochemical industries by autotrophic denitrification. Water Res 39(17):4101–4109

Vargas A, Soto G, Moreno J, Buitron G (2000) Observer-based time-optimal control of an aerobic SBR for chemical and petrochemical wastewater treatment. Water Sci Technol 42(5-6):163–170

Varjani SJ, Gnansounou E, Pandey A (2017) Comprehensive review on toxicity of persistent organic pollutants from petroleum refinery waste and their degradation by microorganisms. Chemosphere 188:280–291

Viguri J, Verde J, Irabien A (2002) Environmental assessment of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) in surface sediments of the Santander Bay, Northern Spain. Chemosphere 48:157–165

Vinod VP, Anirudhan TS (2002) Photocatalytic degradation for environmental applications - a review. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 77(1):102–116

Wang Y, Wang Q, Li M, Yang Y, He W, Yan G, Guo S (2016) An alternative anaerobic treatment process for treatment of heavy oil refinery wastewater containing polar organics. Biochem Eng J 105:44–51

Wang M, Peng Z, Qian J, Li H, Zhao Z, Fu X (2018) Highly efficient solar-driven photocatalytic degradation on environmental pollutants over a novel C fibers@$MoSe_2$ nanoplates core-shell composite. J Hazard Mater 347:403–411

Wong JM (2000) Petrochemicals. Water Environ Res 72:1–21

Wu C, Gao Z, Zhou Y, Liu M, Song J, Yua Y (2015) Treatment of secondary effluent from a petrochemical wastewater treatment plant by ozonation-biological aerated filter. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 90:543–549

Xiaoqiang J, Dayao J, Chen L, Wenyu L (2019) Characterization and analysis of petrochemical wastewater through particle size distribution, biodegradability, and chemical composition. Chin J Chem Eng 27(2):444–451

Yamazaki S, Siroma Z, Senoh H, Ioroi T, Fujiwara N, Yasuda K (2008) A fuel cell with selective electrocatalysts using hydrogen peroxide as both an electron acceptor and a fuel. J Power Sources 178:20–25

Yang Q, Xiong PP, Ding PY, Chu LB, Wang JL (2015) Treatment of petrochemical wastewater by microaerobic hydrolysis and anoxic/oxic processes and analysis of bacterial diversity. Bioresour Technol 196:169–175

Zhang SY, Wu CY, Zhou YX, Wang YN, He XW (2018) Effect of wastewater particles on catalytic ozonation in the advanced treatment of petrochemical secondary effluent. Chem Eng J 345:280–289

Zheng G, Richardson B (1999) Petroleum hydrocarbons and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) in Hong Kong marine sediments. Chemosphere 38:2625–2632

Zhong Y, Zhu L (2013) Distribution input pathway and soil–air exchange of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in Banshan Industry Park, China. Sci Total Environ 444:177–182

Zolfaghari R, Fakhru'l-Razi A, Abdullah LC, Elnashaie SSEH, Pendashteh A (2016) Demulsification techniques of water-in-oil and oil-in-water emulsions in petroleum industry. Sep Purif Technol 170:337–407

Chapter 9
Sustainable Management of Toxic Industrial Effluent of Coal-Based Power Plants

Ramesh Kumar, Alak Kumar Ghosh, and Parimal Pal

Abstract Millions of tons of coke are produced to meet the demand of manufacturing of iron and steel industry and coal-based power plants with rapid urbanization. The conversion of coal to coke is one of the major sources of environmental pollution, because this process generates huge volume of coke-oven wastewater (COWW) during quenching of hot coke. The discharged wastewater contains cyanide, thiocyanide, ammonium-N, phenols with high biological oxygen demand, chemical oxygen demand, total dissolved solids, total suspended solid, and polyaromatic compounds pose a threat to the existing flora and fauna of the ecosystem. In this chapter, detailed information is provided about the generation, characteristics, toxicity and harmful effect on environment of COWW. In addition, different sustainable technologies such as biological, physical, and integrated processes have been proposed for the sustainable treatment of COWW while comparing their merits and demerits with those of the existing technologies.

Keywords Coke-oven wastewater · Biological treatment · Physical treatment · Membrane separation · Adsorption · Struvite recovery

9.1 Introduction

The conversion of coal to metallurgical coke finds application in blast furnace of steel plant and coal-based power generation across the world. In addition, coke is also used in the foundries and domestic purposes. However, during coke conversion, gases and other by-products such as benzene, toluene, anthracene, naphthalene, and

---

R. Kumar (✉) · A. K. Ghosh
Department of Chemistry, The University of Burdwan, Burdwan (E), West Bengal, India

P. Pal
Chemical Engineering Department, National Institute of Technology Durgapur,
Burdwan (W), West Bengal, India

R. N. Bharagava (ed.), *Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment*, Microorganisms for Sustainability 18,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-1390-9_9

coal tar are produced, which are the raw materials for various dyes and explosives (Chu et al. 2012). Approximately, 4000 m^3 of fresh water is consumed for the washing and cooling of hot coke mass, coke-oven gases, NH_3-N still and by-products of coke industry for the production of 100 ton of metallurgical coke which eventually generates 100 m^3 of wastewater (Pal and Kumar 2014). Highly hazardous and toxic pollutants such as phenols, cyanide, thiocyanide, NH_3-N, polyaromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), oil, and grease are present in the wastewater which could contaminate surface water, groundwater, and low-lying areas. Their concentrations depend on the types of coal and the operating conditions in the coke industry (Burmistrz and Burmistrz 2013).

Biological methods have been used for long time for the treatment of organic pollutants present in the industrial wastewater at a relatively low cost. Due to the slow process, biological treatment is normally required for the long residence time of the biodegradation pollutants present in the coking wastewater (Lu et al. 2012; Bharagava et al. 2014; Kishor et al. 2019). Toxic pollutants like cyanide, phenol and high concentration of ammonium-N are normally not favored for the growth of autotrophic and heterotrophic oxidizing bacteria during oxidizing of ammonia (Ma et al. 2016).

Different chemicals such as alum, iron, and polymers are used during pretreatment of wastewater for coagulation and settlement of suspended particles to minimize the adverse effect of biodegradation. Presence of cyanide is the most toxic compound in COWW for which different methods have been tried like INGO process (International Nickel Company Limited) in which SO_2/air is used, Caro's acid method, alkaline chlorination, ozonation, acidification-volatilization and re-neutralization process, electrolytic oxidation, Fenton's treatment, photocatalytic, ion exchange, and catalytic oxidation processes. However, there are limitations in each methods, e.g., during alkaline chlorination, some more toxic compounds may be generated such as cyanogen chloride. For the removal of phenolic compounds, adsorption, oxidation (chemical or enzymatic), solvent extraction and biodegradation have been investigated in the literature (Lai et al. 2007; Bharagava et al. 2008a, b; Pal and Kumar 2014). Recently, membrane-based technology is used as an alternative to biological treatment of COWW to concentrate the pollutants and reduce the volume of wastewater. Few researchers have investigated the use of traditional reverse osmosis (RO) membrane for the separation study of major pollutants from the wastewater like cyanide, phenol and ammonium-N.

However, use of RO membrane has limitations such as requirement of high transmembrane pressure, low flux, high membrane cost, frequent membrane fouling and regular maintenance of the system. Nanofiltration (NF) membrane is an emerging technology which can be exploited for the separation of small ions or impurities from waste effluents at a relatively low operating pressure with better flux than RO membranes.

Wastewater may be used as resource and reused for irrigation or recycled in the same industry through proper treatment and sustainable management. A paradigm shift is required in wastewater management in the back drop of gradual decrease in per capita availability of fresh water, increasing population, rapid industrialization and urbanization (Pal and Kumar 2014). Thus, in this chapter, we have tried to find out the new approaches toward developing sustainable treatment technology by incorporating the concept of recycling, resource recovery and reuse. The economic viability of wastewater treatment plant may be enhanced by recovery of value added products.

9.1.1 Generation and Composition of Coke Wastewater

Conversion of coal to metallurgical coke by anaerobic carbonization, a large volume of gas and wastewater are generated from which economically valuable by-products could be extracted. The recovery of by-products and generation of wastewater during operation of coke industry has been shown in the flowchart in Fig. 9.1. The chemicals extracted from the coal have the good selling value. A typical operation of large coking plant is shown in Fig. 9.2, which depicts the conventional way of conversion of coal to coke with inflow of coal, lime, nitric acid and outflow of coke and other by-products such as tar, benzene, fertilizer. A huge quantity of wastewater is generated during the washing of coke gas such as ammonia, phenol, cyanide, thiocyanide, sulfide, tar, oil and grease. The general characteristics of coking wastewater have been given the Table 9.1. Fine suspended particles float on the surface, whereas heavy suspended particles are settled at the bottom. COWW is highly complex, yellowish color and ammoniacal in odor as the effluents are generated due to washing of ammonia stills. If such wastewater is disposed to any water body, then marine life can be affected seriously due to suspended particles choking the respiratory organs of fish. Generally, 1.6 m^3 of wastewater is generated for making 0.6 g of coke.

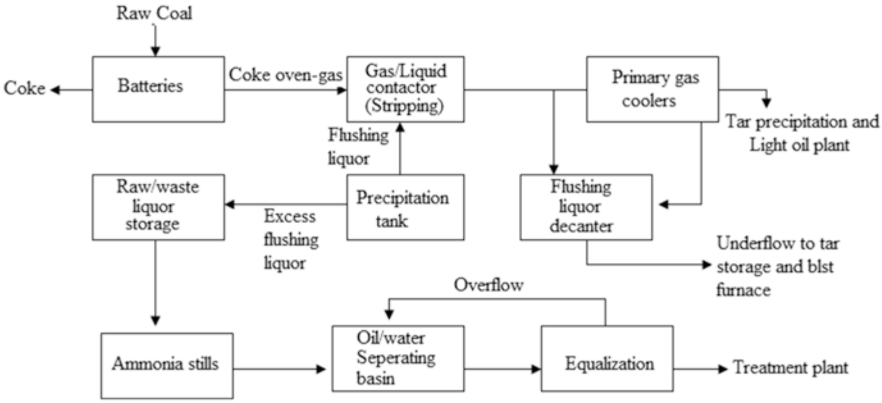


Fig. 9.1 Simplified flow-sheet for coking wastewater generation. (Reprinted from Pal and Kumar (2014) with permission of Taylor and Francis)

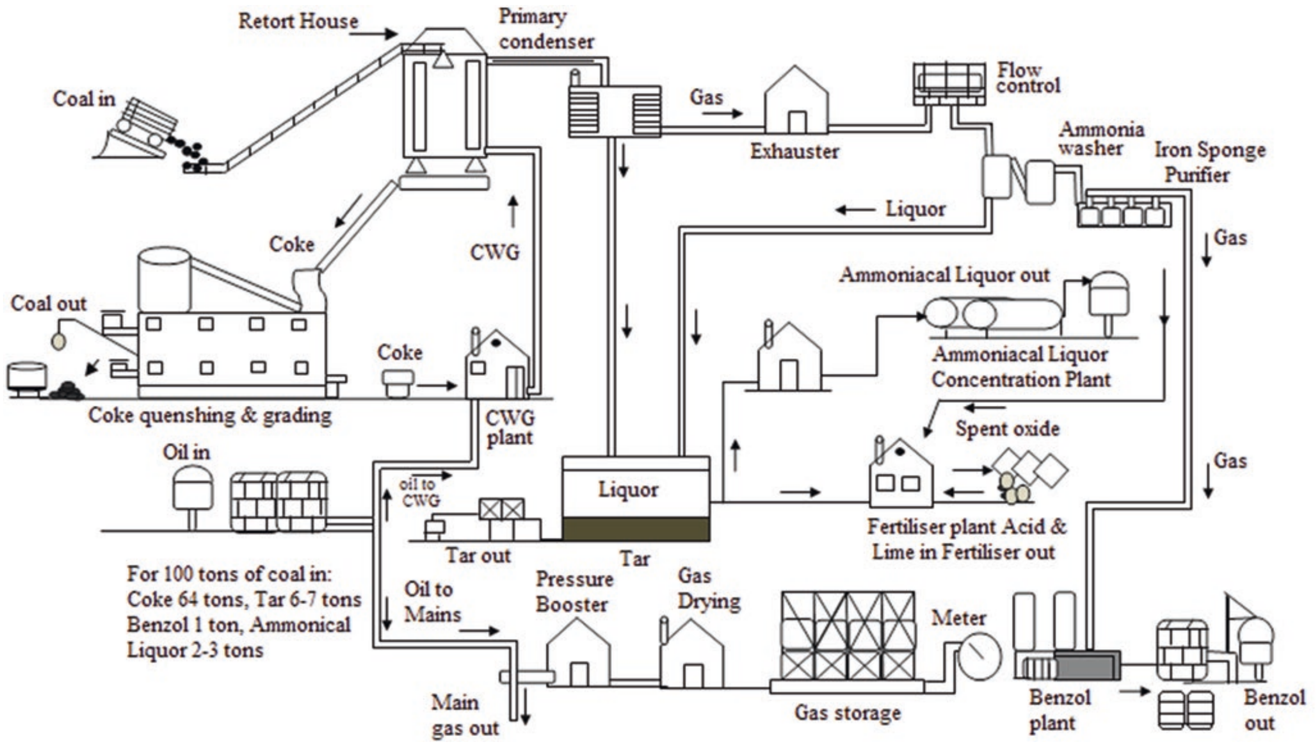


Fig. 9.2 Typical scheme of conversion of coal to coke while recovery of by-products and generation of ammonium-N wastewater. (Reprinted from Pal and Kumar (2014) with permission of Taylor and Francis)

Table 9.1 Typical composition of raw coking wastewater

Major parameters	Concentration range (mg/L)	Tolerance limit (mg/L) (IS 2490 part VIII, 1986)
COD	2100–3000	50
Ammonium-N	2550–3500	250
Phenols	155–225	0.5
Cyanide	25–75	0.2
Thiocyanate	155–185	–
Total dissolved solids	12,500–13,400	–
Oil and grease	42–55	<10
Salinity	6–8	–
Fluoride	70–85	<1.5
Chloride	540–570	<1000
Sodium	245–265	<60
Sulfate	32–39	–
Phosphate	50–73	–
Magnesium	30–36	–
Bicarbonate	1500–2100	
pH	9.0–9.7	6.5–9.0

Adapted from Kumar and Pal (2015a, b) permission with Elsevier

9.1.2 *Sampling of Wastewater*

Grab sampling is one of the methods for sample collection, and quick analysis should be preferred. However, separate samples are collected and stabilized by different mode, depending upon the pollutants presence. For example, phenols present in wastewater are subjected to chemical and biological oxidation. Thus, such sample should be preserved and stored properly. Similar samples may be acidified to pH of 4 by H_3PO_4. Copper sulfate is added in 1 g/L to inhibit the biodegradation and stored in refrigerator at 4 °C for the analysis of biological oxygen demand (BOD). However, for COD analysis, the sample must be acidified with H_2SO_4 by 2 mL/L. All parameters of the wastewater must be analyzed as per “Standard Methods” for the examination of wastewater given in APHA (2012).

9.1.3 *Toxic Nature of Wastewater*

The environmental impact by coking wastewater has become a very serious issue due to its complexity, heterogeneity, and toxicity, and it highly depends upon the extent of treatment before the discharge. The effluent contains xenobiotics, phenols, and some derivatives (such as pyrogallol, quinone, and pyrocatechol) in addition to cyanide, ammonia, and thiocyanide. The total cyanide and phenols may be high up to 80 and 1200 mg/L. Thus, coke wastewater is very toxic and it may lead to sudden failure of biological treatment plant. Therefore, it is necessary to comprehensively study the residual contaminants present in the treated effluent using chemical and bioassay analysis to ensure the environmental safety. The effect of bio-toxicity by the industrial effluents is dependent upon the species, concentration, presence of toxic compounds, and solubility of compound in receiving water (Tian et al. 2012; Pollice et al. 2008; Bharagava et al. 2008a, b; Escher et al. 2013).

The value of toxicity is measured by E(L)C_{50} (EC_{50}-mea or LC_{50}-mea) which is the ratio of total concentration of detected chemicals as the product of E(L)C_{50} value from the test to the total concentration of the target compounds. The toxic effect had been investigated by few researchers in plants like *Zea mays*, *Vicia faba,* and *Hordeum vulgare* by considering various parameters including growth, fresh biomass, mitotic index, micronucleus frequency and antioxidant capacity (Dong and Zhang 2010). Bioassays and chemical analysis were done in *Vibrio fischeri* and *Daphnia magna* while growing in effluent of a semi-coking wastewater treatment plant to evaluate the bio-toxicity. The treatment by coagulation and adsorption followed by anaerobic and oxic-biological treatment showed successful achievement of more than 90% removal of pollutants with 90%, 94.8% and 81% of benzene, phenols and PAHs, respectively.

However, the final effluents still had the bioluminescence inhibition toxicity toward *V. fischeri* whereas lethal toxicity to *D. magna*. To reduce the ecological risk and to protect the aquatic environment from the COWW, some alternative promising technology such as membrane bioreactor was suggested as an efficient technology (Ma et al. 2017). Another researcher had claimed that the adsorption treatment followed by the physiochemical and bio-chemical combined treatment was found suitable for the final discharge of the effluent as confirmed by the genotoxicity evaluation in *V. faba* (Liu et al. 2017). Furthermore, the anaerobic and aerobic biodegradation was suitable for the removal of benzene, indoles and quinolones, but for PAHs removal, advanced treatment was required such as adsorption.

9.2 Conventional Treatment Methods

9.2.1 Physiochemical Methods

Physiochemical methods are used for the removal of colors, colloidal, suspended, floating particles and toxic compounds by using different methods like oxidation, precipitation, adsorption, ozonation, advanced oxidation process, electrolysis and membrane-based system (Parga et al. 2003; Barakat et al. 2004; Barriga-Ordonez et al. 2006; Park et al. 2008a, b). The novel coagulant as polyferric sulfate had been used as neutral or cationic polymers for removal of total cyanide present in the coking wastewater (Shen et al. 2014). Settling tanks are used to settle down the suspended solids to facilitate the biological treatment of coke wastewater successful. Addition of lime slurry in secondary sedimentation tank and use of synthetic zeolite are very useful for the physiochemical treatment and ammonia removal, respectively.

For the removal of hazardous compounds, adsorption process was used to remove the contaminants up to 90–95%. However, continuous mode of treatment and frequent replacement and regeneration are the major limitations of the adsorption process. Ammonia removal was done using steam stripping, however, high pH (>7.0) value is required for this process. In addition, through this process, pollutant (ammonia) is being shifted from water to air (El Diwani et al. 2007). This process needs huge capital investment for purchasing the equipment, such as stripping tower, pump, liquid spray system, forced air and carbonization system. Fouling problems, sludge production and release of ammonia gas in to air are the other drawbacks of steam stripping. This system is very useful for capturing and conversion of ammonia into useful products as shown in Fig. 9.3. To remove the organic contamination, wet air oxidation has been used to bring down the chemical oxygen demand (COD) values of wastewater. Salt precipitation is the major challenge of such type of process (Kumar and Pal 2015a, b).

For the removal of toxic and hazardous pollutants from the wastewater, ultrasonic energy has been used to form the acoustic cavitation. The effect on pollutants during ultrasonic irradiation may vary on initial pollutants concentration, saturating gas and density of irradiation. However, high power density of ultrasonic waves and initial low COD concentration appropriates for the better degradation of pollutants (Mason 1990; Okouchi et al. 1992; Ning et al. 2005). During ultrasonic irradiation treatment, transient state forms at high pressure and temperature and yields CO_2 and H_2O and hydroxyl radical of the pollutants. Sometimes metallic catalysts are used to enhance the reaction rate.

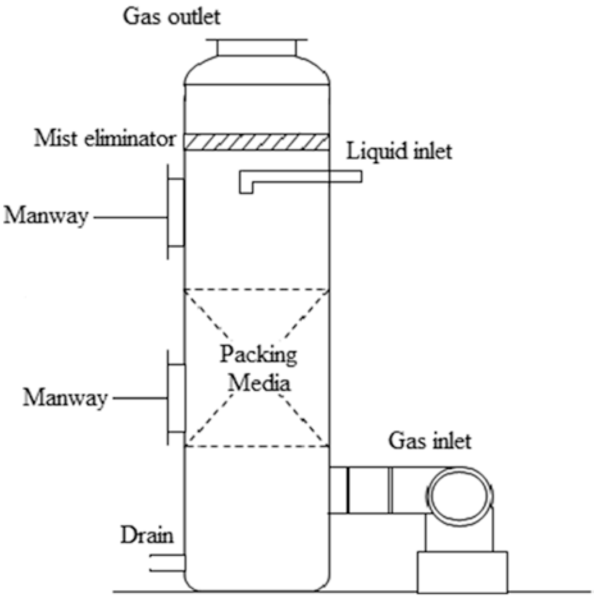


Fig. 9.3 Typical steam stripping for ammonia gas

9.2.2 Biological Treatment

9.2.2.1 Single-Step Activated Sludge Process

The most economical and viable option is the activated sludge process (ASP) for the treatment of such a huge quantity of wastewater. In the ASP process, a dense microbial population at their exponential growth phase in suspension is used to decompose and degrade the organic pollutants (Zhang et al. 2010a, b). A simplified scheme of single stage activated sludge process with aeration and sedimentation tank has been shown in (Fig. 9.4). Microbial growth rate is high in the presence of unlimited food and oxygen in the reactor in addition to the provision of recycling of sludge further by helping to maintain the microbial population and degradation of the organic compounds. Activated sludge is developed in a reactor attached to the sedimentation tank for the treatment of the coke oven wastewater where dense microbial flocks are adsorbed and assimilate the organic matters and mineralized by complete oxidation and generate new microbial cells. Different pollutants like COD, phenols, cyanide, thiocyanates, ammonium-N were reduced to 75, 98, 90 and 71%, respectively, achieved during single-step activated sludge treatment (Vázquez et al. 2006a, b). However, due to presence of a number of pollutants and fluctuation of concentration and presence of some toxic compounds like cyanide, thiocyanates, phenols often lead to failure of biological system. These limitations of single-step ASP have been overcome by the several modifications and addition of some steps.

9.2.2.2 Multistep Activated Sludge Process

Complex and multi-pollutants coking wastewater needs multistep processes involving different microorganisms with different environmental conditions like aerobic, anaerobic and anoxic. Ammonia gets converted into nitrite and nitrate by autotrophic

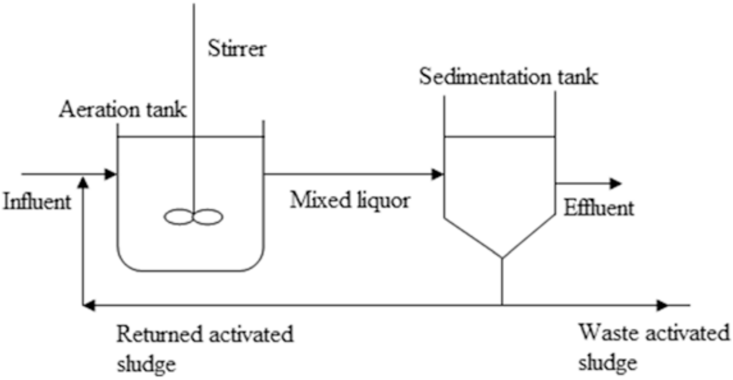


Fig. 9.4 A typical scheme for activated sludge process (suspended). (Reprinted from Pal and Kumar (2014) with permission of Taylor and Francis)

nitrifiers in aerobic conditions, whereas thiocyanate gets converted into ammonia and sulfate by autotrophic oxidizing conditions at low pH (Zhang et al. 2010a, b). The nitrite and nitrate present after aerobic treatment of ammonium-N by *Nitrosomonas* and *Nitrobacter*, heterotrophic denitrifiers convert to nitrogen gas using organic pollutants like phenols as a nutrients at high pH. It acts as an electron donor for the denitrification reaction (Richards and Shieh 1989). Two step ASPs had been investigated for the biodegradation of coking wastewater at two different hydraulic residence time (HRT) of 98 and 86 h for first and second reactors with removal efficiency of 91, 99, 98, 99% of COD, phenols, thiocyanates and ammonium-N, respectively, at operating temperature of 35 °C.

Pollutants-based HRT and recycling ratios help to overcome the inhibition phenomena of high concentration of the pollutants though the speed of degradation may decrease. Sometimes methanol is added as a carbon source for the denitrification at the end of the process in anaerobic condition; however, to bring down the cost, denitrification process may be placed at the head of the process to utilize the existing organic pollutants as carbon source (Chakraborty and Veeramani 2006). Removal of cyanide still remains a big challenge in the final effluent due to very slow biodegradation in aerobic and anaerobic reactors. In addition, the concentration of cyanide is the major limiting factor for the extent of removal of other pollutants present in the coking wastewater (Dash et al. 2008). A schematic diagram of a typical multistep ASP is shown in (Fig. 9.5).

9.2.2.3 Activated Sludge in Sequential Batch Reactor

In sequential batch reactor (SBR), the aeration, treatment and sludge settlement are done in the same tank. It operates in non-steady state, in batch mode. The reaction pathway and the kinetics of biodegradation of thiocyanates was evaluated using oxygen evaluation rate and sulfur and nitrogen balance data during the activated sludge treatment in two SBR units (Staib and Lant 2007). The treatment of coking wastewater was also studied in a pilot plant consisting SBR in addition to the stripping unit and homogenizer unit. The system had the removal efficiency of 69%,

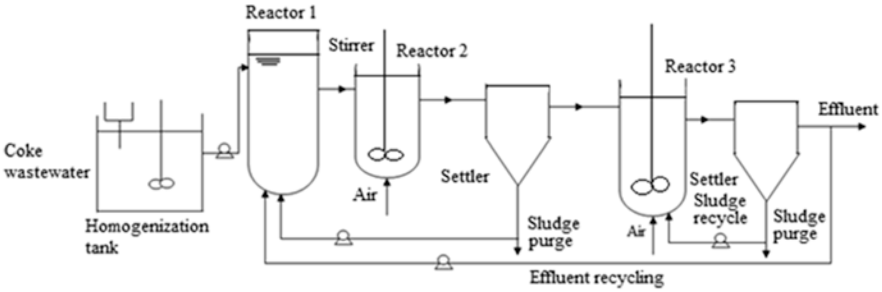


Fig. 9.5 A typical schematic diagram of multistep ASP. (Reprinted from Maranon et al. (2008b) with permission of Springer)

98% and 90% of COD, phenols and thiocyanate, respectively, at 58 h of HRT (Maranon et al. 2008a). However, the maintenance of such large system with sophisticated controls, automated switches, valves and requirement of post-SBR treatment are complex and expensive.

9.2.2.4 Fixed Biofilm-Based Treatment

The microbial system grows and forms a film-type structure on the inert and solid medium (carrier) which provides large surface area. The carriers are of ring- and/or string-type structure and made up of soft or semisoft materials. Cube structured foam made up of polyurethane with micro and macro pores could be the better choice for growing and trapping the microbes due to high porosity and water content. Such low density materials of polyethene was used for growing microbes in a moving bed bioreactor with filling ratio of 50% and suspended by air flow from the bottom of the reactor that could remove 91 and 96.8% of COD and ammonium-N (Li et al. 2011). Treatment of coking wastewater is done during the contact of microbial film with pollutants in the reactor without the need for recirculation of biomass as most of them retain within the reactor.

The environmental condition of growing bacteria may be aerobic, anaerobic, and anoxic depending upon the thickness of biofilm as the oxygen can diffuse to certain level. The removal of ammonium-N and COD were 98.9 and 92.4%, respectively, achieved by coking wastewater using the multistep fixed biofilm system of anaerobic-anoxic-oxic at low HRT of 31.6 h (Zhang et al. 1998). This system has proved to be better than free cells based activated sludge system for the degradation of pollutants during shock and fluctuating loading of wastewater. A typical scheme of anaerobic, anoxic, and oxic reactor with fixed biofilm-based system for coking wastewater treatment scheme has been shown in (Fig. 9.6).

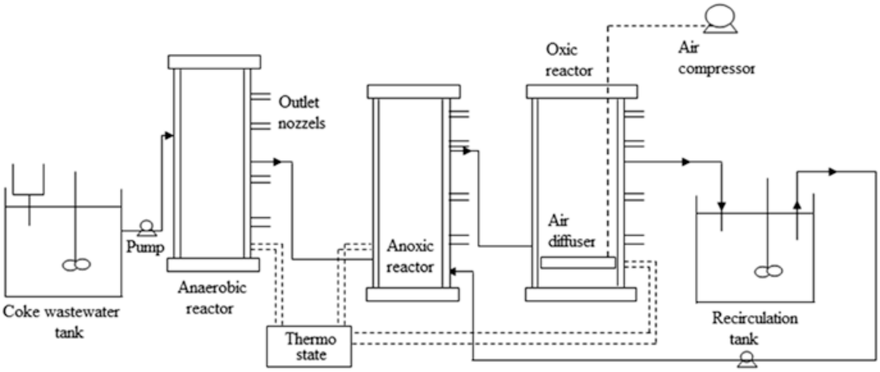


Fig. 9.6 A typical anaerobic-anoxic-oxic fixed biofilm based plant. (Reprinted from Zhang et al. (1998) with permission of Elsevier)

9.2.2.5 Biological Aerated Filters-Based Treatment

In case of biological aerated filters (BAF), the support medium remained submerged completely in wastewater and active biofilm grows on the surface of that support medium (Fig. 9.7). At the base of the reactor, the oxygen is supplied through a diffuser in upward direction to create a suspension phase of support medium. The thickness of biofilm is better due to availability of high surface area of media to the microbial films which can efficiently degrade and utilize the organic pollutants. Sometime biological-activated carbon (BAC) acts as the support medium for the growth of biofilm. BAC in combination with Fenton's reagent was used for the successful and cost-effective treatment coking wastewater up to recycling stage (Jiang et al. 2011). The final treated effluent from Fenton oxidation–BAC treatment was better in quality as the BAC function was adsorbent.

9.2.2.6 Fluidized-Bed Reactor-Based Treatment

In aerated fluidized-bed reactor (AFBR), small and lightweight support materials with high surface area are used, such as sand, glass or anthracite (size <2 mm) for the growth of biofilms in suspended mode. AFBR could provide considerable amount of biomass as high as 40,000 mg/L for the better, quick, and cost-effective removal of organic pollutants present in the coking wastewater (Marvan et al. 1992). In AFBR, the wastewater is moved from bottom to upward direction and passes through the bed of biofilm containing activated carbon (granular shape) or sand in the rectangular shape of the reactor at the speed to expend and create the suspension state. These media particle in the reactor provide vast surface area for the growth of the biological film resulting in five to ten times higher biomass concentration than the conventional bioreactor (Fig. 9.8). AFBRs are highly compact systems, but operation cost is high due to need of high pumping pressure and pure oxygen for the growth of the microorganisms.

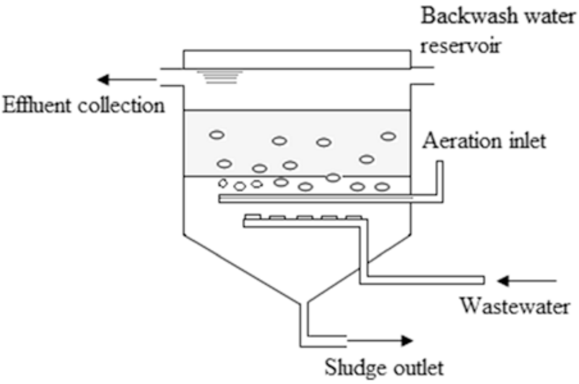
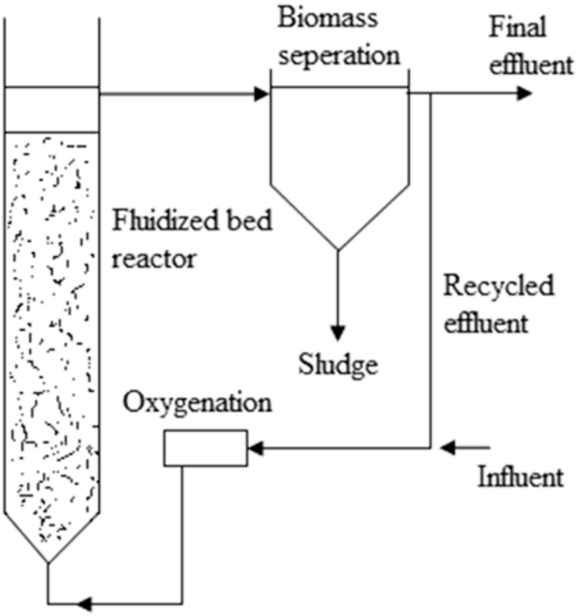


Fig. 9.7 Submerged type of biological aerated filter. (Reprinted from Pal and Kumar (2014) with permission of Taylor and Francis)

Fig. 9.8 A typical design of fluidized-bed reactor. (Reprinted from Pal and Kumar (2014) with permission of Taylor and Francis)



9.2.2.7 Bioaugmentation-Based Treatment

Treatment of coking wastewater with activated sludge made up of specialized microorganism of targeted pollutant is known as bioaugmentation. It is a better technology with improved flocculation and settling of activated sludge during the treatment of the wastewater. Specialized bacteria like *Burkholderia picketti* had been used in the anaerobic-anoxic-oxic environment for the bioaugmentation-based treatment (Jianlong et al. 2002). At different environmental conditions like anaerobic, anoxic and oxic, different commercial microorganisms were used for the pollutant-specific bioaugmentation of coking wastewater. The metal complex cyanide was treated with specialized laboratory-grown microorganism yeast (*Cryptococcus humicolus*) in fluidized-bed reactor by applying the bioaugmentation principle (Park et al. 2008a, b). Bioaugmentation process is very useful for the treatment of toxic and recalcitrant pollutants.

In addition to upgrading and seeding of wastewater treatment plants, these commercially grown microbes are very useful for maintaining the suitable environmental conditions for the degradation of pollutants during wastewater treatment. These microbes must be resistant to the environmental stress conditions like high temperature, sunlight and predation by natural microbes. However, poor adaptability and high cost are the major limitation of commercialization of bioaugmentation-based wastewater treatment.

9.3 Integrated Treatment Approach

9.3.1 Membrane Bioreactor Followed by Biological Treatment

Due to ever increasing demand for quality of treated effluent and satisfying minimal permissible limit of pollutants fixed by pollution control boards, integrated treatment technology gains importance. In view of scarcity of fresh water and necessity of reclamation of water from wastewater, a complete treatment technology is required which should not only remove the chemical pollutants but also eliminate the viruses and bacteria present in the wastewater (Lubello et al. 2007). This can be only possible through use of membrane bioreactor (MBR) or final polishing treatment of effluent of biologically treated effluent by membrane-based system. Submerged membrane bioreactors are very useful for wastewater treatment to generate sludge-free effluent (Liu et al. 2005; Marrot et al. 2004).

Moreover, ultra and microfiltration membrane of different pore sizes, which varies from 0.13 to 0.45 μm, not only retain the bacteria but also viruses (Yang et al. 2006). High density of microorganism could be possible by the complete retention of microbes using membrane system. This creates the situation of low food to biomass ratio and utilizes maximum part of the organic and inorganic pollutants present in the wastewater for only maintenance of biomass and less for growth. To comply with the stringent environment regulation and frequent fluctuation and high loading rate of influent raw wastewater, the MBR is observed as the most efficient process for the treatment of industrial as well as municipal wastewaters (Glen et al. 2005; Qin et al. 2007). The MBRs are more advantageous than conventional ASP as better quality of effluent could be found from the former even at high and fluctuating loading rate and reclaimable water can be extracted by subsequent reverse osmosis/nanofiltration-based membrane separation (Reemtsma et al. 2002).

A bench-scale comparative study was performed for the treatment of coking wastewater using anaerobic, anoxic and oxic reactor with submerged MBR and conventional ASP system for the long-term removal of organic and inorganic pollutants with total retention of sludge. It was found that the system attached to MBR was more reliable and efficient in pollutants removal of 88, 100 and 100% of COD, turbidity and ammonium-N, respectively (Zhao et al. 2009a, b). However, membrane fouling during operation by colloidal fraction of carbohydrates and proteins is the major constraint for industrial applicability MBR results in deterioration flux during the dead-end filtration module (Zhao et al. 2010). Substantial reduction in the fouling could be achieved using cross-flow MBR (Rahman and Al-Malack 2006).

9.3.2 ASP Integrated with Chemical Pre-treatment

High ratio of circulation (300–400%) is required to dilute the toxic effect of cyanide and ammonium-N during the biological treatment of coking wastewater. However, this would delay the treatment of huge industrial effluent and result in high treatment cost (Vázquez et al. 2006a, b). Thus, chemical pre-treatment is the suitable option to decrease the toxic pollutants concentration and thus decrease the dilution of wastewater by recirculation. Application of Fenton's reagents and coagulation-flocculation may be applied during pre- and/or post-treatment of coking waste water to facilitate the biological treatment and get a better final treated effluent. Different chemical compounds like iron salt, alum and iron powder are good coagulants used for the solid–liquid separation before the biological treatment (Ghose and Kumar 1993). Zero valent iron can reduce and transform the structure and minimize the toxic effect of the pollutants. Organic, inorganic and polyaromatic compounds are mineralized using Fenton's oxidation. Major hazardous compounds like cyanide and phenols are degraded using Fenton's treatment.

In addition, high concentration of ammonium-N was precipitated to struvite by using equimolar molar concentration of magnesium and phosphate salts. Struvite could be used as a slow-releasing fertilizer (Kumar and Pal 2015a, b). Sometimes extraction replacement–biodegradation integrated approach was used to reduce the COD up to 88.63% from the wastewater. Extract such as *n*-octane and cyclohexane were used to remove the heterocyclic compounds like pyridines and quinolones to facilitate the biodegradation (Yuan et al. 2012). A comparative study about the advantages and limitations of the different methods has been shown in Table 9.2.

9.4 Extraction Value Added Products from the Coking Wastewater

To extract the nutrients like ammonium-N and phosphate from the nutrients-rich wastewater, chemical precipitation method is applied to form magnesium ammonium phosphate (MAP), popularly known as struvite. Nutrient-rich wastewater point sources varies from municipal, landfill leachates, anaerobic digested sewage sludge to some industrial wastewater such as coal-based power plants, dairy plants, leather, textile and paper-pulp effluents (Bharagava et al. 2009; Chandra et al. 2011; Kishor et al. 2019; Zainith et al. 2019). In controlling the high concentration of nutrients present in the wastewater, it may deteriorate the quality of receiving water. Now, the focus has gradually shifted from removal to recovery with emphasis on the sustainability and maintaining the water quality to alleviate the environmental pressure (Uysal et al. 2014).

If such wastewaters are discharged without treatment, then nutrients load in the receiving fresh water will increase and cause eutrophication which promotes excessive growth of algae and plankton (de-Bashan and Bashan, 2004). These destroy the aquatic diversity by producing toxic algae and also lead to soil acidification due to the leaching effect. Thus, extraction of nutrients in the form of struvite by balancing molar ratio of magnesium, ammonium and phosphate helps to stop the eutrophication. Struvite or MAP is a white crystalline powder, sometimes deposited on the pipelines during anaerobic digestion due to presence of high and equimolar

Table 9.2 Comparative study of different treatment approaches/technologies of coke oven wastewater with advantages and limitations

Treatment technology	Advantages	Limitations	References
A. Physicochemical methods			
Sedimentation/ floatation	Settling tanks are used to recover the coke particles, oil, and greases; addition of lime slurry facilitates sedimentation; NH_3-N removed by zeolite column	Failures of sedimentation result in loss of coke breeze and create problem during biological treatment	Ghose and Kumar (1993)
Adsorption	Mostly used activated carbon; 90–95% removal of contaminants	Mostly carried out in batch mode; need of frequent replacement/regeneration of adsorption bed material	Moussavi and Khosravi (2010)
Steam stripping	Use for the removal and recovery ammonia as a by-product	pH lower than 7 is required; significant capital investment; shifting the ammonia from wastewater to air	Marr and Koucar (1993)
Wet air oxidation	Useful for high COD removal	Salt precipitation and plugging in the reactor Ammonium-N destruction is difficult	Marrone et al. (2004)
Chemical oxidation	Use of Fenton's reagents to degrade the persistent organic pollutants and cyanide	Low pH adjustment and chemical sludge generation make the process unattractive	Jiang et al. (2011)
Coagulation and precipitation	Useful for the removal of organic halides, total organic carbon, color and ammonium-N Precipitation by zero-valent iron, Mn, and Mg	Sludge generation is the major problem	Lai et al. (2007)
Ozonation	Useful for the removal of COD, TOC, color, CN^-, SCN^- and phenols; Ozone generator and KI solution are required	Complex process and operation make the process unattractive	Chang et al. (2008)
Electrochemical oxidation	Useful for the treatment of bio-refractory and toxic compounds; however, depend upon materials Used for making anode	High energy consumption for electrochemical oxidation makes the process economically not feasible	Zhu et al. (2009)
Membrane technology	Suitable for volume reduction and reclamation of reusable water using different membrane such as MF, UF, NF and RO membranes	Fouling and high cost of membrane are the major limitations	Kumar et al. (2011)

(continued)

Table 9.2 (continued)

Treatment technology	Advantages	Limitations	References
B. Biological methods			
Suspended growth process: single step	A floc of actively growing bacteria in suspension known as activated sludge use to degrade organic pollutants; low cost process; Suitable for municipal wastewater treatment	Toxic pollutants such as cyanide and loading variation concentration lead to failure of biological treatment; external carbon source require to grow the microbes; high HRT makes the process too slow	Vázquez et al. (2006a)
Multistep ASP processes	Pollutant-specific environmental condition such as aerobic, anoxic, and anaerobic are provided to	Difficult in maintenance; external carbon source such as methanol is required;	Maranon et al. (2008b)
	Degrade the different pollutants; More than 90% degradation of pollutants at HRT of 80–90 h	Bigger area is required	
Sequential batch reactor with ASP	Provide dynamic data; kinetics and rates of removal of pollutants with activated sludge; better removal for phenols in low HRT (58 h)	Presence of cyanide inhibit the degradation specially thiocyanate; high level of sophistication is required	Staib and Lant (2007)
Fixed biofilm system	Biofilm grows on inert, soft, semisoft medium called carrier; It may be multistep; better degradation efficiency	Long start-up time for the biofilm formation; overgrowth of biofilm leads to elutriation of carrier; high pressure air flow from to bottom	Yang et al. (2006)
Biological aerated filters (BAF)	Biofilm grows on the support medium completely submerged in the wastewater	Long time of acclimatization is required	Vázquez et al. (2006b)
	Integrated with biological activated carbon	High surface area of activated carbon is needed	
		High pressure pump is required for aeration	
Aerobic fluidized-bed (AFB) reactor	Biomass developed in small media (0.2–2 mm) made up of glass and anthracite provide large surface area; generate high biomass concentration 40 g/L; highly compact system	Expensive to run due to the cost of pure oxygen; high pressure pump is required	Marvan et al. (1992)

(continued)

Table 9.2 (continued)

Treatment technology	Advantages	Limitations	References
Bioaugmentation	Use of pollutant-specific microbes; commercial microbes successfully degrade complex pollutant; need low HRT to degrade toxic and recalcitrant pollutants	Required suitable conditions and expensive culture; problem in adaptability	Park et al. (2008b)
C. Hybrid treatment process			
Biological treatment integrated with membrane bioreactor	System resistant to high loading rate and fluctuation in concentration; improved treatment efficiency with refractory organic pollutants; polish the effluent quality for possible reuse by NF/RO	Fouling of MBR; difficult in running for long hours	Zhao et al. (2010)
Combined methods of ultrasonic radiation; catalytic oxidation and ASP	Useful for removal of toxic and hazardous pollutants; degrade into CO_2 and H_2O; Low HRT required	Expensive process; high temperature and pressure are required; high maintenance is	Ning et al. (2005)
Biological process combined with chemical pre-treatment biological treatment	Chemical pre-treatment helps to remove toxic pollutants and facilitate biological treatment; avoid the recirculation; coagulation use to separate solid suspended from liquid	Chemical sludge generation is a major problem; costly extractant such as octane and cyclohexane is required to remove pyridines and quinolones to facilitate	Yuan et al. (2012)

concentration of Mg^{2+}, NH_4^+-N and PO_4^{3-} in the wastewater (Ren et al. 2010). Civil engineers and chemist have tried theoretically and experimentally to recover struvite (Hao and van Loosdrecht 2006; Ronteltap et al. 2007). Struvite has been used as a slow-releasing fertilizer; 1 kg of struvite can fertilize 2.6 ha of arable land.

The application of struvite in agriculture land could reduce the need of rock phosphate and stimulate the growth of vegetables by releasing the P and Mg without any heavy metal contamination. Thus, as a fertilizer, it has commercial value and it is being sold in Japan by fertilizer companies (Ueno and Fujii 2001). Such types of fertilizer would be very effective in comparison to conventional soluble fertilizers in grassland and forest wherein fertilizers are used once in several years. Struvite has also been used for ornamental plants and appropriate for use as turf in tree seedling, vegetables, and flowers. Other useful compounds like ammonium thiosulfate, ammonium thiocyanate, and sometime energy in the form of methane gas during anaerobic digestion of phenols have also been recovered (Perez et al. 2002).

9.5 Membrane Separation Technology for the Treatment of Coking Wastewater

Recently, membrane-based separation is being considered to be one of the most important, efficient, and useful separation technologies in the chemical and allied process industries and successfully can compete with conventional separation processes. Membrane is the barrier, placed between two mediums that allow one or more components selectively by applying some external pressure. The membrane separation may be of cross-flow type where the feed travel parallel to the membrane surface and one or more components diffuse or pass through the membrane as shown in (Fig. 9.9). Membrane may be porous or nonporous and divided into three category, viz. polymeric, liquid membrane, and inorganic membrane.

Further based upon the transport process, pore size, and membrane characteristics, membrane process can be categorized as follows: microfiltration (MF), ultrafiltration (UF), nanofiltration (NF) and reverse osmosis (RO). The NF membranes are in between of UF and RO membranes (Kumar and Pal 2015a, b). The major advantages associated with the NF membrane are as follows: low operating pressure; high flux; high retention of multivalent ions, salts and organic matters; separation can be carried out at mild conditions of pH and temperature; consumes less energy as it does not involve any phase change except evaporation; relatively low investment, maintenance and simple mechanical operation; high selectivity; continuous operation may be possible.

NF membrane separates the solute based on size exclusion mechanism and (steric or sieving) and Donnan (electrostatic) mechanisms (Strathmann et al. 1992). The rejection study of different pollutants present in the coking wastewater had been investigated by four types of NF membranes. The effect of pH, cross-flow rate (CFR), transmembrane pressure (TMP) and recovery ratio have been optimized (Kumar et al. 2011; Kumar and Pal 2013). The experimental set-up was made up of stainless steel (SS-316) which consisted two cross-flow membrane modules for MF and NF membranes, two stirred SS tank and a peristaltic pump (ENER TECH electronics Pvt. Ltd.) connected to feed tank as shown in (Fig. 9.10). The microfiltration was done by PVDF MF membrane (pore size 0.45 μm) of coking wastewater to remove the suspended particles.

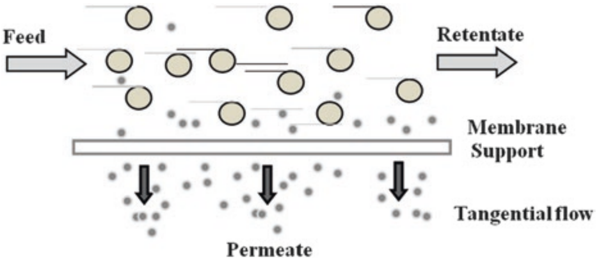


Fig. 9.9 A typical scheme of cross-flow membrane module

Now the clear microfiltrate wastewater used as the feed for NF membranes and approximately 98% phenol and 94% cyanide were rejected while yielding a high flux of 118 L/h at a relatively low pressure of only 15–16 bar at pH of 10. Recovery of 55% of the feed wastewater in concentration mode, negligible variation of rejection and flux was observed. The rest of organic and inorganic pollutants including oil and greases were also rejected by NF1 membrane. Thus, volume reduction of huge quantity of wastewater could be possible with the help of membrane separation, and concentrated pollutants were further degraded by chemical and/or biological treatment (Chandra et al. 2008; Pal et al. 2014a, b; Kumar and Pal 2014).

9.6 Reclamation of Wastewater Using Novel Forward Osmosis-Nano Filtration (FO-NF) System

It is important to end contamination of surface water from industrial or municipal sewer lines by immediate intervention, by the policy makers, and ensure that the reclamation of water from the waste stream is made reusable in the same industry. In this context, membrane technology, such as pressure-driven NF and RO system, stepped in due to their inherent potential to yield reusable water from the waste stream. FO is an emerging system to extract pure water from the wastewater by using low energy and less fouling with a simple design. In this, the feed stream travels parallel to the surface of the semipermeable FO membrane and pure water passes through natural osmosis process using concentrated solution (known as draw

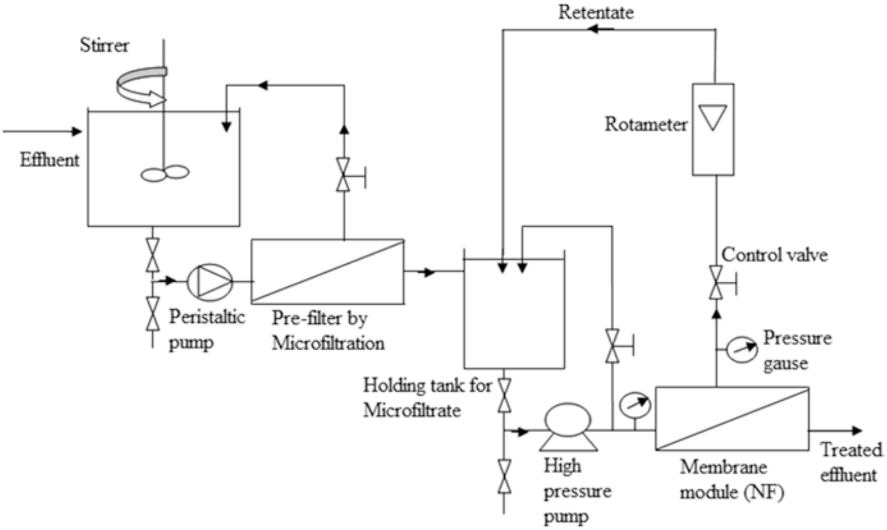


Fig. 9.10 Schematic diagram of cross-flow membrane separation system. (Reprinted from Pal and Kumar (2014) with permission of Taylor and Francis)

solute-DS) flowing counter-current wise in the opposite side of the membrane. FO has attracted more attention in the desalination of the seawater/brackish water, liquid food processing water, landfill leachates, nutrient-rich stream and nuclear plant effluent (Zhao et al. 2012; Phuntsho et al. 2013; Banerjee and De 2010; Fakhru'l-Razi et al. 2009; Kim et al. 2015). The FO system should work in a sustainable and continuous way by providing the feed water and DS of constant composition.

Thus, a periodic discharge of concentrated pollutants present in the coking wastewater (cyanide, phenols, ammonia) is needed which eliminates pollutants, and subsequent treatment is very much necessary during FO to add the fresh COWW. The concentration of diluted DS is again restored by circulating it through NF membrane where pure water is permeated and salt retain back to DS. Different salts may be used as DS such as NaCl, $MgSO_4$, and $CaCl_2$ with concentration of 2–5 M depending upon the concentration of coking wastewater. The high concentration of the DS solution should be maintained to avoid the reverse salt diffusion. To maintain the system in continuous operation, FO-NF system has been proposed where FO loop is present in upstream to extract the water from the polluted water and a downstream loop of cross flow NF membrane module which is used for the recovery of DS while permeating the reusable water as shown in the (Fig. 9.11). Using the novel FO-NF

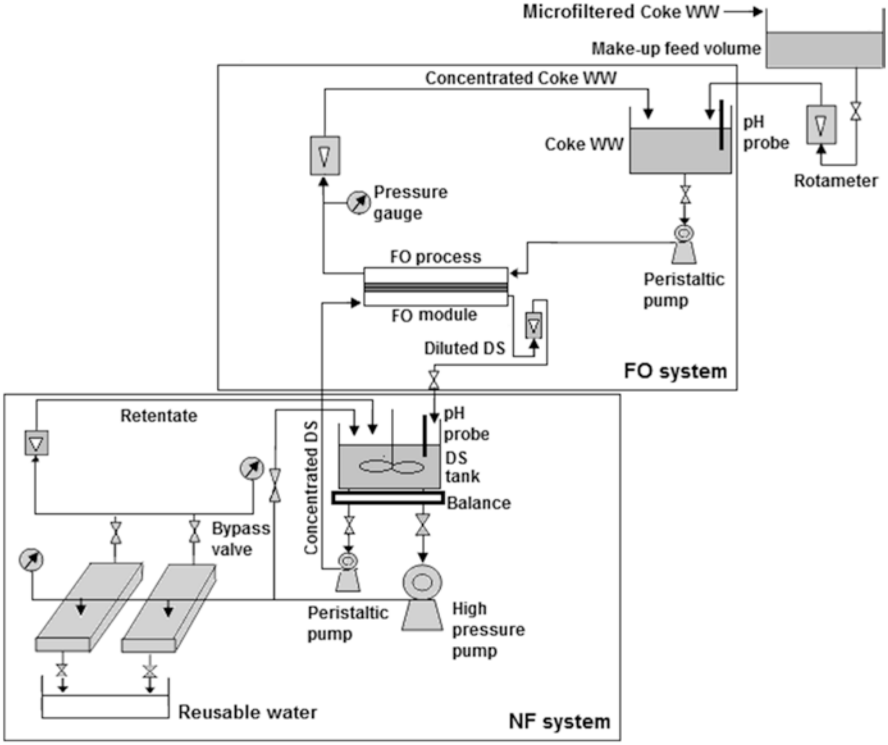


Fig. 9.11 A typical FO-NF system to extract the reusable water from wastewater. (Reprinted from Kumar and Pal (2015a, b) with permission of Elsevier)

system, 45 L/(m^2 h) water flux was obtained using NF1 membrane and 1.5 M NaCl as DS while rejecting almost 99% of all pollutants (Kumar and Pal 2015a, b).

9.7 Membrane-Based Hybrid Treatment System

An advanced treatment technology should be developed for the effective treatment of hazardous pollutants present in the coking wastewater as the conventional treatment technology fails to treat the wastewater up to reusable scale (Kumar and Pal 2012). Membrane-integrated physicochemical and biological treatment approaches have the potential to treat such wastewater into usable water and extract the by-product in the form of struvite (Kumar and Pal 2013a, b). Such scheme has two fold benefits like, on one hand, wastewater will avoid polluting freshwater from toxic contaminants and, on the other hand, save the fresh water consumption.

By applying the logical sequencing of optimized Fenton's treatment, struvite recovery, multiple microbial treatment and final polishing step with membrane separation in an integrated hybrid plant helped to achieve 99% cyanide, 100% phenols and >98% ammonium-N removal (Kumar and Pal 2013c). After cyanide degradation by Fenton's reagent and ammonium-N removal by struvite formation, subsequent biological treatment units are very effective for nitrification and denitrification (Pal et al. 2015). A visual basic simulation software had been developed by membrane-based advanced wastewater treatment plants (Pal et al. 2014a, b). In addition, transport modeling and contingent evaluation has suggested that membrane-integrated physicochemical treatment of COWW could be successful at the industrial scale (Kumar et al. 2015). Composite MF and NF membranes in cross-flow membrane modules could separate the suspended particles and trace ionic contaminants from the treated water, permitting recyclable and reusable grade of water. A typical scheme of membrane-integrated chemical and biological hybrid treatment scheme has been shown in the (Fig. 9.12).

9.8 Conclusions

Today's necessity is to develop a sustainable wastewater management strategy for the treatment of coking wastewater. Coke-making industries consume huge amount of fresh water and generate high strength wastewater heavily loaded with toxic pollutants such as cyanide, thiocyanate, phenols, ammonia, PAHs, oil, and greases. These pollutants are hazardous to the environment and show genotoxic risk to human being. Effective treatment of such industrial effluent has a serious concern for the scientific community. There is need of paradigm shift in treatment regime for such complex wastewater. The novel strategy involves reusing or recycling the waster extracted from the wastewater treatment by applying physicochemical and biological treatment. Such strategies have double benefits as the toxic pollutants

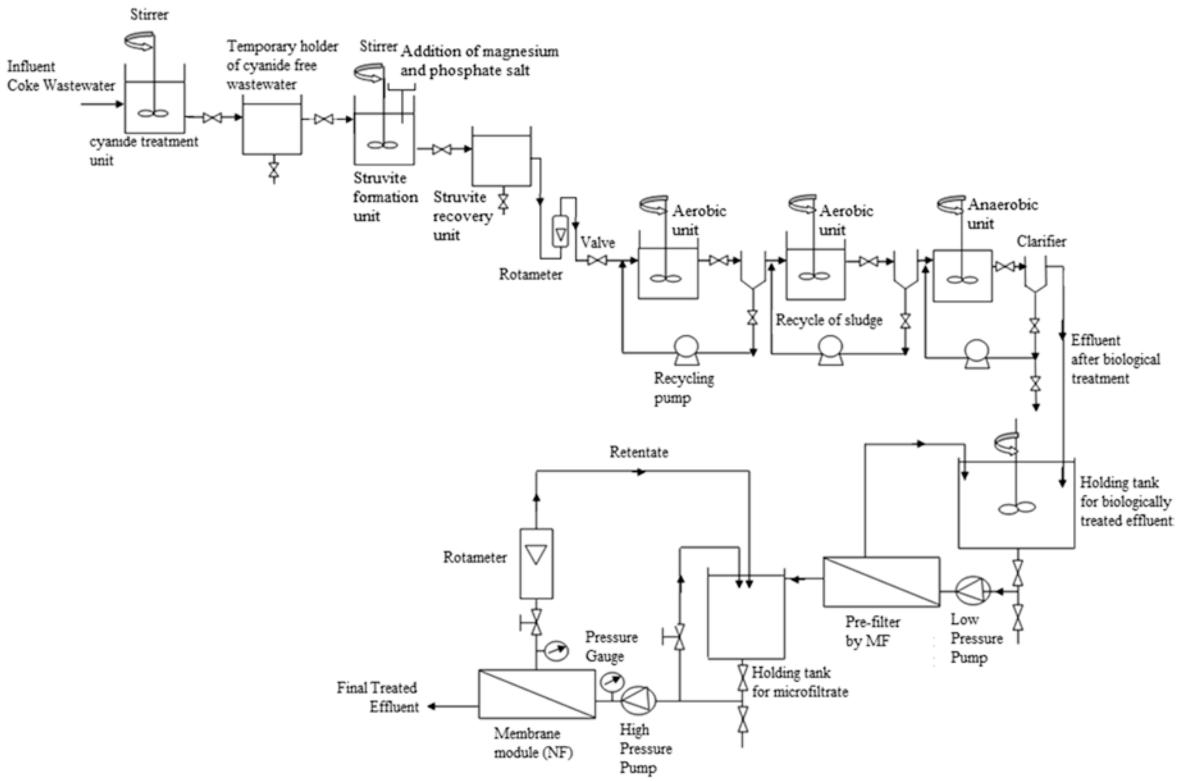


Fig. 9.12 A typical scheme of chemical, biological, and membrane-integrated treatment plant for the treatment of coke-oven wastewater. (Reprinted from Kumar and Pal (2013b) with permission of Elsevier)

will be prevented from contaminating clean water bodies, and this will also cut the consumption of utilizing fresh water.

The chances of success of microbial treatment are very much dependent upon the pre-treatment by chemical methods such as Fenton's treatment for cyanide degradation that lowers down the ammonium-N concentration by struvite precipitation. After optimized chemical process, the downstream nitrification and denitrification units could successfully convert ammonium-N into elemental N. The final micro- and nanofiltration membranes are operated in cross-flow membrane modules, offering long hours fouling free operation without frequent need of replacing the membrane. Such system purifies the chemically and biologically treated coking wastewater up to the level of recycling stage in the same industry which will not only save the fresh water consumption but also protect the surface water from being contaminated.

Acknowledgement Authors are highly acknowledged to the University Grant Commission, Government of India for financial support under Dr. D.S. Kothari Post-Doctoral Fellowship sanctioned No. F.4-2/2006 (BSR)/EN/16-17/0001, September 01, 2016 (65th List).

References

American Public Health Association (APHA) (2012) Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater, 22nd edn. APHA, Washington, DC

Banerjee P, De S (2010) Coupled concentration polarization and pore flow modeling of nanofiltration of an industrial textile effluent. Sep Purif Technol 73(3):355–362

Barakat MA, Chen YT, Huang CP (2004) Removal of toxic cyanide and Cu(II) ions from water by illuminated TiO_2 catalyst. Appl Catal B 53:13–20

Barriga-Ordonez F, Nava-Alonso F, Uribe-Salas A (2006) Cyanide oxidation by ozone in a steady-state flow bubble column. Miner Eng 19:117–122

de-Bashan LE, Bashan Y (2004) Recent advances in removing phosphorus from wastewater and its future use as fertilizer (1997–2003). Water Res 38:4222–4246

Bharagava RN, Chandra R, Rai V (2008a) Phytoextraction of trace elements and physiological changes in Indian mustard plants (*Brassica nigra* L.) grow in post methanated distillery effluent (PMDE) irrigated soil. Bioresour Technol 99(17):8316–8324

Bharagava RN, Chandra R, Singh SK (2008b) Characterization of phenolic metabolites from post methanated distillery effluent (PMDE) after degradation with bacterial consortium Ind. J Environ Prot 28(11):1019–1027

Bharagava RN, Chandra R, Rai V (2009) Isolation and characterization of aerobic bacteria capable of the degradation of synthetic and natural melanoidins from distillery wastewater. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 25:737–744

Bharagava RN, Yadav S, Chandra R (2014) Antibiotic and heavy metal resistance properties of bacteria isolated from the aeration lagoons of common effluent treatment plant (CETP) of tannery industries (Unnao, India). Indian J Biotechnol 13:514–519

Burmistrz P, Burmistrz M (2013) Distribution of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in coke plant wastewater. Water Sci Technol 68(11):2414–2420

Chakraborty S, Veeramani H (2006) Effect of HRT and recycle ratio on removal of cyanide, phenol, thiocyanate and ammonia in an anaerobic–anoxic– aerobic continuous system. Process Biochem 41:96–105

Chandra R, Bharagava RN, Rai V (2008) Melanoidins as major colorant in sugarcane molasses based distillery effluent and its degradation. Bioresour Technol 99:4648–4660

Chandra R, Bharagava RN, Kapley A, Purohit HJ (2011) Bacterial diversity, organic pollutants and their metabolites in two aeration lagoons of common effluent treatment plant during the degradation and detoxification of tannery wastewater. Bioresour Technol 102:2333–2341

Chang EE, Hsing HJ, Chiang CP et al (2008) The chemical and biological characteristics of coke-oven wastewater by ozonation. J Hazard Mater 156:560–567

Chu L, Wang J, Dong J et al (2012) Treatment of coking wastewater by an advanced Fenton oxidation process using iron powder and hydrogen peroxide. Chemosphere 86(4):409–414

Dash RR, Balomajumder C, Kumar A (2008) Treatment of metal cyanide bearing wastewater by simultaneous adsorption and biodegradation (SAB). J Hazard Mater 152:387–396

Dong Y, Zhang J (2010) Testing the genotoxicity of coking wastewater using *Vicia faba* and *Hordeum vulgare* bioassays. Ecotoxicol Environ Safe 73(5):944–948

El Diwani G, El Rafie S, El Ibiari NN et al (2007) Recovery of ammonia nitrogen from industrial wastewater treatment as struvite slow releasing fertilizer. Desalination 214:200–214

Escher BI, Charlotte VD, Mriga D et al (2013) Most oxidative stress response in water samples comes from unknown chemicals: the need for effect-based water quality trigger values. Environ Sci Technol 47(13):7002–7011

Fakhru'l-Razi A, Pendashteh A, Abdullah LC et al (2009) Review of technologies for oil and gas produced water treatment. J Hazard Mater 170(2–3):530–551

Ghose MK, Kumar A (1993) Impact on surface water quality due to the discharge of coal washery effluents and dispersion profile of pollutant in Damodar river. Asian Environ 15(1):32–40

Glen TD, Bruce ER, Samer A et al (2005) Are membrane bioreactors ready for widespread application? Environ Sci Technol 39:385–408

Hao XD, van Loosdrecht MCM (2006) Model-based evaluation of struvite recovery from P-released supernatant in a BNR process. Water Sci Technol 53(3):191–198

Jiang W, Zhang W, Li B et al (2011) Combined Fenton oxidation and biological activated carbon process for recycling of coking plant effluent. J Hazard Mater 189:308–314

Jianlong W, Xiangchun Q, Libo W et al (2002) Bioaugmentation as a tool to enhance the removal of refractory compound in coke plant wastewater. Process Biochem 38:777–781

Kim Y, Lee JH, Kim YC et al (2015) Operation and simulation of pilot-scale forward osmosis desalination with ammonium bicarbonate. Chem Eng Res Des 94:390–395

Kishor R, Bharagava RN, Saxena G (2019) Industrial wastewaters: the major sources of dye contamination in the environment, ecotoxicological effects, and bioremediation approaches. In: Bharagava RN (ed) Recent advances in environmental management. CRC Press Taylor & Francis, Boca Raton, p 13. ISBN: 978-0-8153-8314-7

Kumar R, Pal P (2012) Response surface-optimized Fenton's pre-treatment for chemical precipitation of struvite and recycling of water through downstream nanofiltration. Chem Eng J 210:33–44

Kumar R, Pal P (2013) Removal of phenol from coke-oven wastewater by cross-flow nanofiltration membranes. Water Environ Res 85(5):447–455

Kumar R, Pal P (2013a) Turning hazardous waste into value-added products: production and characterization of struvite from ammoniacal waste with new approaches. J Clean Prod 43:59–70

Kumar R, Pal P (2013b) A membrane-integrated advanced scheme for treatment of industrial wastewater: dynamic modeling towards scale up. Chemosphere 92:1375–1382

Kumar R, Pal P (2013c) Membrane-integrated hybrid bioremediation of industrial wastewater: a continuous treatment and recycling approach. J Water Reuse Desal 3:26–38

Kumar R, Pal P (2014) Membrane-integrated hybrid system for the effective treatment of ammoniacal wastewater of coke-making plant: a volume reduction approach. Environ Technol 35(16):2018–2027

Kumar R, Pal P (2015a) A novel forward osmosis-nano filtration integrated system for coke-oven wastewater reclamation. Chem Eng Res Des 100:542–553

Kumar R, Pal P (2015b) Assessing the feasibility of N and P recovery by struvite precipitation from nutrient-rich wastewater: a review. Environ Sci Pollut Res 22:17453–17464

Kumar R, Bhakta P, Chakraborty S et al (2011) Separating cyanide from coke wastewater by cross flow nanofiltration. Sep Sci Technol 46:2119–2127

Kumar R, Chakrabortty S, Pal P (2015) Membrane-integrated physico-chemical treatment of coke-oven wastewater: transport modelling and economic evaluation. Environ Sci Pollut Res 22:6010–6023

Lai P, Zhao HZ, al WC (2007) Advanced treatment of coking wastewater by coagulation and zero-valent iron processes. J Hazard Mater 147(1–2):232–239

Li H, Han H, Du M et al (2011) Removal of phenols, thiocyanate and ammonium from coal gasification wastewater using moving bed biofilm reactor. Bioresour Technol 102:4667–4673

Liu R, Huang X, Xi JY et al (2005) Microbial behaviour in a membrane bioreactor with complete sludge retention. Process Biochem 40:3165–3170

Liu Y, Liu J, Zhang A et al (2017) Treatment effects and genotoxicity relevance of the toxic organic pollutants in semi-coking wastewater by combined treatment process. Environ Pollut 220:13–19

Lu XY, Li B, Zhang T et al (2012) Enhanced anoxic bioremediation of PAHs contaminated sediment. Bioresour Technol 104:51–58

Lubello C, Caffaz S, Mangini L et al (2007) MBR pilot plant for textile wastewater treatment and reuse. Water Sci Technol 55:115–124

Ma D, Liu C, Zhu X et al (2016) Acute toxicity and chemical evaluation of coking wastewater under biological and advanced physicochemical treatment processes. Environ Sci Pollut Res 23:18343–18352

Ma X, Wang X, Liu Y et al (2017) Variations in toxicity of semi-coking wastewater treatment processes and their toxicity prediction. Ecotoxicol Environ Safe 138:163–169

Maranon E, Vazquez I, Rodriguez J et al (2008a) Treatment of coke wastewater in a sequential batch reactor (SBR) at pilot plant scale. Bioresour Technol 99:4192–4198

Maranon E, Vazquez I, Rodriguez J et al (2008b) Coke wastewater treatment by a three-step activated sludge system. Water Air Soil Pollut 192:155–164

Marr R, Koucar M (1993) Recovery of ammonium-N from industrial wastewater. Int Chem Eng 33(3):416

Marrone PA, Hodes M, Smith KA et al (2004) Salt precipitation and scale control in supercritical water oxidation-part B: commercial/full-scale applications. J Supercrit Fluids 29:289–312

Marrot B, Barrios-Martinez A, Moulin P et al (2004) Industrial wastewater treatment in a membrane bioreactor: a review. Environ Prog 23:59–68

Marvan IJ, Craig F, Sutton PM (1992) Treatability evaluation of coking plant effluent. Int Biodeterior Biodegradation 30:313–329

Mason TJ (1990) Chemistry with ultrasound, published for the Society of Chemical Industry. Elsevier, Amsterdam

Moussavi G, Khosravi R (2010) Removal of cyanide from wastewater by adsorption onto pistachio hull wastes: parametric experiments, kinetics and equilibrium analysis. J Hazard Mater 183:724–730

Ning N, Bart HJ, Jiang Y et al (2005) Treatment of organic pollutants in coke plant wastewater by the method of ultrasonic irradiation, catalytic oxidation and activated sludge. Sep Purif Technol 41:133–139

Okouchi S, Nojima O, Arai T (1992) Cavitation induced degradation of phenol by ultrasound. Water Sci Technol 26(9–11):2053–2056

Pal P, Kumar R (2014) Treatment of coke-wastewater: a critical review for developing sustainable management strategies. Sep Purif Rev 43(2):89–123

Pal P, Bhakta P, Kumar R (2014a) Cyanide removal from industrial wastewater by cross-flow nanofiltration: transport modeling and economic evaluation. Water Environ Res 86(8):698–708

Pal P, Kumar R, Srivastava N et al (2014b) A visual basic simulation software tool for performance analysis of a membrane-based advanced water treatment plant. Environ Sci Pollut Res 21:1833–1849

Pal P, Abrar I, Kumar R (2015) Managing hazardous municipal wastewater: a membrane-integrated hybrid approach for fast and effective treatment in low temperature environment. J Membr Sci Technol 4(2):53–65

Parga JR, Shukla SS, Carrillo-Pedroza FR (2003) Destruction of cyanide waste solutions using chlorine dioxide, ozone and Titania sol. Waste Manag 23:183–191

Park D, Kim YM, Lee DS et al (2008a) Chemical treatment for treating cyanides-containing effluent from biological cokes wastewater treatment process. Chem Eng J 143:141–146

Park D, Lee DS, Kim YM et al (2008b) Bioaugmentation of cyanide-degrading microorganisms in a full-scale cokes wastewater treatment facility. Bioresour Technol 99:2092–2096

Perez M, Torrades F, Domenech X et al (2002) Removal of organic contaminants in pulp effluents by AOPs: an economic study. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 77:525–532

Phuntsho S, Hong S, Elimelech M et al (2013) Forward osmosis desalination of brackish groundwater: meeting water quality requirements for fertigation by integrating nanofiltration. J Membr Sci 436:1–15

Pollice A, Laera G, Saturno D et al (2008) Effects of sludge retention time on the performance of a membrane bioreactor treating municipal sewage. J Membr Sci 317:65–70

Qin JJ, Wai MN, Tao GH et al (2007) Membrane bioreactor study for reclamation of mixed sewage mostly from industrial sources. Sep Purif Technol 53:296–300

Rahman MM, Al-Malack MH (2006) Performance of a cross flow membrane bioreactor (CF-MBR) when treating refinery wastewater. Desalination 191:16–26

Reemtsma T, Zywicki B, Stueber M et al (2002) Removal of sulfur organic polar micropollutants in a membrane bioreactor treating industrial wastewater. Environ Sci Technol 36:1102–1106

Ren L, Schuchardt F, Shen Y et al (2010) Impact of struvite crystallization on nitrogen losses during composting of pig manure and cornstalk. Waste Manag 30:885–892

Richards DJ, Shieh WK (1989) Anoxic oxic activated sludge treatment of cyanides and phenols. Biotechnol Bioeng 33:32–38

Ronteltap M, Maurer M, Gujer W (2007) Struvite precipitation thermodynamics in source-separated urine. Water Res 41:977–984

Shen J, Zhao H, Cao H et al (2014) Chen, removal of total cyanide in coking wastewater during a coagulation process: significance of organic polymers. J Environ Sci 26:231–239

Staib C, Lant P (2007) Thiocyanate degradation during activated sludge treatment of coke-ovens wastewater. Biochem Eng J 34:122–130

Strathmann H, Ho WS, Sirkar KK (eds) (1992) Membrane handbook. Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York

Tian DY, Lin ZF, Yu JQ et al (2012) Influence factors of multicomponent mixtures containing reactive chemicals and their joint effects. Chemosphere 88(8):994–1000

Ueno Y, Fujii M (2001) Three years' experience of operating and selling recovered struvite from full-scale plant. Environ Technol 22:1373–1381

Uysal A, Demir S, Sayilgan E et al (2014) Optimization of struvite fertilizer formation from baker's yeast wastewater: growth and nutrition of maize and tomato plants. Environ Sci Pollut Res 21:3264–3274

Vázquez I, Rodríguez J, Marañón E et al (2006a) Study of aerobic biodegradation of coke wastewater in a two and three-step activated sludge process. J Hazard Mater 137:1681–1688

Vázquez I, Rodríguez J, Marañón E et al (2006b) Simultaneous removal of phenol, ammonium and thiocyanate from coke wastewater by aerobic biodegradation. J Hazard Mater 137:1773–1780

Yang WB, Cicek N, Ilg J (2006) State of the art of membrane bioreactors: worldwide research and commercial applications in North America. J Membr Sci 270:201–211

Yuan X, Sun H, Guo D (2012) The removal of COD from coking wastewater using extraction replacement–biodegradation coupling. Desalination 289:45–50

Zainith S, Purchase D, Saratale GD, Ferreira LFR, Bilal M, Bharagava RN (2019) Isolation and characterization of lignin-degrading bacterium *Bacillus aryabhattai* from pulp and paper mill wastewater and evaluation of its lignin-degrading potential. 3 Biotech 9(3):92

Zhang M, Tay JH, Qian Y et al (1998) Coke plant wastewater treatment by fixed biofilm system for COD and NH_3-N removal. Water Res 32:591–527

Zhang W, Wei CH, Peng PG (2010a) Components and degradation characteristics analysis of phenols in coking wastewater in biological fluidized bed A/A/O process. Chin J Environ Eng 4:253–258

Zhang MH, Zhao QL, Bai X et al (2010b) Adsorption of organic pollutants from coking wastewater by activated coke. Coll Surf A Physicochem Eng Asp 362:140–146

Zhao WT, Huang X, Lee D et al (2009a) Use of submerged anaerobic–anoxic–oxic membrane bioreactor to treat highly toxic coke wastewater with complete sludge retention. J Membr Sci 330:57–64

Zhao WT, Huang X, Lee D (2009b) Enhanced treatment of coke plant wastewater using an anaerobic–anoxic–oxic membrane bioreactor system. Sep Purif Technol 66:279–286

Zhao WT, Shen YX, Xiao K et al (2010) Fouling characteristics in a membrane bioreactor coupled with anaerobic–anoxic–oxic process for coke wastewater treatment. Bioresour Technol 101:3876–3883

Zhao S, Zou L, Mulcahy D (2012) Brackish water desalination by a hybrid forward osmosis—nano filtration system using divalent draw solute. Desalination 284:175–181

Zhu X, Ni J, Lai P (2009) Advanced treatment of biologically retreated coking wastewater by electrochemical oxidation using boron-doped diamond electrodes. Water Res 43:4347–4355

Chapter 10
Removal of Organic Pollutants from Contaminated Water Bodies by Using Aquatic Macrophytes Coupled with Bioenergy Production and Carbon Sequestration

Ankit, Lala Saha, Khushbu Kumari, Sagarika Sinha, Nirmali Bordoloi, Jaya Tiwari, John Korstad, and Kuldeep Bauddh

Abstract The burgeoning population and continuous increase in developmental activities are the major cause of rampant release of numerous environmental contaminants. These contaminants pollute the soil, air and water and ultimately enter the food chain. Several physical, chemical and biological techniques have been developed to remove these contaminants; however, these methods are quite costly and not environmentally sound. Specifically, organic contaminants like pesticides, phenols, oils, pharmaceuticals and dyes are entering aquatic habitats and damaging these ecosystems. Application of aquatic macrophytes for the removal of organic contaminants has proved to be an eco-friendly and efficient tool to remediate aquatic ecosystems. Aquatic macrophytes such as *Eichhorn crassipes, Elodea canadensis, Lemna minor, Pistia stratiotes,* and *Trapa natans* can be used for reclamation of contaminated waste and wastewater systems. In addition, these plants help in carbon sequestration, and the biomass of these plants may be used to produce bioenergy (biofuel) at the same time. In this chapter, the potential of aquatic macrophytes for phytoremediation and bioenergy production along with carbon sequestration have been thoroughly discussed.

Ankit and Lala Saha contributed equally to this work.

Ankit · L. Saha · K. Kumari · S. Sinha · N. Bordoloi · K. Bauddh (✉)
Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Jharkhand Ranchi,
Ranchi, India
e-mail: kuldeep.bauddh@cuj.ac.in

J. Tiwari
School of Biological Sciences, AIPH University, Bhubaneswar, Orissa, India

J. Korstad
Department of Biology and Renewable Energy, Oral Roberts University, Tulsa, OK, USA

R. N. Bharagava (ed.), *Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment*, Microorganisms for Sustainability 18,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-1390-9_10

Keywords Bioenergy · Carbon sequestration · Macrophytes · Organic pollutants · Phytoremediation · Water pollution

10.1 Introduction

Environmental contamination due to anthropogenic sources is widespread and occurs through point as well as diffused sources (Fig. 10.1). However, most of the ecotoxicological implications are often obscure. Environmental contamination is a serious issue grappling the world. The introduction of chemicals, wastewater, wastes, toxic substances, or microorganisms into the air, water, and soil often contributes to areas being unsafe for human habitation, crops being contaminated, water being unpotable, and food being unfit for consumption. Increased concentrations of several organic contaminants like polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) in the ecosystem have been of great concern owing to its hydrophobicity, toxicity, bioaccumulation, and prolonged presence in living organisms (Yadav et al. 2016; Saxena and Bharagava 2017; Keshavarzifard et al. 2019).

Aquatic ecosystems can be contaminated with hazardous substances such as petroleum hydrocarbons, pesticides, and/or heavy metals that may be toxic to aquatic animals and plants (Fleeger et al. 2003; Singh 2009; Yadav et al. 2017; Mishra and Bharagava 2016). Over consumption of chemicals, fossil fuels, minerals, industrial effluents, and other anthropogenic substances lead to contamination of ecosystems with pesticides, petroleum hydrocarbons, dyes, heavy metals, metal nanoparticles, radionuclides, pharmaceutical products, etc. Aquatic ecosystems are at greatest risk mainly due to imprudent human activities (Borgwardt et al. 2019).

A sustainable technique to remediate polluted aquatic ecosystems is rhizofiltration (Tiwari et al. 2019). It is a type of phytoremediation which involves the use of hydroponically cultivated roots of the plant for remediating contaminated water by absorbing, concentrating, and precipitating the pollutants. Phytoremediation is a green clean technology available for restoring contaminated aquatic ecosystems (Bauddh and Singh 2015a, b; Bauddh et al. 2016a, b; Bharti et al. 2017; Chakravarty et al. 2017; Ashraf et al. 2019; Saxena et al. 2019). Using aquatic plants for the removal of contaminants is proven to be a win-win situation, because first, they are often weeds (not desirable) and second, they are good at extracting contaminants. Macrophytes used for phytoremediation include *Pistia stratiotes, Potamogeton*

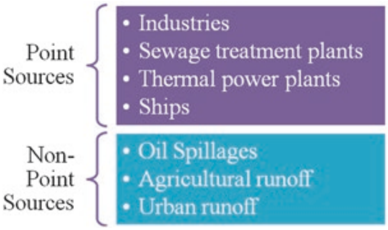


Fig. 10.1 Sources of aquatic ecosystem contamination

pectinatus, Trapa natans, Eichhorn crassipes, Potamogeton lucens, Potamogeton perfoliatus, and Ceratophyllum demersum. The studied macrophytes can efficiently remove heavy metals like Ni, Pb, As, Cu, Cd, and other cations (Kumar et al. 2012; Sood et al. 2012; Sweta et al. 2015; Materac and Sobiecka 2017; Neha et al. 2017; Riaz et al. 2017; Wang et al. 2017).

Carbon sequestration is another ecological service that is provided by aquatic macrophytes. This service is of immense importance because greenhouse gas concentrations are increasing globally. Macrophytes are comparatively bigger in size and have larger biomass than many other aquatic plants and thus have tremendous potential to sequester CO_2. *Typha latifolia* and *Scirpus acutus* are known to have promising potential to sequester carbon (Burke 2011). Aquatic macrophytes also supply biomass for our energy demands. It is a renewable energy that is obtained from living organic material called biomass, which can be used to produce heat, transportation fuels, bio-products and electricity. Using bioenergy can reduce dependency on foreign oil, revitalize rural economies, and supply clean energy, which are all serve vital needs, especially for underdeveloped and developing nations. Aquatic macrophytes like *Lemna* spp. are supportive for producing biofuel (Xu et al. 2011).

10.2 Types of Contaminates Present in Aquatic Ecosystems

Contamination of aquatic environments can be attributed to organic, inorganic and other anthropogenic substances (Fig. 10.2). Industrial sources may be in the form of hot water discharged form a thermal power plant, mine tailings and discharge of heavy metals like Cd, Hg, U, As, and other metals. Agricultural waste can be broadly categorized into organic and inorganic compounds (Milovanovic 2007). Organic compounds include pesticides and oils. There are several classes of pesticides as well, like organochlorine which includes chlordane, methoxychlor, lindane, aldrin,

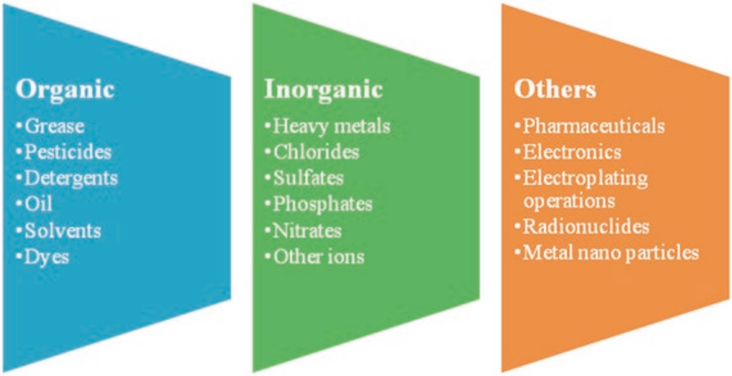


Fig. 10.2 Different classes of aquatic ecosystem contamination

toxaphene, dichloro diphenyl trichloroethane (DDT), heptachlor, endosulfan, and dieldrin. Organophosphates include parathion, malathion, dimethoate and diazinon and carbamates like aldicarb, carbofuran, and carbaryl. Inorganic compounds consist of phosphates, nitrates, and other chemicals (Tiwari et al. 2019). Heavy metals include As from insecticides; chromate and cadmium from electroplating industries; Pb from paint manufacturing pipes and pottery; Hg from combustion of fossil fuels; Cr from leather tanning industry; and Zn from smelting.

10.3 Sources of Organic Pollution

Organic pollutants are mainly emanated from agricultural practices, industrial activities and military waste. Agriculture is mainly based on seed, water, fertilizer and pesticides. Use of pesticides in agricultural activities plays a major role in organic pollution in some urban areas (Ratnakar et al. 2016). Organic pollutants are generally categorized into three groups: (1) organometallic compounds; (2) oxygen, nitrogen, and phosphorus compounds; and (3) hydrocarbons. Hydrocarbons like dioxins, PAHs, and DDT are considered to be the most toxic compounds. Automobiles are a major source of organic pollutants like dioxins, petroleum hydrocarbons, and PAHs and are discharged into the environment in particulate form. Direct disposal of industrial and urban waste into dug pits and improperly constructed landfills contributes to contamination of soil and groundwater adjacent to disposal sites.

Increasing concentration of harmful organic chemicals is mostly due to anthropogenic reasons and is termed persistent organic pollutants (POPs). POPs are toxic organic compounds that are persistent in soils, sediments and biota, have long residence times, and are bioaccumulative (Jacob 2013). POPs like dioxins and dibenzofurans originate from natural sources like volcanic eruptions and forest fires. Some of the major anthropogenic sources of POPs are industrial-based such as agricultural sprays, power stations, heating stations, and evaporation from soil and landfills. Based on application and source, POPs are classified into three groups: pesticide, industrial, and technical chemicals, and also unintended by-products from various industrial activities.

Different types of pesticides such as DDT, aldrin, endrin, dieldrin, chlordane, hexachlorocyclohexane, and toxaphene are used to control weeds, fungi, bacteria, insects, and other organisms. Although agricultural activity is considered to be one of the major sources of pesticide, they are not restricted to agricultural fields. Pesticides are also used as household commodities in the form of powders, sprays, and poisons to kill mosquitoes, cockroaches, fleas, other insects, ticks, and rats. Organic pesticides are semi-volatile in nature and can be dispersed by air and are frequently found in edible items (Jacob 2013). Globally, POPs continue their cycle due to revolatilization from contaminated water bodies, soils, and vegetation.

The most common industrial chemicals are hexachlorobenzene (HCB) and polychlorobiphenyls (PCBs). In the environment, HCB is released from some chlorinated pesticides and chlorinated aromatics, incomplete combustion, waste material, and old disposal sites. PCBs are stable and human-made chlorinated hydrocarbons. PCBs are used in pigments and dyes, plastics and rubber products, fluorescent lighting, floor finish. They enter air, water, and soil during production, use, and improper disposal. Polychlorinated dibenzofurans (PCDFs) and polychlorinated dibenzodioxins (PCDDs) are unintentional by-products of various chemical processes and combustion which contain chlorine. Important sources of PCDDs and PCDFs are classified into three groups: (1) stationary, which includes chemical industries and thermal processes; (2) diffused, which includes burning of fossil fuels; and (3) secondary, which includes sewage sludge and bio-compost.

10.4 Toxicity of Organic Pollution to Plants and Animals

Persistent organic pollutants generally are low water soluble but highly soluble in lipid and are not naturally degradable. Exposure to POPs can be through food items and environmental exposure; they are highly toxic to plants and animal including humans. POPs are persistent in the environment and contaminate at the origin and also at remarkable distances from the original source of discharge. The negative or unpleasant effects of pesticides include injury to non-target plants and animals. Based on the exposures and time taken for the appearance of toxic symptoms, pesticide toxicity is classified as: (1) acute toxicity, (2) sub-chronic toxicity, (3) chronic toxicity, and (4) delayed toxicity. Excessive application of pesticides in soil may hamper seed germination, crop growth, plant metabolic pathways and interfere with photosynthesis, resulting in subsequent reduction of yield. Fat-soluble pesticides enter animal bodies through the process of biomagnification and accumulate in fatty tissues and remain in food chains for a considerable period of time. Potential health impacts of pesticides include negatively impacting immune, hormonal, nervous, and reproductive system and may cause deformity (DeSolla et al. 2008).

HCB is mobile, persistent, distributed throughout the environment and bioaccumulate and toxic to both humans and biota. HCB can bioaccumulate in fish and other marine animals; a high dose of HCB can lead to birth defects because it affects the reproductive system of animals. Exposure to HCB can occur dermally, through inhalation of polluted air at industrial sites, or by contaminated food. HCB has low to moderate acute toxicity, is immunotoxic and may cause ovarian toxicity; prolonged oral exposure to HCB may cause liver diseases resulting in enzyme induction and porphyria. HCB also affects skin, thyroid glands, bones and nervous systems. HCB toxicity commonly leads to abnormal physical development in young children.

Polychlorinated biphenyls are human-made organic compounds and were first reported as environmental pollutants in 1996. PCBs are released into the environment from hazardous waste sites, burning municipal and industrial waste, and electrical transformers. PCBs tend to bioaccumulate in plant and animal tissues due to their lipophilic nature and can persist in air, water and soil for long periods of time.

Sediments, water, fish and bird tissue have been contaminated by PCB compounds. Plants represent the main entry route of PCBs in food chains. PCBs accumulate in leaf surfaces and other above-ground parts of plants (Campanella et al. 2002). Chronic exposure to PCBs may cause serious immunological, reproductive, neurobehavioral, and endocrine disorders in children. PCBs are suspected to be carcinogenic for animals, including humans (Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS); U.S. Environmental Protection Agency; Pieper and Seeger 2008).

Polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins and dibenzofurans (PCDD/PCDF) are ubiquitous in the environment; human exposure is mainly through diet, inhaling polluted air, and skin contact. PCDD/PCDF comes from air and dust from soil erosion and accumulates in plant above-ground parts. Chronic exposure of PCDDs and PCDFs leads to carcinogenesis; acute toxicity may lead to progressive loss of body weight and hypophagia, gastrointestinal hemorrhage, thymic atrophy, and delayed lethality in tested animals. Chronic exposure of PCDD/PCDF increases the chances of infertility in animals and humans. It can also damage the immune system, causing reproductive and developmental problems, interfere with hormonal functions, and cause kidney and hepatic lesions, which is cancerous (Marcia de 2004).

10.5 Abundance and Ecology of Aquatic Macrophytes

Macrophytes are important biotic components of aquatic ecosystems. Other aquatic life depends on them for food and habitat. Aquatic macrophytes help to control sediment erosion, buffer temperature variation, wave action, stabilize dissolved oxygen, absorb pollutants such as heavy metals and POPs and sequester nutrients. Thus, aquatic macrophytes help maintain healthy aquatic ecosystems.

Aquatic plants can be categorized into seven different groups: Bryophyta (mosses and liverworts), Chlorophyta (green algae), Cyanobacteria (blue–green algae), Pteridophyta (ferns), Rhodophyta (red algae), Spermatophyta (seed-bearing plants), and Xanthophyta (yellow–green algae) (Chambers et al. 2007). Aquatic macrophytes may be floating on the water surface, submerged, or emergent. They can complete their whole life cycle in water or on hydric soils (inundated and non-inundated) (Gecheva et al. 2013). Local habitat determines which macrophytes will grow; it also depends on the availability of light, current velocity, sediment composition and nutrient supply (Hrivnák et al. 2006; Birk and Willby 2010). However, human-impacted land use changes and hydrological dynamics are responsible for aquatic macrophyte diversity (Otahelová et al. 2007). Scarlett and O'Hare (2006) showed that coarse substrate with variable flow of water is suitable for the growth of bryophytes and excludes vascular hydrophytes. Bryophytes are dominant in lotic (moving water) ecosystems, specifically in undisturbed areas (Suren et al. 2000; Scarlett and O'Hare 2006). Thus, bryophytes are good candidates for running water remediation of pollutants.

In many cases, these plants have developed anatomical and morphological adaptations to different habitats. For example, many species like *Nymphaea nouchali*, *Myriophyllum brasiliense*, *Eichhornia crassipes*, *Equisetum fluviatile, Hippuris vulgaris,* and *Potamogeton amplifolius* have floating and aerial leaves to absorb CO_2 directly from the atmosphere. Some species use their root to absorb the high concentration of CO_2 available in the sediments (e.g., *Lobelia* and *Littorella*). These species have modified transport vessels for easy movement of CO_2 from root to leaves, having high root: shoot ratios (Thomaz et al. 2009).

The excessive load of pollutants, such as high nutrient level and essential and nonessential metals, results in booming the macrophytes in aquatic ecosystem. The most common species found in these ecosystems are *Hydrilla verticillata, Eichhornia crassipes*, *Salvinia* sp., *Pistia stratiotes,* and *Phragmities* sp. Although aquatic macrophyte has been utilized in various purposes, their use in eutrophication and for control of the pollution level in water is spreading rapidly. Aquatic macrophyte is used as an environmental filter for treatment of wastewater because of its high growth rate and rapid nutrient assimilation rate. Number of studies have been conducted to find the purification potential of macrophytes and found that there are significant differences among plant species and plant biotopes (e.g., floating leaves, submerged, emergent) (Keskinkan et al. 2003; Kamal et al. 2004; Maine et al. 2004; Victor et al. 2016).

Mostly, the floating macrophytes such as *Pistia stratiotes, Eichornia* spp*.,* and *Salvinia* spp. are used for remediating wastewater, because plant nutrient assimilation and photosynthetic activity are not affected by water turbidity. In addition, floating macrophytes are easier to manage and harvested when needed. The emergent plants such as *Juncus* spp*. and Typha* spp. are efficient enough to adsorb heavy metals to organic matter due to the fast adsorption and their post precipitation as particulate form in the sediment (Thomaz et al. 2009).

10.6 Removal of Organic Contaminants

Removal of organic contaminants by traditional technologies like filtration with coagulation, adsorption, ion exchange, precipitation, coagulation, ozonation, reverse osmosis and oxidation is time taking and costly as well as non-eco-friendly (Chandra et al. 2011; Saxena et al. 2017). Phytoremediation is an important and natural technique for the removal of organic contaminants. Organic contaminants available in the aquatic ecosystem have the potential to remove, sequester, and transform using microphytes (Day and Saunders 2004; Dosnon-Olette et al. 2009; Zhao et al. 2011). Several studies confer that application of aquatic macrophyte to degrade or uptake the organic components organophosphorus, organochlorine compounds, and chlorobenzenes present in water bodies is a cheap and sound technique (Gobas et al. 1991; Gao et al. 2000; Mercado-Borrayo et al. 2015).

The amount of organic compound removed by the macrophytes depends on the availability and composition of contaminates, the biochemical composition of plant tissue and physio-chemical properties of contaminants, as well as aqueous medium (Gao et al. 2000; Gao et al. 2003; Greenway 2007; Rezania et al. 2015). Studies show that halogenated organic compound sequestration by plant occurs through rapid physical and chemical process such as absorption, adsorption, complexation, and reaction with cuticular and membrane components (Nzengung and Jeffers 2001). The capacity to sequester organic contaminants of aquatic plants depends upon the plant's lipid-rich cuticle, which is responsible for sequestration of oils, fats, and hydrocarbons which comes under lipophilic organic compounds (Garrison et al. 2000; Gao et al. 2000; Gao et al. 2003).

10.7 Phytoremediation of Organic Pollutants Using Aquatic Macrophytes

Several common aquatic macrophytes like *Lemna minor, Elodea canadensis, Cabomba aquatica*, *Eichhornia crassipes* are used for the remediation of organic pollutants as shown in Table 10.1. According to Russell (2005), rhizodegradation and phytodegradation are the most suitable and effective removal techniques for organic pollutants, while phytoextraction is best for the removal of inorganic pollutants. Some mechanisms, like phytovolatilization, are equally effective with inorganic and organic contaminants. Phytodegradation process involves various enzymes (e.g., laccase, peroxidase, dehalogenase nitrate reductase, and nitrilase) excreted from the plant roots into rhizosphere which degrade organic molecules, e.g., PAHs (McCutcheon and Schnoor 2003).

However, the uptake of lipophilic large molecules by narrow channels in plant cell wall is difficult. In this case, the oxygenation process serves to enhance the solubility of water and provides an opportunity for conjugation through glycosidic bond formation. Peroxidases, peroxygenases and Cytochrome P450 are involved in plant oxidation of xenobiotics. Other classes of enzymes like carboxylesterases, gluthathione S-transferases are also associated with xenobiotic biotransformation in plant cells (Macek et al. 2000). In addition, the aquatic plant rhizosphere serves as a habitat for many biodegrading microbes and degrades organics much faster.

The organochlorine pesticides (OCPs) are one of the greatest threats to living organisms due to their acute effect and dispersion to long distances and bioaccumulation in the living tissues. Cleaning of the pesticides through conventional methods is expensive and not practical for less contaminated areas specifically in aquatic medium. To overcome the problem, scientist and researchers find that the phytoremediation technique to be more suitable. A number of studies have been conducted to know the phytoremediation potential of different aquatic macrophyte, which has been summarized in Table 10.1. Many studies have been made using *Lemna* spp. to remediate contaminants due to its tolerance in cold, fast growth rate, ease of harvesting, and cost-effectiveness (El-Kheir et al. 2007). A recent study by Xu et al. (2018) found that *P. australis* is a good candidate for remediating chlorpyriphos contamination from the eutrophic water and also indicated that suitable plant combination is needed for treatment of polluted water. Macrophytes like *Eichhornia crassipes* have

Table 10.1 Macrophytes used for removal of different pesticides from aquatic ecosystems

Pesticides	Concentration	Plants used	Removal/accumulation	References
Dimethomorph, copper sulfate, flazasulfuron	Five different conc. Between 0 and 1 mgL^{-1} were exposed to plants	*Cabomba aquatica, Lemna minor, Elodea canadensis*	Order of uptake was *L. minor* > *E. canadensis* > *C. aquatica*. Maximum removal rate as copper sulfate, flazasulfuron, and dimethomorph with 30, 27, and 11 μg g^{-1} fresh weight day^{-1}	Olette et al. (2008)
2,4-D	10 μM concentration used in the experiment	*Lemna minor*	Plants helped in enhancing the microbial degradation process. Sorption also took place passively which helped in depletion of fluoxetine and triclosan	Reinhold et al. (2010)
Chlorpyrifos	The experimental concentrations were 0.0, 0.1 and 0.5 mg L^{-1}	*Pistia stratiotes* *Lemna minor*	The removal conc. was 82 and 87% for *P. stratiotes* and *L. minor* at 0.5 mg L^{-1} conc. level. *L. minor* has high bioconcentration factor than *P. stratiotes*	Prasertsup and Ariyakanon (2011)
Nutrients and chlorpyriphos	The eutrophic water contents 1 mg L^{-1} chlorpyrifos, 10 mg L^{-1} total phosphorus And 30 mg L^{-1} total nitrogen (TN)	*Phragmite australis, Nymphaea alba, M. verticillatum*	*P. australis* found to be suitable for clearing the sediment chlorpyriphos	Xu et al. (2018)
Ethion	The treatment ethion conc. was 1 mg L^{-1} (purity 95%)	*Eichhornia crassipes*	Plant uptake and phytodegradation up to 69%	Xia and Ma (2006)
KHP, sodium tartrate, malathion, 2,4-D	The conc. of organic pollutant present in terms of COD (200, 100, 50, and 25 mg COD L^{-1})	*Eichhornia crassipes*	Study found that maximum absorbance of malathion, 2,4-D, and piroxicam was 67.6%, 58.3%, and 99.1%, respectively	Rodríguez-Espinosa et al. (2018)
Aldrin, Endosulfan γ–HCH DDTs	The available total organochlorine pesticides (OCPs) conc. in the sediments was in the range 3.60–11.12 ng g^{-1}	*Ceratophyllum demersum, Phragmites, Typha*	The OCPs conc. in the plant tissues in between 4.72 and 11.19 ng g^{-1}. The highest conc. is found in *Phragmites* leaves	Guo et al. (2014)

the ability to uptake toxic insecticide like ethion and malathion and degrade up to 68% (Xia and Ma 2006; Rodrigue-espinosa et al. 2018).

The extensive medical facility uses diverse range of medicines and personal care products which have triggered large amount of chemicals. Several studies have demonstrated that with the help of aquatic plants, cleaning of PPCPs is very effective (Table 10.2). Medicinal constituents like ibuprofen, naproxen, and carbamazepine were successfully removed by *Typha* spp. from the contaminated medium with greater than 90% efficiency (Dordio et al. 2010; Zhang et al. 2011). Most of the aquatic plants degrade pharmaceutical products with the help of available microbe.

Apart from the pesticides and pharmaceutical contaminants, there are other types of organic pollutant such as dyes, perchlorate salts (used in food packaging), and phenols which are potentially toxic to living organisms. There are a number of physicochemical methods available like coagulation, adsorption, electrolysis to decolorize and remediate the contaminants from wastewater (Robinson et al. 2001; Aksu 2005), but these methods have drawback because they produce large amount of sludge which results in production of secondary pollutant (Zhang et al. 2004; Al-Degs et al. 2008). Studies have shown that macrophytes like *Lemna minor* and *Eichhornia* can remove up to 90% of organic dyes from the water medium as shown in Table 10.3 (Muthunarayanan et al. 2011; Török et al. 2015; Torbati 2015).

Organic pollutant like phenols which is being released by various manufacturing industries such as fertilizers, plastics, pesticide, and oil refineries into the aquatic ecosystems are said to be extremely dangerous (Huang et al. 2014). A study found that plant degrades phenol by catechol-cleavage pathways where catechol forms (Jha et al. 2013). Catechol further cleaves to produce fumaric and muconic acid which passes to Krebs cycle and finishes the phenol degradation pathway. Recent research found that *Ipomoea aquatica* can be helpful for complete removal of lower concentration (up to 0.05 g/ L^{-1}) of phenol from the water (Lee et al. 2017). Macrophytes sometimes are unable to degrade the contaminant completely, but can transform the toxicants into less harmful compounds (Table 10.4).

10.8 Factors Affecting Phytoremediation of Organic Contaminants by Using Macrophytes

Ecological and physicochemical factors of water, such as light, dissolved oxygen, salinity, temperature, pH, are known to affect the uptake of nutrients or metals or organic pollutants. However, environmental conditions, especially temperature, macronutrients, micronutrients, and non-mineral nutrients significantly affect the macrophytes biochemical composition, which affects the phytoremediation potential (Kalacheva et al. 2002; Juneja et al. 2013). Moreover, the energy derived from photosynthesis and the oxygen released can improve conditions for the absorption of elements.

Table 10.2 Showing PPCPs remediation capacity of different aquatic macrophytes

Pharmaceutical and personal care products (PPCPs)	Concentration	Plant use	(Removal/ accumulation)	References
Carbamazepine (CB), ibuprofelinn (IB), sulfadiazine (DIA), sulfamethoxazole (SMX), sulfamethazone (SMZ) and triclosan (TRI)	High (10 mg L^{-1}) and low (0.8 mg L^{-1}) conc. were considered for the experiment	*Eichhornia crassipes, Pistia stratiotes*	Biodegradation, photodegradation, adsorption and plant uptake occurred synergistically. Removal efficacy was lower in high conc.	Lin and Li (2016)
Ibuprofen, carbamazepine and clofibric acid (CA)	CA, IB, and CB having 97%, 99.8% and >99% purity and wastewater Samples conc. Levels were 0.5,1.5 and 2.5 μg mL^{-1}	*Typha* spp.	Total removal efficiencies of 96%, 97%, and 75% for IB, CB and CA, respectively. It was achieved under summer conditions after 7 days retention time	Dordio et al. (2010)
CB, declofenac, IB and naproxen	Hydraulic residence time of 2–4 days	*Typha angustifolia*	For IB and naproxen removal efficiencies 80% and 91%, in planted beds compared to unplanted beds 60% and 52%, respectively	Zhang et al. (2011)
Tetracycline (TC), and oxytetracycline (OTC)	Plant were put in the experimental flasks/jars, after 8–10 days stock solutions were added	*Myriophyllum aquaticum, Pistia stratiotes*	Both plants have high antibiotic modification rates. Result showed modification rates decreased with increasing OTC concentrations	Gujarathi et al. (2005)
Fluoroquinolones (FQs) (ciprofloxacin (CIP) and norfloxacin (NOR))	CIP and NOR purity of 98.8%. The FQs conc. added for experiment was (10 mg L^{-1})	*Acrostichum aureum L., Rhizophora apiculata*	The antibiotics accumulation occurred in the root parts. Results showed translocation from root to stem and leaves happened at a low rate. Overall a good candidate for phytoremediation	Hoang et al. (2013)
Methyl (MeP) and propyl parabens (PrP)	___	*Landoltia punctate, Lemna minor*	For MeP and PrP average removal efficiency was 90 and 89%, respectively	Anjos et al. (2018)

(continued)

Table 10.2 (continued)

Pharmaceutical and personal care products (PPCPs)	Concentration	Plant use	(Removal/ accumulation)	References
Fluoxetine, ibuprofen and triclosan	10 µM concentration used in the experiment	*Lemna minor*	Plants helped in enhancing the microbial degradation process. Sorption also took place passively which helped in depletion of fluoxetine and triclosan	Reinhold et a. (2010)
Atrazine	Atrazine used conc. was 4.0 mg L^{-1} in the study	*Acorus calamus, Iris pseudacorus, Lythrum salicaria*	The degradation capacity of *A. calamus, I. pseudacorus,* and *L. salicaria* were recorded 61.8, 75.6, and 65.5%	Wang et al. (2012)

Table 10.3 Macrophytes used for removal of dyes

Dyes	Concentration	Plant use	Removal/ accumulation)	References
Azo dye (AB92)	The conc. of dye used for the study was between 5 and 20 mg L^{-1}	*Lemna minor*	Study confirmed that *L. minor* had considerable potential for remediate AB92	Khataee et al. (2012)
Triphenylmethane dyes (crystal violet and malachite green)	The experimental conc. was 1 g dye/1 L	*Lemna minor*	Crystal violet removed by 80% and malachite green by 90%	Török et al. (2015)
Malachite green	Dye concentrations use between 5 and 40 mg L^{-1}	*Lemna minor*	Decolorization ability of the plant was 88%	Torbati (2015)
Red RB and black B (dye)	The test conc. was ranging from 10, 20, 30, 40 and 50 ppm	*Eichhornia crassipes*	Successfully degrade the red RB (95%) and black B (99.5%)	Muthunarayanan et al. (2011)

10.8.1 pH of Growing Medium

Growth and biomass of the plants are two important factors for a phytoremediator species. The pH is one of the most important factors for cultivating macrophytes because it can control the solubility and availability of CO_2 and essential nutrients which affect the growth of plants. The change in pH lowers the plant growth and metabolic inhibition (Juneja et al. 2013). Shah et al. (2014) conducted a study to see the effect of pH on the performance of aquatic macrophytes at different pH values

Table 10.4 Macrophytes used to remove other organic contaminants

Others organic pollutants	Concentration	Plant use	(Removal/accumulation)	References
Organic matter and nutrients	Maximum organic load was 6.16 g BOD/ m^2day	*Phragmite karka, Vetiveria zizanioide*	*V. zizanioide* had better removal capacity (TSS: 92.3%; BOD5: 92.0%; PO4 3−: 86.7%) than *P. karka* (91.3%, 90.5%, 85.6%). In addition, *P. karka* removal efficiency was better of NH4 $^+$ (86%), NO3 − (81.8%) and SO4 2− (91.7%) than *V. zizanioide* (83.4%, 81.3%, 90.5%)	Angassa et al. (2018)
Phenols	The test medium conc. of phenol was 0.05, 0.10, 0.20, 0.30 and 0.40 g/L^{-1}	*Ipomoea aquatica*	Plants completely removed the phenol conc. 0.05 g/L^{-1} after 12 days of growing. Plant extract test showed *I. aquatica* was able to degrade the absorbed phenol	Lee et al. (2017)
Perchlorate	Examined in sand and aqueous medium with test sample conc. between 0.2 and 20 ppm	*Myriophyllum aquaticum*	Five times higher uptake rates in aqueous medium than in sand medium. Phytotransformation occurred with accumulation of perchlorate in the plant tissues (1.2 g/kg) was recorded	Susarla et al. (1999)
Phenanthrene	The contaminants conc. was 0.385 mg L^{-1}	*Scirpus lacustris, Typha* spp.	99.9% phenanthrene adsorption took place	Machate et al. (1997)

and found almost very poor performance at pH below 5 and above 10. Maximum performance was observed at pH 7.5. Therefore, pH between 6 and 9 was recommended as the most suitable pH for better growth of the macrophytes. Lu et al. (2004) observed the best growth of water hyacinth in the pH range of 5.5–7.0 (El-Gendy et al. 2006).

10.8.2 Temperature

Temperature is another most important environmental factor that influences the macrophytes' growth pattern, biochemical composition, cell size, and nutrient supplies (Table 10.5). Studies have been conducted to know the performance of macrophytes under different temperature conditions. Shah et al. (2014) conducted an experiment on three macrophyte species (Water hyacinth, Duckweed and Water lettuce). These macrophytes were found to be temperature sensitive and showed no

Table 10.5 Impact of temperature on different macrophytes

Aquatic plants	Results	References
Water hyacinth (*Eicchornia crassipes*)	Water hyacinth was reported to be very sensitive to temperature, and 15–25 °C was found to be the most favorable temperature for their optimum growth	Wang et al. (2013)
Salvinia natans, Ceratophyllum demersum	In this experiment, *ceratophyllum demersum* was found to be more tolerant to temperature change than *salvinia natans* which renders it more effective in phytoremediation	Hreeb (2017)
Eelgrass *(Zostera marina)*	The optimum water temperature for eelgrass appeared to be between 10 and 20 °C. These results show that extreme conditions may affect the fitness and ecological performance of eelgrass	Nejrup and Pedersen (2008)

growth and removal of pollutant at temperature below 10 °C. Almost all three species ceased to survive at such low temperature. There was no growth of these macrophytes; therefore, there was negligible uptake of nutrients (N and P) by the plants. It was also observed that the temperature between 15 and 38 °C is suitable for the treatment of municipal wastewater by macrophytes as optimum growth was observed in this temperature range. Majority of the aquatic macrophytes are temperature sensitive and not suitable for temperate or frigid areas.

10.8.3 Plant Species

Albers and Camardese (1993) found submerged species to be more efficient in phytoremediation because of high accumulation of the contaminants as compared to emerged species. This might be due to degradation and disappearance of plant's roots such as *Ceratophyllum demersum*, which do not have profound root system but develop modified leaves with a root-like appearance and their waxy coat inhibits absorption by epidermal cells (Yurukova and Kochev 1994). In another study, due to specific morphology and higher growth rate, free-floating plants were more efficient to heavy metal uptake in comparison with submerged and emergent plants. However, the removal efficiency is highly correlated with growth rate, tolerance to higher concentration of metals, and adaptability to different environmental conditions (Rezania et al. 2016).

10.9 Carbon Sequestration Potential of Macrophytes

For the last 200 years, the levels of greenhouse gas (GHGs) especially CO_2 has increased palpably in the atmosphere. The global desire to reduce GHGs levels has led to an increase in the number of researches in the field of carbon sequestration.

Macrophytes being greater in size and obviously having larger biomass than other aquatic plants have comparatively greater potential to sequester carbon especially in the form of CO_2.

Some of the emergent macrophytes like *Typha latifolia* and *Scirpus acutus* are seen to have good potential to promote the process of carbon sequestration (Burke 2011). Biological fixation of light energy into chemical energy, the process known as photosynthesis is the process by which plants transform atmospheric carbon as CO_2 into the carbon of biomass or plant tissue. Accurate knowledge of species-specific carbon contained in biomass of plant is indispensable for better understanding of carbon stock of a particular ecosystem (Thomas and Martin 2012). A study was done by Maqbool and Khan (2013), by taking into account several macrophytes for their organic carbon percentage. The percentage of carbon varied between 34.97 and 50.92% as shown in Fig. 10.3.

Wetland ecosystems are really unique because they are biologically diverse and have local economic benefits (Goswami et al. 2010). This is supported by the fact that even a eutrophic system colonized by only water hyacinth can trap significant amount of carbon. The net primary productivity (NPP) of a wetland is remarkably higher than many terrestrial ecosystems (Reddy and DeLaune 2008), and so, wetlands are very important as sinks of carbon sequestration.

A number of factors affect the rate of carbon sequestration. With increase in temperature, the rate of respiration is increased, which in turn can decrease the rate of carbon sequestration (Turnbull et al. 2001), also shorter day length, lower temperature, and low light intensity, the rate of photosynthesis (Yamasaki et al. 2002) as well as enzyme activity (Khodorova and Boitel-Conti 2013) may go down, all these factors might be limiting the efficiency of carbon capture by the plants. It can

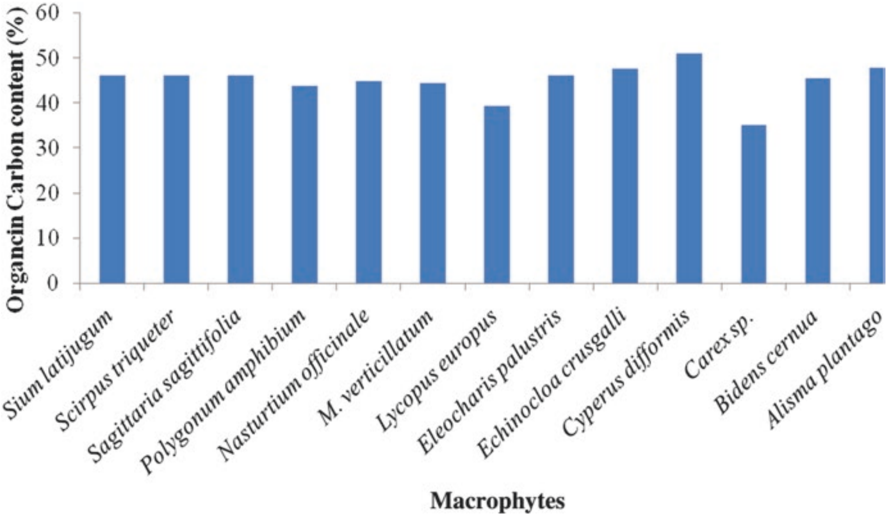


Fig. 10.3 Organic carbon content (percentage) of different species of macrophytes in Lake Manasbal. (*Source*: Maqbool and Khan 2013)

be concluded that macrophytes are an inseparable constituent of aquatic ecosystems. Besides playing several important roles in numerous accessory resilience, restoration capacity, etc., it also plays an important role in carbon capture, and they also are significantly sustainable and promising means of sequestering atmospheric carbon.

10.10 Biofuel Production by Macrophytes

Like algae, macrophytes also perform the dual role of wastewater treatment along with the production of renewable fuels. Macrophytes are known to absorb important wastewater nutrients like phosphorus and ammonium. On analyzing the pyrolysis products, it was found that algae and Azolla produce bio-oils of similar range which consist of a wide spectrum of photochemicals that include C_{10}–C_{21} alkenes that can be directly utilized as supplement for biodiesel fuel as given in Table 10.6 (Muradov et al. 2014).

Lemna spp. or duckweeds have comparatively high level of starch, lower lignin level, and the composition of cell wall carbohydrates help improve the production of bioethanol, in an economical way. Its production is 50% more as compared to production of ethanol based on maize, and this makes duckweed more competitive for the production of ethanol (Xu et al. 2011). Aquatic macrophytes like *Eichhornia crassipes, Nymphaea* spp., and *Eichhornia azurea* have double whammy, as they are invasive as well as they cause environmental problems like excessive growth (Villamagna and Murphy 2010; Luo et al. 2011; Pal et al. 2017), thereby obstructing the passage of light for submerged plants and reducing the level of oxygen in water.

Table 10.6 Different methods of bioenergy production from various macrophytes

Source of bioenergy	Process of bioenergy production	References
Bioethanol production	1. Hydrolysis 2. Fermentation	Patel and Patel (2015), Randive et al. (2015)
Lipid production	1. Solvent extraction (a) Chloroform based (production at laboratory scale) (b) Hexane based (production at industrial scale)	Halim et al. (2012)
Biogas production	1. Biomass conversion into slurry followed by anaerobic digestion	Malik (2007)
Biohydrogen production	1. Biological water–gas shift reaction 2. Photo fermentation 3. Dark fermentation 4. Direct photobiolysis 5. Indirect photobiolysis	Gaudernack (1998), Lin and Jo (2003), Levin et al. (2004), Bridgwater (1999)

However, these plants can be effectively used for the production of second-generation biofuel by pyrolysis. The fuel thus obtained is mainly composed of alkanes (~26%) (Lu et al. 2009).

Using aquatic invasive plant species for the production of biofuels have multiple ecological benefits; some of them have been enumerated below:

(a) They grow and accumulate rapidly thus producing enormous biomass (Wilkie and Evans 2010).
(b) As they are invasive, they do not have an impact on the production of food.
(c) Energy dispersive X-ray fluorescence spectrometry (EDX) analyses of ashes show significant levels of micro and macronutrients, which may be incorporated in biochars, indicating that they can also be used in soil management (Santos et al. 2018).

Using different invasive aquatic species have unique benefits, such as water hyacinth has the following ecological benefits: (1) no/low maintenance cost, (2) its biomass is of non-food nature, (3) rapid reproduction rate, (4) does not require land use change, (5) highly energetic biomass (Das and Jana 2003), (6) low lignin and high cellulose and hemi cellulose content (Bergier et al. 2012), (7) resistant to insect, pests, and diseases (Bhattacharya and Kumar 2010).

Using Azolla has a different set of ecological benefits altogether, which has been enumerated below: (1) it has high productivity, (2) it can grow abundantly even in wastewaters, (3) unique chemical composition makes Azolla sustainable, attractive, and universal feedstock, (4) low energy demand for proliferation, (5) almost zero maintenance system makes it a renewable biofuel source of choice (Miranda et al. 2016). Using invasive species like *Eichhornia crassipes, Nymphaea* spp., *Eichhornia azurea,* for the production of biodiesel is thus a win-win situation.

Apart from this, the biomass of *Eichhornia azurea, Eichhornia crassipes, Salvinia,* and *Pistia stratiotes* can also be used to produce biogas. The biogas may be obtained by the process of anaerobic digestion. The biogas thus obtained has significant amount of methane (CH_4). The amount of methane in the biogas obtained from the mixture of these plants in volume percentages on 7 days, 14 days, 21 days, and 28 days are 40.9%, 49.7%, 48.0%, and 48%, respectively (Pereira and de Jesus 2011).

The most common method for the production of biogas from aquatic plants includes the processing of wet biomass into slurry that is ultimately loaded into an anaerobic digester (Malik 2007). Some factors that generally affect biogas yield from aquatic plant biomass are as follows (Wilkie and Evans 2010): (1) particle size, (2) volatile solid content, (3) trace nutrients, and (4) inoculation—need of the hour is to develop harvester machines and processing infrastructure that can transport these aquatic plant biomasses to refineries in timely and cost-effective manner.

10.11 Conclusion

The presence of organic contaminants in aquatic ecosystems are a global concern and their safely removal is a pivotal task. Application of aquatic macrophytes for the removal of these contaminants may be done in an environmentally manner through the process, phytodegradation/phytovolatilization. The macrophytes like *Elodea canadensis, Lemna minor, Eichhorn crassipes, Trapa natans*, *Pistia stratiotes* may be used for the removal of organic contaminants. Majority of macrophytes are high biomass-producing plants, and therefore, the biomass may be used for the energy production (as biofuel). Several potential phytoremediator macrophytes like *Eichhornia crassipes*, *Typha angustifolia* are also considered as significant carbon sequesters (Pal et al. 2017). Therefore, the application of aquatic macrophytes for the remediation of organic pollutants may also help in management of another two major environmental issues, i.e., energy crisis and global climate change.

Acknowledgement Authors Kuldeep Bauddh and Lala Saha are thankful to the Science and Engineering Research Board (SERB), New Delhi, India, for award of Research Grant EEQ/2017/000476.

References

Aksu Z (2005) Application of biosorption for the removal of organic pollutants: a review. Process Biochem 40(3–4):997–1026

Albers PH, Camardese MB (1993) Effects of acidification on metal accumulation by aquatic plants and invertebrates. 1. Constructed wetlands. Environ Toxicol Chem 12:959–967

Al-Degs YS, El-Barghouthi MI, El-Sheikh AH, Walker GM (2008) Effect of solution pH, ionic strength, and temperature on adsorption behavior of reactive dyes on activated carbon. Dyes Pigments 77(1):16–23

Angassa K, Leta S, Mulat W, Kloos H, Meers E (2018) Organic matter and nutrient removal performance of horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetlands planted with Phragmite karka and Vetiveria zizanioide for treating municipal wastewater. Environ Process 5(1):115–130

Anjos ML, Isique WD, Albertin LL, Matsumoto T, Henares MNP (2018) Parabens removal from domestic sewage by free-floating aquatic Macrophytes. Waste Biomass Valorization 10:2221–2226

Ashraf S, Ali Q, Zahir ZA, Ashraf S, Asghar HN (2019) Phytoremediation: environmentally sustainable way for reclamation of heavy metal polluted soils. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 174:714–727

Bauddh K, Singh RP (2015a) Effects of organic and inorganic amendments on bio-accumulation and partitioning of Cd in *Brassica juncea* and *Ricinus communis*. Ecol Eng 74:93–100

Bauddh K, Singh RP (2015b) Assessment of metal uptake capacity of castor bean and mustard for phytoremediation of nickel from contaminated soil. Biorem J 19(2):124–138

Bauddh K, Kumar A, Srivastava S, Singh RP, Tripathi RD (2016a) A study on the effect of cadmium on the antioxidative defense system and alteration in different functional groups in castor bean and Indian mustard. Arch Agron Soil Sci 62(6):877–891

Bauddh K, Singh B, Singh RP (2016b) *Ricinus communis L.* as a value-added alternative for restoration of cadmium contaminated and degraded agricultural ecosystem. Bull Arch Environ Contam Toxicol 96(2):265–269

Bergier I, Salis SM, Miranda CH, Ortega E, Luengo CA (2012) Biofuel production from water hyacinth in the Pantanal wetland. Ecohydrol Hydrobiol 12(1):77–84

Bharti P, Singh B, Bauddh K, Dey RK, Korstad J (2017) Efficiency of bioenergy plant in phytoremediation of saline and sodic soil. In: Phytoremediation potential of bioenergy plants. Springer, Singapore, pp 353–369

Bhattacharya A, Kumar P (2010) Water hyacinth as a potential biofuel crop. Electron J Environ Agric Food Chem 9(1):112–122

Birk S, Willby N (2010) Towards harmonization of ecological quality classification: establishing common grounds in European Macrophyte assessment for rivers. Hydrobiologia 652:149–163

Borgwardt F, Robinson L, Trauner D, Teixeira H, Nogueira AJ, Lillebø AI, Piet G, Kuemmerlen M, O'Higgins T, McDonald H, Arevalo-Torres J (2019) Exploring variability in environmental impact risk from human activities across aquatic ecosystems. Sci Total Environ 652:1396–1408

Bridgwater AV (1999) Principles and practice of biomass fast pyrolysis processes for liquids. J Anal Appl Pyrol 51(1–2):3–22

Burke MC (2011) An assessment of carbon, nitrogen, and phosphorus storage and the carbon sequestration potential in Arcata's constructed wetlands for wastewater treatment. Doctoral dissertation, Humboldt State University

Campanella BF, Bock C, Schröder P (2002) Phytoremediation to increase the degradation of PCBs and PCDD/Fs. Environ Sci Pollut R 9(1):3–85

Chakravarty P, Bauddh K, Kumar M (2017) Phytoremediation: a multidimensional and ecologically viable practice for the cleanup of environmental contaminants. In: Bauddh K, Singh B, Korstad J (eds) Phytoremediation potential of bioenergy plants. Springer Nature, Singapore, pp 1–46

Chambers PA, Lacoul P, Murphy KJ, Thomaz SM (2007) Global diversity of aquatic macrophytes in freshwater. In: Freshwater animal diversity assessment. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 9–26

Chandra R, Bharagava RN, Kapley A, Purohit HJ (2011) Bacterial diversity, organic pollutants and their metabolites in two aeration lagoons of common effluent treatment plant during the degradation and detoxification of tannery wastewater. Bioresour Technol 102:2333–2341

Das SS, Jana BB (2003) Fish-macrophyte association as a low-cost strategy for wastewater reclamation. Ecol Eng 21(1):21–41

Day JA, Saunders FM (2004) Glycosidation of chlorophenols by *Lemna minor*. Environ Toxicol Chem 23(3):613–620

DeSolla S, Fernie K, Ashpole S (2008) Snapping turtles (*Chelydra serpentina*) as bioindicators in Canadian areas of concern in the Great Lakes Basin. II. Changes in hatching success and hatchling deformities in relation to persistent organic pollutants. Environ Pollut 153:529–536

Dordio A, Carvalho AP, Teixeira DM, Dias CB, Pinto AP (2010) Removal of pharmaceuticals in microcosm constructed wetlands using Typha spp. and LECA. Bioresour Technol 101(3):886–892

Dosnon-Olette R, Couderchet M, Eullaffroy P (2009) Phytoremediation of fungicides by aquatic macrophytes: toxicity and removal rate. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 72(8):2096–2101

El-Gendy AS, Biswas N, Bewtra JK (2006) Municipal landfill leachate treatment for metal removal using water hyacinth in a floating aquatic system. Water Environ Res 78:951–964

El-Kheir WA, Ismail G, El-Nour FA, Tawfik T, Hammad D (2007) Assessment of the efficiency of duckweed (Lemna gibba) in wastewater treatment. Int J Agri Biol (Pakistan) 9(5):681–687

Fleeger JW, Carman KR, Nisbet RM (2003) Indirect effects of contaminants in aquatic ecosystems. Sci Total Environ 317(1–3):207–233

Gao J, Garrison AW, Hoehamer C, Mazur CS, Wolfe NL (2000) Uptake and Phytotransformation of o, p′-DDT and p, p′-DDT by axenically cultivated aquatic plants. J Agric Food Chem 48(12):6121–6127

Gao S, Tanji KK, Peters DW, Lin Z, Terry N (2003) Selenium removal from irrigation drainage water flowing through constructed wetland cells with special attention to accumulation in sediments. Water Air Soil Pollut 144(1–4):263–284

Garrison AW, Nzengung VA, Avants JK, Ellington JJ, Jones WJ, Rennels D, Wolfe NL (2000) Phytodegradation of p, p′-DDT and the enantiomers of o, p′-DDT. Environ Sci Technol 34(9):1663–1670

Gaudernack B (1998) Photoproduction of hydrogen, IEA agreement on the production and utilization of hydrogen annual Report. IEA

Gecheva G, Yurukova L, Cheshmedjiev S (2013) Patterns of aquatic macrophyte species composition and distribution in Bulgarian rivers. Turk J Bot 37(1):99–110

Gobas FA, McNeil EJ, Lovett-Doust L, Haffner GD (1991) Bioconcentration of chlorinated aromatic hydrocarbons in aquatic macrophytes. Environ Sci Technol 25(5):924–929

Goswami G, Pal S, Palit D (2010) Studies on the physico-chemical characteristics, macrophyte diversity and their economic prospect in Rajmata Dighi: a wetland in Cooch Behar District, West Bengal, India. NeBIO J 1(3):21–27

Greenway M (2007) The role of macrophytes in nutrient removal using constructed wetlands. In: Singh SN, Tripathi RD (eds) Environmental bioremediation technologies. Springer, Berlin, pp 331–351

Gujarathi NP, Haney BJ, Linden JC (2005) Phytoremediation potential of *Myriophyllum aquaticum* and *Pistia stratiotes* to modify antibiotic growth promoters, tetracycline, and oxytetracycline, in aqueous wastewater systems. Int J Phytoremediation 7(2):99–112

Guo W, Zhang H, Huo S (2014) Organochlorine pesticides in aquatic hydrophyte tissues and surrounding sediments in Baiyangdian wetland, China. Ecol Eng 67:150–155

Halim R, Danquah MK, Webley PA (2012) Extraction of oil from microalgae for biodiesel production: a review. Biotechnol Adv 30(3):709–732

Hoang TTT, Tu LTC, Le NP, Dao QP (2013) A preliminary study on the phytoremediation of antibiotic contaminated sediment. Int J Phytoremediation 15(1):65–76

Hreeb KK (2017) Effect of different water temperatures on growth of aquatic plants *Salvinia natans* and *Ceratophyllum demersum*. J Coast Life Med 5:13–15

Hrivnák R, Otahelová H, Jarolímek I (2006) Diversity of aquatic macrophytes in relation to environmental factors in the Slatina River (Slovakia). Biologia 61:156–168

Huang ZZ, Wang P, Li H, Lin KF, Lu ZY, Guo XJ (2014) Community analysis and metabolic pathway of halophilic bacteria for phenol degradation in saline environment. Int Biodeterior Biodegradation 94:115–120

Jacob J (2013) A review of the accumulation and distribution of persistent organic pollutants in the environment. Int J Biosci Biochem Bioinforma 3(6):657–661

Jha P, Jobby R, Kudale S, Modi N, Dhaneshwar A, Desai N (2013) Biodegradation of phenol using hairy roots of Helianthus annuus L. Int Biodeterior Biodegrad 77:106–113

Juneja A, Ceballos R, Murthy G (2013) Effects of environmental factors and nutrient availability on the biochemical composition of algae for biofuels production: a review. Energies 6(9):4607–4638

Kalacheva GS, Zhila NO, Volova TG, Gladyshev MI (2002) The effect of temperature on the lipid composition of the green alga Botryococcus. Microbiology 71(3):286–293

Kamal M, Ghaly AE, Mahmoud N, Cote R (2004) Phytoaccumulation of heavy metals by aquatic plants. Environ Int 29(8):1029–1039

Keshavarzifard M, Zakaria MP, Keshavarzifard S (2019) Evaluation of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons contamination in the sediments of the Johor Strait, Peninsular Malaysia. Polycycl Aromat Comp 39(1):44–59

Keskinkan O, Goksu MZL, Yuceer A, Basibuyuk MFCF, Forster CF (2003) Heavy metal adsorption characteristics of a submerged aquatic plant (Myriophyllum spicatum). Process Biochem 39(2):179–183

Khataee AR, Movafeghi A, Torbati S, Lisar SS, Zarei M (2012) Phytoremediation potential of duckweed (Lemna minor L.) in degradation of CI Acid Blue 92: artificial neural network modeling. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 80:291–298

Khodorova NV, Boitel-Conti M (2013) The role of temperature in the growth and flowering of geophytes. Plan Theory 2(4):699–711

Kumar N, Bauddh K, Barman SC, Singh DP (2012) Accumulation of metals in selected macrophytes grown in mixture of drain water and tannery effluent and their phytoremediation potential. J Environ Biol 33:323–327

Lee SY, Ahmad SA, Mustapha SR, Ong-Abdullah J (2017) Ability of Ipomoea aquatica Forssk. To remediate phenol in water and effects of phenol on the Plant's growth. Pertanika J Sci Technol 25(2):441–452

Levin DB, Pitt L, Love M (2004) Biohydrogen production: prospects and limitations to practical application. Int J Hydrog Energy 29(2):173–185

Lin CY, Jo CH (2003) Hydrogen production from sucrose using an anaerobic sequencing batch reactor process. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 78(6):678–684

Lin YL, Li BK (2016) Removal of pharmaceuticals and personal care products by *Eichhornia crassipe* and *Pistia stratiotes*. J Taiwan Inst Chem E 58:318–323

Lu X, Kruatrachue M, Pokethitiyook P, Homyok K (2004) Removal of cadmium and zinc by water hyacinth, Eichhornia crassipes. Sci Asia 30(93):103

Lu W, Wang C, Yang Z (2009) The preparation of high caloric fuel (HCF) from water hyacinth by deoxy-liquefaction. Bioresour Technol 100(24):6451–6456

Luo GE, Strong PJ, Wang H, Ni W, Shi W (2011) Kinetics of the pyrolytic and hydrothermal decomposition of water hyacinth. Bioresour Technol 102(13):6990–6994

Macek T, Mackova M, Kas J (2000) Exploitation of plants for the removal of organics in environmental remediation. Biotechnol Adv 18:23–34

Machate T, Noll H, Behrens H, Kettrup A (1997) Degradation of phenanthrene and hydraulic characteristics in a constructed wetland. Water Res 31(3):554–560

Maine MA, Suñé NL, Lagger SC (2004) Chromium bioaccumulation: comparison of the capacity of two floating aquatic macrophytes. Water Res 38(6):1494–1501

Malik A (2007) Environmental challenge vis a vis opportunity: the case of water hyacinth. Environ Int 33(1):122–138

Maqbool C, Khan AB (2013) Biomass and carbon content of emergent macrophytes in Lake Manasbal, Kashmir: implications for carbon capture and sequestration. Int J Sci Res Pub 3(2):1–7

Marcia de SP (2004) Polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins (PCDD), dibenzofurans (PCDF) and polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB): main sources, environmental behaviour and risk to man and biota. Quim Nova 27(6):934–943

Materac M, Sobiecka (2017) The efficiency of macrophytes for heavy metals removal from water. Food Sci Biotechnol 81:35–40

McCutcheon SC, Schnoor JL (2003) Overview of phytotransformation and control of wastes. In: McCutcheon SC, Schnoor JL (eds) Phytoremediation transformation and control of contaminants. Wiley-Interscience, Hoboken, pp 3–58

Mercado-Borrayo BM, Cram Heydrich S, Rosas Pérez I, Hernández Quiroz M, Ponce De León Hill C (2015) Organophosphorus and organochlorine pesticides bioaccumulation by Eichhornia crassipes in irrigation canals in an urban agricultural system. Int J Phytoremediation 17(7):701–708

Milovanovic M (2007) Water quality assessment and determination of pollution sources along the Axios/Vardar River, Southeastern Europe. Desalination 213:159–173

Miranda AF, Biswas B, Ramkumar N, Singh R, Kumar J, James A, Roddick F, Lal B, Subudhi S, Bhaskar T, Mouradov A (2016) Aquatic plant Azolla as the universal feedstock for biofuel production. Biotechnol Biofuels 9(1):221

Mishra S, Bharagava RN (2016) Toxic and genotoxic effects of hexavalent chromium in environment and its bioremediation strategies. J Environ Sci Health C 34(1):1–32

Muradov N, Taha M, Miranda AF, Kadali K, Gujar A, Rochfort S, Stevenson T, Ball AS, Mouradov A (2014) Dual application of duckweed and azolla plants for wastewater treatment and renewable fuels and petrochemicals production. Biotechnol Biofuels 7(1):30

Muthunarayanan V, Santhiya M, Swabna V, Geetha A (2011) Phytodegradation of textile dyes by water hyacinth (Eichhornia crassipes) from aqueous dye solutions. Int J Environ Sci 1(7):1702

Neha KD, Shukla P, Kumar S, Bauddh K, Tiwari J, Dwivedi N, Barman SC, Singh DP, Kumar N (2017) Metal distribution in the sediments, water and naturally occurring macrophytes in the river Gomti, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India. Curr Sci 113(8):1578–1585

Nejrup LB, Pedersen MF (2008) Effects of salinity and water temperature on the ecological performance of *Zostera marina*. Aquat Bot 88:239–246

Nzengung VA, Jeffers P (2001) Sequestration, phytoreduction, and phytooxidation of halogenated organic chemicals by aquatic and terrestrial plants. Int J Phytoremediation 3(1):13–40

Olette R, Couderchet M, Biagianti S, Eullaffroy P (2008) Toxicity and removal of pesticides by selected aquatic plants. Chemosphere 70(8):1414–1421

Otahelová H, Valachovic M, Hrivnák R (2007) The impact of environmental factors on the distribution pattern of aquatic plants along the Danube River corridor (Slovakia). Limnologica 37:290–302

Pal S, Chattopadhyay B, Datta S, Mukhopadhyay SK (2017) Potential of wetland macrophytes to sequester carbon and assessment of seasonal carbon input into the East Kolkata Wetland Ecosystem. Wetlands 37(3):497–512

Patel SI, Patel NG (2015) Production of bioethanol using water hyacinth, an aquatic weed, as a substrate. J Environ Soc Sci 2(1):108

Pereira RG, de Jesus V (2011) Production and characterization of biogas obtained from biomass of aquatic plants. Renew Energy Power Qual J 9(1):79–82

Pieper DH, Seeger M (2008) Bacterial metabolism of polychlorinated biphenyls. J Mol Microbiol Biotechnol 15:121–138

Prasertsup P, Ariyakanon N (2011) Removal of chlorpyrifos by water lettuce (*Pistia stratiotes L.*) and duckweed (*Lemna minor L.*). Int J Phytoremediation 13(4):383–395

Rai PK (2009) Heavy metal phytoremediation from aquatic ecosystems with special reference to macrophytes. Crit Rev Environ Sci Technol 39:697–753

Randive V, Belhekar S, Paigude S (2015) Production of bioethanol from *Eichhornia crassipes* (Water Hyacinth). Int J Curr Microbiol Appl Sci 2:399–406

Ratnakar A, Shankar S, Shikha (2016) An overview of biodegradation of organic pollutants. Int J Sci Innov Res 4(1):73–91

Reddy KR, Delaune RD (2008) Biogeochemistry of wetlands. Taylor & Francis, CRC Press, Baton Rouge, pp 119–134

Reinhold D, Vishwanathan S, Park JJ (2010) Assessment of plant-driven removal of emerging organic pollutants by duckweed. Chemosphere 80(7):687–692

Rezania S, Ponraj M, Talaiekhozani A, Mohamad SE, Din MFM, Taib SM, Sabbagh F, Sairan FM (2015) Perspectives of phytoremediation using water hyacinth for removal of heavy metals, organic and inorganic pollutants in wastewater. J Environ Manag 163:125–133

Rezania S, Taib SM, Din MFM, Dahalan FA, Kamyab H (2016) Comprehensive review on phytotechnology: heavy metals removal by diverse aquatic plants species from wastewater. J Hazard Mater 318:587–599

Riaz G, Tabinda AB, Iqbal S, Yasar A, Abbas M, Khan AM, Mahfooz Y, Baqar M (2017) Phytoremediation of organochlorine and pyrethroid pesticides by aquatic macrophytes and algae in freshwater systems. Int J Phytoremediation 19(10):894–898

Robinson T, McMullan G, Marchant R, Nigam P (2001) Remediation of dyes in textile effluent: a critical review on current treatment technologies with a proposed alternative. Bioresour Technol 77(3):247–255

Rodríguez-Espinosa PF, Mendoza-Pérez JA, Tabla-Hernandez J, Martínez-Tavera E, Monroy-Mendieta MM (2018) Biodegradation and kinetics of organic compounds and heavy metals in an artificial wetland system (AWS) by using water hyacinths as a biological filter. Int J Phytoremediation 20(1):35–43

Russell K (2005) The use and effectiveness of phytoremediation to treat persistent organic pollutants. US Environmental Protection Agency Office of Solid Waste and Emergency Response Technology Innovation and Field Services Division, Washington, DC, p 12

Santos LO, Silva FF, Santos LC, Carregosa IS, Wisniewski A Jr (2018) Potential bio-oil production from invasive aquatic plants by microscale pyrolysis studies. J Brazil Chem Soc 29(1):151–158

Saxena G, Bharagava RN (2017) Organic and inorganic pollutants in industrial wastes, their ecotoxicological effects, health hazards and bioremediation approaches. In: Bharagava RN (ed) Environmental pollutants and their bioremediation approaches. CRC Press, Taylor & Francis, Boca Raton. ISBN 9781138628892

Saxena G, Chandra R, Bharagava RN (2017) Environmental pollution, toxicity profile and treatment approaches for tannery wastewater and its chemical pollutants. Rev Environ Contam Toxicol 240:31–69

Saxena G, Purchase D, Mulla SI, Saratale GD, Bharagava RN (2019) Phytoremediation of heavy metal-contaminated sites: eco-environmental concerns, field studies, sustainability issues and future prospects. Rev Environ Contam Toxicol 249:71–131

Scarlett P, O'Hare M (2006) Community structure of in-stream bryophytes in English and Welsh rivers. Hydrobiologia 553:143–152

Shah M, Hashmi HN, Ali A, Ghumman AR (2014) Performance assessment of aquatic macrophytes for treatment of municipal wastewater. J Environ Health Sci Eng 12(1):106

Singh BK (2009) Organophosphorus-degrading bacteria: ecology and industrial applications. Nat Rev Microbiol 7(2):156–164

Sood A, Uniyal PL, Prasanna R, Ahluwalia AS (2012) Phytoremediation potential of aquatic macrophyte, Azolla. Ambio 41(2):122–137

Suren AM, Smart GM, Smith RA, Brown SL (2000) Drag coefficients of stream bryophytes: experimental determinations and ecological significance. Freshw Biol 45(3):309–317

Susarla S, Bacchus ST, Wolfe NL, McCutcheon SC (1999) Phytotransformation of perchlorate and identification of metabolic products in Myriophyllum aquaticum. Int J Phytoremediation 1(1):97–107

Sweta BK, Singh R, Singh RP (2015) The suitability of Trapa natans for phytoremediation of inorganic contaminants from the aquatic ecosystems. Ecol Eng 83:39–42

Thomas SC, Martin AR (2012) C content of tree tissues: a synthesis. Forests 3(2):332–352

Thomaz SM, Esteves FA, Murphy KJ, Dos Santos AM, Caliman A, Guariento RD (2009) Aquatic macrophytes in the tropics: ecology of populations and communities, impacts of invasions and human use. Trop Biol Conserv Manage 4:27–60

Tiwari J, Ankit S, Kumar S, Korstad J, Bauddh K (2019) Ecorestoration of polluted aquatic ecosystems through rhizofiltration. In: Pandey VC, Bauddh K (eds) Phytomanagement of polluted sites: market opportunities in sustainable phytoremediation. Elsevier, Amsterdam, pp 179–201

Torbati S (2015) Feasibility and assessment of the phytoremediation potential of duckweed for triarylmethane dye degradation with the emphasis on some physiological responses and effect of operational parameters. Turk J Biol 39(3):438–446

Török A, Buta E, Indolean C, Tonk S, Silaghi-Dumitrescu L, Majdik C (2015) Biological removal of triphenylmethane dyes from aqueous solution by *Lemna minor*. Acta Chim Slov 62(2):452–461

Turnbull MH, Whitehead D, Tissue DT, Schuster WS, Brown KJ, Griffin KL (2001) Responses of leaf respiration to temperature and leaf characteristics in three deciduous tree species vary with site water availability. Tree Physiol 21(9):571–578

Victor KK, Séka Y, Norbert KK, Sanogo TA, Celestin AB (2016) Phytoremediation of wastewater toxicity using water hyacinth (Eichhornia crassipes) and water lettuce (Pistia stratiotes). Int J Phytoremediation 18(10):949–955

Villamagna AM, Murphy BR (2010) Ecological and socio-economic impacts of invasive water hyacinth (*Eichhornia crassipes*): a review. Freshw Biol 55(2):282–298

Wang Q, Zhang W, Li C, Xiao B (2012) Phytoremediation of atrazine by three emergent hydrophytes in a hydroponic system. Water Sci Technol 66(6):1282–1288

Wang X, Shi L, Lan CQ, Delatolla R, Zhang Z (2013) Potential of water hyacinth for phytoremediation in low temperature environment. Environ Prog Sustain Energy 32(4):976–981

Wang F, Yi X, Qu H, Chen L, Liu D, Wang P, Zhou Z (2017) Enantioselective accumulation, metabolism and phytoremediation of lactofen by aquatic macrophyte Lemna minor. Ecotoxicol Environ Saf 143:186–192

Wilkie AC, Evans JM (2010) Aquatic plants: an opportunity feedstock in the age of bioenergy. Biofuels 1(2):311–321

Xia H, Ma X (2006) Phytoremediation of Ethion by water hyacinth (*Eichhornia crassipes*) from water. Bioresour Technol 97(8):1050–1054

Xu J, Cui W, Cheng JJ, Stomp AM (2011) Production of high-starch duckweed and its conversion to bioethanol. Biosyst Eng 110(2):67–72

Xu XJ, Lai GL, Chi CQ, Zhao JY, Yan YC, Nie Y, Wu XL (2018) Purification of eutrophic water containing chlorpyrifos by aquatic plants and its effects on planktonic bacteria. Chemosphere 193:178–188

Yadav A, Mishra S, Kaithwas G, Raj A, Bharagava RN (2016) Organic pollutants and pathogenic bacteria in tannery wastewater and their removal strategies. Microbes and Environmental Management Studium Press (India) Pvt. Ltd, New Delhi. ISBN: 978-93-80012-83-4

Yadav A, Chowdhary P, Kaithwas G, Bharagava RN (2017) Toxic metals in the environment, their threats on ecosystem and bioremediation approaches. In: Das S, Singh HR (eds) Handbook of metal-microbe interaction and bioremediation. CRC Press, Taylor & Francis, Boca Raton, pp 128–141

Yamasaki T, Yamakawa T, Yamane Y, Koike H, Satoh K, Katoh S (2002) Temperature acclimation of photosynthesis and related changes in photosystem II electron transport in winter wheat. Plant Physiol 128(3):1087–1097

Yurukova L, Kochev K (1994) Heavy metal concentrations in freshwater Macrophytes from the Aldomirovsko Swamp in the Sofia District, Bulgaria. Bull Environ Contam Toxicol 52(4):627–632

Zhang F, Yediler A, Liang X, Kettrup A (2004) Effects of dye additives on the ozonation process and oxidation by-products: a comparative study using hydrolyzed CI Reactive Red 120. Dyes Pigment 60(1):1–7

Zhang DQ, Tan SK, Gersberg RM, Sadreddini S, Zhu J, Tuan NA (2011) Removal of pharmaceutical compounds in tropical constructed wetlands. Ecol Eng 37(3):460–464

Zhao L, Zhu C, Gao C, Jiang J, Yang J, Yang S (2011) Phytoremediation of pentachlorophenol-contaminated sediments by aquatic macrophytes. Environ Earth Sci 64(2):581

Chapter 11
Biopolymers and Their Application in Wastewater Treatment

Jyoti Pandey

Abstract Due to heavy industrialization and urbanization, the conservation of the environment has become increasingly important in view of the raised ecological problems. The discharge of huge quantities of effluents from industries and municipalities into rivers and lakes makes the condition vulnerable for sustainable life. The presence of organic toxics such as dyes and heavy metals, such as chromium, mercury, cadmium, cobalt, copper, nickel, lead, zinc and tin, in our water resources may cause serious health hazards to living organisms. Various technologies for removal of toxic chemicals and ions from industrial and agricultural effluents have been introduced such as adsorption, coagulation, flocculation, precipitation, co-precipitation, solvent extraction, ion exchange and membrane technology. However, most of these techniques require synthetic toxic reagents which are expensive too and hence the capital cost for treatment increases. The wide availability, biodegradability, non-toxicity and relatively inexpensiveness of biopolymers present an attractive alternative to such toxic synthetic and chemical products. In this context, several biopolymers were chemically refined to work as cationic or anionic agents for wastewater treatment. The book chapter summarizes the research carried out on the use of biopolymers to remove heavy metal and toxic chemicals from solutions and effluents. The various biopolymers (e.g. cellulose, chitosan, tannin, alginate, gums and mucilage), their classification, mechanisms of action, factors and their application in wastewater treatment in the scientific literature are analysed and compiled.

Keywords Industries · Wastewater · Biopolymers · Application · Treatment

---

J. Pandey (✉)
Department of Chemistry, School of Physical and Decision Sciences (SPDS), Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University (Central University), Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

R. N. Bharagava (ed.), *Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment*, Microorganisms for Sustainability 18,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-1390-9_11

11.1 Introduction

Water is the most important and essential element on the mother earth for sustainable life. Alarming growth in population, urbanization, industrialization, agricultural activities, climate change and socio-economic growths, along with high living standards, have generated ever-lasting demands for water resources (Kishor et al. 2019; Zainith et al. 2019). However, due to this heavy population load and human activities, quality of our water resources is deteriorating continuously (Bharagava et al. 2008; Chandra et al. 2009). Every year, millions of tons of different types of wastes such as industrial sewage water containing thousands of organic (fertilizers, pesticides, detergents, plasticizers, pharmaceuticals, hydrocarbons, biphenyls, phenols, oils, greases), inorganic (heavy metals, compound containing, fluoride, phosphate, sulfate, nitrate) and biological pollutants or contaminants (virus, bacteria, fungi, algae, amoebas and planktons) have been released into our water resources (Bharagava et al. 2018; Saxena et al. 2019). Such kind of introduction of pollutants or contaminants from industrial, agricultural and natural disposals to our water resources is a major environmental and health concern (Bharagava and Chandra 2010; Kishor et al. 2019). In this regard, water treatment plays a significant role in improving public health and environmental quality.

Several methods have been developed and applied for water and wastewater treatment including precipitation, co-precipitation, solvent extraction, adsorption, coagulation, flocculation, ion exchange and membrane technology (Patterson 1989; Brooks 1991; Chmielewski et al. 1997; Blais et al. 1999). These methods are exploited to reduce pollutants or contaminants from industrial wastewater and to remove toxic chemicals from sewage including municipal sanitary sewers and to recover the quality of raw drinking water. Most of these methods have utilized inorganic compounds, e.g. alum and $FeCl_3$, or organic polymers, e.g. polyacrylamides, which have their own benefits and drawbacks when their applicability and pollutant remediation efficacy is considered (Ahmad et al. 2008; Ashraf et al. 2013a).

In recent years, biopolymers illustrate an attractive alternative to synthetic inorganic and organic compounds because of following properties (Bolto and Gregory 2007):

1. Abundance and cheap resource make biopolymers economically viable.
2. The presence of large number of active functional groups such as amino and hydroxyl groups which increases adsorption capacity of biopolymers for many pollutants or contaminants.
3. Tendency to get modified through physical or chemical methods for more versatile applications.
4. They are safe, biodegradable, non-toxic and environment-friendly in nature.

In addition to above properties, the sludge obtained after wastewater treatment by biopolymers can be efficiently degraded by microorganisms due to its biodegradable nature (Renault et al., 2009a). Adsorption, coagulation and flocculation are the main methods applied by the biopolymers for water and wastewater treatment. The adsorption capacity of biopolymers is an important parameter for disposing of many kinds of pollutants from waste or polluted water. The availability of a wide range of biopolymer-based adsorbents and their ease of operation makes this method most popular among all the methods available for wastewater treatment.

In coagulation or flocculation methods biopolymers can destabilize the large colloidal particles by increasing the ionic strength and decreasing the zeta potential so that there is a significant decrease in the thickness of the diffuse part of the electrical double layer that takes place. In another way, biopolymers with macromolecular structures and a variety of functional groups (e.g. carboxyl and hydroxyl groups) can interact with contaminants by adsorbing counter ions and neutralize the particle charge (Özacar and Şengil 2003). For many years, several biopolymers such as tannins, cellulose, alginate, chitosan, gums and mucilage have been attracting wide interest of researchers for developing advanced adsorbents and flocculants for wastewater treatment. In this context, herein we summarize all the aspects of biopolymers along with their role in water treatment.

11.2 Biopolymers and Their Classification

Biopolymer is a new generation polymeric material. These polymers are made up of covalently bonded monomeric units which form chain-like arrangement of molecules. The prefix 'bio' denotes its natural origin and biodegradable nature of biopolymers. Biopolymers are environment-friendly molecules which can be degraded by naturally occurring organisms; only organic by-products such as carbon dioxide and water are generated which have no harmful effect on the environment. The versatile nature of biopolymers such as biodegradability, renewability and abundance makes biopolymers an attractive alternative material to petroleum-derived plastics. The broad classification of biopolymers is shown in Fig. 11.1 (Vieira et al. 2011).

Several biopolymers are of both bio-based and fuel-based origin such as PTT, PBS and PLA, although PLA is mainly produced by fermentation from renewable resources such as sugar cane and starch and can also be synthesized from fossil fuels.

11.3 Mechanism of Action of Biopolymers for Wastewater Treatment

11.3.1 *By Bridge Formation*

Polymer bridge formation takes place when long chain polymers with high molecular weight and low charge density are adsorbed onto the surface of more than one particle in such a way that long loops and tails extend or stretch some way into solution and thus these 'hanging' polymeric segments create 'bridging' between particles (Fig. 11.2) (Lee et al. 2012; Caskey and Primus 1986; Biggs et al. 2000;

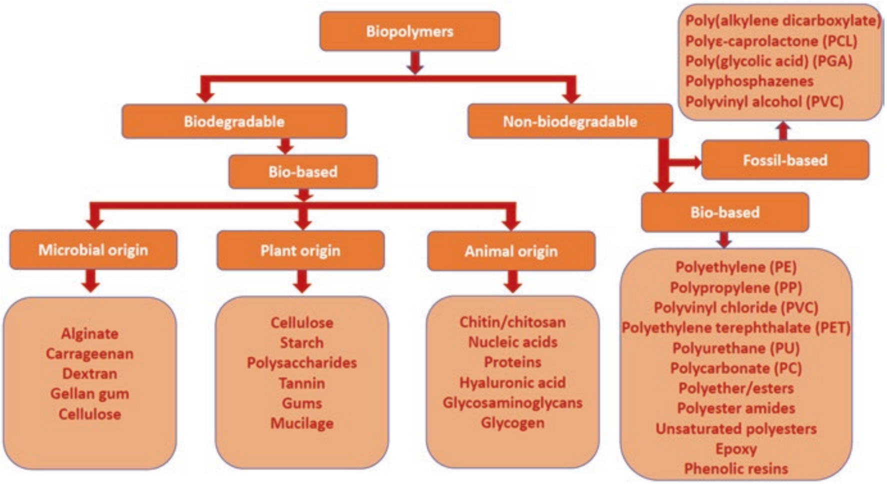


Fig. 11.1 Broad classification of biopolymer

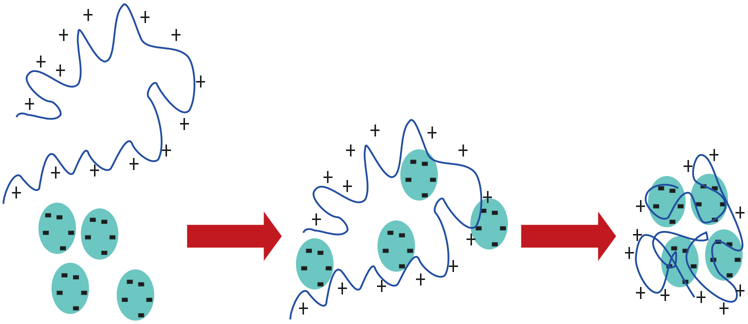


Fig. 11.2 Mechanism of bridge formation

Blanco et al. 2002). The long polymeric chains which can extend from one particle surface to another are required for effective bridging (Razali et al. 2011). In addition, there should be enough unoccupied surface on a particle for attachment of polymeric chains adsorbed on other particles. In general, for bridge formation an excessive amount of polymer is required; otherwise the particle surfaces will be exaggeratedly coated with polymer and no vacant sites will be available to ‘bridge’ with other particles (Fig. 11.2) (Sher et al., 2013). However, the adsorbed amount should not be too low because it will cause lesser number of bridge formation. In this way, it has been well established that polymer bridging provides much larger and stronger flocks than those formed in other ways.

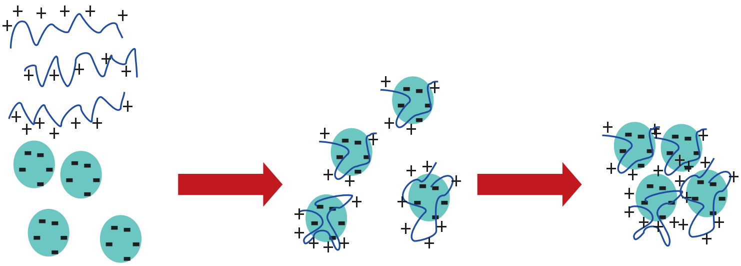


Fig. 11.3 Mechanism for electrostatic patch

11.3.2 By Electrostatic Patch

When bridging capability of long chain polymer is reduced, another possibility arises, which is known as 'electrostatic patch' mechanism (Fig. 11.3). The basic idea behind 'electrostatic patch' mechanism is that, when a highly charged cationic polymer adsorbs on a negatively charged surface, it is not physically possible for every negatively charged site on the surface to get neutralized by a cationic polymer chain (Blanco et al. 2002). This results into the formation of cationic 'patches' or 'islands' on negatively charged surfaces. The importance of 'patchwise' adsorption is that, as particles approach closely, strong electrostatic attraction between positive patches and negative zones occurred which can give rise to particle attachment (Bolto and Gregory 2007).

11.3.3 By Adsorption

Adsorption is a surface phenomenon where one or more adsorbates are attracted towards the adsorbent with which they are in interaction and bonded to its surface through liquid-solid intermolecular forces of attraction and get deposited at the solid surface (Fig. 11.4). It follows common mechanism for inorganic and organic pollutant removal. The adsorption phenomenon can be categorized as: (1) physisorption (involving weak van der Waals forces), (2) chemisorption (involving covalent bonding) or electrostatic sorption (involving ionic bonding) (Ashraf et al. 2013b).

As the adsorption proceeds, an equilibrium is established for adsorption of the solute between the solution and adsorbent. At equilibrium, the adsorption amount of adsorbate (q_e, mmol g^{-1}) can be calculated according to the following Eq. (11.1):

$$q_e = V\left(C_0 - C_e\right) / M \qquad (11.1)$$

where V is the volume of solution (L), M is mass of monolithic adsorbents (g), C_0 is the initial adsorbate concentrations and C_e is the equilibrium adsorbate concentrations.

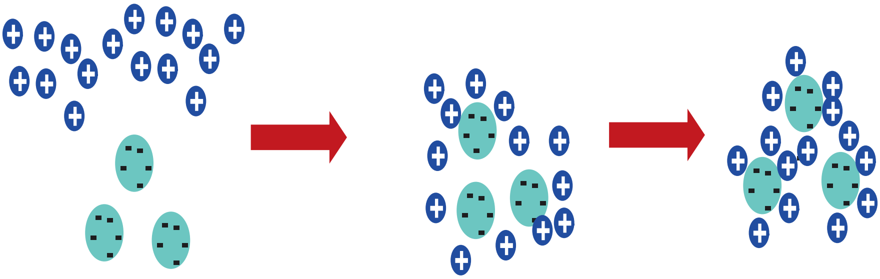


Fig. 11.4 Mechanism of adsorption

11.3.4 By Coagulation/Flocculation

Coagulation/flocculation is one of the most widely used solid-liquid separation processes which involve the removal of all kind of solids (suspended and dissolved) and colloidal and organic contaminants present in industrial wastewater (Renault et al. 2009b). Coagulation process involves charge neutralization which weakens colloidal matter and aggregates finely divided or dispersed particles into large masses (Fig. 11.5). These large masses adsorb dissolved organic substances by an adsorption mechanism and can easily be eliminated by simple filtration and sedimentation (Sharma et al. 2006). These methods are simple and efficient for wastewater treatment and have found extensive application for the treatment of different types of wastewater (Yue et al. 2008; Ahmad et al. 2005; Tatsi et al. 2003; Wong et al. 2006; Zhong et al. 2003).

11.4 Effect of Factors on Efficacy of Biopolymers

11.4.1 Effect of pH

pH is identified as one of the most important parameters to judge the efficacy of biopolymers. The role of biopolymers in wastewater treatment is strongly dependent on pH, as it can affect the extent of positive or negative charge on the polymeric surface. For example, chitosan is a weak base and its dissociation equilibrium is represented by Eq. (11.2):

$$\text{Chitosan}-\text{NH}_3{}^+ + \text{H}_2\text{O} \leftrightarrow \text{Chitosan}-\text{NH}_2 + \text{H}_3\text{O}^+ \tag{11.2}$$

Its dissociation equilibrium constant is given by Eq. (11.3):

$$K_\text{a} = \left[\text{Chitosan}-\text{NH}_2\right]\left[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+\right] / \left[\text{Chitosan}-\text{NH}_3{}^+\right] \tag{11.3}$$

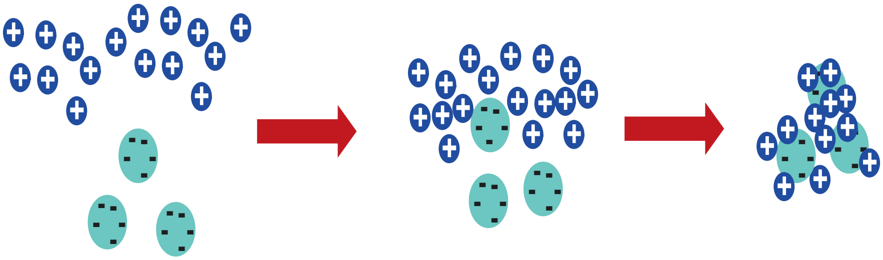


Fig. 11.5 Mechanism of coagulation

In acidic solutions, protonation of amine groups of chitosan is controlled by the p*K*a value and regulated by the charge density and extent of deacetylation (Guibal 2004). In general, p*K*a values fluctuate between 6.3 and 7.2 which directly depend on the extent of deacetylation (Sorlier et al. 2001) and are helpful in understanding the electrostatic interactions of chitosan with cations and anions. Equation (11.2) clearly depicts the effect of pH on the generation of ammonium groups ($–NH_3^+$). At neutral pH, approximately 50% of the total amino group of chitosan is protonated (Guibal, 2004). At particular pH when the protonation of amino groups is high, the tendency to adsorb metal anions is also increased (Ashraf et al., 2012). The overall number of protonated amino groups declines by increasing the pH level, and then the tendency towards metallic cations increases.

11.4.2 Effect of Size

The efficiency of biopolymers mainly depends on their physico-chemical characteristics such as porosity, surface area and particle size of biopolymer. In general, biopolymers in their native form are non-porous and possess low surface area; e.g. chitosan has a very low specific area ranging between 2 and 30 $m^2 g^{-1}$. Modification of biopolymer either by crosslinking or by grafting increases its adsorption performances (Chiou and Li 2002; Ruiz et al. 2000; Delval et al. 2003). In general, adsorption capacity varies in irregular manner on variation in the particle size (Delval et al. 2003). The adsorption or flocculation increases with decrease in size of the particle as the effective surface area is quite high for the same mass of smaller particles, and hence the time required to achieve the equilibrium significantly increases with the size of biopolymer. The influence of this parameter also depends on several other factors such as the chemistry of the pollutant, the physiochemical characteristics of the biopolymer such as its crystallinity, the degree of crosslinking and the rigidity of the polymeric chains (Ruiz et al. 2000).

11.4.3 Effect of Dose of Biopolymers

In general, the removal efficiency of biopolymers improved by increasing its dosage. This is due to the fact that the higher dose of biopolymers in the solution provides greater availability of exchangeable sites for the metal ions and pollutants. However, after a certain dose of biopolymer, the maximum adsorption is achieved and an equilibrium is established between bounded and unbounded free ions in the solution. On attainment of equilibrium, the concentration of free ions remains constant even with further addition of the dose of biopolymer (Ramya et al. 2011).

11.4.4 Effect of Contact Time

Generally, at the beginning of the treatment, the removal rate of metal ions increases with increase in contact time. Afterwards removal rate slowed down and equilibrium is achieved. Therefore, equilibrium time is among the important parameters responsible for an economical wastewater treatment system (Ramya et al. 2011).

11.4.5 Effect of Temperature

The adsorption capacities of biopolymer increase with increasing temperature. This phenomenon is quite common among biopolymer-based adsorbent and is due to the fact that increasing temperature not only increases the mobility of the ions, but may also produce a swelling effect within the internal structure of the biopolymer. However, after optimum temperature the number of adsorbed ions on adsorbent decreases due to the predominance of desorption step (Wong et al. 2008).

11.5 Biopolymers for Wastewater Treatment

The wastewater produced from various types of industries contains large amount of fine suspended and dissolved solids, organic and inorganic matter, metals and toxic chemicals. Various traditional and advanced technologies have been utilized to remove such impurities from wastewater, such as precipitation, ion exchange, solvent extraction, membrane filtration, adsorption, coagulation, flocculation and electrolytic and biological methods (Radoiu et al. 2004). Among these methods, adsorption, coagulation and flocculation are the most widely used separation process for the removal of heavy toxic metals and chemicals, suspended and dissolved solids and colloids present in industrial wastewater (Renault et al. 2009b). These are simple and efficient methods for wastewater treatment and have found extensive application in wastewater treatment.

Over the past few decades, several research studies have been pursued to develop cost-effective and easily available biopolymer-based adsorbent, flocculant and coagulant for wastewater treatment. Chitosan, cellulose, alginates, tannins, gum and mucilage are some well-known biopolymers that have attracted wide interest of researchers for the development of efficient materials for water treatment. In this section, we will discuss these biopolymers and their derivatives that have been developed to increase their efficacy in removal of toxic chemicals and heavy metals from wastewater.

11.5.1 Chitosan

Chitosan is a linear amino-polysaccharide containing *N*-glucosamine and *N*-acetyl-D-glucosamine monomeric units (Fig. 11.6). The arrangement and distribution of these two monomeric units along the chain determine the physical, chemical and biological properties of the biopolymer (Anitha et al. 2014).

Chitosan is obtained from the alkaline deacetylation of chitin, a biopolymer extracted from crustaceans, arthropods, fungi, bacteria and other organisms (Rinaudo 2006; Yen and Mau 2007) as shown in Fig. 11.7.

Deacetylation exposes the amine groups responsible for its cationic behaviour and necessarily required for adsorption (Jaafari et al. 2004). Chitosan has found extensive application in various fields due to its cationic behaviour and serving as most promising biopolymer for the development of new materials. The availability of free amine groups determines the solubility of chitosan; in general, chitosan is insoluble in water and organic solvents but soluble in dilute weak organic acids such as acetic acid and formic acid (Renault et al. 2009a; Szyguła et al. 2009). At acidic pH the free amino groups of chitosan are completely protonated and provide high charge density (Rinaudo 2006; Guibal and Roussy 2007) to the cationic biopolymer. Thus, acidic solution of chitosan produces protonated amine groups along the chain and facilitates electrostatic interactions with anionic contaminants such as dyes, heavy metal anions, toxic organic compounds, etc. (Guibal et al. 2006; Renault et al. 2009a; No and Meyers 2000), and makes it effective for wastewater treatment.

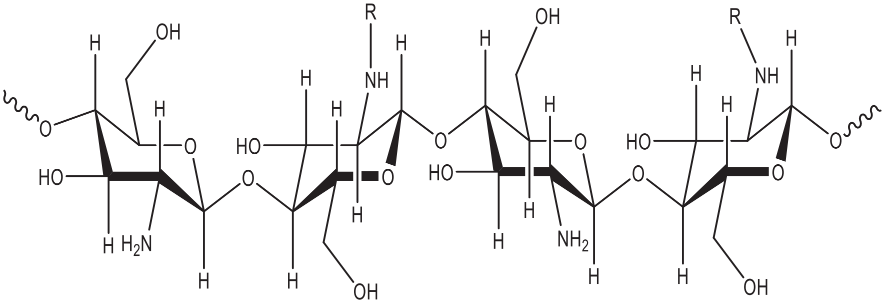


Fig. 11.6 Structure of chitosan, where R=Ac or H depending on the degree of acetylation

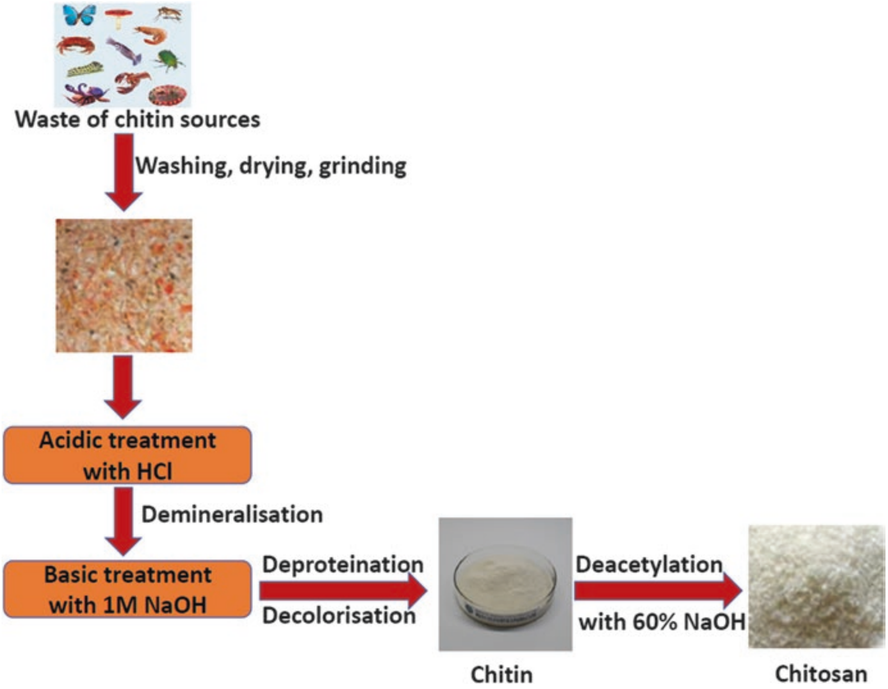


Fig. 11.7 Extraction of chitosan

Chitosan is a non-toxic, biodegradable, biocompatible and nonimmunogenic natural polymer with the existence of modifiable positions in chemical structure and hence has potential to be processed in many forms (Anitha et al. 2014). The chitosan molecule can be modified either by physical modifications or by chemical modifications to beads, films, hydrogels, nanofibers, nanocomposites and nanopowder as shown in Fig. 11.8. Chemical modifications can be achieved either by grafting which involves insertion of functional groups or by crosslinking reactions; bonding the macromolecular chains with each other leads to the formation of chitosan derivatives with superior properties such as increase in adsorption capacity and resistance toward extreme medium conditions.

Different forms of chitosan like film (Salehi et al. 2016), nanofiber (Habiba et al., 2017), powder (Chang et al. 2006) and beads (Lazaridis and Keenan 2010) were obtained through various physical modifications. Recently, chitosan-based composites have been reported which not only overcome the drawbacks of chitosan but also offer physical strength and magnetism (Golie and Upadhyayula 2017; Liu et al. 2015).

In recent years, scientists have focused their attention on development of chitosan nanofibers with customizable pore sizes and rationally high specific surface areas (Li et al. 2013a; Huang et al. 2015). Min et al. 2015 synthesized pure chitosan electrospun nanofiber membranes (average diameter ~ 129 nm) to remove As (V) from water. Habiba et al. (2017) have used blending and electrospinning methods for the production of chitosan/(polyvinyl alcohol)/zeolite composite nanofibers.

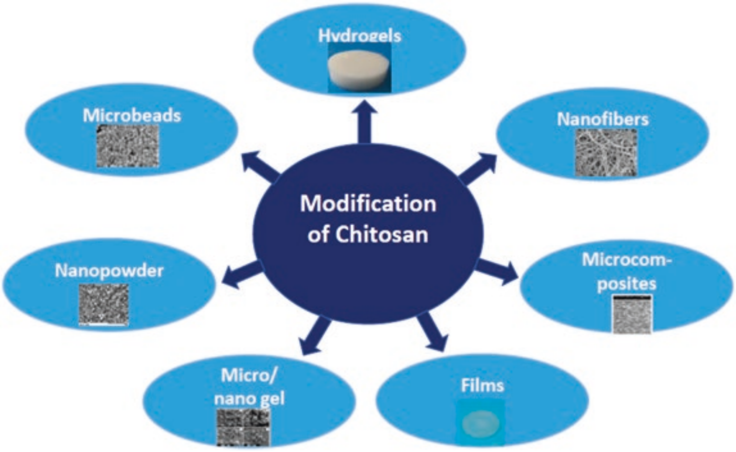


Fig. 11.8 Different forms of chitosan used in wastewater treatment

These composite nanofibers have shown good stability in solutions at different pH and with recycling up to five runs. Various chitosan derivatives with good adsorption capacity together with good mechanical resistance and chemical stability could be synthesized via chemical modification.

Chemical modification can be achieved through different kinds of reactions such as esterification, xanthation, oxidation (Zhu et al. 2012; Chen and Wang 2012), acylation (Repo et al. 2013; Guo et al. 2016), etherification (Viswanathan et al. 2009; Ge and Luo 2005), Schiff base reaction (Tanhaei et al. 2015; Elwakeel et al. 2017), phosphonium enhancement (Sessarego et al. 2019) and alkylation (Qin et al. 2003; Cárdenas et al. 2001). Numerous studies have clearly demonstrated the outstanding coagulation and flocculation properties of chitosan for dye molecules in textile wastewater (Szyguła et al. 2009), heavy metals and phenolic molecules in cardboard-mill wastewater (Renault et al. 2009b) organic matter in pulp and paper mill wastewater (Rodrigues et al. 2008) and inorganic suspensions in kaolinite suspension (Li et al. 2013b). This wide range of application clearly demonstrates the potential of chitosan and chitosan derivatives for water and wastewater treatment.

11.5.2 Cellulose

Cellulose is a long linear chain polymer of β-D-glucopyranose repeat units linked together by β-1,4-glycosidic linkage (Fig. 11.9). It is one of the most abundant natural polysaccharides among all the polymers present on earth and derived from different wood sources as shown in Fig. 11.10. The characteristic property of chirality, hydrophilicity or hydrophobicity and degradability of cellulose largely depends on its molecular structure. As pure cellulose has very limited applications, in recent years, serious efforts have been taken to modify its properties by improving its physical and chemical structure which broaden its industrial applications (Das et al. 2012).

Fig. 11.9 Cellulose-β-1,4-linkage

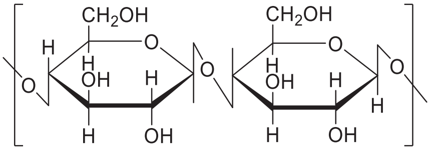
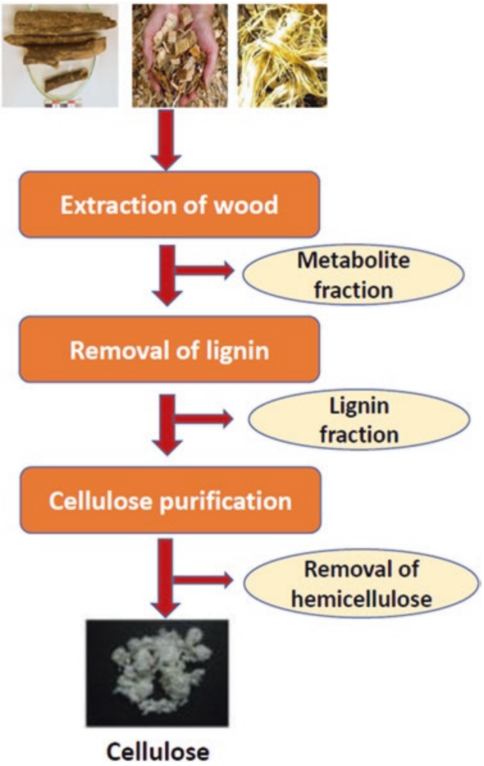


Fig. 11.10 Extraction of cellulose from wood sources



There are two main approaches for the conversion of cellulose into its derivatives. The first approach involves a direct introduction of chelating or metal binding functionalities into the cellulose backbone (Saravanan and Ravikumar 2015) whereas alternative approach involves grafting of selected monomers to the cellulose backbone (Aoki et al. 1999; Singh and Guleria 2014; Kumar et al. 2019b). Such kind of chemical modifications not only increases the adsorption capacity of cellulose derivatives for heavy metals in aqueous and nonaqueous media (Kamel et al. 2006) but also used to vary several other properties of cellulose, such as absorptivity, hydrophobicity or hydrophilicity, elasticity and microbial, heat and mechanical resistance (McDowall et al. 1984). The most important functionalization processes of cellulose occur through etherification, esterification, oxidation and halogenation (O'Connell et al. 2008).

In another study, Khiari et al. (2010) prepared anionic sodium carboxymethylcellulose from agricultural waste, i.e. date palm rachis coupled with aluminium sulphate as coagulant, and tested it as eco-friendly flocculants for removal of turbidity in drinking water treatment. Recently, Suopajärvi et al. (2013) have reported anionized nanocellulose flocculant with ferric sulphate coagulant and examined its flocculating properties in municipal wastewater.

11.5.3 Alginates

In 1881, alginate was first isolated by Stanford (1881). Alginate is present as sodium, magnesium and calcium salts of alginic acid in different species of brown seaweed (Phaeophyceae). Therefore, commercial alginates are extracted from *M. pyrifera*, *S. japonica*, *A. nodosum* and *L. hyperborea* (Gomez et al. 2009). In addition to seaweed origins, bacterial origin alginates are also reported; however, such kind of alginate is not yet commercially available (Mærk 2014). The process of extraction of alginate has been well documented in the literature and is relatively straightforward as shown in Fig. 11.11 (Smith and Miri 2010).

Alginate is a heteropolysaccharide of two uronic acid monomers, i.e. 1→4-linked β-ᴅ-mannuronic (MA) and 1→4-linked α-l-guluronic acid (GA) (Fig. 11.12). These residues are arranged randomly throughout the polysaccharide chain providing irregular geometry which impacts the packing ability of the polymeric chains. Such arrangements have significant impact on the physical properties of alginate. In general, large proportion of G blocks provides stiffer conformation and large proportion of M blocks provides more flexible conformation to corresponding alginates. The abundance of various functional groups such as hydroxyl, carboxylic and oxo groups gives alginic acid/salts strong chelating properties for metal ions.

Various chemical treatments such as phosphorylation, carboxylation and sulfonation may be applied on alginic acid in order to increase metal uptake capacity (Jeon et al. 2002); however, such treatments tend to increase the cost of the final product. A recent study investigated flocculating efficiency of sodium alginate in synthetic dye wastewater and in treatment of industrial textile wastewater by using aluminium sulphate as coagulant (Wu et al. 2012). Alginate derivatives were also studied for their capacity to adsorb different metals as shown in Table 11.1 and hence have a significant role in wastewater treatment.

11.5.4 Gum and Mucilage

Gums and mucilage have been emerged as a safer alternative to traditional polymers in wastewater treatment because their production and applications are environment-friendly and advantageous to human as well as for our ecosystem. Several natural adsorbents and flocculants based on gums and mucilage are derived from various

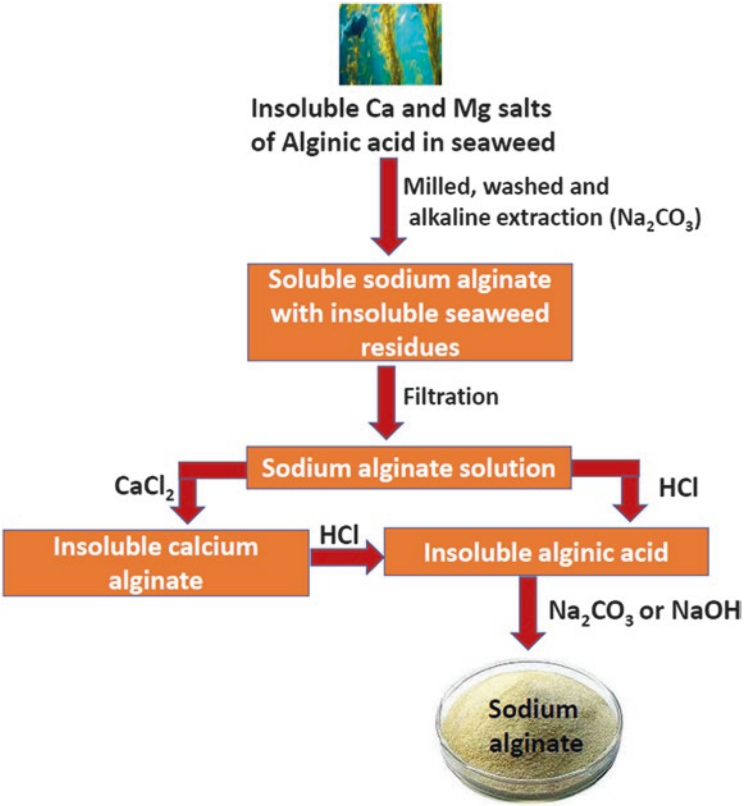


Fig. 11.11 Extraction of alginic acid from seaweed

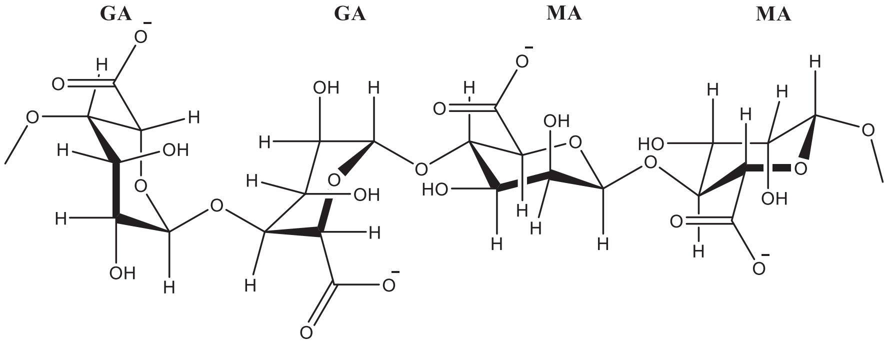


Fig. 11.12 Structure of alginate with repeat units of gluconic acid (GA) and mannuronic acid (MA)

Table 11.1 Metal sorption studies on alginate-based products

References	Adsorbent	Metals
Jeon et al. (2005)	Carboxylated alginic acid	Cu (II), Pb (II)
Karagunduz et al. (2006)	Dried alginate beads	Cu (II)
Al-Rub et al. (2004)	Alginate beads	Ni (II)
Papageorgiou et al. (2006)	Alginate beads	Cu (II), Cd (II), Pb (II)
Park and Chae (2004)	Alginate beads, alginate capsules, alginate gel coated	Pb (II)
Ablouh et al. (2019)	Chitosan microspheres/sodium alginate hybrid beads	Pb (II), Cr (VI)

plant species including *P. psyllium* (psyllium), *P. ovata* (isabgol), *T. foenum-graecum* (fenugreek), *H. esculentus* (okra), *T. indica* (tamarind) and *M. sylvestris* (mallow) and have shown promising results with regard to the treatment of textile wastewater (Mishra and Bajpai 2005), landfill leachate (Al-Hamadani et al. 2011), biological effluent (Anastasakis et al. 2009), sewage effluent (Mishra et al. 2003) and tannery effluent (Mishra et al. 2004).

In some cases, their effectiveness was comparable to synthetic flocculants in terms of treatment efficiency even at low concentrations. Agarwal et al. (2001) and Mishra et al. (2004) have developed bio-flocculants from okra gum and fenugreek mucilage, respectively, and tested them for sewage wastewater and tannery effluent and found that the flocculation efficiency of these was at par with synthetic polyacrylamide. In general, these plant-based adsorbents/flocculants are obtained by aqueous extraction, filtration, precipitation with alcohol and drying as shown in Fig. 11.13.

Gum xanthan-psyllium-cl-poly(acrylic acid-co-itaconic acid)-based adsorbent has been synthesized and screened for effective removal of cationic and anionic dyes from the aqueous fluid. The adsorbent exhibited good removal and recyclability efficiency for the dyes auramine O (Aur-O) and eriochrome black T (EBT) with minimal activity decline after six and three cycles, respectively (Chaudhary et al. 2018). Most recently, binary grafted psyllium (Psy-g-Poly) was synthesized and tested for removal of Hg (II) ions from aqueous solution. The adsorbent exhibited high adsorption efficiency of about 96% at 100 ppm concentration of Hg (II) ions (Kumar et al. 2019a).

11.5.5 Tannin

Tannin is an anionic polymer (Özacar and Şengil 2000) obtained from vegetal secondary metabolites such as fruits, bark, leaves and others (Beltrán Heredia and Sánchez Martín 2009a, b) and biodegradable in nature. Its potential for wastewater treatment has been tested by removal of suspended pollutants from synthetic raw water (Özacar and Şengil 2000), removal of suspended and colloidal matter present in drinking water (Özacar and Şengil 2003) and removal of ink, pigments and dyes

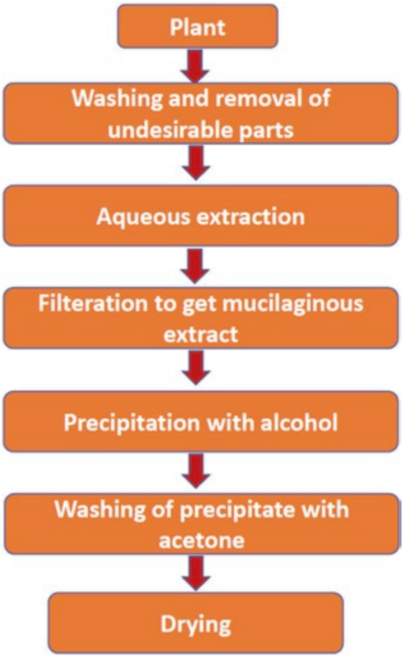


Fig. 11.13 Processing steps for biopolymers from gum and mucilage

from ink-containing wastewater (Roussy et al. 2005). In all these studies, anionic tannin flocculated the destabilized colloidal particles by bridging and tucked them together to form flocs of large size which undergo sedimentation.

Modified tannin (Tanfloc) is obtained from the bark of *Acacia mearnsii* and further modified by a physico-chemical process is used to remove heavy metals from polluted surface water and in municipal wastewater treatment (Beltrán Heredia and Sánchez Martín 2009b). Chemical modification such as addition of hydrocolloid gums, soluble salts and generation of quaternary nitrogen to give Tanfloc cationic character makes it capable to directly use in wastewater treatment. New adsorbent poly(tannin-hexamethylendiamine) (PTHA) was developed by varying mole ratio of tannin and hexamethylendiamine under one-pot green synthesis method and used for Cr (VI) removal from aqueous solution (Liu et al. 2018). Most recently, tannin-supported on cellulose (TM) microfibers were successfully synthesized to remove cationic dye in aqueous solution (Wang et al. 2019).

11.6 Advantages and Current Challenges

With great awareness of potential harms caused by chemical and synthetic adsorbent and flocculants, most of the countries have started to strictly control its usage in drinking water and wastewater treatment. Researches are going on to replace the conventional flocculants by highly efficient and eco-friendly bio-adsorbent and flocculants. The biodegradability, non-toxicity, cost-effectiveness and easy availability from reproducible agricultural resources have attracted wide interest from researchers towards biopolymers for the development of new generation adsorbent and flocculants.

Several biopolymers such as alginates, starch, cellulose, chitosan, tannin, gums and mucilage have been investigated for their adsorbing and flocculating properties in wastewater treatment and they exhibit excellent selectivity towards toxic compounds and metals, thus efficient in the removal of pollutants from wastewater. However, it was reported that their applicability and feasibility is restricted by moderate absorbing and flocculating properties and short shelf life. This problem is addressed by developing modified biopolymers either by crosslinking or by grafting and such modified biopolymers are claimed to have remarkable pollutant removal properties and biodegradability.

There are several factors that constraint the development and application of modified biopolymers to pilot scale or in other industries such as chemicals used in the synthesis process of biopolymers may cause health and safety issues, complexity of synthesis process and requirement of high energy input for production of larger quantities and relatively high equipment cost for the synthesis restrict its application. In order to address all these challenges, exhaustive investigation is required to prove the validity of modified biopolymers and promote their industrial applications. More research is urgently required to derive maximum benefits of grafting and crosslinking technology and modified biopolymers in order to balance the high cost of scaling up and operation.

11.7 Conclusion

Due to the increasing demand of environment-friendly technologies for turbidity and contaminants, removal represents an important progress in sustainable environmental technology. Biopolymers are nontoxic, biodegradable and cheap and can be obtained from renewable resources and their application is directly related to the improvement of quality of life. Modification of biopolymers with chemical crosslinking and grafting has been studied recently to improve its characteristics. Several studies have been conducted to investigate the adsorbing or flocculating properties of biopolymers in wastewater treatment. The results verified that they are technically promising adsorbents and flocculants with high removal efficiency of toxic pollutants. All the studies of modified biopolymers took place under lab-scale conditions and their applications at industrial scale are still at their early stages. Therefore, for the sake of environment and human health, more qualitative and quantitative researches are required to be carried out to further exploit the potential of biopolymers in drinking and wastewater treatment plant.

Acknowledgement The author is thankful to the Department of Biotechnology, New Delhi (Project No. BT/PR21245/AAQ/3/830/2016), for financial assistance.

References

Ablouh E-h, Hanani Z, Eladlani N, Rhazi M, Taourirte M (2019) Chitosan microspheres/sodium alginate hybrid beads: an efficient green adsorbent for heavy metals removal from aqueous solutions. Sustain Environ Res 29:5–15

Agarwal M, Srinivasan R, Mishra A (2001) Study on flocculation efficiency of okra gum in sewage waste water. Macromol Mater Eng 286:560–563

Ahmad AL, Ismail S, Bhatia S (2005) Optimization of coagulation–flocculation process for palm oil mill effluent using response surface methodology. Environ Sci Technol 39:2828–2834

Ahmad AL, Wong SS, Teng TT, Zuhairi A (2008) Improvement of alum and PACl coagulation by polyacrylamides (PAMs) for the treatment of pulp and paper mill wastewater. Chem Eng J 137:510–517

Al-Hamadani YAJ, Yusoff MS, Umar M, Bashir MJK, Adlan MN (2011) Application of psyllium husk as coagulant and coagulant aid in semi-aerobic landfill leachate treatment. J Hazard Mater 190:582–587

Al-Rub FAA, El-Naas MH, Benyahia F, Ashour I (2004) Biosorption of nickel on blank alginate beads, free and immobilized algal cells. Process Biochem 39:1767–1773

Anastasakis K, Kalderis D, Diamadopoulos E (2009) Flocculation behavior of mallow and okra mucilage in treating wastewater. Desalination 249:786–791

Anitha A, Sowmya S, Sudheesh Kumar PT, Deepthi S, Chennazhi KP, Ehrlich H, Tsurkan M, Jayakumar R (2014) Chitin and chitosan in selected biomedical applications. Prog Polym Sci 39:1644–1667

Aoki N, Fukushima K, Kurakata H, Sakamoto M, Furuhata K (1999) 6-Deoxy-6-mercaptocellulose and its S-substituted derivatives as sorbents for metal ions. React Funct Polym 42:223–233

Ashraf MA, Maah MJ, Yusoff I (2012) Development of new fill material technology for the ex-mining land reclamation for construction purposes. Fresenius Environ Bull 21(5a):1334–1343

Ashraf MA, Maah MJ, Qureshi AK, Gharibreza M, Yusoff I (2013a) Synthetic polymer composite membrane for the desalination of saline water. Desalination Water Treat 51:3650–3661

Ashraf MA, Ullah S, Ahmad I, Qureshi AK, Balkhair KS, Rehman MA (2013b) Green biocides, a promising technology: current and future applications. J Sci Food Agric 94(3):388–403

Beltrán Heredia J, Sánchez Martín J (2009a) Removing heavy metals from polluted surface water with a tannin-based flocculant agent. J Hazard Mater 165:1215–1218

Beltrán Heredia J, Sánchez Martín J (2009b) Municipal wastewater treatment by modified tannin flocculant agent. Desalination 249:353–358

Bharagava RN, Chandra R (2010) Biodegradation of the major color containing compounds in distillery wastewater by an aerobic bacterial culture and characterization of their metabolites. Biodegrad J 21:703–711

Bharagava RN, Chandra R, Rai V (2008) Phytoextraction of trace elements and physiological changes in Indian mustard plants (*Brassica nigra* L.) grow in post methanated distillery effluent (PMDE) irrigated soil. BioresourTechnol 99(17):8316–8324

Bharagava RN, Saxena G, Mulla SI, Patel DK (2018) Characterization and identification of recalcitrant organic pollutants (ROPs) in tannery wastewater and its phytotoxicity evaluation for environmental safety. Arch Environ Contam Toxicol 75(2):259–272

Biggs S, Habgood M, Jameson GJ, Yan Y-d (2000) Aggregate structures formed via a bridging flocculation mechanism. Chem Eng J 80:13–22

Blais JF, Dufresne S, Mercier G (1999) État du développement technologique en matière d'enlèvement des métaux des effluents industriels. Rev Sci Eau 12:687–711

Blanco A, Fuente E, Negro C, Tijero J (2002) Flocculation monitoring: focused beam reflectance measurement as a measurement tool. Can J Chem Eng 80:1–7

Bolto B, Gregory J (2007) Organic polyelectrolytes in water treatment. Water Res 41:2301–2324

Brooks CS (1991) Metal recovery from industrial wastes. Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton

Cárdenas G, Orlando P, Edelio T (2001) Synthesis and applications of chitosan mercaptanes as heavy metal retention agent. Int J Biol Macromol 28:167–174

Caskey JA, Primus RJ (1986) The effect of anionic polyacrylamide molecular conformation and configuration on flocculation effectiveness. Environ Prog 5:98–103

Chandra R, Bharagava RN, Yadav S, Mohan D (2009) Accumulation and distribution of toxic metals in wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) and Indian mustard (*Brassica campestris* L.) irrigated with distillery and tannery effluents. J Hazard Mater 162:1514–1521

Chang YC, Chang SW, Chen DH (2006) Magnetic chitosan nanoparticles: studies on chitosan binding and adsorption of Co (II) ions. React Funct Polym 66(3):335–341

Chaudhary S, Sharma J, Kaith BS, Yadav S, Sharma AK, Goel A (2018) Gum xanthan-psyllium-cl-poly(acrylic acid-co-itaconic acid) based adsorbent for effective removal of cationic and anionic dyes: adsorption isotherms, kinetics and thermodynamic studies. Ecotoxic Environ Safety 149:150–158

Chen YW, Wang JL (2012) The characteristics and mechanism of Co (II) removal from aqueous solution by a novel xanthate-modified magnetic chitosan. Nucl Eng Des 242:452–457

Chiou MS, Li HY (2002) Equilibrium and kinetic modeling of adsorption of reactive dye on cross-linked chitosan beads. J Hazard Mater B93:233–248

Chmielewski AP, Urbanski TS, Migdal W (1997) Separation technologies for metals recovery from industrial wastes. Hydrometallurgy 45:333–344

Das R, Panda AB, Pal S (2012) Synthesis and characterization of a novel polymeric hydrogel based on hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose grafted with polyacrylamide. Cellulose 19:933–945

Delval F, Crini G, Vebrel J, Knorr M, Sauvin G, Conte E (2003) Starch-modified filters used for the removal of dyes from waste water. Macromol Symp 203:165–171

Elwakeel KZ, El-Bindary AA, Ismail A, Morshidy AM (2017) Magnetic chitosan grafted with polymerized thiourea for remazol brilliant blue R recovery: effects of uptake conditions. J Dispers Sci Technol 38(7):943–952

Ge HC, Luo DK (2005) Preparation of carboxymethyl chitosan in aqueous solution under microwave irradiation. Carbohydr Res 340(7):1351–1356

Golie WM, Upadhyayula S (2017) An investigation on biosorption of nitrate from water by chitosan based organic-inorganic hybrid biocomposites. Int J Biol Macromol 97:489–502

Gomez CG, Lambrecht MVP, Lozano JE, Rinaudo M, Villara MA (2009) Influence of the extraction-purification conditions on final properties of alginates obtained from brown algae (Macrocystis pyrifera). Int J Biol Macromol 44:365–371

Guibal E (2004) Interactions of metal ions with chitosan-based sorbents: a review. Sep Purif Technol 38:43–74

Guibal E, Roussy J (2007) Coagulation and flocculation of dye-containing solutions using a biopolymer (chitosan). React Funct Polym 67:33–42

Guibal E, Van Vooren M, Dempsey BA, Roussy J (2006) A review of the use of chitosan for the removal of particulate and dissolved contaminants. Sep Sci Technol 41:2487–2514

Guo P, Anderson JD, Bozell JJ, Zivanovic S (2016) The effect of solvent composition on grafting gallic acid onto chitosan via carbodiimide. Carbohydr Polym 140:171–180

Habiba U, Afifi AM, Salleh A, Ang BC (2017) Chitosan/(polyvinyl alcohol)/zeolite electrospun composite nanofibrous membrane for adsorption of Cr6C, Fe3C and Ni2C. J Hazard Mater 322:182–194

Huang CH, Hsieh TH, Chiu WY (2015) Evaluation of thermally crosslinkable chitosan-based nanofibrous mats for the removal of metal ions. Carbohydr Polym 116:249–254

Jaafari K, Ruiz T, Elmaleh S, Coma J, Benkhouja K (2004) Simulation of a fixed bed adsorber packed with protonated cross-linked chitosan gel beads to remove nitrate from contaminated water. Chem Eng J 99:153–160

Jeon C, Park JY, Yoo YJ (2002) Characteristics of metal removal using carboxylated alginic acid. Water Res 36:1814–1824

Jeon C, Yoo YJ, Hoell WH (2005) Environmental effects and desorption characteristics on heavy metal removal using carboxylated alginic acid. Bioresour Technol 96:15–19

Kamel S, Hassan EM, El-Sakhawy M (2006) Preparation and application of acrylonitrile-grafted cyanoethyl cellulose for the removal of copper (II) ions. J Appl Polym Sci 100(1):329–334

Karagunduz A, Kaya Y, Keskinler B, Oncel S (2006) Influence of surfactant entrapment to dried alginate beads on sorption and removal of Cu^{2+} ions. J Hazard Mater 131:79–83

Khiari R, Dridi-Dhaouadi S, Aguir C, Mhenni MF (2010) Experimental evaluation of eco-friendly flocculants prepared from date palm rachis. J Environ Sci 22:1539–1543

Kishor R, Bharagava RN, Saxena G (2019) Industrial wastewaters: the major sources of dye contamination in the environment, ecotoxicological effects, and bioremediation approaches. In: Bharagava RN (ed) Recent advances in environmental management. CRC Press Taylor & Francis, Boca Raton, p 13. ISBN: 978–0–8153-8314-7

Kumar D, Pandey J, Khan N, Kumar P, Kundu PP (2019a) Synthesize and characterization of binary grafted psyllium for removing toxic mercury (II) ions from aqueous solution. Mat Sci Eng C 104:109900

Kumar R, Sharma RK, Singh AP (2019b) Grafting of cellulose with N-isopropylacrylamide and glycidyl methacrylate for efficient removal of Ni(II), Cu(II) and Pd(II) ions from aqueous solution. Sep Purif Technol 219:249–259

Lazaridis NK, Keenan H (2010) Chitosan beads as barriers to the transport of azo dye in soil column. J Hazard Mater 173:144–150

Lee KE, Morad N, Teng TT, Poh BT (2012) Development, characterization and the application of hybrid materials in coagulation/flocculation of wastewater: a review. Chem Eng J 203:370–386

Li Y, Qiu TB, Xu XY (2013a) Preparation of lead-ion imprinted crosslinked electrospun chitosan nanofiber mats and application in lead ions removal from aqueous solutions. Eur Polym J 49:1487–1494

Li J, Jiao S, Zhong L, Pan J, Ma Q (2013b) Optimizing coagulation and flocculation process for kaolinite suspension with chitosan. Colloids Surf A Physicochem Eng Aspects 428:100–110

Liu Q, Yang BC, Zhang LJ, Huang RH (2015) Simultaneous adsorption of aniline and Cu2C from aqueous solution using activated carbon/chitosan composite. Desalination Water Treat 55:410–419

Liu Q, Liu Q, Liu B, Hu T, Liu W, Yao J (2018) Green synthesis of tannin-hexamethylendiamine based adsorbents for efficient removal of Cr (VI). J Hazard Mater 352:27–35

McDowall DJ, Gupta BS, Stannett VT (1984) Grafting of vinyl monomers to cellulose by ceric ion initiation. Prog Polym Sci 10(1):1–50

Min LL, Yuan ZH, Zhong LB, Liu Q, Wu RX, Zheng YM (2015) Preparation of chitosan based electrospun nanofiber membrane and its adsorptive removal of arsenate from aqueous solution. Chem Eng J 267:132–141

Mishra A, Bajpai M (2005) Flocculation behaviour of model textile wastewater treated with a food grade polysaccharide. J Hazard Mater 118:213–217

Mishra A, Agarwal M, Yadav A (2003) Fenugreek mucilage as a flocculating agent for sewage treatment. Colloid Polym Sci 281:164–167

Mishra A, Yadav A, Agarwal M, Bajpai M (2004) Fenugreek mucilage for solid removal from tannery effluent. React Funct Polym 59:99–104

Mærk M (2014) Looking for the big picture: genome-based approaches to improve alginate production in Azotobacter Vinelandii, (Ph.D. thesis). Norwegian University of Science and Technology

No H, Meyers S (2000) Application of chitosan for treatment of wastewaters. In: Ware G (ed) Reviews of environmental contamination and toxicology. Springer, New York, pp 1–27

O'Connell DW, Birkinshaw C, O'Dwyer TF (2008) Heavy metal adsorbents prepared from the modification of cellulose: a review. Bioresour Technol 99:6709–6724

Özacar M, Şengil İA (2000) Effectiveness of tannins obtained from valonia as a coagulant aid for dewatering of sludge. Water Res 34:1407–1412

Özacar M, Şengil İA (2003) Evaluation of tannin biopolymer as a coagulant aid for coagulation of colloidal particles. Colloids Surf A Physicochem Eng Aspects 229:85–96

Papageorgiou SK, Katsaros FK, Kouvelos EP, Nolan JW, Deit HL, Kanellopoulos NK (2006) Heavy metal sorption by calcium alginate beads from Laminaria digitata. J Hazard Mater 137:1765–1772

Park HG, Chae MY (2004) Novel type of alginate gel-based adsorbents for heavy metal removal. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 79:1080–1083

Patterson JW (1989) Industrial wastes reduction. Environ Sci Technol 23:1032–1038

Qin CQ, Du YM, Zhang ZQ, Liu Y, Xiao L, Shi XW (2003) Adsorption of chromium (VI) on a novel Quaternized chitosan resin. J Appl Polym Sci 90:505–510

Radoiu MT, Martin DI, Calinescu I, Iovu H (2004) Preparation of polyelectrolytes for wastewater treatment. J Hazard Mater 106:27–37

Ramya R, Sankar P, Anbalagan S, Sudha PN (2011) Adsorption of Cu (II) and Ni (II) ions from metal solution using crosslinked chitosan-g-acrylonitrile copolymer. Int J Environ Sci 1:1323–1338

Razali MAA, Ahmad Z, Ahmad MSB, Ariffin A (2011) Treatment of pulp and paper mill wastewater with various molecular weight of polyDADMAC induced flocculation. Chem Eng J 166:529–535

Renault F, Sancey B, Badot PM, Crini G (2009a) Chitosan for coagulation/flocculation processes-an eco-friendly approach. Eur Polym J 45:1337–1348

Renault F, Sancey B, Charles J, Morin-Crini N, Badot P-M, Winterton P, Crini G (2009b) Chitosan flocculation of cardboard-mill secondary biological wastewater. Chem Eng J 155:775–783

Rinaudo M (2006) Chitin and chitosan: properties and applications. Prog Polym Sci 31:603–632

Rodrigues AC, Boroski M, Shimada NS, Garcia JC, Nozaki J, Hioka N (2008) Treatment of paper pulp and paper mill wastewater by coagulation–flocculation followed by heterogeneous photocatalysis. J Photochem Photobiol A Chem 194:1–10

Roussy J, Chastellan P, Vooren MV, Guibal E (2005) Treatment of ink-containing wastewater by coagulation/flocculation using biopolymers. Water SA 31:369–376

Ruiz M, Sastre AM, Guibal E (2000) Palladium sorption on glutaraldehyde-crosslinked chitosan. React Funct Polym 45:155–173

Salehi E, Daraei P, Arabi Shamsabadi A (2016) A review on chitosan-based adsorptive membranes. Carbohydr Polym 152:419–432

Saravanan R, Ravikumar L (2015) The use of new chemically modified cellulose for heavy metal ion adsorption and antimicrobial activities. J Water Resour Prot 7:530–545

Saxena G, Purchase D, Mulla SI, Saratale GD, Bharagava RN (2019) Phytoremediation of heavy metal-contaminated sites: eco-environmental concerns, field studies, sustainability issues and future prospects. Rev Environ Contam Toxicol 249:71–131

Sessarego S, Rodrigues SCG, Xiao Y, Lu Q, Hill JM (2019) Phosphonium-enhanced chitosan for Cr (VI) adsorption in wastewater treatment. Carbohydr Polym 211:249–256

Sharma BR, Dhuldhoya NC, Merchant UC (2006) Flocculants-an ecofriendly approach. J Polym Environ 14:195–202

Sher F, Malik A, Liu H (2013) Industrial polymer effluent treatment by chemical coagulation and flocculation. J Environ Chem Eng 1:684–689

Singh AS, Guleria A (2014) Chemical modification of cellulosic biopolymer and its use in removal of heavy metal ions from wastewater. Int J Biol Macromol 67:409–417

Smith AM, Miri T (2010) Alginates in foods. In: Norton IT (ed) Practical food rheology. Wiley

Sorlier P, Denuzière A, Viton C, Domard A (2001) Relation between the degree of acetylation and the electrostatic properties of chitin and chitosan. Biomacromolecules 2:765–772

Stanford ECC (1881) British patent 142

Suopajärvi T, Liimatainen H, Hormi O, Niinimaki J (2013) Coagulation–flocculation treatment of municipal wastewater based on anionized nanocelluloses. Chem Eng J 231:59–67

Szyguła A, Guibal E, Palacin MA, Ruiz M, Sastre AM (2009) Removal of an anionic dye (acid blue 92) by coagulation–flocculation using chitosan. J Environ Manag 90:2979–2986

Tanhaei B, Ayati A, Lahtinen M, Sillanpää M (2015) Preparation and characterization of a novel chitosan/Al2O3/magnetite nanoparticles composite adsorbent for kinetic, thermodynamic and isotherm studies of methyl Orange adsorption. Chem Eng J 259:1–10

Tatsi AA, Zouboulis AI, Matis KA, Samaras P (2003) Coagulation–flocculation pretreatment of sanitary landfill leachates. Chemosphere 53:737–744

Vieira MGA, Silva MAD, Santos LOD, Beppu MM (2011) Natural-based plasticizers and biopolymer films: a review. Eur Polym J 47:254–263

Viswanathan N, Sundaram CS, Meenakshi S (2009) Sorption behaviour of fluoride on carboxylated cross-linked chitosan beads. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 68:48–54

Wang G, Chen Y, Xu G, Pei Y (2019) Effective removing of methylene blue from aqueous solution by tannins immobilized on cellulose microfibers. Inter J Biol Macromol 129:198–206

Wong SS, Teng TT, Ahmad AL, Zuhairi A, Najafpour G (2006) Treatment of pulp and paper mill wastewater by polyacrylamide (PAM) in polymer induced flocculation. J Hazard Mater 135:378–388

Wong YC, Szeto YS, Cheung WH, McKay G (2008) Effect of temperature, particle size and percentage deacetylation on the adsorption of acid dyes on chitosan. Adsorption 14:11–20

Wu C, Wang Y, Gao B, Zhao Y, Yue Q (2012) Coagulation performance and floc characteristics of aluminum sulfate using sodium alginate as coagulant aid for synthetic dying wastewater treatment. Sep Purif Technol 95:180–187

Yen M-T, Mau J-L (2007) Physico-chemical characterization of fungal chitosan from shiitake stipes. LWT Food Sci Technol 40:472–479

Yue QY, Gao BY, Wang Y, Zhang H, Sun X, Wang SG, Gu RR (2008) Synthesis of polyamine flocculants and their potential use in treating dye wastewater. J Hazard Mater 152:221–227

Zainith S, Purchase D, Saratale GD, Ferreira LFR, Bilal M, Bharagava RN (2019) Isolation and characterization of lignin-degrading bacterium Bacillus aryabhattai from pulp and paper mill wastewater and evaluation of its lignin-degrading potential. 3 Biotech 9(3):92

Zhong J, Sun X, Wang C (2003) Treatment of oily wastewater produced from refinery processes using flocculation and ceramic membrane filtration. Sep Purif Technol 32:93–98

Zhu YH, Hu J, Wang JL (2012) Competitive adsorption of Pb (II), cu (II) and Zn (II) onto xanthate-modified magnetic chitosan. J Hazard Mater 221–222:55–161

Chapter 12
Recovery of Rare Earths, Precious Metals and Bioreduction of Toxic Metals from Wastewater Using Algae

Zainab S. Birungi, Evans M. Nkhalambayausi Chirwa, Na Shen, and Maria Roestorff

Abstract For many decades, toxicity of metals has been recognised due to documented evidence in plants, animals, water and/or humans. Unlike toxic heavy metals which are relatively abundant, some metals are scarce and unevenly distributed in the earth crust. Rare earth elements (REE) are ranked as one of the most critical elements with a diminishing supply. In addition some heavy metals such as thallium are rare but widely distributed in very low concentration and listed under critical metals comparable to cadmium and lead. Advanced and cleaner technologies using biological materials serve as an efficient and complementary treatment method for dissolved toxic metals and recovery of precious and REE. Various living and dead organisms have been investigated for metal removal, e.g. bacteria, fungi, algae, yeast and industrial and agricultural waste. Phytoremediation using higher plant accumulators has been widely embraced for ecosystem restoration especially for long period of time. This can eventually promote industrial environmental sustainability and restore ecosystem functioning. Bio-adsorption technologies using dead organisms offer the opportunity for recycling in addition to being eco-friendly. The challenge is to select the most efficient biosorbents from the relatively abundant biomass. This chapter, therefore, provides an insight into the various bioremediation technologies currently being explored from our research group for microalgae for the treatment of heavy metals such as cadmium, thallium and chromium. In addition, recovery of precious and rare earth elements such as gold and lanthanum using various eluents is also discussed. Some of the challenges and way forward are highlighted in the conclusion.

Keywords Rare earths · Precious metals · Recovery · Bioreduction · Wastewater · Algae

---

Z. S. Birungi (✉) · E. M. Nkhalambayausi Chirwa · N. Shen · M. Roestorff
Water Utilisation and Environmental Engineering Division, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Pretoria, Pretoria, Gauteng, South Africa

R. N. Bharagava (ed.), *Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment*, Microorganisms for Sustainability 18,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-1390-9_12

12.1 Background

Toxicology of metallic species has been investigated broadly due to its adverse negative impacts along the food chain since they cannot be degraded, hence causing irreversible health effects to biota (Gupta and Rastogi 2008; Chojnacka 2010; Bilai et al. 2018; Saxena et al. 2019a, b). Metals are vital in the environmental functioning and ecosystem health. However, metals become toxic when the threshold of environmental adaptive capacity is exceeded. For instance, numerous authors have noted that human physical complications are attributed to deficiency and toxicity of metals (Yu 2008; Bharagava et al. 2008; Yaylal-Abanuz 2011; Brevick and Burgess 2013; Kalumba 2016). With advances in technology and increased demand of metal utilisation in industrial development, point source pollution is the main contributor to environmental degradation of water resources (Shukla et al. 2018; Saxena et al. 2019a, b).

Metals are propelled by natural and anthropogenic processes into the environment through corrosion, atmospheric dispersions and deposition, soil erosion, leaching, weathering and volcanic eruption, industrial and domestic waste disposals and fertiliser application (Tchounwou et al. 2012; Bharagava et al. 2018; Kishor et al. 2019), among others. Consequently, environmental metal mobility and availability depends on many chemical and biochemical processes such as precipitation-dissociation, adsorption-desorption, complexation-dissociation and oxidation reduction (Prasad and Hagemeyer 1999; Kalumba 2016).

Unlike toxic heavy metals which are relatively abundant, some metals are scarce and unevenly distributed in the earth crust. Rare earth elements (REE) are ranked as one of the most critical elements with many emerging technologies but with a diminishing supply (European Commission 2010; Bharagava et al. 2014). The growing demand for precious metals in industrial and medical applications has exerted pressure on the limited natural resources. Therefore, recovery from secondary sources is a renewable way to protect an irreplaceable resource that otherwise would be discarded (Izatt et al. 2014).

Traditional technologies such as advanced oxidation, chemical precipitation, membrane processes, ion exchange and adsorption have been used in the treatment of organic/inorganic materials. These technologies have high energy requirements, input chemicals and generate secondary waste, hence rendering them inefficient for treatment of high volume of wastewater containing low metal concentrations (<100 mg/L) (Ahluwalia and Goyal 2007; Hansda and Kumar 2016). So far, adsorption is the most effective in advanced wastewater treatment (Reddy and Lee 2012; Anastopoulos and Kyzas 2016). Many commercial adsorbents including activated alumina, zeolites and silica gel have been used for the treatment of heavy metals (Bhatnagar and Sillanpaa 2010). These adsorbents have better adsorption properties due to a high surface area but are generally costly and non-biodegradable.

This attracted the use of biodegradable activated carbon, which is found to be highly efficient due to the high porosity and large surface area but also very costly (Babel and Kurniawan 2004; Fu and Wang 2011). Advanced and cleaner technologies using biological materials act as an efficient and complementary treatment method for dissolved toxic metals and recovery of precious and rare earths (Bilai et al. 2018). These technologies offer a relatively lower cost due to absence of creation of secondary problems, environmentally friendly and potential for reusability of biomass.

12.2 Toxicity of Heavy Metals

Heavy metals are classified according to their chemistry coordination, a factor determined by the element's electron environment (Ferris 1989; Collins and Stotzky 1989). The United States Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA) has listed priority metallic pollutants such as mercury, lead, cadmium, thallium, zinc, copper, nickel, beryllium and antimony. The list also includes transitional metals such as chromium and metalloids such as arsenic and selenium. Even metals such as iron, zinc, molybdenum and magnesium which are essential nutritional supplements to plants and animals can become toxic to the organisms when discharged in excess (Hughes and Poole 1991). Some heavy metals are described below in detail of toxicity levels and effects to public health and the environment.

12.2.1 Thallium Toxicity

In nature, thallium (Tl) minerals are rare but widely distributed in very low concentration (Xiao et al. 2012) as indicated in Table 12.1. Thallium (III) toxicity is considered to be higher than cadmium (Cd II) as the bioavailability of the former is much lower to hydrolysis and stability constants (Ralph and Twiss 2002; Twining et al. 2003). Earlier studies suggested that Tl (I) forms soluble compounds with, e.g. sulphates, acetate and carbonates and is more abundant than Tl (III) (Goldschmidt 1954; Galván-Arzate and Santamaría 1998).

Table 12.1 Mean abundance of thallium distribution in natural environment

Distribution in nature	Mean abundance	References
Earth's upper crust	0.75 mg/kg	Taylor and Mclennan (1985)
Sedimentary rocks	0.27–0.48 mg/kg	Heinrichs et al. (1980)
Groundwater	0.001–0.25 μg/L	Frengstad et al. (2000)
Metamorphic rocks	0.65 mg/kg	Heinrichs et al. (1980)
Seawater	0.012–0.016 μg/L	Flegal and Patterson (1985)
Lake water	0.001–0.036 μg/L	Lin and Nriagu (1999)
Shales and schists	0.5–2.0 mg/kg	Kazantzis (2000)
Acidic rocks	0.5–1.8 mg/kg	Kabata-Pendias and Pendias (2001)
Igneous rocks	0.06–1.2 mg/kg	De Albuquerque and Shaw (1972)

Thallium has a low boiling point and easily volatilises as an impurity from coal combustion, smelting operations, cement industry, steel industry, sulphuric acid production, auto-emissions and refining processes (Jacobson et al. 2005; Vaněk et al. 2011; Tatsi et al. 2015). Various Tl compounds are also used as catalysts in the oxidation, reduction, aromatisation, esterification and polymerisation of organic molecules (Nriagu 1998). Industrial emissions are approximately 2000–5000 tons per year in vapours, dust, fluids and solids (Karbowska et al. 2014). Due to the similarity of Tl (I) and potassium (K (I), Tl (I) disrupts functioning of several enzymes as it enters the transport system inhibiting K (I) movement across mitochondrial membrane (Leonard and Gerber 1997; Repetto et al. 1998).

Thallium poisoning in humans mainly occurs through ingestion of contaminated food, through inhalation and/or through the skin. Depending on the type of exposure, dosage and age, it may be acute, subacute or chronic (Mulkey and Oehme 1993). The negative effects of exposure include encephalopathy; tachycardia; mild gastrointestinal disturbances; degenerative changes in kidney, liver and heart; alteration of nervous system; and eventually death (Cavanagh et al. 1974; Nriagu 1998; Urík et al. 2010). Effects of chronic exposure to low concentrations are not well known (Karbowska 2016), but bioaccumulation is lethal especially to humans. The permissible threshold limits for Tl have been set by the Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA 1980) at 0.002 mg/L for drinking water and 10 $\mu g/m^3$ for air content.

12.2.2 *Cadmium Toxicity*

Cadmium is a silvery white lustrous heavy metal with a relatively high vapour pressure. This metal has eight stable isotopes with the most common ones being ^{112}Cd and ^{114}Cd (Adriano 2001). Cadmium is widely used in industrial applications such electroplating of steel, iron, copper, etc., in manufacture of electrode batteries and as an additive in the making of pigments. Cadmium is also found in phosphate fertilisers, stabilisers, alloys, barrier for atomic fission control, ceramics, plastics, paints, coated fabric, printing ink rubber and glass enamel (Förstner 1980; Balkaya and Cesur 2008; Cobb 2008). Cadmium forms soluble salts of arsenates, phosphates, carbonates and ferrocyanide (Rahimzadeh et al. 2017). Several literature sources have provided commentary on cadmium toxicity (Waalkes et al. 1992; Waalkes 2003; Huff et al. 2007). Cadmium replaces essential elements like Zn, Ca and Fe causing displacement from proteins (Verbruggen et al. 2009).

Cadmium exposure causes skeletal demineralisation with the most severe form being "itai-itai" disease (Murata et al. 1970; Friberg et al. 1974; Yasuda et al. 1995; Umemura and Wako 2006). Acute poisoning usually occurs in the lungs and gastrointestinal tract causing health effects such as bronchitis, pneumonitis and toxemia in the liver, vertigo, diarrhoea and abdominal pain (Friberg et al. 1974; Tsuchiya 1981). Chronic effects of Cd poisoning usually accumulate in the lungs, kidney and bones. Long-term exposure distends air sacs reducing lung capacity; kidney damage produces proteinuria, aminoaciduria, phosphaturia, glucosuria, and kidney stones. Other health risks of cadmium include hypertension, testicular atrophy, kidney failure, cancer, mucous membrane destruction, anaemia, osteomalacia in bones and reproductive toxicity (Fleischer et al. 1974; Leyva-Ramos et al. 1997; Godt et al. 2006).

Some of the treatment methods traditionally used for removal of cadmium from wastewater include precipitation of metals as insoluble hydroxides, carbonates or sulphides (Karthikeyan et al. 1996; Lin et al. 2005); cementation with zinc powder (Ku et al. 2002); membrane processes such as hollow fibre, supported liquid membrane and emulsion liquid membrane (Mortaheb et al. 2009); and liquid-liquid solvent extraction using specific extractants (Gupta et al. 2001). Ion exchange using resins has also been investigated widely for Cd removal by different authors (Chen et al. 1998; Malla et al. 2002; Pehlivan and Altun 2006). The permissible limits of cadmium discharge in wastewater and drinking water are 0.1 and 0.05 mg/L, respectively, according the World Health Organisation (WHO 2011).

12.2.3 Chromium Toxicity

Chromium is a transitional metal that occurs in various oxidation states, mainly hexavalent chromium [Cr(VI)] or trivalent chromium [Cr(III)] (Saha et al. 2011). Cr(VI) is considered much more toxic than Cr(III) (Miretzky and Cirelli 2010; Bharagava et al. 2018). Cr is very functional and has desirable properties which lead to a wide variety of uses such as stainless steel and non-iron alloy production, metal plating, leather tanning, textile preservatives, printing and dying and development of pigments and in refractories (Guertin et al. 2016). The Cr(VI) compounds such as chromate ion (CrO_4^{2-}) contaminate soil, sediment, surface waters and groundwater and can enter living organisms through numerous receptor pathways (Szulczewski et al. 1997).

The $HCrO_4^{2-}$ form exists if the pH of the solution is greater than 7, while in the pH between 1 and 6, CrO_4^{2-} is predominant. Therefore, within the normal pH range in natural surface waters, CrO_4^{2-} and $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$ ions are expected to occur which are quite soluble and mobile in water streams (El Nemr et al. 2015). The structural similarity of CrO_4^{2-} with phosphate ion (PO_4^{3-}) and sulphate ion (SO_4^{2-}) allows Cr(VI) to be readily transported across biological membranes and into cells (Gutiérrez-Corona et al. 2016). Once Cr(VI) is in the cells Cr(VI) generates active Cr(V) and/or Cr(IV) intermediates, free radicals and Cr(III) as the final product. The Cr(III) inside the cell interferes with DNA replication and causes mutagenesis (Xu et al. 1996). Ingestion of Cr(VI) compounds results in severe gastrointestinal disorders, haemorrhagic diathesis, convulsions and ultimately death (Baruthio 1992).

Chemical reduction and precipitation is one of the main remediation treatments available for chromate-contaminated industrial wastewater. Cr(VI) is chemically reduced to Cr(III), the less toxic form, under acid conditions. Iron(II) chloride or iron(II) sulphate is typically used as the electron donor for the reduction reaction which can produce solid waste such as ferric hydroxide (Jardine et al. 1999). Following the reduction reaction an alkali such as sodium hydroxide or calcium hydroxide slurry is used to neutralise the acidity and precipitates the Cr(III) (Barrera-Díaz et al. 2012).

Electrochemical reduction is also used to treat Cr (VI) contamination. Two electrodes are used, namely, a cathode and an anode. At high current systems Cr (VI) is reduced directly at the cathode and at low current systems the Cr (VI) is converted to Cr (III) through reduction by Fe(II) forms. At this pH range the Fe (II) ions form an insoluble species onto which the Cr (III) ions are absorbed (Mukhopadhyay et al. 2007). At low pH, electro-dissolution of Fe electrodes involves ionisation of Fe which reacts directly with the Cr (VI) in the solution reducing it to Cr(III) (Barrera-Díaz et al. 2012).

Adsorption processes can remove Cr contamination under the right conditions. Activated carbon is a well-established adsorbent for removing organics and metals from solutions. Adsorption of Cr(VI) to activated carbon is primarily due to electrostatic attraction and this process depends on the pH of the solution. Conducting polymers such as polypyrrole (PPy) and polyaniline (PANI) have been shown to be cost-effective adsorbents for Cr(VI) removal due to their ion exchange properties and inherent ability to reduce Cr(VI) to less toxic Cr(III). The adsorption-coupled reduction reaction is considered the main mechanism of Cr(VI) adsorption under acidic conditions.

Many studies have found that anionic Cr(VI) species (CrO_4^{2-} and $HCrO_4^-$) is adsorbed onto positively charged surfaces/adsorbent at low pH values. Under acidic conditions the potential for Cr(VI) to be reduced to Cr(III) is increased (Miretzky and Cirelli 2010). Various adsorbents have been used for treating Cr(VI) containing water including activated carbons, zeolites, biosorbents, clay minerals and oxides, polymeric resins and agricultural and industrial waste materials (Miretzky and Cirelli 2010). The drawback of adsorption processes is the chemical addition as a pretreatment to lower pH (Kera et al. 2017).

12.3 Precious Metals and Rare Earth Elements

12.3.1 Gold

Due to its excellent thermal and electrical conductivity and high corrosion resistance, gold is indispensable in electronics for semiconductors and connectors in computer technology. It is also used in jewellery, dental work, electrical contacts and wires, photography and as a coloured coating for special types of glass. Gold is also good at reflecting heat and thus often used as the plating on spacecraft to keep them cool. Different species of gold have been applied in medicine; e.g. a radioactive isotope of gold (198Au) and a compound of gold (sodium aurothiomalate) are often used to treat cancer and rheumatoid arthritis, respectively (Izatt et al. 2014).

Therefore, with the growing demand of its industrial and medical applications and its limited natural sources, recovery of gold from secondary sources, such as the waste electrical, printed circuit board, spent electroplating wastewater and other solutions, is an alternative to recycle an irreplaceable resource that otherwise would be discarded (Izatt et al. 2014).

Hydrometallurgy can be directly applied in recovery of liquid gold sources, but in case of solid gold sources, the procedure leaching is needed prior to hydrometallurgy by using suitable lixiviants to extract a soluble constituent from a solid substance. Sodium cyanide and potassium cyanide are the most common gold lixiviants to dissolve gold under aerated conditions (Bisceglie et al. 2017). Gold cyanidation is an electrochemical process where the gold dissolves in the alkaline cyanide solution and forms the water-soluble dicyanoaurate (I) gold complex as shown in Eq. (12.1):

$$4\mathrm{Au} + 8\mathrm{KCN} + \mathrm{O_2} + 2\mathrm{H_2O} \rightarrow 4\mathrm{K}\left[\mathrm{Au}\left(\mathrm{CN}\right)_2\right] + 4\mathrm{KOH} \tag{12.1}$$

Due to the toxicity issues of cyanide and the limitation of slow dissolution process, some alternative lixiviants such as thiosulfate, thiourea and halides are developed and applied. For example, the hot aqua regia, a mixture of nitric acid and hydrochloric acid containing chlorine gas (Cl_2/HCl), is widely adopted in small and medium operations (Eq. 12.2), despite the main inconvenience of the production of toxic gas, a major hazard for workplace environments (Mack et al. 2007; Won et al. 2014):

$$2\mathrm{Au} + 3\mathrm{Cl_2} + 2\mathrm{HCl} \rightarrow 2\mathrm{HAuCl_4} \tag{12.2}$$

Thiourea ($CS(NH)_2$) has received considerable interest as an alternative lixiviant for gold extraction with several advantages over the conventional cyanidation (Ubaldini et al. 1998), such as a low environmental impact, an easier handling of reagent, a greater selectivity towards gold and fast kinetics of gold dissolution. In the presence of a suitable oxidising agent, such as O_2, H_2O_2 or Fe^{3+}, thiourea will solubilise gold to give a gold(I) species (Eq. 12.3):

$$\mathrm{Au} + 2\mathrm{CS}\left(\mathrm{NH_2}\right)_2 \rightarrow \mathrm{Au}\left[\mathrm{CS}\left(\mathrm{NH_2}\right)_2\right]^{2+} + \mathrm{e} \tag{12.3}$$

However, with the main disadvantages of expensive oxidant ferric ion, higher consumption of reagent in comparison with cyanide and several technical problems associated with the use of thiourea, few industrial applications have been achieved to date.

In hydrometallurgical process, chemical precipitation, solvent extraction and ion exchange are the most extensively employed methods to recover the gold from those leaching aqueous solution. Various other methods such as zinc dust cementation and activated carbon adsorption have also been applied for the recovery of gold and other precious metals (Ju et al. 2016). Some modified activated adsorbents act as an alternative to commercial activated carbon for gold recovery, which are generated from agriculture and industrial by-products such as eggshell membrane, dealginated seaweed, alginated beads and persimmon tannin (Maruyama et al. 2014; Ju et al. 2016). However, the main limitations of these methods shown in Table 12.2 have restricted their application in recovery of gold from wastewaters. This has motivated researchers to develop alternative technologies for separation, pre-concentration and removal of gold ions from aqueous solutions especially for the treatment of low concentration metal wastewater (below 10–40 mg/L) (Ju et al. 2016).

12.3.2 Lanthanum

Lanthanum is one of the most abundant and commonly used rare earth metals (REE) in industrial processes. Rare earth elements (REE) are a group of metals constituting 17 elements of which 15 are lanthanides. These metals can be grouped into light rare earth metals, lanthanum (La), cerium (Ce), praseodymium (Pr), neodymium

Table 12.2 Advantages and disadvantages of conventional and current technologies for gold recovery

Technologies	Advantages	Disadvantages	References
Chemical precipitation	Simple and cheap operation means	Large volume of wastewater to be treated, poor selectivity for precipitation steps, lengthy refining time and labour-intensive processes	Won et al. (2014), Mack et al. (2007)
Solvent extraction	High selectivity, short operation times, high purity	Solvent loss and subsequent wastewater treatment	Mooiman and Miller (1991), Parajuli et al. (2006)
Ion exchange	High recovery efficiency	Pretreatment required, limited availability of highly selective resins, regeneration of spent resins	Gomes et al. (2001), Kurniawan et al. (2006)
Zinc dust cementation	High recovery efficiency	High initial capital cost, intensive energy consumption and process complexity	Miller et al. (1990)
Activated carbon adsorption	Large surface area and high adsorption capacity	High cost for production and regeneration of activated carbon	Ishikawa et al. (2002), Maruyama et al. (2014)
Biosorption	Low cost, environmentally benign, operation over wide range of pH and temperature, biomass regeneration	Difficulty of separating adsorbents from diluted solutions and lack of selectivity for target metals	Das (2010), Shen et al. (2017)

(Nd) and samarium (Sm), and heavy metals, europium (Eu), gadolinium (Gd), terbium (Tb), dysprosium (Dy), holmium (Ho), erbium (Er), thulium (Th), ytterbium (Yb), lutetium (Lu) and yttrium (Y) (Emmanuel et al. 2012). The difference in lanthanides is the electrostatic effect associated with increase in nuclear charge and correlated to the contraction responsible for the weak differences in chemical properties (Martins and Isolani 2005).

This explains the difficulty in separating the elements with several steps involved like solvent extraction and/or ion exchange resins both very costly (Palmieri et al. 2000; Palmieri et al. 2002). Lanthanum is one of the most commonly used REE in industries such as super alloys, special ceramics, catalysts in petroleum refining, motion picture industry for making carbonic lamps, optical industry for making specialised lenses, making of special ceramics and catalysts, among others (Sert et al. 2008; Awwad et al. 2010). The leading producers of REE are China, Australia and the USA with the former having the largest supply estimated at 95% of global production (Binnemans et al. 2013; U.S. Geological Survey 2014). With the increasing economic importance of REE and an increase in supply risk, European Commission (EU 2010) has ranked these metals as critical raw materials (Fig. 12.1) (Binnemans et al. 2013).

Therefore, the need to focus on alternatives for recycling of REE from industrial wastewater and residue containing these metals is required. Recovery of REE from wastewater using conventional methods such as precipitation, extraction and ion exchange is inefficient due to the low concentrations less than 20 mg/L and high concentrations of the associated metals such as titanium, calcium, iron and aluminium (Korenevsky et al. 1998; Chandra et al. 2009; Gaur et al. 2014).

12.4 Bioremediation Technologies

12.4.1 Phytoremediation

Heavy metals break into food chain through biogeochemical cycles from natural leachate, wastes, discharge into the environment and direct application of agrochemicals, grey water use and manure, among others. It can be absorbed by plants from soil with elevated concentration, thus leading to bioaccumulation in plant tissues. Bioaccumulation is a metabolic independent process involving attachment of toxic elements initially at the surface followed by active transportation of metal ions into the cells (Flouty and Estephane 2012; Mishra and Bharagava 2016; Saxena et al. 2019a, b). In bioaccumulation, the tolerance of metal ions is due to the presence of metabolic pathways that utilise toxic metals as a source of energy for growth (Shukla et al. 2018). At a higher concentration of metal ions, it causes phytotoxicity effect, thus inducing oxidative pressure and distorting photosynthetic process which, in effect, deregulate metabolic order in plants (Ibrahim et al. 2011; Gitet et al. 2016; Saxena et al. 2019a, b).

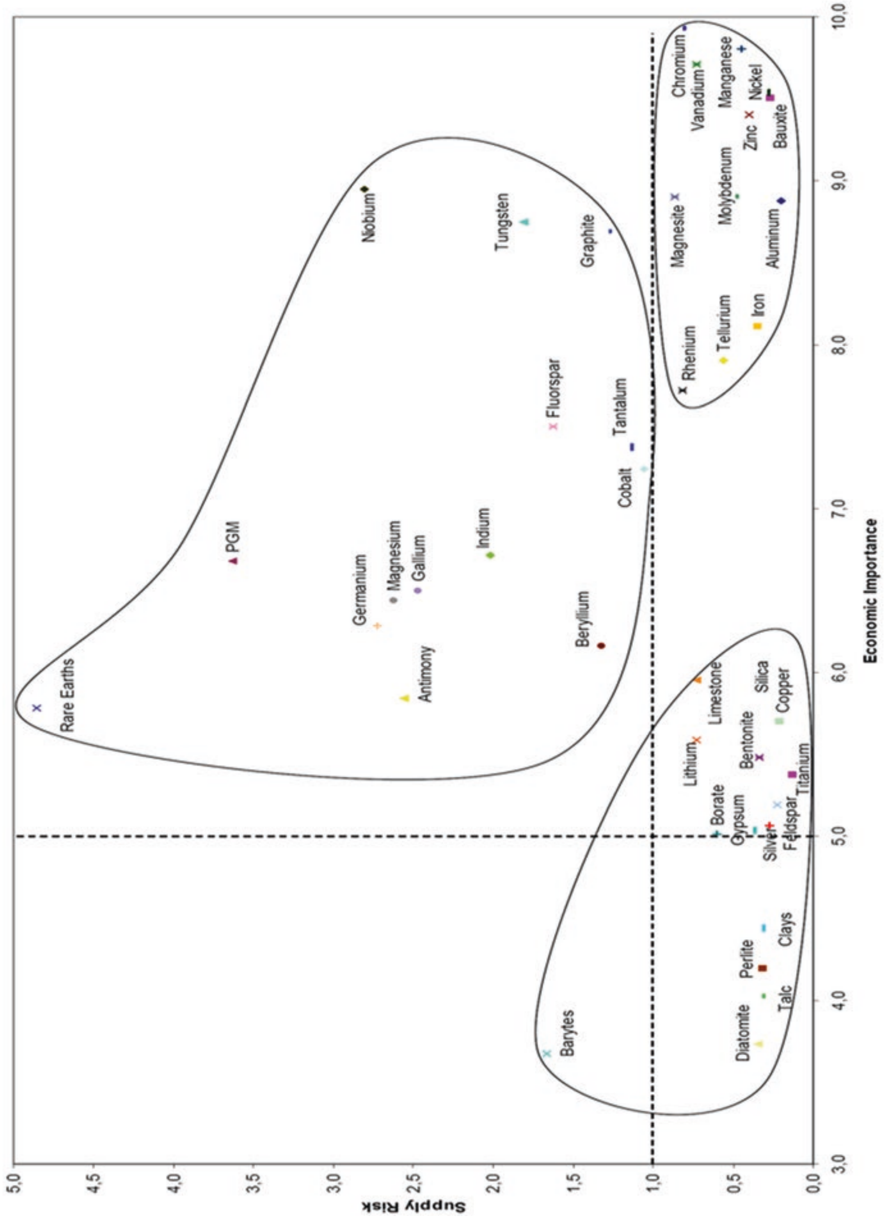


Fig. 12.1 Critical raw materials showing level of supply risk of REE (EU 2010). (Adapted from Binnemans et al. 2013)

Phytoremediation biotechnology, whereby plants are used to clean up the environment, has been widely embraced. Phytoremediation has been defined as the use of green plants and their associated rhizospheric microorganisms, soil amendments and agronomic techniques to remove, degrade or detoxify harmful environmental pollutants (Kadukova and Kavulicova 2010). This offers efficient tools which are environmentally friendly to ecosystem restoration. In addition, the cost of phytoremediation is comparable to regular farming activities (Witters et al. 2009; Kadukova and Kavulicova 2010). Phytoremediation techniques used in environmental cleanup (soil and water) include: phytostabilisation, phytoextraction, rhizofiltration, phytovolatilisation, phototransformation, dendroremediation and hydraulic control, among others (Prasad and Hagemeyer 1999; Kadukova and Kavulicova 2010).

Prasad and Hagemeyer (1999) have noted that the use of plants for remediating trace metal environmental contamination features several merits such as: large-scale application, relative economy, aesthetic value and requiring a smaller reclamation centre for extracting the heavy metals, among others. This would eventually promote industrial environmental sustainability and restore ecosystem functioning. Some plants have been found to be resistant to high metal concentration and can even grow in metal contaminated surroundings (Jobby et al. 2018). These plants can absorb toxic metals from the surrounding soil or hydroponic systems and accumulate the metal inside the plant tissue. These plants are called “hyperaccumulators”. Cr is usually accumulated in the root tissues of plants and is not normally translocated up to aboveground shoots (Lotfy and Mostafa 2014).

The sulphate transport system in the roots allows Cr(VI) to enter the plants. Plants can also neutralise Cr contamination by reducing Cr(VI) to Cr(III), which is then stored in the plant tissue (Cervantes et al. 2001). This ability to reduce Cr(VI) inside the plant is facilitated by specific enzymes which are similar to bacterial chromate reductase. The extent of plant Cr(VI) reduction is difficult to estimate as soils and hydroponic media also reduce Cr(VI) (Cervantes et al. 2001). Cr(III) cations can also be absorbed by plants through a mechanism which include the binding of the positively charged metal ions to negative charges in the cell wall (Lotfy and Mostafa 2014). However, phytoremediation treatment process requires an extended period of time for decontamination of metal in soils (Lotfy and Mostafa 2014). Literature reveals that plants have been central in monitoring metal levels and toxicity in the environment using multiple techniques and methods across the globe. These include FAAS, ICP-AES, ICP, ICP-MS, ICP-OES, CV-AAS, XFS and XRF (Wei and Yang 2010; Su et al. 2014) in different studies.

12.4.2 Bio-adsorption

Bio-adsorption is a passive and metabolically independent process using dead biomass for the treatment of wastewater containing heavy metals (Volesky 1990; Malik 2004). In adsorption, the process occurs at the surface of another molecule while absorption involves incorporation of a substance into another of a different state

(Borda and Sparks 2008; Gaur et al. 2014). The use of dead biomass offers the possibility of regeneration and reuse of the biosorbents, no nutrient requirements, rapid process and pollutant cellular surface bound especially from high volumes of diluted solutions (Volesky 2001; Mehta and Gaur 2005; Chojnacka 2010).

This is mainly attributed to the active functional groups of the cell wall, which provide binding sites, e.g. carboxyl, phosphate, amines, hydroxyl and phenols, among others (Rezaee et al. 2006; Wang and Chen 2009). Figure 12.2 shows the various steps involved in removal and recovery of metals from industrial wastewater using microbial organisms.

12.4.2.1 Mechanisms in Bio-adsorption Processes

There are several mechanisms in the biosorption processes which depend on the type of species and the metal to be sorbed, the binding strength, number of binding sites, functional groups and availability and accessibility of sites (Salama et al. 2017). Due to complexity of solution chemistry, surface composition and structure, some properties operate concurrently to varying degrees (Volesky and Holan 1995; Gaur et al. 2014). Bio-adsorption mechanisms are classified into metabolic dependent and non-metabolic dependent according to their cell functionality (Veglio and Beolchini 1997; Gaur et al. 2014). The metabolic-dependent mechanisms occur in living organisms and involve transport across the cell membrane and precipitation (Brierley 1990; Costa and Leite 1990). The non-metabolic mechanism is different

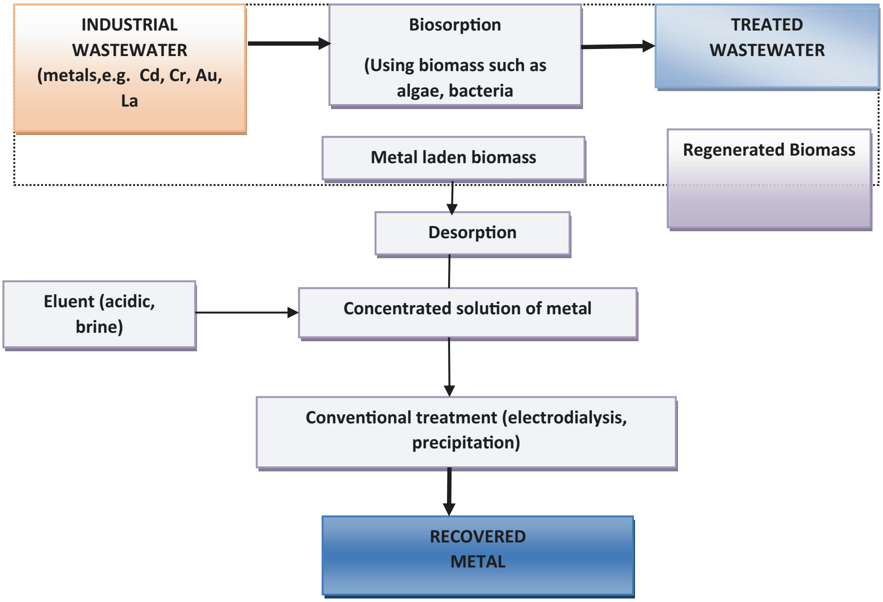


Fig. 12.2 Steps in bio-adsorption and desorption. (Modified from Chojnacka 2010)

on the functional groups on the cell wall and these include ion exchange, coordination, surface precipitation, chelation/complexation and physical adsorption (Farooq et al. 2010; Vijayaraghavan and Yun 2008).

In addition, extracellular polymer substances influence the mechanisms (Li and Yu 2014). A comprehensive understanding of the biosorption mechanisms responsible for metal binding assists in the performance optimisation of new biosorbents. Figure 12.3 shows the various interactions involved in biosorption mechanisms depending on the location of the metal ions either in adsorbate or adsorbent.

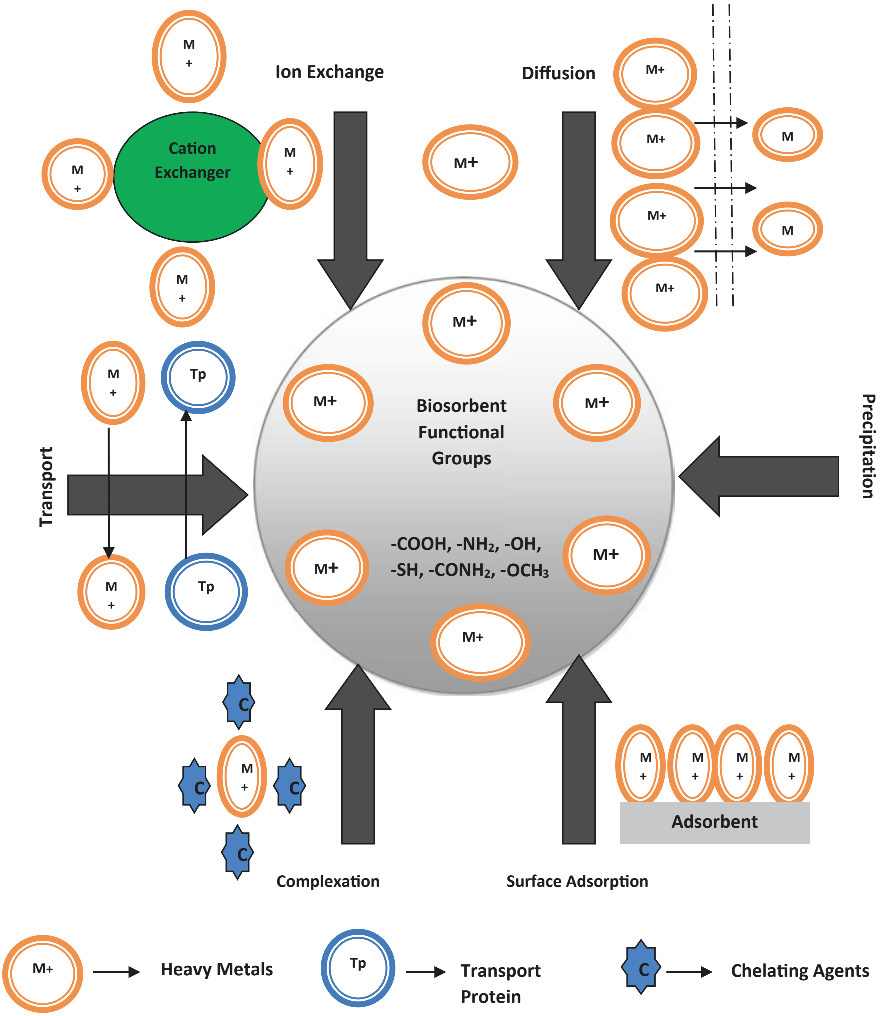


Fig. 12.3 Biosorption mechanism based on cellular metabolism and location of biosorption. (Adapted from Gaur et al. 2014)

Some researchers have reported that ion exchange is the principal mechanism in biosorption (Allen and Brown 1995; Arief et al. 2008; Birungi and Chirwa 2015a). Ion exchange is a reversible chemical where an ion within a solution is replaced by a similarly charged ion attached onto an immobile solid particle (Han et al. 2006). Other researchers suggest an interaction of ion exchange and formation of complexes between metal cations and ligands as well as precipitation of surface of cell wall (Crist et al. 1994; Schiewer and Volesky 2000).

Although several mechanisms have been proposed, the actual mechanisms involved in metal biosorption are not fully understood (Wang and Chen 2006). Analytical techniques can be used to understand possible mechanisms as they complement each other in providing insight of biosorption processes (Park et al. 2010; Michalak et al. 2013). In the biosorption studies using green algae from freshwaters bodies, the algal cell wall was characterised before and after biosorption. It was found that the most active functional groups responsible for lanthanum and thallium sorption included carboxyl, amines and phenols (Birungi and Chirwa 2014; Birungi and Chirwa 2015a).

12.4.2.2 Microalgae as Sorbents for Heavy Metals

Algae are eukaryotic organisms that contain chlorophyll and carry out exogenic photosynthesis. Algal is usually broadly identified under two main groups viz-a-viz macro- and microalgae. Based on their pigmentation, macroalgae are further subdivided into brown seaweed, red seaweed and green seaweed. Microalgae are microscopic organisms with the three most abundant being diatoms, green algae and golden algae (Madigan et al. 1997, Carlsson and Bowles 2007).

Microalgae proliferate everywhere in both freshwater and marine environment and in a range of 200,000–800,000 species with only about 35,000 described (Ebenezer et al. 2012; Cheng and Ogden 2011). In spite of their local availability, only a small percentage of the freshwater algae species that has been investigated thus far has been demonstrated to be capable of adsorbing a wide range of metallic species from wastewater (Davis et al. 2003; Mehta and Gaur 2005; Lesmana et al. 2009).

Many algal studies found that maximum Cr adsorption or loading capacity of the cells increases with an increase in initial Cr ion concentrations (Dönmez and Aksu 2002; Onyancha et al. 2008; Gokhale et al. 2008). This increase is attributed to the increase in the number of ions competing for the available binding sites in the biomass. When the algal cell surface is surrounded by smaller amount of Cr ions, the ions tend to also form multiple bonds with the surface groups; thus the loading capacity gets exhausted even with lower amount of Cr ions adsorbed. At high initial Cr ion concentrations, the ions tend to bind with fewer binding sites (Gokhale et al. 2008). High initial Cr concentration provides an important driving force to overcome mass transfer resistance of metal ion between the aqueous and solid phases due to a higher probability of collusion between metal ions and biosorbents (Onyancha et al. 2008; Dönmez et al. 1999).

Indhumathi et al. (2014) used *Chlorella vulgaris* as adsorbent for chromium removal and achieved 99.75% chromium removal after 60 min at a pH of 3. Chromium can inhibit *Chlorella vulgaris* growth in a dose-dependent manner (Qian et al. 2013). Pagnanelli et al. (2013) found that reducing the ionic strength and increasing the initial chromium concentration resulted in an increase of total Cr removal using algae. Bishnoi et al. (2007) also found that there is a highest initial Cr(III) concentration limit which allowed for the best Cr(III) removal and any further increases in the initial Cr(III) concentration resulted in a decrease percentage removal. The available binding sites on the surface of the algae cell are saturated at a certain Cr(III) concentration, thereby inhibiting further adsorption of Cr(III) ions (Bishnoi et al. 2007). The available sites on the biosorbents are the limiting factor for the biosorption (Akhtar et al. 2008).

Birungi and Chirwa (2014, 2015a, b) tested the ability of three algal species for removal of Cd, La and Tl at an initial concentration of 50 mg/L at a constant biomass and pH. *Stichococcus bacillaris* showed the highest metal removal for Cd at 62.9%, whereas *Chloroidium saccharophilum* had the highest removal of La at 57.62%. All the three species were able to remove 100% Tl (Table 12.3).

12.4.2.3 Immobilisation of Microalgal Cells

Microalgae have a relatively high sorption for removal of heavy metals from wastewater but the main challenge encountered is the free algal cells. Due to the particle size, the free cells have low mechanical strength which makes it difficult to separate the biomass from solution for recycling purposes. The immobilised cells improve operational performance as they provide stability of free cells, hence improving mechanical strength, and can be reused without loss of cells as compared to free cells (Bikram et al. 2014; de-Bashan and Bashan 2010). Various immobilising techniques have been used, for example, crosslinking of cells, encapsulation in polymer gels and entrapment in polymeric matrix. Examples of natural immobilising agents used include alginate, carrageenan, agarose, acrylamide, polyurethane and polyvinyl (Rangsayatorna et al. 2004; Akhtar et al. 2008).

Some of the issues with synthetic immobilisation techniques are the cost of immobilisation agent, disposal after reuse and restricted diffusion due to closed embedding structure. Natural immobilising agents that are eco-friendly and low cost have been suggested, for example, loofa sponge. Some studies have reported

Table 12.3 Adsorption potential for three algal species at initial concentration of 50 mg/L at constant pH and biomass

		Final conc. (mg/L)			Metal removal (%)		
Species	Initial conc. (mg/L)	Cd	La	Tl	Cd	La	Tl
Desmodesmus multivariabilis	50	32.85	33.48	0	34.3	33.04	100
Chloroidium saccharophilum	50	33.2	21.19	0	33.6	57.62	100
Stichococcus bacillaris	50	18.55	22.33	0	62.9	55.34	100

the use of immobilised algal cells using loofa sponge (Table 12.4). It can be noted an increase in the metal uptake with immobilised algae as compared to free cells in all the studies (Table 12.4).

12.5 Bioflocculation

Bioflocculation is an environmentally friendly technology induced by various types of microorganisms (self-flocculating algae, bacteria, fungi or yeast), by extracellular polymer substances or by bioflocculants produced by algae or bacteria (also known as flocculating agents). Compared with the traditional flocculation method, such as metal coagulants, magnetic coagulants, electrocoagulation and ultrasound, bioflocculation is a low-cost harvesting method with no need of additional toxic chemical agents (Zhou et al. 2015; Alam et al. 2016). Recently, several novel approaches based on algal-bacterial, algal-fungal and algal-algal interactions for microalgae harvesting using bioflocculation have been explored (Alam et al. 2016).

12.5.1 Algal-Bacterial Bioflocculation

The mechanisms underlying microalgal bioflocculation via bacterial bioflocculants are poorly understood. Two possible mechanisms are proposed by Wang et al. (2012) and Wan et al. (2013); the first is aggregation triggered by compounds, such as polysaccharides, proteins or other bioflocculant agents produced by bacteria, and the second is aggregation triggered by direct interaction between

Table 12.4 Comparison of free and immobilised algae for metal uptake using loofa sponge

Species	Immobilising agent	Metals	Initial conc. (mg/L)	$q_{\max}$ (mg/g) Free cells	$q_{\max}$ (mg/g) Immobilised cells	References
Chlamydomonas reinhardtii	Loofa sponge	Cd	15–150	23.31	86.21	Birungi and Chirwa (2016)
Chlamydomonas reinhardtii	Loofa sponge	Tl	15–500	1000	5000	Birungi and Chirwa (2016)
Chlorella sorokiniana	Loofa sponge	Ni	2.5–200	45.87	59.58	Akhtar et al. (2004)
Chlorella sorokiniana	Loofa sponge	Cr	100–300	4.97	69.26	Akhtar et al. (2008)
Synechococcus sp. (blue green algae)	Loofa sponge	Cd	10	47.73	57.76	Saeed and Iqbal (2006)

the bacteria and microalgae, which could be facilitated by proteins on the bacterial cell wall or the flagellum.

Wan et al. (2013) found that the bioflocculant could be recovered after filtration and evaporation of the filtrate. The loss of flocculation efficiency in recycling results in only 3%, thereby drastically reducing the cost of the harvesting process. Moreover, the bioflocculant is not toxic to microalgal cells and thus maintains their integrity. However, the large-scale application of microalgal bioflocculation via bacterial is restricted by the need of supplementary substrates and extra energy sources to support bacterial growth, as well as the potential danger of unwanted bacterial contamination of the microalgal production plant (Alam et al. 2016).

12.5.2 Algal-Fungal Bioflocculation

In recent years, several filamentous fungi (*Mucor circinelloides*, *Penicillium expansum* and *Rhizopus oryzae*) were found to be able to form pellets via co-culturing with the non-filamentous microalgae cells under controlled operating conditions (Alam et al. 2016). Zhou et al. (2012) reported that almost 100% of *C. vulgaris UMN235* cells were captured by *Aspergillus* sp. spores onto the pellets within shorter retention time. The fungi-algae pellets can be easily harvested by simple filtration due to their large size (2–5 mm) and their use in the efficient removal of nitrogen and phosphate in wastewater treatment.

Numerous theories have been proposed to explain the algae-fungi pellet formation process; however, the details are still unclear. The mutual attraction through differences in surface charge between microalgae and filamentous fungi cells may be attributed to the co-pellet formation. Several fungi have positively charged hyphae that interact with the negatively charged microalgal cell surface and thus cause flocculation. Moreover, fungal hyphae and mycelia containing polysaccharides with charged active sites may enable surface bio-adsorption. Fungi-assisted algae harvesting technology is an attractive approach in terms of commercialisation, as significantly reducing the production cost. However, the challenge of efficient separation of the fungi and microalgal cells makes this method unsuitable for food or pharmaceutical industries (Alam et al. 2016).

12.5.3 Algal-Algal Bioflocculation

Recently, several self-flocculating microalgae, such as *E. texensis SAG79.80*, *T. obliquus AS-6-1* and *C. vulgaris JSC-7*, have demonstrated their bioflocculating properties (Alam et al. 2016; Zhang et al. 2016), with the ability to aggregate together and form flocs, which facilitate their gravity sedimentation for separation from aqueous solutions. The underlying mechanism, however, is poorly understood and deserves further research (Vandamme et al. 2013). Bridging and patching mechanisms are suggested by several studies on this chemical-free method for flocculating microalgae. When a large network of microalgal cells is formed, the mechanism involved is bridging. If, on the other hand, the cells are more closely attached, the mechanism involved may be patching through the infochemicals excreted by flocculating microalgae (Alam et al. 2016).

There are indications that the infochemicals such as polysaccharides, polyunsaturated aldehydes, glycoproteins and some soluble cell wall proteins isolated from the flocculating microalgae are capable of inducing flocculation in a culture of another species of microalgae (Salim et al. 2011; Taylor et al. 2012; Alam et al. 2014). The bioflocculation of freely suspended microalgae triggered by using the self-flocculating microalgae or infochemicals excreted from flocculating microalgae is particularly interesting and promising. However, the addition of excessive volumes of self-flocculating microalgae for a desirable harvesting efficiency and the additional cost of the production and purification of the infochemicals present a challenge for the industrial application of self-flocculating microalgae (Alam et al. 2016).

12.6 Bio-recovery of Precious Metals and Rare Earths

The efficiency of biosorption exploitation depends on the level of regeneration of biosorbents for reuse in a number of cycles (Bishnoi and Garima 2005). The entire biosorption process consists of adsorption-desorption cycle using various eluents. Selection of a suitable eluent is a challenge and also required for a successful desorption process, which strongly depends on the type of biosorbent and the mechanism of biosorption. The eluents must meet the following requirements: non-damaging to the biomass, less costly, environmental friendly and effective (Vijayaraghavan and Yun 2008; Lesmana et al. 2009). Various chemical reagents have been utilised in the recovery of metals especially dilute acids, e.g. nitric acid (HNO_3), sulphuric acid (H_2SO_4) and hydrochloric acid (HCl). The efficiency of the eluent can be expressed as a solid/liquid ratio (S/L) with the solid representing the metal-laden biomass and the liquid as the eluent. High values of S/L are preferred (Volesky 1987; Kuyucak and Volesky 1989).

12.6.1 Gold Recovery

Recently, freshwater green algae have been demonstrated as efficient adsorbents for gold recovery, with the advantages of their low-cost relative abundance and high binding capacity (Shen and Chirwa 2018a). Other authors also previously reported that the gold (III) were reduced to elemental gold using the dead unicellular algae *Chlorella vulgaris* (Hosea et al. 1986; Greene et al. 1986 and Ting et al. 1995). Their studies suggested that the microalgae rapidly reduced gold(III) to gold(I) and that the algal bound gold slowly reduced to gold(0). Initially, most research focussed on the use of brown and red algae as biosorbent for gold recovery. The bioreduction of gold(III) to gold(0) using the dead biomass of brown alga *Fucus vesiculosus* was investigated by Mata et al. (2009). The recovery and reduction process took place in two stages with an induction period (first stage) lasted about 60 min previous to gold reduction (second stage). The second stage lasted almost 8 h and was characterised by a color change of solution from bright yellow to reddish purple which is associated to gold reduction and the presence of gold nanoparticles.

The similar colour change was observed in the cases of biosorbents using brown alga *Turbinaria conoides* (Vijayaraghavan et al. 2011) and red alga *Chondrus crispus* (Castro et al. 2013). Vijayaraghavan et al. (2011) also found that the biosorption process was rapid and completed within 60 min of contact. After 60 min, *T. conoides* reduced Au(III) to gold nanoparticles. Electrostatic interaction between anion $AuCl_4^-$ and positively charged functional groups, such as amino groups (NH_2) on the algal surface, was proposed to be responsible to the biosorption mechanism. Hydroxyl groups present in the brown algal polysaccharides were involved in the bioreduction of Au(III) to Au(0), which is well in accordance with the previous studies by Mata et al. (2009).

Research effort was more focussed towards recovery of gold nanoparticles deposited on the surface of sorbents but the challenge is how to separate those gold nanoparticles from the metal-laden biosorbents. One method is using the aqua regia to digest the biosorbents to get the gold ions, but its disadvantage is the biosorbents can only be used once. Therefore, recovery of gold via adsorption and desorption before Au(III) reduced to Au(0) offers an alternative option. Ju et al. (2016) reported that over 90% of gold and palladium could be selectively recovered from aqua regia-based metal wastewater by red alga *Galdieria sulphuraria*. These metals were eluted from the algal cells into ammonium solutions containing 0.2 M ammonium salts without other contaminating metals. Shen and Chirwa (2018a) suggested that the freshwater microalga *Tetradesmus obliquus* AS-6-1 is a promising and efficient biosorbent for gold recovery. The level of Au (III) uptake by *T. obliquus* AS-6-1 could approach 15% of the organism's dry weight at the optimum operating conditions. The gold-loaded biomass of *T. obliquus* AS-6-1 was able to be regenerated by 0.1 M thiourea at pH 2.0 and retained good adsorption/desorption capability.

Microprecipitation/bioreduction leading to colloidal or nanoparticle metals on the sorbent is preferable for the recovery of gold in the biosorption process, which has been proposed by many researchers using algae (Greene et al. 1986; Mata et al. 2009; Vijayaraghavan et al. 2011), plants (Gamez et al. 2000) and industrial wastes (Maruyama et al. 2014). The gold(III) ion taken up by those biosorbents was initially reduced to gold(I) and then slowly reduced to gold(0) deposited on the surface of biosorbents with the form of nanoparticles or nanoplates (Greene et al. 1986).

The main functional groups responsible for the reduction of Au(III) to Au(0) on the cell surface are carboxyl and hydroxyl groups which are abundant in polysaccharides of the algal cell wall (Mack et al. 2007; Mata et al. 2009). Furthermore, the electrostatic interaction and ion exchange may also be responsible for the gold binding which was assumed by Ramesh et al. (2008) using chitosan resin and Shen and

Chirwa (2018b) using microalgal adsorbent. It is possible that the combinations of several of these mechanisms are responsible for the gold biosorption, depending on the biosorbents and solution environment. Several studies have been conducted to identify appropriate eluents for the gold recovery as shown in Table 12.5. Because thiourea in acidic solution can form a relatively stable complex with gold(III) and gold(I) and elutes ions efficiently, solution containing thiourea is commonly chosen as eluent for gold desorption (Ju et al. 2016).

12.6.2 Chromium Recovery

NaOH has been found to be effective in recovering Cr(III) but total recovery of Cr(III) is not possible if the absorption mechanism involves surface complexation. A strong alkali desorbent such as NaOH can damage the cell walls of the microalgae (Han et al. 2006). OH− has a strong affinity for Cr(III) and forms $Cr(OH)_4$− readily. Cr(III) cannot be easily replaced by protons; thus HCl is not very effective desorbent. However, some studies have found that nitric acid, HNO_3, was also an effective desorbing agent and that the microalgae retained their biosorption capacity after desorption, but at high HNO_3 concentration (>0.1 M) serious damage was done to the microalgae and subsequently lost its biosorption capacity (Akhtar et al. 2008; Chojnacka et al. 2005). Shokri et al. (2015) also found that the green microalgae were regenerated when using HNO_3 as a desorbent for Cr(III) desorption. Cr(VI) is considered a strong oxidation agent; therefore a biosorbent that is more oxidation resistant will be easier to recover. If algal bound Cr(VI) is reduced to Cr(III), then the recovery of Cr(VI) ions is limited but the recovery of Cr(III) is possible (Cabatingan et al. 2001).

12.7 Conclusion

Green technology using phycoremediation and phytoremediation is a current technology that has been recognised for a long time as an alternative for treatment of wastewater containing heavy metals. Various macro- and microorganisms have been tested especially at laboratory scale to determine the sorption potential of heavy metals and recovery of precious and rare metals. The hyperaccumulators which are extremely resistant to high metal concentration can be used for ecosystem restoration over a long period of time. Various technologies including bioaccumulation, biosorption and bioflocculation show potential for commercial application to industry. Microalgae are widely studied due to their notable adsorption of heavy metals and recovery of target elements compared to other microorganisms. The main challenge that could affect the utilisation of microalgae at industrial scale is determining less costly and eco-friendly immobilising agents to improve the mechanical strength for reusability purposes. There is, therefore, a need to undertake more pilot studies

Table 12.5 Eluents for different gold-loaded adsorbents

Biosorbent	Eluent	Desorption performance	References
Chlorella vulgaris	Thiourea, mercaptoethanol	Algal-bound Au and Hg can be selectively eluted by mercaptoethanol	Darnall et al. (1986)
Sargassum natans	Thiourea	Maximum desorption was achieved with 0.1 M thiourea containing 0.02 M $NH_4Fe(SO_4)_2$	Kuyucak and Volesky (1989)
Immobilised persimmon tannin	1 M thiourea	Almost 100% of gold desorption in the five adsorption/desorption cycles	Nakajima and Sakaguchi (1993)
Eggshell membrane	NaOH, NaCN	>95% of gold(I) desorption using 0.1 M NaOH; >92% of gold(III) desorption using 0.1 M NaCN	Ishikawa et al. (2002)
Chitosan resin	0.5 M thiourea + 0.2 M H_2SO_4	Adsorption/desorption cycles up to four runs	Donia et al. (2007)
Activated carbon derived from hard shell of apricot	Acetonitrile, acetone, methanol, ethanol, isopropanol	Near 90% of gold desorption using 40% acetone. The capacity of gold desorption using these eluents was in the order: Acetone > acetonitrile > methanol > ethanol > isopropanol	Soleimani and Kaghazchi (2008)
Sargassum biomass	NaOH	Maximum desorption of 97.8% was achieved with 2 M NaOH	Sathishkumar et al. (2010)
$Fe_3O_4@SiO_2$ nanoparticles	Thiourea + HCl	96.2% of gold desorption using 2% of thiourea containing 1 M HCl	Zhang et al. (2013)
L-cysteine impregnated alginate capsules	Thiourea + HCl	98.5% of gold desorption was achieved by 0.1 M thiourea in 0.1 M HCl	Kotte and Yun (2014)
Red alga, *Galdieria sulphuraria*	HCl, $NH_4Br + NH_3$, $NH_4Cl + NH_3$, KOH, thiourea + HCl	78% of Au^{3+} was eluted by 1 M thiourea and 0.1 M HCl with the elution of other contaminating metals; 48% of Au^{3+} was eluted by 0.2 M NH_4Cl with 2.8% NH_3 without the elution of other contaminating metals	Ju et al. (2016)
Freshwater Microalgae *Scenedesmus obliquus AS-6-1*	Thiourea at different pH	Desorption efficiency retained 95%, 94% and 88% in three adsorption/desorption cycles, respectively, using 0.1 M thiourea at pH 2.0	Shen and Chirwa (2018a)

as most studies were undertaken in the laboratory to establish the cost implications of using bioremediation technologies compared to traditional technologies without compromising the environment. In addition, there is a need to determine the longevity of reuse of the biosorbents as disposal becomes a secondary problem.

Acknowledgement The authors would like to thank the National Research Foundation under the innovative postdoctoral scholarship and Sedibeng Water, South Africa, for funding the research under the division of water utilisation, department of chemical engineering, University of Pretoria, South Africa.

References

Adriano DC (2001) Trace elements in terrestrial environments biogeochemistry, bioavailability and risks of metals, 2nd edn. Springer, New York, p 264

Ahluwalia SS, Goyal D (2007) Microbial and plant derived biomass for removal of heavy metals from wastewater. Bioresour Technol 98:2243–2257

Akhtar N, Iqbal J, Iqbal M (2004) Removal and recovery of nickel(II) from aqueous solution by loofa sponge-immobilized biomass of Chlorella Sorokiniana: characterization studies. J Hazard Mater B108:85–94

Akhtar N, Iqbal M, Zafar SI, Iqbal J (2008) Biosorption characteristics of unicellular green alga Chlorella sorokiniana immobilized in loofa sponge for removal of Cr(III). J Environ Sci 20(2):231–239

Alam MA, Wan C, Guo SL, Zhao XQ, Huang ZY, Yang YL, Chang JS, Bai FW (2014) Characterization of the flocculating agent from the spontaneously flocculating microalga Chlorella vulgaris JSC-7. J Biosci Bioeng 118:29–33

Alam MA, Vandamme D, Chun W, Zhao X, Foubert I, Wang Z, Muylaert K, Yuan Z (2016) Bioflocculation as an innovative harvesting strategy for microalgae. Rev Environ Sci Biotechnol 15:573–583

Allen SJ, Brown PA (1995) Isotherm analyses for single component and multi-component metal sorption onto lignite. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 62:17–24

Anastopoulos I, Kyza GZ (2016) Are the thermodynamic parameters correctly estimated in liquid-phase adsorption phenomena? J Mol Liq 218:174–185

Arief VO, Trilestari K, Sunarso J, Indraswati N, Ismadji S (2008) Recent progress on biosorption of heavy metals from liquids using low cost biosorbents: characterization, biosorption parameters and mechanism studies. CLEAN Soil Air Water 36:937–962

Awwad N, Gad H, Ahmad M, Aly H (2010) Sorption of lanthanum and erbium from aqueous solution by activated carbon prepared from rice husk. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 81:593–599

Babel S, Kurniawan TA (2004) Cr (VI) removal from synthetic wastewater using coconut shell charcoal and commercial activated carbon modified with oxidizing agents and/or chitosan. Chemosphere 54:951–967

Balkaya N, Cesur H (2008) Adsorption of cadmium from aqueous solution by phosphogypsum. Chem Eng J 140:247–254

Barrera-Díaz CE, Lugo-Lugo V, Bilyeu B (2012) A review of chemical, electrochemical and biological methods for aqueous Cr (VI) reduction. J Hazard Mater 223:1–12

Baruthio F (1992) Toxic effects of chromium and its compounds. Biol Trace Elem Res 32(1–3):145–153

Bharagava RN, Yadav S, Chandra R (2014) Antibiotic and heavy metal resistance properties of bacteria isolated from the aeration lagoons of common effluent treatment plant (CETP) of tannery industries (Unnao, India). Indian J Biotechnol 13:514–519

Bharagava RN, Chandra R, Rai V (2008) Phytoextraction of trace elements and physiological changes in Indian mustard plants (*Brassica nigra* L.) grow in post methanated distillery effluent (PMDE) irrigated soil. Bioresour Technol 99(17):8316–8324

Bharagava RN, Saxena G, Mulla SI, Patel DK (2018) Characterization and identification of recalcitrant organic pollutants (ROPs) in tannery wastewater and its phytotoxicity evaluation for environmental safety. *Arch Environ Contam Toxicol* 75(2):259–272

Bhatnagar A, Sillanpaa M (2010) Utilization of agro-industrial and municipal waste materials as potential adsorbents for water treatment—a review. Chem Eng J 157:277–296

Bikram B, Biswanath B, Apurba D (2014) Studies on the potential use of sugarcane bagasse as carrier matrix for immobilization of Candida tropicalis PHB5 for phenol biodegradation. Int Biodeter Biodegr 93:107–117

Bilai M, Rasheed T, Eduardo J, Hernández S, Raza A, Nabeel F, Hafiz MN, Iqbal HM (2018) Biosorption: an interplay between marine algae and potentially toxic elements—a review. Mar Drugs 16(2):65

Binnemans K, Pontikes Y, Jones PT, Van Gerven T, Blanpain B (2013) Proceedings of the 3rd International Slag Valorisation Symposium: the Transition to Sustainable Materials Management. Recovery of rare earths from industrial waste residues: a concise review, pp 191–205

Birungi ZS, Chirwa EMN (2014) The kinetics of uptake and recovery of lanthanum using freshwater algae as biosorbents: comparative analysis. Bioresour Technol 160:43–51

Birungi ZS, Chirwa EMN (2015a) The adsorption potential and recovery of thallium using green micro-algae from eutrophic water sources. J Hazard Mater 299:67–77

Birungi ZS, Chirwa EMN (2015b) Adsorption and Desorption potential of cadmium using green algae: equilibrium and kinetic studies. Adv Mat Res 1130:693–696

Birungi ZS, Chirwa EMN (2016) Interpretation of uptake kinetic of thallium and cadmium on surfaces of immobilized green algae as biosorbents. Chem Eng Trans 49:421–426. https://doi.org/10.3303/CET1649071

Bishnoi NR, Garima A (2005) Fungus-an alternative for bioremediation of heavy metal containing wastewater: a review. J Sci Ind Res 64:93–100

Bishnoi NR, Kumar R, Kumar S, Rani S (2007) Biosorption of Cr(III) from aqueous solution using algal biomass Spirogyra Spp. J Hazard Mater 145(1):142–147

Borda M, Sparks D (2008) Kinetics and mechanisms of sorption–desorption in soils: a multiscale assessment. In: Biophysico-chemical processes of heavy metals and metalloids in soil environments. Wiley, New York, pp 97–124

Brevick CE, Burgess CL (eds) (2013) Soils and human health. CRC Press, Taylor and Francis Group, Boca Raton

Brierley CL (1990) Bioremediation of metal-contaminated surface and groundwaters. Geomicrobiol J 8:201–223

Cabatingan LK, Agapay RC, Rakels JL, Ottens M, van der Wielen LA (2001) Potential of biosorption for the recovery of chromate in industrial wastewaters. Ind Eng Chem Res 40(10):2302–2309

Carlsson AS, Bowles DJ (2007) Micro-and macro-algae: utility for industrial applications: outputs from the EPOBIO project, September 2007. CPL Press

Chandra R, Bharagava RN, Yadav S, Mohan D (2009) Accumulation and distribution of toxic metals in wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) and Indian mustard (*Brassica campestris* L.) irrigated with distillery and tannery effluents. J Hazard Mater 162:1514–1521

Castro L, Blázquez ML, Muñoz JA, González F, Ballester A (2013) Biological synthesis of metallic nanoparticles using algae. IET Nanobiotechnol 7:109–116

Cavanagh JB, Fuller NH, Johnson HR, Rudge P (1974) The effects of thallium salts with particular reference to the nervous system changes. A report of three cases. Q J Med 43:293–319

Cervantes C, Campos-García J, Devars S, Gutiérrez-Corona F, Loza-Tavera H, Torres-Guzmán JC, Moreno-Sánchez R (2001) Interactions of chromium with microorganisms and plants. FEMS Microbiol Rev 25(3):335–347

Chen J, Lin J, Wu X, Yuan X, Zhou J (1998) Study on adsorption of cadmium with N503 levextrel resin. Chin J Nonferrous Metals (China) 8:507–510

Cheng KC, Ogden KL (2011) Algal biofuels: the research. Chem Eng Prog 107:42–47

Chojnacka K (2010) Biosorption and bioaccumulation–the prospects for practical applications. Environ Int 36:299–307

Chojnacka K, Chojnacki A, Gorecka H (2005) Biosorption of Cr3+, Cd2+ and Cu2+ ions by blue–green algae Spirulina sp.: kinetics, equilibrium and the mechanism of the process. Chemosphere 59(1):75–84

Cobb AB (2008) The elements cadmium, 1st edn. Marshall Cavendish Corporation, New York, pp 8–10

Collins YE, Stotzky G (1989) Factors affecting the toxicity of heavy metals to microbes. In: Metal ions and bacteria. Wiley, Toronto, pp 31–90

Costa ACA, Leite SGF (1990) Cadmium and zinc biosorption by Chlorella homosphaera. Biotechnol Lett 12:941–944

Crist RH, Martin JR, Carr D, Watson J, Clarke HJ, Carr D (1994) Interaction of metals and protons with algae. 4. Ion exchange vs adsorption models and a reassessment of scatchard plots; ion-exchange rates and equilibria compared with calcium alginate. Environ Sci Technol 28:1859–1866

Darnall DW, Greene B, Henzl MT, Hosea JM, McPherson RA, Sneddon J, Alexander MD (1986) Selective recovery of gold and other metal ions from an algal biomass. Environ Sci Technol 20:206–208

Das N (2010) Recovery of precious metals through biosorption—a review. Hydrometallurgy 103:180–189

Davis TA, Volesky B, Mucci A (2003) A review of the biochemistry of heavy metal biosorption by brown algae. Water Res 37:4311–4330

De Albuquerque CAR, Shaw DM (1972) Thallium. In: Wedepohl KH (ed) Handbook of geochemistry, section 81B-81O. Springer, Berlin, pp 81-D-1–81-D-18

de-Bashan LE, Bashan Y (2010) Immobilized microalgae for removing pollutants: review of practical aspects. Bioresour Technol 101:1611–1627

Donia AM, Atia AA, Elwakeel KZ (2007) Recovery of gold (III) and silver (I) on a chemically modified chitosan with magnetic properties. Hydrometallurgy 87:197–206

Dönmez GÇ, Aksu Z (2002) Removal of chromium (VI) from saline wastewaters by Dunaliella species. Process Biochem 38(5):751–762

Dönmez GÇ, Aksu Z, Öztürk A, Kutsal T (1999) A comparative study on heavy metal biosorption characteristics of some algae. Process Biochem 34(9):885–892

Ebenezer V, Medlin L, Ki JS (2012) Molecular detection, quantification, and diversity evaluation of microalgae. Marine Biotechnol 4:129–142

El Nemr A, El-Sikaily A, Khaled A, Abdelwahab O (2015) Removal of toxic chromium from aqueous solution, wastewater and saline water by marine red alga Pterocladia capillacea and its activated carbon. Arab J Chem 8(1):105–117

Emmanuel ESC, Anathi T, Anandkumar B, Marimuthu S (2012) Accumulation of rare earth elements by siderophore forming Arthrobacter luteolus isolated from rare earth environment of Chavara, India. J Biosci 37(1):25

European Commission (2010) Critical raw materials for the EU. Report of the Ad-Hoc Working Group on Defining Critical Raw Materials. European Commission, Brussels

Farooq U, Kozinski JA, Khan MA, Athar M (2010) Biosorption of heavy metal ions using wheat based biosorbents—a review of the recent literature. Bioresour Technol 101:5043–5053

Ferris FG (1989) Metallic ion interactions with the outer membrane of gram-negative bacteria. In: Beveridge TJ, Doyle RJ (eds) Metal ions and bacteria. Wiley, New York, pp 295–323

Flegal AR, Patterson CC (1985) Thallium concentration in sea water. Mar Chem 15:327–331

Fleischer M, Sarofim AF, Fassett DW, Hammond P, Shacklette HT, Nisbet IC, Epstein S (1974) Environmental impact of cadmium: a review by the panel on hazardous trace substances. Environ Health Perspect 7:253–323

Flouty R, Estephane G (2012) Bioaccumulation and biosorption of copper and lead by a unicellular algae Chlamydomonas reinhardtii in single and binary metal systems: a comparative study. J Environ Manage 111:106–114

Förstner U (1980) Cadmium. In: Hutzinger O (ed) The handbook of environmental chemistry, Volume 3, Part A, Anthropogenic compounds. Springer-Verlag, Berlin

Frengstad B, Skrede AKM, Banks D, Krog JR, Siewers U (2000) The chemistry of Norwegian groundwaters: III. The distribution of trace elements in 476 crystalline bedrock groundwaters, as analysed by ICP-MS techniques. Sci Total Environ 246:21–40

Friberg L, Piscator M, Nordberg GF, Kjellström T (1974) Cadmium in the environment, 2nd edn. CRC Press, Cleveland

Fu F, Wang Q (2011) Removal of heavy metal ions from wastewaters: a review. J Environ Manage 92:407–418

Galván-Arzate S, Santamarı́a A (1998) Thallium toxicity. Toxicol Lett 99:1–13

Gamez G, Dokken K, Herrera I, Parsons JG, Tiemann KJ, Gardea-Torresdey JL (2000) Chemical processes involved in Au (III) binding and bioreduction by alfalfa. In: Proceedings of the 2000 conference on hazardous waste research

Gaur N, Flora G, Yadav M, Tiwari A (2014) A review with recent advancements on bioremediation-based abolition of heavy metals. Environ Sci: Processes Impacts 16:180–193

Gitet H, Hilawie M, Muuz M, Weldegebriel Y, Gebremichael D, Gebremedhin D (2016) Bioaccumulation of heavy metals in crop plants grown near Almeda Textile Factory, Adwa, Ethiopia. Environ Monit Assess 188(9):500

Godt J, Scheidig F, Grosse-Siestrup C, Esche V, Brandenburg P, Reich A, Groneberg DA (2006) The toxicity of cadmium and resulting hazards for human health. J Occup Med Toxicol 1:1–6

Gokhale SV, Jyoti KK, Lele SS (2008) Kinetic and equilibrium modelling of chromium (VI) biosorption on fresh and spent Spirulina platensis/Chlorella vulgaris biomass. Bioresour Technol 99(9):3600–3608

Goldschmidt VM (1954) Geochemistry. Soil Sci 78:156

Gomes CP, Almeida MF, Loureiro JM (2001) Gold recovery with ion exchange used resins. Sep Purif Technol 24(1-2):35–57

Greene B, Hosea M, McPherson R, Henrl M, Alexander MD, Darnail DW (1986) Interaction of gold(I) and gold(III) complexes with algal biomass. Environ Sci Technol 20:627–632

Guertin J, Avakian CP, Jacobs JA (2016) Chromium (VI) handbook. CRC press, Boca Raton, pp 14–17; 215–220

Gupta V, Rastogi A (2008) Equilibrium and kinetic modelling of cadmium (II) biosorption by non-living algal biomass Oedogonium sp. from aqueous phase. J Hazard Mater 153:759–766

Gupta VK, Shrivastava AK, Jain N (2001) Biosorption of chromium (VI) from aqueous solutions by green algae *Spirogyra* species. Water Res 35(17):4079–4085

Gutiérrez-Corona JF, Romo-Rodríguez P, Santos-Escobar F, Espino-Saldana AE, Hernández-Escoto H (2016) Microbial interactions with chromium: basic biological processes and applications in environmental biotechnology. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 32(12):191

Han X, Wong YS, Tam NFY (2006) Surface complexation mechanism and modeling in cr(III) biosorption by a microalgal isolate, Chlorella miniata. J Colloid Interface Sci 303:365–371

Hansda A, Kumar V (2016) A comparative review towards potential of microbial cells for heavy metal removal with emphasis on biosorption and bioaccumulation. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 32:170

Heinrichs HB, Schulz-Dobrick B, Wedepohl KH (1980) Terrestrial geochemistry of Cd, Bi, Tl, Pb, Zn and Rb. Geochim Cosmochim Acta 44:1519–1533

Hosea M, Greene B, Mcpherson R, Henzl M, Alexander MD, Darnai DW (1986) Accumulation of elemental gold on the alga Chlorella vulgaris. Inorg Chim Acta 123:161–165

Huff J, Lunn RM, Waalkes MP, Tomatis L, Infante PF (2007) Cadmium-induced cancers in animals and in humans. Int J Occup Environ Health 13:202–212

Hughes MN, Poole RK (1991) Metal speciation and microbial growth--the hard (and soft) facts. Microbiology 137:725–734

Ibrahim YH, Shakour AA, Abdel-Latif NM, El-Taieb NM (2011) Assessment of heavy metal levels in the environment, Egypt. J Am Sci 7(12):148–153

Indhumathi P, Syed Shabudeen PS, Shoba US, Saraswathy CP (2014) The removal of chromium from aqueous solution by using green micro algae. J Chem Pharm Res 6(6):799–808

Ishikawa SI, Suyama K, Arihara K, Itoh M (2002) Uptake and recovery of gold ions from electroplating wastes using eggshell membrane. Bioresour Technol 81:201–206

Izatt RM, Izatt SR, Bruening RL, Izatt NE, Moyer BA (2014) Challenges to achievement of metal sustainability in our high-tech society. Chem Soc Rev 43:2451–2475

Jacobson AR, McBride MB, Baveye P, Steenhuis TS (2005) Environmental factors determining the trace-level sorption of silver and thallium to soils. Sci Total Environ 345:191–205

Jardine PM, Fendorf SE, Mayes MA, Larsen IL, Brooks SC, Bailey WB (1999) Fate and transport of hexavalent chromium in undisturbed heterogeneous soil. Environ Sci Technol 33(17):2939–2944

Jobby R, Jha P, Yadav AK, Desai N (2018) Biosorption and biotransformation of hexavalent chromium [Cr (VI)]: a comprehensive review. Chemosphere 207:255–266

Ju X, Igarashi K, Miyashita S, Inagaki K, Fujii S, Sawada H, Kuwabara T, Minoda A (2016) Effective and selective recovery of gold and palladium ions from metal wastewater using a sulfothermophilic red alga, Galdieria sulphuraria. Bioresour Technol 211:759–764

Kabata-Pendias A, Pendias H (2001) Trace elements in soils and plants, 3rd edn. CRC Press, Boca Raton

Kadukova J, Kavulicova J (2010) Phytoremediation and stress: evaluation of heavy metal-induced stress in plants. Botanical research and practices. Nova Science, New York

Kalumba AM (2016) Wealth creation on land and environmental sustainability: the case of East London industrial development zone West Bank, South Africa. Thesis Submitted to University of Pretoria

Karbowska B (2016) Presence of thallium in the environment: sources of contaminations, distribution and monitoring methods. Environ Monit Assess 188:640. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10661-016-5647-y

Karbowska B, Zembrzuski W, Jakubowska M, Wojtkowiak T, Pasieczna A, Lukaszewski Z (2014) Translocation and mobility of thallium from zinc–lead ores. J Geochem Explor 143:127–135

Karthikeyan KG, Elliott HA, Cannon FS (1996) Enhanced metal removal from wastewater by coagulant addition. In: Proceedings of 50th Purdue industrial waste conference, vol 50, pp 259–267

Kazantzis G (2000) Thallium in the environment and health effects. Environ Geochem Health 22:275–280

Kera NH, Bhaumik M, Pillay K, Ray SS, Maity A (2017) Selective removal of toxic Cr (VI) from aqueous solution by adsorption combined with reduction at a magnetic nanocomposite surface. J Colloid Interface Sci 503:214–228

Kishor R, Bharagava RN, Saxena G (2019) Industrial wastewaters: the major sources of dye contamination in the environment, ecotoxicological effects, and bioremediation approaches. In: Bharagava RN (ed) Recent advances in environmental management. CRC Press, Taylor & Francis, Boca Raton, p 13. ISBN: 978-0-8153-8314-7

Korenevsky AA, Sorokin VV, Karavaiko G (1998) Biosorption of rare earth elements. Miner Process Extr Metall Rev 19(1):341–353

Kotte P, Yun YS (2014) L-cysteine impregnated alginate capsules as a sorbent for gold recovery. Polym Degrad Stab 109:424–429

Ku Y, Wu MH, Shen YS (2002) A study on the cadmium removal from aqueous solutions by zinc cementation. Sep Sci Technol 37(3):571–590

Kurniawan TA, Chan GYS, Lo WH, Babel S (2006) Physico-chemical treatment techniques for wastewater laden with heavy metals. Chem Eng J 118(1–2):83–98

Kuyucak N, Volesky B (1989) Accumulation of gold by algal biosorbent. Biorecovery 1:189–204

Leonard A, Gerber GB (1997) Mutagenecity, carcinogenicity and teratogenecity of thallium compounds. Mutat Res 387:47–53

Lesmana SO, Febriana N, Soetaredjo FE, Sunarso J, Ismadji S (2009) Studies on potential applications of biomass for the separation of heavy metals from water and wastewater. Biochem Eng J 44:19–41

Leyva-Ramos R, Rangel-Mendez J, Mendoza-Barron J, Fuentes-Rubio L, Guerrero-Coronado R (1997) Adsorption of cadmium (II) from aqueous solution onto activated carbon. Water Sci Technol 35:205–211

Li WW, Yu HQ (2014) Insight into the roles of microbial extracellular polymer substances in metal biosorption. Bioresour Technol 160:15–23

Lin TS, Nriagu J (1999) Thallium speciation in the Great Lakes. Environ Sci Tech 33(19):3394–3397

Lin X, Burns RC, Lawrance GA (2005) Heavy metals in wastewater: the effect of electrolyte composition on the precipitation of cadmium (II) using lime and magnesia. Water Air Soil Pollut 165:131–152

Lotfy SM, Mostafa AZ (2014) Phytoremediation of contaminated soil with cobalt and chromium. J Geochem Explor 144:367–373

Mack C, Wilhelmi B, Duncan JR, Burgess JE (2007) Biosorption of precious metals. Biotechnol Adv 25:264–271

Madigan MT, Martinko JM, Parker J, Brock TD (1997) Biology of microorganisms. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River

Malik P (2004) Dye removal from wastewater using activated carbon developed from sawdust: adsorption equilibrium and kinetics. J Hazard Mater 113:81–88

Malla ME, Alvarez MB, Batistoni DA (2002) Evaluation of sorption and desorption characteristics of cadmium, lead and zinc on amberlite IRC-718 iminodiacetate chelating ion exchanger. Talanta 57:277–287

Martins TS, Isolani PC (2005) Rare earths: Industrial and biological applications. Quím Nova 28:111–117

Maruyama T, Terashima Y, Takeda S, Okazaki F, Goto M (2014) Selective adsorption and recovery of precious metal ions using protein-rich biomass as efficient adsorbents. Process Biochem 49:850–857

Mata YN, Torres E, Blázquez ML, Ballester A, González F, Munoz JA (2009) Gold(III) biosorption and bioreduction with the brown alga Fucus vesiculosus. J Hazard Mater 166:612–618

Mehta S, Gaur J (2005) Use of algae for removing heavy metal ions from wastewater: progress and prospects. Crit Rev Biotechnol 25:113–152

Michalak I, Saeid A, Chojnacka K (2013) The effect of increase in concentration of Na (I) ions on biosorption of Cr (III) ions by Enteromorpha prolifera and Spirulina sp. Cent Eur J Chem 11:313–319

Miretzky P, Cirelli AF (2010) Cr (VI) and Cr (III) removal from aqueous solution by raw and modified lignocellulosic materials: a review. J Hazard Mater 180(1–3):1–19

Mishra S, Bharagava RN (2016) Toxic and genotoxic effects of hexavalent chromium in environment and its bioremediation strategies. J Environ Sci Health C 34(1):1–32

Mooiman MB, Miller JD (1991) The chemistry of gold solvent extraction from alkaline cyanide solution by solvating extractants. Hydrometallurgy 27(1):29–46

Mortaheb HR, Kosuge H, Mokhtarani B, Amini MH, Banihashemi HR (2009) Study on removal of cadmium from wastewater by emulsion liquid membrane. J Hazard Mater 165:630–636

Mukhopadhyay B, Sundquist J, Schmitz RJ (2007) Removal of Cr (VI) from Cr-contaminated groundwater through electrochemical addition of Fe (II). J Environ Manage 82(1):66–76

Mulkey JP, Oehme FW (1993) A review of thallium toxicity. Vet Hum Toxicol 35:445–453

Miller JD, Wan RY, Torres JRP (1990) Characterization and electrochemical analysis of gold cementation from alkaline cyanide solution by suspended zinc particles. Hydrometallurgy 24(3):373–392

Murata I, Hirono T, Saeki Y, Nakagawa S (1970) Cadmium enteropathy, renal osteomalacia ("itai itai" disease in Japan). Bull Soc Int Chir 29:34–42

Nakajima A, Sakaguchi T (1993) Uptake and recovery of gold by immobilized persimmon tannin. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 57(4):321–326

Nriagu JO (1998) History, production, and uses of thallium. In: Nriagu JO (ed) Thallium in the environment. Wiley, New York, pp 1–14

Onyancha D, Mavura W, Ngila JC, Ongoma P, Chacha J (2008) Studies of chromium removal from tannery wastewaters by algae biosorbents, Spirogyra condensata and Rhizoclonium hieroglyphicum. J Hazard Mater 158(2):605–614

Pagnanelli F, Jbari N, Trabucco F, Martínez ME, Sánchez S, Toro L (2013) Biosorption-mediated reduction of Cr (VI) using heterotrophically-grown Chlorella vulgaris: active sites and ionic strength effect. Chem Eng J 231:94–102

Palmieri MC, Garcia O Jr, Melnikov P (2000) Neodymium biosorption from acidic solutions in batch system. Process Biochem 36:441–444

Parajuli D, Adhikari CR, Kuriyama M, Kawakita H, Ohto K, Inoue K, Funaoka M (2006) Selective recovery of gold by novel lignin-based adsorption gels. Ind Eng Chem Res 45:8–14

Park D, Yun Y, Park JM (2010) The past, present, and future trends of biosorption. Biotechnol Bioprocess Eng 15:86–102

Pehlivan E, Altun T (2006) The study of various parameters affecting the ion exchange of Cu2+, Zn2+, Ni 2+, Cd 2+, and Pb 2+ from aqueous solution on dowex 50W synthetic resin. J Hazard Mater 134:149–156

Prasad MNV, Hagemeyer J (1999) Heavy metals stress in plants: from molecules to ecosystem. Springer, Berlin

Qian H, Sun Z, Sun L, Jiang Y, Wei Y, Xie J, Fu Z (2013) Phosphorus availability changes chromium toxicity in the freshwater alga Chlorella vulgaris. Chemosphere 93(6):885–891

Rahimzadeh MR, Rahimzadeh MR, Kazemi S, Moghadamnia A (2017) Cadmium toxicity and treatment: an update. Caspian J Intern Med 8(3):135–145

Ralph L, Twiss M (2002) Comparative toxicity of thallium (I), thallium (III), and cadmium (II) to the unicellular alga Chlorella isolated from Lake Erie. Bull Environ Contam Toxicol 68:261–268

Ramesh A, Hasegawa H, Sugimoto W, Maki T, Ueda K (2008) Adsorption of gold(III), platinum(IV) and palladium(II) onto glycine modified crosslinked chitosan resin. Bioresour Technol 99(9):3801–3809

Rangsayatorna N, Pokethitiyooka P, Upathamb ES, Lanzac GR (2004) Cadmium biosorption by cells of Spirulina platensis TISTR 8217 immobilized in alginate and silica gel. Environ Int 30:57–63

Reddy DHK, Lee SM (2012) Water pollution and treatment technologies. J Environ 17(3):124–132

Repetto G, del Peso A, Repetto M (1998) Human thallium toxicity. In: Nriagu JO (ed) Thallium in the environment, vol 9. Wiley, New York, pp 167–199

Rezaee A, Ramavandi B, Ganati F, Ansari M, Solimanian A (2006) Biosorption of mercury by biomass of filamentous algae Spirogyra species. J Biol Sci 6:695–700

Saeed A, Iqbal M (2006) Immobilization of blue green microalgae on loofa sponge to biosorb cadmium in repeated shake flask batch and continuous flow fixed bed column reactor system. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 22:775–782

Saha R, Nandi R, Saha B (2011) Sources and toxicity of hexavalent chromium. J Coord Chem 64(10):1782–1806

Salama E, Kuradea MB, Abou-Shanabb RAI, El-Dalatonya MM, Yanga S, Minc B, Jeona B (2017) Recent progress in microalgal biomass production coupled with wastewater treatment for biofuel generation. Renew Sustain Energy Rev 79:1189–1211

Salim S, Bosma R, Vermue MH, Wijffels RH (2011) Harvesting of microalgae by bio-flocculation. J Appl Phycol 23:849–855

Sathishkumar M, Mahadevan A, Vijayaraghavan K, Pavagadhi S, Balasubramanian R (2010) Green recovery of gold through biosorption, biocrystallization, and pyro-crystallization. Ind Eng Chem Res 49(16):7129–7135

Sert Ş, Kütahyali C, İnan S, Talip Z, Çetinkaya B, Eral M (2008) Biosorption of lanthanum and cerium from aqueous solutions by platanus orientalis leaf powder. Hydrometallurgy 90:13–18

Shen N, Chirwa EMN (2018a) Biosorption and desorption potential of gold(III) by freshwater microalgae Scenedesmus obliquus AS-6-1. Chem Eng Trans 65:19–24

Shen N, Chirwa EMN (2018b) Short-term adsorption of gold using self-flocculating microalga from wastewater and its regeneration potential by bio-flocculation. J Appl Phycol. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10811-018-1670-4

Shokri KR, Mirghaffari N, Farhadian O (2015) Removal of three and hexavalent chromium from aqueous solutions using a microalgae biomass-derived biosorbent. Environ Prog Sustain Energy 34(4):949–956

Shukla A, Srivastava S, D'Souza SF (2018) An integrative approach toward bio-sensing and bioremediation of metals and metalloids. Int J Environ Sci Technol 15:2701–2712

Saxena G, Purchase D, Mulla SI, Saratale GD, Bharagava RN (2019a) Phytoremediation of heavy metal-contaminated sites: eco-environmental concerns, field studies, sustainability issues and future prospects. *Rev Environ Contam Toxicol* 249:71–131

Saxena G, Kishor R, Bharagava RN (2019b) Application of microbial enzymes in degradation and detoxification of organic and inorganic pollutants. In: Bioremediation of industrial waste for environmental safety. Springer Nature, Singapore. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-13-1891-7_3

Schiewer S, Volesky B (2000) Biosorption processes for heavy metal removal. Environ Microbe Metal Interact 14:329–362

Shen N, Birungi ZS, Chirwa EMN (2017) Selective biosorption of precious metals by cell-surface engineered microalgae. Chem Eng Trans 61:25–30

Soleimani M, Kaghazchi T (2008) Adsorption of gold ions from industrial wastewater using activated carbon derived from hard shell of apricot stones – An agricultural waste. Bioresour Technol 99:5374–5383

Su C, Jiang L, Zhang W (2014) A review on heavy metal contamination in the soil worldwide: situation, impact and remediation techniques. Environ Sceptics Critics 3(2):24–34

Szulczewski MD, Helmke PA, Bleam WF (1997) Comparison of XANES analyses and extractions to determine chromium speciation in contaminated soils. Environ Sci Technol 31(10):2954–2959

Tatsi K, Turner A, Handy RD, Shawa BJ (2015) The acute toxicity of thallium to freshwater organisms: Implications for risk assessment. Sci Total Environ 536:82–390

Taylor RL, Rand JD, Caldwell GS (2012) Treatment with algae extracts promotes flocculation, and enhances growth and neutral lipid content in Nannochloropsis oculata—a candidate for biofuel production. Marine Biotechnol 14:774–781

Taylor SR, McLennan SM (1985) The continental crust; its composition and evolution; an examination of the geochemical record preserved in sedimentary rocks. Blackwell Scientific Publishing, Oxford

Tchounwou PB, Yedjou CG, Patlolla AK, Sutton DJ (2012) Heavy metals toxicity and the environment. EXS 101:133–164. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-7643-8340-4_6

Ting YP, Teo WK, Soh CY (1995) Gold uptake by Chlorella vulgaris. J Appl Phycol 7:97–100

Tsuchiya K (1981) Clinical signs, symptoms, and prognosis of cadmium poisoning, vol 10158. Wiley, New York, pp 39–54

Twining BS, Twiss MR, Fisher NS (2003) Oxidation of thallium by freshwater plankton communities. Environ Sci Technol 37:2720–2726

Ubaldini S, Fornari P, Massidda R, Abbruzzese C (1998) An innovative thiourea gold leaching process. Hydrometallurgy 48:113–124

Umemura T, Wako Y (2006) Pathogenesis of Osteomalacia in itai-itai disease. J Toxicol Pathol 19:69–74

Urík M, Kramarová Z, Ševc J, Čerňanský S, Kališ M, Medve J, Littera P, Kolenčík M, Gardosova K (2010) Biosorption and bioaccumulation of thallium (I) and its effect on growth of neosartorya fischeri strain. Pol J Environ Stud 19:457–460

U.S. Geological Survey (2014) Mineral Commodity Summaries 2014. U.S. Geological Survey, 196 p. Available at http://minerals.usgs.gov/minerals/pubs/mcs/

USEPA (United States Environmental Protection Agency) (1980) Ambient water quality criteria for thallium. EPA-440/5-80074. US Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC

Vandamme D, Imogen F, Muylaert K (2013) Flocculation as a low-cost method for harvesting microalgae for bulk biomass production. Trends Biotechnol 31(4):233–239

Vaněk A, Komárek M, Vokurková P, Mihaljevič M, Šebek O, Panušková G, Chrastný V (2011) Effect of illite and birnessite on thallium retention and bioavailability in contaminated soils. J hazard Mater 191(1–3):170–176

Veglio F, Beolchini F (1997) Removal of metals by biosorption: a review. Hydrometallurgy 44:301–316

Verbruggen N, Hermans C, Schat H (2009) Mechanisms to cope with arsenic or cadmium excess in plants. Curr Opin Plant Biol 2(3):364–372

Vijayaraghavan K, Mahadevan A, Sathishkumar M, Pavagadhia S, Balasubramanian R (2011) Biosynthesis of Au(0) from Au(III) via biosorption and bioreduction using brown marine alga *Turbinaria conoides*. Chem Eng J 167:223–227

Vijayaraghavan K, Yun YS (2008) Bacterial biosorbents and biosorption. Biotechnol Adv 26:266–291

Volesky B (2001) Detoxification of metal-bearing effluents: biosorption for the next century. Hydrometallurgy 59:203–216

Volesky B (1987) Biosorbents for metal recovery. Trends Biotechnol 5:96–101

Volesky B (1990) Biosorption of heavy metals. CRC Press, Boca Raton

Volesky B, Holan Z (1995) Biosorption of heavy metals. Biotechnol Prog 11:235–250

Waalkes MP (2003) Cadmium carcinogenesis. Mutat Res 533:107–120

Waalkes MP, Coogan TP, Barter RA (1992) Toxicological principles of metal carcinogenesis with special emphasis on cadmium. CRC Crit Rev Toxicol 22:175–201

Wan C, Zhao XQ, Guo SL, Alam MA, Bai FW (2013) Bio-flocculant production from *Solibacillus silvestris* W01 and its application in cost-effective harvest of marine microalga *Nannochloropsis oceanica* by flocculation. Bioresour Technol 135:207–212

Wang H, Laughinghouse HD, Anderson MA et al (2012) Novel bacterial isolate from Permian groundwater, capable of aggregating potential biofuel-producing microalga Nannochloropsis oceanica IMET1. Appl Environ Microbiol 78:1445–1453

Wang J, Chen C (2006) Biosorption of heavy metals by Saccharomyces cerevisiae: a review. Biotechnol Adv 24:427–451

Wang J, Chen C (2009) Biosorbents for heavy metals removal and their future. Biotechnol Adv 27:195–226

Wei B, Yang L (2010) A reviews of heavy metal contaminations in urban soils, urban road dusts and agricultural soils from China. Microchem J 94:99–107

Won SW, Kotte P, Wei W, Lim A, Yun YS (2014) Biosorbents for recovery of precious metals. Bioresour Technol 160:203–212

World Health Organisation (WHO) (2011) Guidelines for drinking-water quality

Xiao T, Yang F, Li S, Zheng B, Ning Z (2012) Thallium pollution in China: a geo-environmental perspective. Sci Total Environ 421–422:51–58

Xu J, Bubley GJ, Detrick B, Blankenship LJ, Patierno SR (1996) Chromium(VI) treatment of normal human lung cells results in guanine-specific DNA polymerase arrest, DNA–DNA cross-links and S-phase blockade of cell cycle. Carcinogenesis 17:1511–1517

Yasuda M, Miwa A, Kitagawa M (1995) Morphometric studies of renal lesions in itai-itai disease: chronic cadmium nephropathy. Nephron 69:14–19

Yaylal-Abanuz G (2011) Heavy metal contamination of surface soil around Gebze industrial area, Turkey. Micro Chem J 99:82–92

Yu D (2008) Chromium toxicity. In: Case studies in environmental medicine. Agency for toxic substances and disease registry (ATSDR). Retrieved from http://www.atsdr.cdc.gov/csem/chromium/docs/chromium.pdf

Zhang Y, Xu Q, Zhang S, Liu J, Zhou J, Xu H, Xiao H, Li J (2013) Preparation of thiol-modified Fe3O4@SiO2 nanoparticles and their application for gold recovery from dilute solution. Sep Purif Technol 116:391–397

Zhou W, Cheng Y, Li Y, Wan Y, Liu Y, Lin X, Ruan R (2012) Novel fungal pelletization-assisted technology for algae harvesting and wastewater treatment. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 167:214–228

Zhou W, Ruan R, Wang J (2015) Bio-flocculation of microalgae: status and prospects. Curr Biotechnol 4:448–456

Chapter 13
Green Synthesized Nanoparticle-Mediated Wastewater Treatment

Ravi Kumar Yadav, Amit Kumar Singh, N. B. Singh, Niharika, Niharika Singh, Shubhra Khare, and Abhay K. Pandey

Abstract Freshwater in the environment is getting contaminated day by day due to constant pollution of freshwater bodies through different anthropogenic sources which leads to scarcity of freshwater for the people usage. Green synthesis of nanoparticle is a very efficient method of nanoparticle synthesis. Nowadays these nanoparticles are used to treat wastewater system. The overview of recent advancement in nanotechnology for water and wastewater treatment mechanisms is provided, including nanobased materials, such as nanoadsorbents, nanometals, nanomembranes, and photocatalysts. Various advantageous roles governed of these materials as well as technical barriers when compared with conservative processes are being demonstrated. The commercial value of these materials is presented and viewpoint on further research value is given for each type of nanobased material and process. This chapter includes recent trends in green synthesis of nanoparticles using different plants and their parts like leaves, stem, etc., and their application in treatment of wastewater.

Keywords Wastewaters · Industries · Nanoparticles · Green synthesized · Treatment

---

R. K. Yadav · N. B. Singh (✉) · Niharika · N. Singh · S. Khare
Plant Physiology Laboratory, Department of Botany, University of Allahabad, Allahabad, Uttar Pradesh, India

A. K. Singh · A. K. Pandey
Department of Biochemistry, University of Allahabad, Allahabad, Uttar Pradesh, India

R. N. Bharagava (ed.), *Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment*, Microorganisms for Sustainability 18,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-1390-9_13

13.1 Introduction

The freshwater is essentially significant for humans, animals, and plants, not just for drinking, but also for irrigation, domestic use, and other vital activities. It is expected to become increasingly inadequate in the near future, and this is partly because of environmental change (Pretty 2007). Due to the rapid increase in world population as well as global warming, water reservoirs are decreasing at a very fast rate. In this approach, discreet use of water resources and reuse of treated wastewater for various purposes have been perceived as the best method for monitoring the restricted resource of freshwater (Shittu and Ihebunna 2017). The occurrence of microorganisms and trace metals is the principle indication of water contamination. The trace metal contamination of water is a public health concern, with several health risks associated with it (Bharagava et al. 2018; Kishor et al. 2019; Rahman and Singh 2018). The prokaryotic organisms, for example, *Escherichia coli*, *Shigella* spp., *Salmonella* spp., *Vibrio* spp., and *Cryptosporidium*, are known to be transmitted by water and cause ill-health when this water defiled by microorganisms is consumed (Ashbolt 2004).

Nowadays, metal nanoparticles especially gold and silver NPs are of particular interest to researchers due to their specific properties and wide applications in the field of medical sciences. Biosynthesis approach of NPs is considered as a better alternative than physical and chemical method (Ahmad et al. 2003; Song et al. 2010; Gautam et al. 2018) as it is eco-friendly, cost effective, and less time requiring. Different materials are categorized as biological for nanoparticle synthesis; these include plant extracts, microscopic organisms, growth chemicals, and actinomycetes (Bharagava and Chandra 2010; Chandra et al. 2012; Agarwal et al. 2017). But plant extracts have been the major focus due to their abundant nature and the phytochemical composition (Bharagava et al. 2008).

There is constrained chance of an expansion in the supply of freshwater due to ever-increasing demand by growing population throughout the world; additionally, water-related issues are anticipated to increase further because of atmospheric changes and because of population growth throughout the following two decades (Vörösmarty et al. 2000). It is evaluated that overall population will increment by about 2.9 billion as of now till 2050 (as indicated by UN's normal projections) (Rockström 2003). Nanotechnology has been considered as a useful method for identifying and solving problems related to the water quality (Bottero et al. 2006). Nanomaterials are adding to the improvement of progressively effective treatment forms among the new water system (Obare and Meyer 2004).

There are numerous parts of nanotechnology that address the different issues of water quality so as to make sure the ecological stability is maintained. This information gives a unique point of view on fundamental research of nanotechnology for water/wastewater treatment and reuse by concentrating on difficulties of future research. Advancement in the field of nanoscience technology and designing propose that huge numbers of the flow issues including water quality could be resolved or greatly diminished by utilizing nanoadsorbents, nanocatalysts, bioactive nanoparticles, nanostructured synergist layers, nanotubes, attractive nanoparticles, granules, chip, high surface region metal molecule supra subatomic assemblies with trademark length sizes of 9–10 nm including clusters, small-scale particles, nanoparticles, and colloids which significantly affect water quality in natural environment (Diallo and Savage 2005).

13.2 Green Synthesis of Nanoparticles

Nanoparticles can be prepared by various methods which are usually categorized in to two major synthetic routes which are the top-down and the bottom-up approaches (Fig. 13.1) (Rahman and Padavettan 2012). In the top-down (physical) approach, nanoparticles are obtained from their bulk materials (macroscopic) using different methods and techniques like mask, ball milling thermal decomposition, irradiation, laser ablation, arc discharge, etc. (Mijatovic et al. 2005). In bottom-up (chemical and biological) approach, nanoparticles are obtained from their atomic level building blocks which react to generate nanoparticles of the desired shape and size. These methodologies utilize larger of nanostructures (Barth et al. 2010). During self-gathering the physical forces working at the nanoscale are utilized to join fundamental units into bigger stable structures. Physical and chemical methods are being utilized broadly for generation of metal and metal oxide nanoparticles as shown in Fig. 13.1 (Ma et al. 2017). However, these methods of production require the use of highly reactive and toxic reducing agents such as sodium borohydride and hydrazine hydrate, which account for undesired detrimental impacts on the environ-

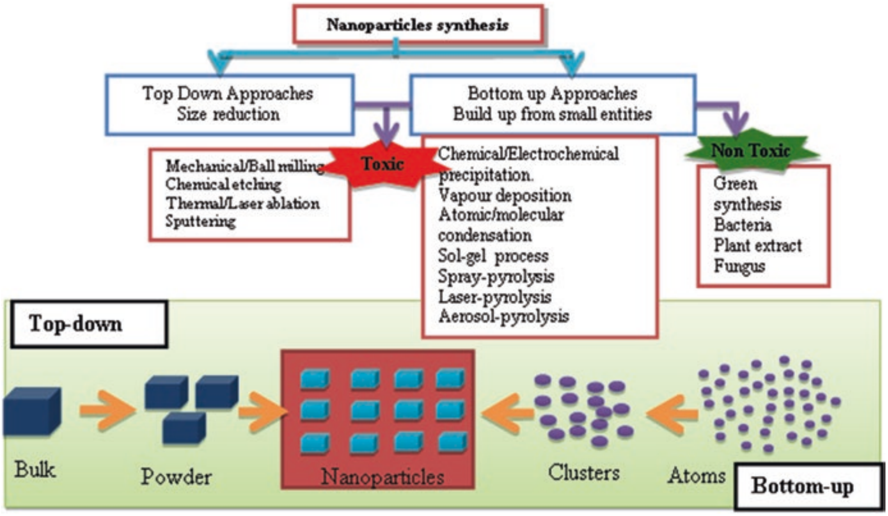


Fig. 13.1 Top-down and bottom up approaches of nanoparticles synthesis involving their toxic and nontoxic effects

ment, plant, and animal life (Saif et al. 2016). Researchers are putting continue efforts to develop facile, effective, and reliable green chemistry processes for the production of nanomaterials.

Different organisms behave as clean, eco-friendly, and sustainable precursors in order to produce stable and well-functionalized nanoparticles. These may incorporate bacteria, actinomycetes, fungi, yeast, viruses, etc. Therefore, it is critically important to develop a more reliable and sustainable process for the synthesis of nanomaterials. The idea of economic viability, ecological sustainability, and social adaptability as well as the availability of local resources should be kept in mind during the production of nanomaterials (Saif et al. 2016). In order to keep the cost of the final completed nanotechnology-based products affordable to consumers, industries must maintain a delicate balance between environmentally sound green processes and their sustainability. The green nanotechnology-based production processes operate under such conditions where the involvement of toxic chemicals is negligible. Metal NPs have been extensively studied because of their specific characteristics such as catalytical, optical, electronic, antimicrobial, and magnetic properties.

Among noble metals, silver is the metal of preference in the field of biological systems, living organisms, and medicine (Bootharaju et al. 2017). The biosynthesis of nanoparticles involves use of biogenic matter including plant extracts, biopolymers, and microbial residue like bacteria, fungi, algae, and yeast for nanomaterial fabrication (Sharma et al. 2015). Development of biocompatible, nontoxic, and eco-friendly methods for the synthesis of nanoparticles is mainly concerned in green chemistry (Narayanan and Sakthivel 2010). Biosynthesis of metal nanoparticles using plants is currently under exploitation. The biological synthesis of metal nanoparticles (especially gold and silver nanoparticles) using plants (inactivated plant tissue, plant extracts, and living plant) has gained more attention as a suitable alternative to chemical procedures and physical methods (Iravani 2011). Synthesis of metal nanoparticles using plant extracts is quite cost effective and therefore can be used as an economic and useful alternative for the large-scale production of metal nanoparticles. Extracts from plants may act as both reducing and capping agents in nanoparticle synthesis. The bioreduction of metal nanoparticles by combinations of biomolecules found in plant extracts (e.g., enzymes, proteins, amino acids, vitamins, polysaccharides, and organic acids such as citrates) is environmentally beneficial, yet chemically complex (Sharma et al. 2009).

Because of the important and critical role of plants in biosynthesis of metal nanoparticle production, the green synthesis of metal nanoparticles using plants has been discussed in this part. Current research in biosynthesis of nanometals using plant extracts has provided a new opportunity in fast and nontoxic methods for production of nanoparticles. Many researchers have reported the biosynthesis of metal nanoparticles by plant leaf extracts and their subsequent potential applications (Ghosh et al. 2012). MubarakAli et al. (2011) have studied the bioreduction of gold and silver ions by leaf broth of *Pelargonium graveolens* and *Azadirachta indica* (Thakkar et al. 2010). Moreover, they have explored the formation mechanism of triangular gold nanoprisms by *Cymbopogon flexuosus* (lemongrass) extracts where the nanotriangles seemed to grow by a process involving rapid bioreduction, assembly, and room temperature sintering of “liquid-like” spherical gold nanoparticles (Brumbaugh et al. 2014).

Also rapid synthesis of stable gold nanotriangles can be achieved which involves the use of *Tamarindus indica* (tamarind) leaf extract as a reducing agent (Kumar and Yadav 2009). The shape of metal nanoparticles subsequently changed their optical and electronic properties (Storhoff et al. 2000). They have also demonstrated the synthesis of gold and silver nanoparticles having variety of shapes (spherical and triangular) and sizes using *Aloe vera* plant extracts (Bar et al. 2009). It was explained that only biomolecules having molecular weight less than 3 kDa caused reduction of chloroaurate ions, leading to the formation of gold nanotriangles. Nevertheless, the bioreduction of silver ions proceeded barely in the presence of ammonia. The aqueous solution of gold ions when exposed to *Coriandrum sativum* leaf extract was reduced and resulted in the extracellular biosynthesis of gold nanoparticles with spherical, triangle, truncated triangle and decahedral morphologies ranging from 6.75 to 57.91 nm. These nanoparticles were stable in solution over a period of 1 month at room temperature (Korbekandi et al. 2009).

Njagi et al. (2010) used aqueous *Sorghum* sp. (hybrid sorghum) bran extract for nZVI synthesis; eucalyptus globulus leaf extract was used as a bioreducing agent to synthesize nZVI. P. Wang synthesized iron nanoparticles using *Eucalyptus* leaf extract by adding 0.1 M $FeCl_3$ solution in a ratio of 1:2; Wang et al. synthesized polydispersed iron nanoparticles employing *Eucalyptus* leaf extract obtained from its leaf litter. nZVI, Fe_3O_4, and Fe_2O_3 were the different forms of nanoparticles synthesized during the process; FeO/Fe_3O_4 nanoparticles were successfully synthesized using pomegranate leaf extract by Rao et al. (2013); these nanoparticles were coated on two strains (NCIM 3589 and NCIM 3590) of heat-killed yeast cells *Yarrowia lipolytica*, which is considered a good biosorbent itself; Venkateswarlu et al. (2014) used plantain peel extract as a low-cost bioreducing agent for synthesizing magnetite nanoparticles.

Iron salt solution was hydrolyzed which led to the formation of ferric hydroxide, and then it was subsequently reduced by various biomolecules to form Fe_3O_4 nanoparticles, banana peel ash extract was used to synthesize iron oxide nanoparticles, and aqueous extract of *Colocasia esculenta* leaves was used to reduce graphene oxide by Thakur and Karak (2014). Daniel et al. (2013) used leaf extract of the evergreen shrub *Dodonaea viscosa* to synthesize iron nanoparticles where the effect of leaf extract concentration on nanoparticle synthesis was studied. Senthil and Ramesh (2012) reported the green synthesis of Fe_3O_4 nanoparticles at room temperature using leaf extract of *Tridax procumbens*, and Narayanan et al. (2011) synthesized superparamagnetic magnetite/gold (Fe_3O_4/Au) hybrid nanoparticles at room temperature using grape seed proanthocyanidin (GSP) for the first time. Machado et al. (2014) screened leaf extracts of 26 plants for the production of nZVI. During synthesis variables like leaf extraction, temperature, time, and leaf mass to solvent volume ratio were checked. Eighty degree Celsius was identified as the optimum temperature, whereas the other variables like extraction, time, and leaf mass to solvent volume ratio varied as per leaf type.

In another study, Machado et al. (2014) synthesized nZVI using grape marc, black tea, and vine leaf extract. Kumar et al. (2013) synthesized stable iron oxide (Wustite) using aqueous extract of *Terminalia chebula* dry fruit pericarp. Leaves of three plants native to Australia, namely, *Eucalyptus tereticornis* (A), *Melaleuca nesophila* (B), and *Rosmarinus officinalis* (C), were explored by Wang et al. (2014). Phumying et al. (2013) synthesized Fe_3O_4 nanoparticles by the hydrothermal method using *Aloe vera* plant extract. Ahmmad et al. (2013) successfully synthesized highly pure hematite (α-Fe_2O_3) nanoparticles by the hydrothermal method using green tea (*Camellia sinensis*) leaf extract. Nanoparticle synthesis was carried out by exposing pretreated and milled powder of *Medicago sativa* (Alfalfa) to the salt solution of ferrous ammonium sulfate.

13.3 Use of Various Green Synthesized Nanoparticles in Wastewater Treatments

Treating polluted water has become a major challenge as various heavy metals and pathogenic organisms cause human health problems and can present a major threat to the environment (Ayangbenro and Babalola 2017). The use of magnetite nanoparticles as a sorbent has shown promise as an emerging treatment of polluted water. In this study, a common weed plant (*Lantana camara*) was used for synthesis of magnetite nanoparticles (MNPs). Synthesized MNPs were characterized for physical properties and batch absorption studies were undertaken to assess the potential for removal of heavy metals, namely, lead, under varying conditions (Sun et al. 2011). Nanotechnology can enable a distributed water reuse and treatment paradigm and offer leapfrogging opportunities to obviate concerns of water quality degradation within distribution networks, alleviate dependence on major system infrastructure, exploit alternative water sources (e.g., recycled new water) for potable and agricultural use, and abate energy consumption.

This vision may be particularly appropriate for developing countries that face rapid degradation of water quality with increasing pressure for cleaner water to meet more stringent environmental, public health, and food safety standards. This scenario underscores the need for a new class of “high-performance” water treatment technology. Future urban systems in developing countries will likely increasingly rely on nanotechnology-enabled water monitoring, treatment, and reuse systems that target a wide variety of water pollutants and are affordable and easy to operate. This will also contribute toward a zero discharge paradigm, which is an ultimate goal of sustainable urban water management. Examples of engineered nanomaterials (ENMs) that can enable this vision are summarized in this chapter. Such novel technologies for water treatment at both point of use and community scale are of great value for increasing the effectiveness and robustness of water distribution networks, allowing access to clean water to users that are not connected to a central network, and for emergency response following catastrophic events.

Various industries such as paper and pulp, textile, tanneries, cosmetic, coffee pulping, pharmaceutical food processing, electroplating, and dye manufacturing units discharge colored and toxic effluents to water (Erdem et al. 2005; Hameed 2009; Chandra et al. 2011; Zainith et al. 2019; Kishor et al. 2019). The untreated wastewater containing colored compounds which have complex structures is difficult to biodegrade. Some dyes used in the textile industries are toxic and carcinogenic, which present eco-toxic hazard and introduce the potential danger of bioaccumulation and also affect humans through the food chain (Babu et al. 2007; Sujata and Bharagava 2016; Kishor et al. 2019). Green synthesized NPs are highly proficient for recycling and removal of heavy metal from wastewaters without loss of their stability and degradation of a variety of organic pollutants from wastewaters and, thus, purify the wastewaters for reuse and recycling and could solve various water quality issues worldwide.

Nickel oxide is considered as good adsorbent due to its chemical and magnetic properties (Nateghi et al. 2012). Rafique et al. (2012) synthesized nano NiO using coprecipitation method and the obtained particles were probed for their adsorption nature toward sulphate and nitrate. It was noted that the adsorbent was effective at pH 7 for the removal of both anions from waters. The synthesized silver nanoparticle also shows heavy metal removal activity in laboratory simulated wastewater. The safety toxicity studies show no significant difference between the orally administered silver nanoparticle-treated water group and control group, while the histopathological studies show well-preserved hepatic architecture for the orally administered silver nanoparticle-treated wastewater group when compared with the control group.

Therefore, it can be concluded that the biosynthesized silver nanoparticles have efficient ability in heavy metal removal without subchronic adverse effects in experimental rats (Shittu and Ihebunna 2017). As water becomes scarcer and more contaminated, the food industry stands to gain much from advanced technology that would provide cleaner and more plentiful water supplies. Nanotechnology has the potential to meet these water-related needs in an inexpensive, efficient, yet flexible way that is crucial for developing nations. Wang et al. (2014) utilized the leaf extracts of green tea and eucalyptus separately for the formation of iron nanoparticles (Fe NPs) and employed for the efficient removal of nitrate from wastewater. Synthesis of spheroidal iron nanoparticles (Fe NPs) was confirmed by employing characterization techniques. A comparison study was conducted between plant-synthesized and chemically synthesized iron materials. Green tea and eucalyptus-mediated Fe NPs were able to remove 59.7% and 41.4% of nitrate from wastewater, respectively, compared to 87.6% and 11.7% removal of nitrate by nZVI and Fe_3O_4 nanoparticles, respectively.

Despite the higher removal efficiency of nZVI, the green synthesized Fe NPs were found to be more stable in nature. Reactivity of aged nZVI, green tea, and eucalyptus synthesized Fe NPs was compared after being completely exposed to air for 2 months. Green tea and eucalyptus synthesized Fe NPs retained the same efficiency of 51.7% and 40.7%, respectively, whereas the efficacy of nZVI significantly dropped about 2.1-fold (45.4%). New study, a green one-pot synthesis of L-serine

(L-Ser) capped magnetite nanoparticles (Fe_3O_4 NPs) and its potential application for adsorption of RhB dye from aqueous solution (Belachew et al. 2017).

13.4 Conclusion and Future Prospective

This chapter highlights the recent advancement in deciphering iron NP synthesis by plant extracts and their applications in water and wastewater treatment. Use of physical and chemical methods for NP synthesis is common but recently several new eco-friendly and economically feasible synthesis techniques are being explored. Green synthesized NPs are being effectively exploited in the area of medical and environmental remediation. Green synthesized NPs and several characterization techniques are currently being utilized in water and wastewater treatment because of their high proficiency and biocompatible nature. Green synthesized NPs are greatly proficient in recycling and eradication of heavy metal contaminants from wastewaters without disrupting their stability, consequently, for purification of wastewaters for reuse and recycling could solve numerous water quality problems globally. Moreover, experiments and problems correlated with the use of green synthesized Fe NPs in water and wastewater treatment are also discussed. However, the enormity of future research scope in this field cannot be accentuated enough.

Acknowledgments Amit K. Singh acknowledges Council of Scientific and Industrial Research, New Delhi, for the financial support in the form of Senior Research Fellowship. Amit K. Singh and Abhay K. Pandey also acknowledge the financial support given by UGC/DST India to the Department of Biochemistry, University of Allahabad, Allahabad India.

References

Agarwal HS, Kumar V, Kumar SR (2017) A review on green synthesis of zinc oxide nanoparticles-an eco-friendly approach. Resour Efficient Technol 3(4):406–413

Ahmad A, Mukherjee P, Senapati S, Mandal D, Khan MI, Kumar R, Sastry M (2003) Extracellular biosynthesis of silver nanoparticles using the fungus Fusarium oxysporum. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 28(4):313–318

Ahmmad B, Leonard K, Islam MS, Kurawaki J, Muruganandham M, Ohkubo T, Kuroda Y (2013) Green synthesis of mesoporous hematite (α-Fe2O3) nanoparticles and their photocatalytic activity. Adv Powder Technol 24(1):160–167

Ashbolt NJ (2004) Microbial contamination of drinking water and disease outcomes in developing regions. Toxicology 198(1–3):229–238

Ayangbenro A, Babalola O (2017) A new strategy for heavy metal polluted environments: a review of microbial biosorbents. Int J Environ Res Public Health 14(1):94

Babu BR, Parande AK, Raghu S, Kumar TP (2007) Cotton textile processing, waste generation and effluent treatment. J Cotton Sci 11:141–153

Bar H, Bhui DK, Sahoo GP, Sarkar P, De SP, Misra A (2009) Green synthesis of silver nanoparticles using latex of Jatropha curcas. Colloids Surf A Physicochem Eng Asp 339(1–3):134–139

Barth JV, Costantini G, Kern K (2010) Engineering atomic and molecular nanostructures at surfaces. In: Nanoscience and technology: a collection of reviews from Nature journals. World Scientific Publishing, Singapore, pp 67–75

Belachew N, Rama Devi D, Basavaiah K (2017) Green synthesis and characterization of L-Serine capped magnetite nanoparticles for removal of Rhodamine B from contaminated water. J Exp Nanosci 12(1):114–128

Bharagava RN, Chandra R (2010) Effect of bacteria treated and untreated post-methanated distillery effluent (PMDE) on seed germination, seedling growth and amylase activity in Phaseolus mungo L. J Hazard Mater 180:730–734

Bharagava RN, Chandra R, Rai V (2008) Phytoextraction of trace elements and physiological changes in Indian mustard plants (Brassica nigra L.) grow in post methanated distillery effluent (PMDE) irrigated soil. Bioresour Technol 99(17):8316–8324

Bharagava RN, Saxena G, Mulla SI, Patel DK (2018) Characterization and identification of recalcitrant organic pollutants (ROPs) in tannery wastewater and its phytotoxicity evaluation for environmental safety. Arch Environ Contam Toxicol 75(2):259–272

Bootharaju MS, Kozlov SM, Cao Z, Harb M, Maity N, Shkurenko A, Parida MR, Hedhili MN, Eddaoudi M, Mohammed OF, Bakr OM (2017) Doping-induced anisotropic self-assembly of silver icosahedra in [Pt2Ag23Cl7 (PPh3) 10] nanoclusters. J Am Chem Soc 139(3):1053–1056

Bottero JY, Rose J, Wiesner MR (2006) Nanotechnologies: tools for sustainability in a new wave of water treatment processes. Integr Environ Assess Manage 2(4):391–395

Brumbaugh AD, Cohen KA, St. Angelo SK (2014) Ultrasmall copper nanoparticles synthesized with a plant tea reducing agent. ACS Sustain Chem Eng 2(8):1933–1939

Chandra R, Bharagava RN, Kapley A, Purohit HJ (2011) Bacterial diversity, organic pollutants and their metabolites in two aeration lagoons of common effluent treatment plant during the degradation and detoxification of tannery wastewater. Bioresour Technol 102:2333–2341

Chandra R, Bharagava RN, Kapley A, Purohit HJ (2012) Characterization of Phargmites cummunis rhizosphere bacterial communities and metabolic products during the two stage sequential treatment of post methanated distillery effluent by bacteria and wetland plants. Bioresour Technol 103:78–86

Diallo MS, Savage N (2005) Nanoparticles and water quality. J Nanopart Res 7(4):325–330

Erdem E, Çölgeçen G, Donat R (2005) The removal of textile dyes by diatomite earth. J Colloid Interface Sci 282(2):314–319

Gautam SP, Saxena G, Singh V, Yadav AK, Bharagava RN, Thapa KB (2018) Green synthesis of TiO2 nanoparticles using leaf extract of Jatropha curcas L. for photocatalytic degradation of tannery wastewater. Chem Eng J 336:386–396

Ghosh S, Patil S, Ahire M, Kitture R, Kale S, Pardesi K, Cameotra SS, Bellare J, Dhavale DD, Jabgunde A, Chopade BA (2012) Synthesis of silver nanoparticles using Dioscorea bulbifera tuber extract and evaluation of its synergistic potential in combination with antimicrobial agents. Int J Nanomedicine 7:483

Hameed BH (2009) Spent tea leaves: a new non-conventional and low-cost adsorbent for removal of basic dye from aqueous solutions. J Hazard Mater 161(2–3):753–759

Iravani S (2011) Green synthesis of metal nanoparticles using plants. Green Chem 13(10):2638–2650

Jebali A, Ramezani F, Kazemi B (2011) Biosynthesis of silver nanoparticles by Geotricum sp. J Cluster Sci 22(2):225–232

Kaviya S, Santhanalakshmi J, Viswanathan B, Muthumary J, Srinivasan K (2011) Biosynthesis of silver nanoparticles using Citrus sinensis peel extract and its antibacterial activity. Spectrochim Acta A Mol Biomol Spectrosc 79(3):594–598

Kisa F (2015) New approach to selective stem cell sorting: separation of undifferentiated stem cells from differentiated stem cells by using iron oxide core shell nanoparticles. Doctoral dissertation, The University of Wisconsin-Madison

Kishor R, Bharagava RN, Saxena G (2019) Industrial wastewaters: the major sources of dye contamination in the environment, ecotoxicological effects, and bioremediation approaches. In:

Bharagava RN (ed) Recent advances in environmental management. CRC Press Taylor & Francis, Boca Raton, p 13. ISBN: 978-0-8153-8314-7

Korbekandi H, Iravani S, Abbasi S (2009) Production of nanoparticles using organisms. Crit Rev Biotechnol 29(4):279–306

Kumar V, Yadav SK (2009) Plant-mediated synthesis of silver and gold nanoparticles and their applications. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 84(2):151–157

Kumar KM, Mandal BK, Kumar KS, Reddy PS, Sreedhar B (2013) Biobased green method to synthesise palladium and iron nanoparticles using Terminalia chebula aqueous extract. Spectrochim Acta A Mol Biomol Spectrosc 102:128–133

Ma L, Fan H, Fu K, Lei S, Hu Q, Huang H, He G (2017) Protonation of graphitic carbon nitride (g-C3N4) for an electrostatically self-assembling carbon@ g-C3N4 core–shell nanostructure toward high hydrogen evolution. ACS Sustain Chem Eng 5(8):7093–7103

Machado S, Grosso JP, Nouws HP, Albergaria JT, Delerue-Matos C (2014) Utilization of food industry wastes for the production of zero-valent iron nanoparticles. Sci Total Environ 496:233–240

Mijatovic D, Eijkel JC, van den Berg A (2005) Technologies for nanofluidic systems: top-down vs. bottom-up—a review. Lab Chip 5(5):492–500

MubarakAli D, Thajuddin N, Jeganathan K, Gunasekaran M (2011) Plant extract mediated synthesis of silver and gold nanoparticles and its antibacterial activity against clinically isolated pathogens. Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces 85(2):360–365

Narayanan KB, Sakthivel N (2010) Biological synthesis of metal nanoparticles by microbes. Adv Colloid Interface Sci 156(1–2):1–3

Narayanan S, Sathy BN, Mony U, Koyakutty M, Nair SV, Menon D (2011) Biocompatible magnetite/gold nanohybrid contrast agents via green chemistry for MRI and CT bioimaging. ACS Appl Mater Interfaces 4(1):251–260

Nateghi R, Bonyadinejad GR, Amin MM, Mohammadi H (2012) Decolorization of synthetic wastewaters by nickel oxide nanoparticle. Int J Environ Health Eng 1(1):25

Njagi EC, Huang H, Stafford L, Genuino H, Galindo HM, Collins JB, Hoag GE, Suib SL (2010) Biosynthesis of iron and silver nanoparticles at room temperature using aqueous Sorghum bran extracts. Langmuir 27(1):264–271

Obare SO, Meyer GJ (2004) Nanostructured materials for environmental remediation of organic contaminants in water. J Environ Sci Health 39(10):2549–2582

Pretty J (2007) Agricultural sustainability: concepts, principles and evidence. Philos Trans R Soc B Biol Sci 363(1491):447–465

Qu F, Liang H, He J, Ma J, Wang Z, Yu H, Li G (2012) Characterization of dissolved extracellular organic matter (dEOM) and bound extracellular organic matter (bEOM) of Microcystis aeruginosa and their impacts on UF membrane fouling. Water Res 46(9): 2881–2890

Rafique U, Imtiaz A, Khan AK (2012) Synthesis, characterization and application of nanomaterials for the removal of emerging pollutants from industrial waste water, kinetics and equilibrium model. J Water Sustain 4:233–244

Rahman IA, Padavettan V (2012) Synthesis of silica nanoparticles by sol-gel: size-dependent properties, surface modification, and applications in silica-polymer nanocomposites—a review. J Nanomater 2012:8

Rahman Z, Singh VP (2018) Assessment of heavy metal contamination and Hg-resistant bacteria in surface water from different regions of Delhi, India. Saudi J Biol Sci 25(8):1687–1695

Rao A, Bankar A, Kumar AR, Gosavi S, Zinjarde S (2013) Removal of hexavalent chromium ions by Yarrowia lipolytica cells modified with phyto-inspired Fe0/Fe3O4 nanoparticles. J Contam Hydrol 146:63–73

Rockström J (2003) Water for food and nature in drought–prone tropics: vapour shift in rain–fed agriculture. Philos Trans R Soc Lond Ser B Biol Sci 358(1440):1997–2009

Saif S, Tahir A, Chen Y (2016) Green synthesis of iron nanoparticles and their environmental applications and implications. Nanomaterials 6(11):209

Senthil M, Ramesh C (2012) Biogenic synthesis of Fe3O4 nanoparticles using Tridex procumbens leaf extract and its antibacterial activity on Pseudomonas aeruginosa. Dig J Nanomater Biostruct (DJNB) 7(4):1655–1661

Sharma VK, Yngard RA, Lin Y (2009) Silver nanoparticles: green synthesis and their antimicrobial activities. Adv Colloid Interface Sci 145(1–2):83–96

Sharma D, Kanchi S, Bisetty K (2015) Biogenic synthesis of nanoparticles: a review. Arab J Chem. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.arabjc.2015.11.002

Shittu KO, Ihebunna O (2017) Purification of simulated waste water using green synthesized silver nanoparticles of Piliostigma thonningii aqueous leave extract. Adv Nat Sci Nanosci Nanotechnol 8(4):045003

Song JY, Kwon EY, Kim BS (2010) Biological synthesis of platinum nanoparticles using Diopyros kaki leaf extract. Bioprocess Biosyst Eng 33(1):159

Storhoff JJ, Lazarides AA, Mucic RC, Mirkin CA, Letsinger RL, Schatz GC (2000) What controls the optical properties of DNA-linked gold nanoparticle assemblies? J Am Chem Soc 122(19):4640–4650

Sujata, Bharagava RN (2016) Exposure to crystal violet, its toxic, genotoxic and carcinogenic effects on environment and its degradation and detoxification for environmental safety. Rev Environ Contam Toxicol 237:71–104

Sun H, Cao L, Lu L (2011) Magnetite/reduced graphene oxide nanocomposites: one step solvothermal synthesis and use as a novel platform for removal of dye pollutants. Nano Research 4(6):550–562

Thakkar KN, Mhatre SS, Parikh RY (2010) Biological synthesis of metallic nanoparticles. Nanomed Nanotechnol Biol Med 6(2):257–262

Thakur S, Karak N (2014) One-step approach to prepare magnetic iron oxide/reduced graphene oxide nanohybrid for efficient organic and inorganic pollutants removal. Mater Chem Phys 144(3):425–432

Togola A, Diallo D, Dembélé S, Barsett H, Paulsen BS (2005) Ethnopharmacological survey of different uses of seven medicinal plants from Mali,(West Africa) in the regions Doila, Kolokani and Siby. J Ethnobiol Ethnomed 1(1):7

Venkateswarlu S, Kumar BN, Prathima B, SubbaRao Y, Jyothi NV (2014) A novel green synthesis of Fe3O4 magnetic nanorods using Punica Granatum rind extract and its application for removal of Pb (II) from aqueous environment. Arab J Chem 12:589–596

Vörösmarty CJ, Green P, Salisbury J, Lammers RB (2000) Global water resources: vulnerability from climate change and population growth. Science 289(5477):284–288

Wang T, Jin X, Chen Z, Megharaj M, Naidu R (2014) Green synthesis of Fe nanoparticles using eucalyptus leaf extracts for treatment of eutrophic wastewater. Sci Total Environ 466:210–213

Zainith S, Purchase D, Saratale GD, Ferreira LFR, Bilal M, Bharagava RN (2019) Isolation and characterization of lignin-degrading bacterium Bacillus aryabhattai from pulp and paper mill wastewater and evaluation of its lignin-degrading potential. 3 Biotech 9(3):92

Chapter 14
Microbial Communities in Constructed Wetland Microcosms and Their Role in Treatment of Domestic Wastewater

Saroj Kumar, Bhanu Pratap, Divya Dubey, and Venkatesh Dutta

Abstract Microbial biomass is the main reducer for majority of organics and nutrients. The aerobic region of constructed wetland microcosms (CWMs) is majorly characterized by presence of *Nitrosomonas* and *Pseudomonas spp.* The diversity of ammonia-oxidizers mainly *Nitrosospira sp.* is higher in CWMs designed to treat domestic wastewater as compared to other bacteria studied. The activity of enzymes within CWMs is a key indicator towards role of microbial community. Rhizospheric region has diverse elements that comprises minerals, sugars, vitamins, organic acids, polysaccharides, phenol and various other organic materials that encourages the microbial groups to degrade wastewater pollutants. The presence of macrophytes has significant effects on microbial richness and community structure. The root exudates liberated by macrophytes are also able to alter the richness and diversity of the microbial population. The decomposition rates of microbes become slow as temperatures drop, which can be optimized by increasing the size of wetlands to accomplish the slower reaction rates. The pH of wastewater has also a strong effect on various microbially mediated reactions and processes. Temperature, hydrologic conditions, macrophytic diversity/richness and biotic succession strongly impact the microbial community structure. A little alteration in the diversity or community structure of the microorganisms directly affects the treatment performance of CWMs.

Keywords Microbial diversity/richness · Constructed wetland microcosms · Removal efficiency · Enzyme activity · Macrophytes

---

S. Kumar · B. Pratap · D. Dubey · V. Dutta (✉)
Department of Environmental Science (DES), School of Environmental Sciences (SES),
Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar (A Central) University, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

R. N. Bharagava (ed.), *Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment*, Microorganisms for Sustainability 18,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-1390-9_14

14.1 Introduction

Water scarcity is the major driver of wastewater reclamation, particularly in arid and semi-arid zones. Reclamation of wastewater has turned out to be an alternate source of water supply for several non-potable requirements in several countries including the USA (US Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA), National Risk Management Research Laboratory, US Agency for International Development 2012; World Bank Group 2013). In the USA, around 7–8% of wastewater after treatment through Constructed Wetlands (CWs) has been reused mostly for agriculture and urban irrigation (US Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA), National Risk Management Research Laboratory, US Agency for International Development 2012). In North Africa, majority of wastewater reused in agriculture and for landscaping entails many undesirable effects on human and ecosystem health (World Bank Group 2013). In the United Arab Emirates (UAE), majority of the wastewater treatment is followed by biological means and utilized to reform the landscape (AlMulla 2016). Around 70% of wastewater generated from household activities in Israel has been reused for several activities (US Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA), National Risk Management Research Laboratory, US Agency for International Development 2012).

Many water reuse programs were initiated in the USA towards expensive nutrient removal mechanisms from secondary wastewater, consequently removing or decreasing wastewater discharge. Climate change and environmental sustenance concerns play a key role in reclamation of wastewater (Tram Vo et al. 2014). During previous decades, policy developers in several nations have expressed plans/guidelines favoring development and implementation of projects linked with reclamation of wastewater. World Health Organization (WHO) provided guiding principles related to human health by the wastewater used for agricultural and aquacultural activities in 1989 which was amended in 2006 for the proper and safe use of wastewater (WHO 2006). Around 30 states and one territory of US till September 2012 have implemented guidelines and 15 states have designed standards that administrate water reuse. China has reformed its water policy to boost the utilization of treated wastewater (Chang et al. 2013).

The Australian council of engineering and innovation has developed wastewater reuse guidelines for metropolitan wastewater improvements (Radcliffe 2006). The Royal Decree (RD) of Spain has recognized the legal charter for reuse of wastewater (Vera et al. 2013; Avila et al. 2015). Constructed wetland microcosm (CWM) is a shallow basin occupied with substrate material, generally soil, gravel, or sand, and planted with macrophytes that can adopt indigenous climatic settings and stand with waterlogged situations (Kumar and Dutta 2019a). A working model of CWM is shown in Fig. 14.1. The microbial biomass is the main known factor for removal of organics and nutrients. Particulate and dissolved organics are actively converted into CO_2 and water by bacteria, fungi and actinomycetes. Macrophytes play a vital role in removal processes by diffusing atmospheric oxygen (O_2) into their root system that are used by the microbes to decompose wastewater contaminants.

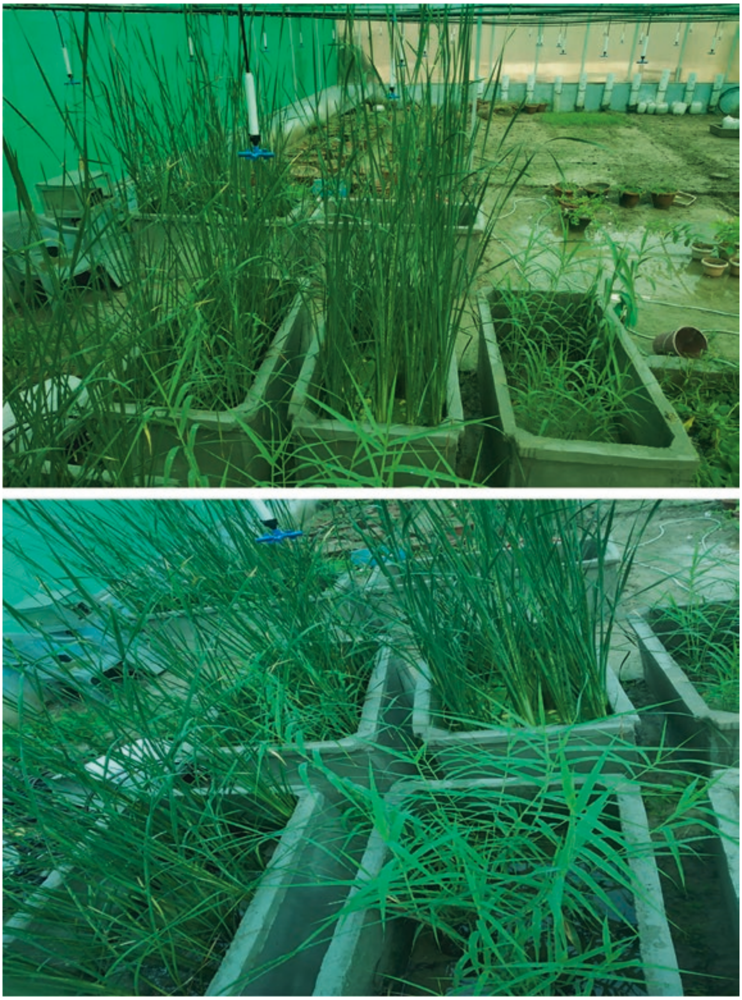


Fig. 14.1 CWM units working successfully for the treatment of domestic wastewater at Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University, Lucknow

Macrophytes provide several functions such as stabilization of the surface of beds, clogging prevention, offers opportunity for physical filtration, insulation during winters, and provide surface for microbial attachment (Valipour and Ahn 2016).

Basically, the contaminants removal comprises three processes namely biological, physical and chemical methods. Physical processes comprise mainly filtration and sedimentation. Chemical processes include bio-transformation, dividing unionized and ionized acids and bases, cation exchange, solubility of solids and gases. Nitrification, denitrification, photosynthesis, respiration, fermentation, and microbial phosphorus eliminations are biological process (Mitchell and McNevin 2001). The functions of CWMs are extremely dependent on microbial population such as bacteria, fungi and protozoans and their metabolic rate (Wetzel 1993). Pollutants transformation is the major microbial mechanism which directly takes part in treatment of wastewater and alters the redox potential of the substrate (Kumar and Dutta 2019b). In fact, microorganisms self-sustain according to the features of supporting media and remain in dormant stage for several years if ecological conditions are unfavorable (Hilton 1993). It is known that noxious elements like heavy metals and pesticides might have deleterious effects on microbial population present in a CWM. Activity of microbes also gets influenced by the oxygen in the root zone.

Rhizospheric region is well known for their rich microbial activities such as macrophyte–microbe interactions and interaction with supportive materials and pollutants. It is the area where majority of biological reactions take place because of close interaction among supportive materials and roots of macrophytes. It is also recognized as a region with diverse elements such as minerals, vitamins, sugars, organic acids, phenol, polysaccharides, carbon compounds and enzymes and various other materials that encourage the microbial groups to degrade organic pollutants (Bertin et al. 2003; Faulwetter et al. 2009; Miersch et al. 2001). A diverse range of microorganism groups perform and influence the performance of CWMs (Dong and Reddy 2010; Ibekwe et al. 2003; Long et al. 2016). Mobilizing of nutrients is facilitated by the rhizodeposition products. Hoffland et al. (1992) evaluated that the solubility of iron and phosphate was increased by organic acid produced by different plants under nutrient limiting conditions; therefore, the nutrient uptake capacity of macrophytes is improved.

Microbial population used organics as substrates and expelled vitamins to encourage growth of microbes that is known as ‘rhizosphere effect’. Microorganisms attached with the substratum develop biofilms that are habitually present inside a self-produced medium of extracellular polymeric substance (EPS) (Kumar and Dutta 2019b). Most of nitrogen from wastewater is removed by microbial communities by influencing anammox and nitrification-denitrification mechanisms within CWMs (Kröger et al. 2012; Oehl et al. 2004). However, removal of phosphorus through mineralization and immobilization is also partially affected by microbial activities (Truu et al. 2005).

14.2 Microorganisms in CWMs and Their Role in Treatment Process

Characterization of the microbial groups in CWMs offers valuable information about understanding their role in treatment efficiency (Zhong et al. 2015). The microorganisms require 75–100 days to develop communities in CWMs system with sand filters (Truu et al. 2009; Weber and Legge 2011), in which denitrifying bacteria take 75 days and ammonium- oxidizing bacteria require 95 days for their development (Wang et al. 2016). Polymerase chain reaction-denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis (PCR-DGGE) is an advantageous tool for evaluating diversity of microbial community and their structure in CWMs (Ibekwe et al. 2003). This technique was firstly applied by Muyzer et al. (1993) in microbial ecology, and later by Adrados et al. (2014) to evaluate the structure of bacterial community in CWs. Additional significant mechanism is microbial biomass carbon (MBC) that is generally used to measure microbial biomass.

MBC is a subsidiary method to measure the microbial density and has been considered to be a valuable parameter for assessing the contaminant removal effectiveness in CWs (Truu et al. 2009). Therefore, the MBC can offer meaningful information about the microbes in CWs. However, several studies on MBC have been directed toward their relevance to environmental factors, such as land use, macrophytic species and seasons (Calheiros et al. 2009a, b). Earlier findings revealed that the microorganisms show diverse characteristics for the elimination of contaminants (Ahn et al. 2007; Krasnits et al. 2009). These microorganisms have been regarded as the main determining factor for water quality enhancement (Calheiros et al. 2009a, b; Faulwetter et al. 2009). Several other factors such as temperature, macrophytic diversity (Zhang et al. 2010, 2011a, b), hydrologic conditions (Mentzer et al. 2006; Steenwerth et al. 2006), and biotic succession (Kent et al. 2007) impact the structure of microbial community. The quantity of oxygen and root exudates useful for microorganisms in the rhizospheric zone has been found to differ by macrophytic species (Laskov et al. 2006). Majority of bacterial population is found in the rhizosphere region.

Several studies reported that the *Nitrosomonas* species is dominant in the plant roots zone, increasing the removal of nitrogen (Puigagut et al. 2008). Appropriate macrophyte species is vital to determine the microbial structure that is eventually responsible for the removal process. It is reported that the macrophytes which are able to tolerate high salinity (halotolerant), advance the treatment efficiency of CWMs (Wiessner et al. 2005; Wu et al. 2009), through liberating oxygen and making healthier environments for aerobic halotolerant microorganisms (Wu et al. 2012; Xiong et al. 2011). The arrangement of microbial groups in different zones of soil substrate in CWMs designed for the treatment of domestic wastewater was observed by Truu et al. (2005). Later they found that the wetland depth is a key component that affects the activity and community structure (Truu et al. 2009). Several previous investigations have reported microbial diversity in laboratory scale as well as in full-scale CWs (Calheiros et al. 2009a, b; Krasnits et al. 2009; Sleytr et al. 2009; Dong and Reddy 2010; Zhang et al. 2010).

However, the information about how the diversity of microorganisms changed in the long-term operations is still inadequate (Adrados et al. 2014). The roots of macrophytes play a central role in developing structure of bacterial community (Faulwetter et al. 2013). Zhang et al. (2011a, b). It is confirmed that root exudates of macrophytes such as *Thalia dealbata* inhibited the growth and development of the Cyanobacteria. Presence of excess nutrients and other noxious substances in a wetland system distresses the biofilms and their arrangements (Calheiros et al. 2009a, b). The study carried out by Llanos-Lizcano et al. (2019) characterized a total of 180 (65 anaerobic and 115 aerobic) heterotrophic bacteria from rhizosphere of *C. articulatus* and *Thalia geniculata* together with non-planted constructed wetland, in which water flows horizontally.

Peralta et al. (2013) also described parallel outcomes about the bacterial communities in different types of constructed and natural wetlands; they also found that the α-Proteobacteria was the most dominant class, followed by γ-Proteobacteria and β-Proteobacteria. CWMs with different phosphorus loading rates were characterized for microbial populations by Ahn et al. (2007) using length heterogeneity PCR (LH-PCR) relay on the 16S rRNA gene. The outcome of this study was that the sediment has abundant α-Proteobacteria (about 48–60%) and then Actinobacteria and Firmicutes and remains constant throughout the study. Several other researchers have evaluated numerous connections between bacterial diversity, pollutants loading rates and removal efficiencies in CWMs (Wu et al. 2016; Zhi et al. 2015; Zhang et al. 2016).

14.3 Microbially Mediated Reactions in CWMs

The filtration is the most significant removal mechanism working in CWMs, whereas some microorganism-mediated procedures, biochemical networks, sedimentation, volatilization, photodegradation, sorption, transpiration flux and plant uptake also enhance the performance (Bitton 2005; Morvannou et al. 2014). It is reported that some bacterial populations in animal waste actively function for decomposition of several organic compounds and to suppress pathogens. One such bacterial group namely chemolithotrophic ammonia-oxidizing bacteria take part in several chemical and biological breakdown of ammonium. They are responsible for conversion of ammonium (NH_4) to nitrate (NO_3) through nitrogen cycling (Behrends et al. 2001; Ansola et al. 2014). Oved et al. (2001) reported the influence of urban wastewater on the function and community structure of these bacteria in soil substrate via denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis (DGGE).

The result showed a substantial and constant change in the structure of communities of these bacteria with *Nitrosomonas* dominated effluent. It is also reported that the diversity of these ammonia-oxidizing bacteria mainly *Nitrosospira sp.* was higher in CWMs as compared to other bacteria studied. Therefore, it is evaluated that the diversity of ammonia-oxidizing bacteria inside a constructed wetland system play key role on its stability (Rowan et al. 2003). Basically, there are six key biological processes employed in the treatment of wastewater; these are microbial phosphorus elimination, nitrification, denitrification, fermentation, respiration and photosynthesis (Mitchell and McNevin 2001). Wastewater that is heavily loaded with biological oxygen demand (BOD) and chemical oxygen demand (COD) is usually undergo oxidation and methanation process supported by oxygen and sulfur loving bacteria (Chan et al. 2008).

Oxygen enters into the deposits of the supportive materials with the assistance of macrophytic roots and produce an aerobic zone nearby roots. This region is characterized by presence of *Pseudomonas aeruginosa spp.* and *Nitrosomonas* that are accountable for the aerobic breakdown of contaminants. The anaerobic zone is characterized by the dominance of methanogens and sulfur degrading bacteria. Degradation of contaminants anaerobically involves mainly two-steps, first one is fermentation and the other one is methanogenesis (Cui et al. 2010; Pedescoll et al. 2011). An ultimate characteristic of CWMs is that their roles are controlled mainly through microbial population and their metabolic rate (Wetzel 1993). Microbial population chiefly includes bacteria, fungi, protozoa, rind algae and yeasts. The biomass of microorganisms is a main reducer for majority of organics and nutrients. The activity of microorganisms converts several organic and inorganic materials into innocuous insoluble materials, and, changes the redox reaction (reduction/oxidation) of the media material.

The transformations are either aerobic or anaerobic. Aerobic settings are commonly described to be more efficient for the removal of maximum organic contaminants. It is reported that the rate of nitrification-denitrification with two macrophytic species are much higher than CWMs with one or without macrophyte (Hua et al. 2017). The macrophytic type, density and their distribution can affect contaminants removal due to alteration in bacterial communities and consecutive aerobic and anaerobic settings (Calheiros et al. 2010; Zhu et al. 2017). It is known that the lower concentrations of nitrogen can also affect the removal efficiency.

14.4 Seasonal Variability Among Microbial Communities with Respect to Macrophytes

The structure of microbial population may vary widely according to the change in environmental conditions. In summer season, *Phragmites australis* contained dominant microbial groups (e.g., actinobacteria, bacteroidetes, and proteobacteria). However, unplanted units possess maximum photosynthetic bacteria and cyanobacteria (Wang et al. 2016). The richness of proteobacteria with *Phragmites australis* during winter season was >40% and intensely declined in unplanted units. Moreover, the abundance of cyanobacteria and photosynthetic bacteria declined in unplanted units. In both periods, bacteria remained more dominant in root zone as compared to supportive material. The occurrence of macrophytes has positive effects on richness of microorganisms (Wang et al. 2016). Yovo et al. (2016) demonstrate that *T. geniculata* are able to enhance dissolved oxygen through the well-developed aerenchyma. Maximum root diameter enables it to diffuse more oxygen into the system (Longstreth and Borkhsenious 2000).

Various species of emergent macrophyte *Cyperus* excreted bactericidal exudates within rhizosphere (Alufasi et al. 2017), and evidence toward *C. articulatus* bacterial exudates has been also documented (Caselles-Osorio et al. 2017). *C. articulatus* is able to allocate oxygen in excess to the rhizospheric region and offers an efficient elimination of nitrogen (>75%). Nevertheless, the outcomes with the similar species can differ according to season and operational conditions (Shelef et al. 2013). In CWMs, microorganisms are crucial agents for biogeochemical reactions that enhance water quality during the treatment process (Mitsch and Gosselink 2007; Saunders et al. 2013). A little alteration in the diversity or community structure of the microorganisms might directly affect the treatment performance of CWMs. During the winter, the activity of microbes produces sufficient warmness to prevent the bottom films from cold. The decomposition rates of microbes become slow as temperatures drop, thus, this can be optimized by increasing the size of wetlands to accomplish the slower reaction rates.

Tian et al. (2017) reported that the bacterial diversity is negatively correlated with the organics and nutrients removal, particularly in summer season when the population size and diversity are high. Some bacterial populations are dominated by anaerobic facultative that can work actively under both anaerobic and aerobic situations with respect to unstable ecological environments. During unfavorable conditions, several microbial populations become inactive and can remain in this state for years (Hilton 1993). Faulwetter et al. (2009) reported that the specific microbial group is responsible for the removal of particular contaminant. Hence, expanding the understanding about the organization of microorganism's community is useful to disclose the contaminants removal mechanisms in CWMs. Most common anthropogenic wastewater contaminants and their effects on human and aquatic organisms are given in Table 14.1.

14.5 Enzyme Activity

The action of enzymes within CWMs has been observed as a key indicator towards the role of microbial populations involved in wastewater treatment (Mentzer et al. 2006; Zhang et al. 2011a, b). The community structure of microbial populations has been correlated to specific enzyme activities (Zhang et al. 2006). Enzyme activity within soil substrate of a CWM (Kang et al. 1998; Martens et al. 1992) is considered as a significant factor for improving water quality (Freeman et al. 1997; Shackle et al. 2000). Functions of several enzymes within CWMs get influenced by various aspects such as biological factors (fauna, higher taxa and microbial communities), edaphic factors (nutrient composition, texture, pH, depth, organic matter content, etc.) and environmental factors (Zaman et al. 1999; Duarte et al. 2008; Reboreda and Caçador 2008).

The activity of enzymes might be altered by modifying the carbon supply either qualitatively or quantitatively to enhance the removal efficiency of CWMs (Shackle et al. 2000). They also described that supply of exogenous enzymes can improve the biodegradation processes. The actions of numerous enzymes including urease, phosphatase, protease and cellulase exhibited great dissimilarities over time. It is stated that the activity of urease was always advanced in CWMs developed with *Phragmites australis* as compared to other wetlands planted with several macrophytes. Activity of enzymes is inversely proportional to depth of soil (Aon and Colaneri 2001; Niemi et al. 2005) with maximum in the upper layer of soil substrate nearly for all wetlands. Root activity within rhizosphere presented a stronger association with enzyme activity.

Table 14.1 Most common anthropogenic wastewater contaminants and their effects on human and aquatic organisms

S. No.	Category	Contaminant	Effects	Reference
1	Organic	Nitrogen	Algal blooms in water bodies, possibly increased cancer risk, encourage infectious microorganisms such as *Pfiesteria* that can cause irritation to eye and methemoglobinemia (blue-baby syndrome) in babies	Bojcevska and Tonderski (2007)
		Phosphorus	Eutrophication, headache, gastrointestinal illnesses	
2	Heavy metals	Zn	Acidification of water, skin irritations, stomach contractions, vomiting, nausea, anemia, damage to pancreas, disturbance in protein metabolic rate, respiratory maladies, prone to infants and unborn	Calheiros et al. (2009a)
3		Pb	Kidney damage, anemia and interference with hemoglobin synthesis	Calheiros et al. (2009b)
4		Hg	Toxic to aquatic organisms like fishe, neurotoxic	Calheiros et al. (2010)
5		Cd	Temporary reduction in growth of fishe by larval mortality, in animals interacts with calcium metabolism	Truu et al. (2005)
6		Cr	Fish are more susceptible to infection, damaging the tissues of a number of invertebrates such as worms and snails	Calheiros et al. (2017)
7	Hydrocarbons	Petroleum hydrocarbons	Can damage liver and kidney severely, reproductive cytotoxicity and juvenile cancers	Calheiros et al. (2009a)
8	Microorganisms	Harmful bacteria	Several water-borne diseases	Calheiros et al. (2008a)
9		Viruses	Viral infections	
10		Protozoans	Amoebiasis, Trypanosomiasis, Diarrhea, Leishmaniasis, Trichomoniasis, Lambliasis, Toxoplasmosis and Malaria	

(continued)

Table 14.1 (continued)

S. No.	Category	Contaminant	Effects	Reference
11	Persistent organic pollutants	PCBs	Act as endocrine disrupting substances	Calheiros et al. (2008b)
12		Phthalates (plastics)	Early sexual maturation, lower orientation and attentiveness in girls, lung disorders, menace of diabetes, endometriosis and disorder in normal body functions	Calheiros et al. (2014)
13		Bisphenol A (BPA)	Lead to infertility, affect puberty and ovulation, can cause type-2 diabetes by insulin resistance, heart disease, inhibit the development of brain at gestation and enhance the risk all types of cancers	Carballeira et al. (2017)
14		Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs)	Inhibits the normal working of the body. Prone to immunotoxicity, genotoxicity and embryotoxicity	Carvalho et al. (2012)
15	Emerging pollutants	Pharmaceutical products	Reduction in growth of aquatic organisms, affecting the reproductive rates of fish by masculinization	Caselles-Osorio et al. (2011)

Due to this stronger correlation, the activity of enzymes can get affected by macrophytes root activity that significantly affects the pollutants removal efficiency (Kong et al. 2009). Macrophytes can also impact soil enzyme activity via altering species composition and diversity of microbes through excreting exogenous enzymes and liberating oxygen and exudates. They are also taking part in reactivation of free enzymes that possibly get deactivated and conserved by tannin compound with several other substances in anaerobic region, through oxygenation via intensifying root structure (Neori et al. 2000).

14.6 Effect of Temperature on Microbial Activity

Numerous biogeochemical reactions that regulate the pollutants removal efficiency are greatly affected by temperature, consequently altering the overall performance of CWMs (Lee et al. 2009). Various environmental aspects showed annual cycles that facilitate the performance of whole system. Out of which, temperature of wastewater is most significant. Atmospheric effects, such as rain, water reaeration and evapotranspiration also follow seasonal patterns (Kadlec 1995). Several distinct wetland processes, for example, microbially mediated reactions and decomposition of organic matter are greatly inhibited by temperature. It also has significant influence on nitrogen transforming processes such as nitrification, mineralization and denitrification.

The reactions for phosphorus sorption have lower temperature effect. The removal of nitrogen, phosphorus and particulate carbon by physical processes are not much affected by temperature. The water and temperature of surface soil within wetland system characteristically show both annual and diurnal cycles (Tanner and Headley 2011). The diurnal variations in wastewater temperature are around 5 °C for free water surface wetlands system (Kadlec and Reddy 2001). During warm periods, the average daily wastewater temperature is almost equivalent to the average daily air temperature (García et al. 2003).

14.7 Effect of DO on Microbial Activity

The oxygen limited conditions favor methanogenesis and bacterial groups existing in humid and hot atmospheres, and consume more oxygen than it diffuses from atmosphere (Hamilton et al. 1995). Therefore, CWMs are the perfect models for fermentation process with anaerobic conditions allowing easier breakdown of organics. The metabolic action of microbes in the rhizospheric region gets influenced by the availability of oxygen (Chen et al. 2011; Saxena et al. 2019). The pH of wastewater in CWMs exerts a strong effect towards various reactions and processes, together with biological conversion, separating ionized and unionized acids and bases, cation exchange and solvability of gases and solids (Niveditha 2019).

14.8 Conclusion

One of the major characteristics of CWMs is that their roles are measured primarily by microbial population and their associated metabolic rate. The microbial biomass is the main reducer for majority of organics and nutrients. The activity of enzymes within CWMs has been observed as a key indicator towards role of microbial community in removing contaminants during the treatment process. The aerobic region of CWMs is characterized by presence of *Nitrosomonas* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa spp.* It is also reported that the population of ammonia-oxidizing bacteria mainly *Nitrosospira sp.* is higher in CWMs designed to treat domestic wastewater as compared to other bacteria studied. The presence of these bacterial populations inside a treatment wetland has a major effect on its stability. Microbial cells attached with substratum develop biofilms that are habitually present inside a self-produced medium of extracellular polymeric substance (EPS). Microbial population use organics as nutrients and expel vitamins and several metabolites to encourage growth of additional microbes that is known as rhizosphere effect. Rhizospheric region has diverse elements that comprises minerals, organic acids, sugars, vitamins, polysaccharides, phenol and various other carbon-based materials that encourage the microbial groups to degrade organic pollutants.

The presence of macrophytes has encouraging effects on richness and community arrangement of microorganisms. Several organic materials expelled by the macrophytes in the root zone alter the microbial population dynamics. The pH of wastewater in CWMs has a strong effect toward various reactions and processes. The decomposition rates of microbes become slow as temperatures drop, thus, this can be optimized by increasing the size of wetlands to accomplish the slower reaction rates. A little alteration in the diversity or community structure of the microorganisms might directly affect the overall treatment performance of CWMs. Hence, expanding the knowledge about the organization of microbial community structure is instrumental in understanding about the contaminants removal mechanisms of CWMs.

Acknowledgement The authors are grateful to the Department of Environmental Science, Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University for providing infrastructural facility and University Grants Commission (UGC), New Delhi, India for financial assistance as Junior Research Fellowship (Ref. no. 3525/SC/NET-JULY 2016) to the first author of this chapter.

References

Adrados B, Sánchez O, Arias CA, Becares E, Garrido L, Mas J, Morató J (2014) Microbial communities from different types of natural wastewater treatment systems: vertical and horizontal flow constructed wetlands and biofilters. Water Res 55:304–312

Ahn C, Gillevet PM, Sikaroodi M (2007) Molecular characterization of microbial communities in treatment microcosm wetlands as influenced by macrophytes and phosphorus loading. Ecol Indic 7(4):852–863

AlMulla A (2016) Sharjah integrated water management. In: Proceedings of the water and energy exchange (WEX 2016), 29

Alufasi R, Gere J, Chakauya E, Lebea P, Parawira W, Chingwaru W (2017) Mechanisms of pathogen removal by macrophytes in constructed wetlands. Environ Technol Rev 6(1):135–144

Ansola G, Arroyo P, de Miera LES (2014) Characterization of the soil bacterial community structure and composition of natural and constructed wetlands. Sci Total Environ 473:63–71

Aon MA, Colaneri AC (2001) II. Temporal and spatial evolution of enzymatic activities and physico-chemical properties in an agricultural soil. Appl Soil Ecol 18(3):255–270

Avila C, Bayona JM, Martín I, Salas JJ, García J (2015) Emerging organic contaminant removal in a full-scale hybrid constructed wetland system for wastewater treatment and reuse. Ecol Eng 80:108–116

Behrends L, Houke L, Bailey E, Jansen P, Brown D (2001) Reciprocating constructed wetlands for treating industrial, municipal and agricultural wastewater. Water Sci Technol 44(11–12):399–405

Bertin C, Yang X, Weston LA (2003) The role of root exudates and allelochemicals in the rhizosphere. Plant Soil 256(1):67–83

Bitton G (2005) Wastewater microbiology. Wiley, Hoboken

Bojcevska H, Tonderski K (2007) Impact of loads, season, and plant species on the performance of a tropical constructed wetland polishing effluent from sugar factory stabilization ponds. Ecol Eng 29(1):66–76

Calheiros CS, Rangel AO, Castro PM (2008a) Evaluation of different substrates to support the growth of Typha latifolia in constructed wetlands treating tannery wastewater over long-term operation. Bioresour Technol 99(15):6866–6877

Calheiros CS, Rangel AO, Castro PM (2008b) The effects of tannery wastewater on the development of different plant species and chromium accumulation in Phragmites australis. Arch Environ Contam Toxicol 55(3):404–414

Calheiros CS, Duque AF, Moura A, Henriques IS, Correia A, Rangel AO, Castro PM (2009a) Changes in the bacterial community structure in two-stage constructed wetlands with different plants for industrial wastewater treatment. Bioresour Technol 100(13):3228–3235

Calheiros CS, Duque AF, Moura A, Henriques IS, Correia A, Rangel AO, Castro PM (2009b) Substrate effect on bacterial communities from constructed wetlands planted with Typha latifolia treating industrial wastewater. Ecol Eng 35(5):744–753

Calheiros CS, Teixeira A, Pires C (2010) Bacterial community dynamics in horizontal flow constructed wetlands with different plants for high salinity industrial wastewater polishing. Water Res 44:5032–5038

Calheiros CS, Rangel AO, Castro PM (2014) Constructed wetlands for tannery wastewater treatment in Portugal: ten years of experience. Int J Phytoremediation 16(9):859–870

Calheiros CSC, Pereira SIA, Brix H, Rangel AOSS, Castro PML (2017) Assessment of culturable bacterial endophytic communities colonizing *Canna flaccida* inhabiting a wastewater treatment constructed wetland. Ecol Eng 98:418–426

Carballeira T, Ruiz I, Soto M (2017) Aerobic and anaerobic biodegradability of accumulated solids in horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetlands. Int Biodeterior Biodegradation 119:396–404

Carvalho PN, Basto MCP, Almeida CMR (2012) Potential of *Phragmites australis* for the removal of veterinary pharmaceuticals from aquatic media. Bioresour Technol 116:497–501

Caselles-Osorio A, Villafañe P, Caballero V, Manzano Y (2011) Efficiency of mesocosm-scale constructed wetland systems for treatment of sanitary wastewater under tropical conditions. Water Air Soil Pollut 220(1–4):161–171

Caselles-Osorio A, Vega H, Lancheros JC, Casierra-Martínez HA, Mosquera JE (2017) Horizontal subsurface-flow constructed wetland removal efficiency using *Cyperus articulatus L.* Ecol Eng 99:479–485

Chan SY, Tsang YF, Chua H, Sin SN, Cui LH (2008) Performance study of vegetated sequencing batch coal slag bed treating domestic wastewater in suburban area. Bioresour Technol 99(9):3774–3781

Chang D, Ma Z, Wang X (2013) Framework of wastewater reclamation and reuse policies (WRRPs) in China: comparative analysis across levels and areas. Environ Sci Pol 33:41–52

Chen Y, Wen Y, Cheng J, Xue C, Yang D, Zhou Q (2011) Effects of dissolved oxygen on extracellular enzymes activities and transformation of carbon sources from plant biomass: implications for denitrification in constructed wetlands. Bioresour Technol 102(3):2433–2440

Cui L, Ouyang Y, Lou Q, Yang F, Chen Y, Zhu W, Luo S (2010) Removal of nutrients from wastewater with *Canna indica L.* under different vertical-flow constructed wetland conditions. Ecol Eng 36(8):1083–1088

Dong X, Reddy GB (2010) Soil bacterial communities in constructed wetlands treated with swine wastewater using PCR-DGGE technique. Bioresour Technol 101(4):1175–1182

Duarte B, Reboreda R, Caçador I (2008) Seasonal variation of extracellular enzymatic activity (EEA) and its influence on metal speciation in a polluted salt marsh. Chemosphere 73(7):1056–1063

Faulwetter JL, Gagnon V, Sundberg C, Chazarenc F, Burr MD, Brisson J et al (2009) Microbial processes influencing performance of treatment wetlands: a review. Ecol Eng 35(6):987–1004

Faulwetter JL, Burr MD, Parker AE, Stein OR, Camper AK (2013) Influence of season and plant species on the abundance and diversity of sulfate reducing bacteria and ammonia oxidizing bacteria in constructed wetland microcosms. Microb Ecol 65(1):111–127

Freeman C, Lock MA, Hughes S, Reynolds B, Hudson JA (1997) Nitrous oxide emissions and the use of wetlands for water quality amelioration. Environ Sci Technol 31(8):2438–2440

García J, Ojeda E, Sales E, Chico F, Píriz T, Aguirre P, Mujeriego R (2003) Spatial variations of temperature, redox potential, and contaminants in horizontal flow reed beds. Ecol Eng 21(2–3):129–142

Hamilton SK, Sippel SJ, Melack JM (1995) Oxygen depletion and carbon dioxide and methane production in waters of the Pantanal wetland of Brazil. Biogeochemistry 30(2):115–141

Hilton BL (1993) Performance evaluation of a closed ecological life support system (CELSS) employing constructed wetlands. In: Moshiri GA (ed) Constructed wetlands for water quality improvement. CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp 117–125

Hoffland E, van den Boogaard RIKI, Nelemans JAAP, Findenegg G (1992) Biosynthesis and root exudation of citric and malic acids in phosphate-starved rape plants. New Phytol 122(4):675–680

Hua Y, Peng L, Zhang S, Heal KV, Zhao J, Zhu D (2017) Effects of plants and temperature on nitrogen removal and microbiology in pilot-scale horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetlands treating domestic wastewater. Ecol Eng 108:70–77

Ibekwe AM, Grieve CM, Lyon SR (2003) Characterization of microbial communities and composition in constructed dairy wetland wastewater effluent. Appl Environ Microbiol 69(9):5060–5069

Kadlec RH (1995) Overview: surface flow constructed wetlands. Water Sci Technol 32(3):1–12

Kadlec RH, Reddy KR (2001) Temperature effects in treatment wetlands. Water Environ Res 73(5):543–557

Kang H, Freeman C, Lee D, Mitsch WJ (1998) Enzyme activities in constructed wetlands: implication for water quality amelioration. Hydrobiologia 368(1–3):231–235

Kent AD, Yannarell AC, Rusak JA, Triplett EW, McMahon KD (2007) Synchrony in aquatic microbial community dynamics. ISME J 1(1):38

Kong L, Wang YB, Zhao LN, Chen ZH (2009) Enzyme and root activities in surface-flow constructed wetlands. Chemosphere 76(5):601–608

Krasnits E, Friedler E, Sabbah I, Beliavski M, Tarre S, Green M (2009) Spatial distribution of major microbial groups in a well-established constructed wetland treating municipal wastewater. Ecol Eng 35(7):1085–1089

Kröger R, Lizotte RE, Douglas Shields F, Usborne E (2012) Inundation influences on bioavailability of phosphorus in managed wetland sediments in agricultural landscapes. J Environ Qual 41(2):604–614

Kumar S, Dutta V (2019a) Efficiency of constructed wetland microcosms (CWMs) for the treatment of domestic wastewater using aquatic macrophytes. In: Environmental biotechnology: for sustainable future. Springer, Singapore, pp 287–307

Kumar S, Dutta V (2019b) Constructed wetland microcosms as sustainable technology for domestic wastewater treatment: an overview. Environ Sci Pollut Res 26(12):11662–11673

Laskov C, Horn O, Hupfer M (2006) Environmental factors regulating the radial oxygen loss from roots of Myriophyllum spicatum and *Potamogeton crispus*. Aquat Bot 84(4):333–340

Lee CG, Fletcher TD, Sun G (2009) Nitrogen removal in constructed wetland systems. Eng Life Sci 9(1):11–22

Llanos-Lizcano A, Barraza E, Narvaez A, Varela L, Caselles-Osorio A (2019) Efficiency of pilot-scale horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetlands and microbial community composition operating under tropical conditions. Int J Phytoremediation 21(1):34–42

Long Y, Yi H, Chen S, Zhang Z, Cui K, Bing Y et al (2016) Influences of plant type on bacterial and archaeal communities in constructed wetland treating polluted river water. Environ Sci Pollut Res 23(19):19570–19579

Longstreth DJ, Borkhsenious ON (2000) Root cell ultrastructure in developing aerenchyma tissue of three wetland species. Ann Bot 86(3):641–646

Martens DA, Johanson JB, Frankenberger WT (1992) Production and persistence of soil enzymes with repeated addition of organic residues. Soil Sci 153(1):53–61

Mentzer JL, Goodman RM, Balser TC (2006) Microbial response over time to hydrologic and fertilization treatments in a simulated wet prairie. Plant Soil 284(1–2):85–100

Miersch J, Tschimedbalshir M, Bärlocher F, Grams Y, Pierau B, Schierhorn A, Krauss GJ (2001) Heavy metals and thiol compounds in Mucor racemosus and Articulospora tetracladia. Mycol Res 105(7):883–889

Mitchell C, McNevin D (2001) Alternative analysis of BOD removal in subsurface flow constructed wetlands employing Monod kinetics. Water Res 35(5):1295–1303

Mitsch WJ, Gosselink JG (2007) Wetlands, 4th edn. Wiley, Hoboken, p 582

Morvannou A, Choubert JM, Vanclooster M, Molle P (2014) Modeling nitrogen removal in a vertical flow constructed wetland treating directly domestic wastewater. Ecol Eng 70:379–386

Muyzer G, De Waal EC, Uitterlinden AG (1993) Profiling of complex microbial populations by denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis analysis of polymerase chain reaction-amplified genes coding for 16S rRNA. Appl Environ Microbiol 59(3):695–700

Neori A, Reddy KR, Čížková-Končalová H, Agami M (2000) Bioactive chemicals and biological—biochemical activities and their functions in rhizospheres of wetland plants. Bot Rev 66(3):350–378

Niemi RM, Vepsäläinen M, Wallenius K, Simpanen S, Alakukku L, Pietola L (2005) Temporal and soil depth-related variation in soil enzyme activities and in root growth of red clover (Trifolium pratense) and timothy (Phleum pratense) in the field. Appl Soil Ecol 30(2):113–125

Niveditha TMA (2019) Constructed wet lands—An efficient green technology for environmental sustainability—An over view. Int J Basic Appl Res 9(4):528–536

Oehl F, Frossard E, Fliessbach A, Dubois D, Oberson A (2004) Basal organic phosphorus mineralization in soils under different farming systems. Soil Biol Biochem 36(4):667–675

Oved T, Shaviv A, Goldrath T, Mandelbaum RT, Minz D (2001) Influence of effluent irrigation on community composition and function of ammonia-oxidizing bacteria in soil. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:3426–3433

Pedescoll A, Corzo A, Álvarez E, García J, Puigagut J (2011) The effect of primary treatment and flow regime on clogging development in horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetlands: an experimental evaluation. Water Res 45(12):3579–3589

Peralta RM, Ahn C, Gillevet PM (2013) Characterization of soil bacterial community structure and physicochemical properties in created and natural wetlands. Sci Total Environ 443:725–732

Puigagut J, Caselles-Osorio A, Vaello N, García J (2008) Fractionation, biodegradability and particle-size distribution of organic matter in horizontal subsurface-flow constructed wetlands.

In: Wastewater treatment, plant dynamics and management in constructed and natural wetlands. Springer, Dordrecht, pp 289–297

Radcliffe JC (2006) Future directions for water recycling in Australia. Desalination 187(1–3):77–87

Reboreda R, Caçador I (2008) Enzymatic activity in the rhizosphere of Spartina maritima: potential contribution for phytoremediation of metals. Mar Environ Res 65(1):77–84

Rowan AK, Snape JR, Fearnside D, Barer MR, Curtis TP, Head IM (2003) Composition and diversity of ammonia-oxidizing bacterial communities in wastewater treatment reactors of different design treating identical wastewater. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 43:195–206

Saunders AM, Larsen P, Nielsen PH (2013) Comparison of nutrient-removing microbial communities in activated sludge from full-scale MBRs and conventional plants. Water Sci Technol 68(2):366–371

Saxena G, Purchase D, Mulla SI, Saratale GD, Bharagava RN (2019) Phytoremediation of heavy metal-contaminated sites: eco-environmental concerns, field studies, sustainability issues and future prospects. Rev Environ Contam Toxicol 249:71–131

Shackle VJ, Freeman C, Reynolds B (2000) Carbon supply and the regulation of enzyme activity in constructed wetlands. Soil Biol Biochem 32(13):1935–1940

Shelef O, Gross A, Rachmilevitch S (2013) Role of plants in a constructed wetland: current and new perspectives. Water 5(2):405–419

Sleytr K, Tietz A, Langergraber G, Haberl R, Sessitsch A (2009) Diversity of abundant bacteria in subsurface vertical flow constructed wetlands. Ecol Eng 35(6):1021–1025

Steenwerth KL, Jackson LE, Carlisle EA, Scow KM (2006) Microbial communities of a native perennial bunchgrass do not respond consistently across a gradient of land-use intensification. Soil Biol Biochem 38(7):1797–1811

Tanner CC, Headley TR (2011) Components of floating emergent macrophyte treatment wetlands influencing removal of stormwater pollutants. Ecol Eng 37(3):474–486

Tian T, Tam NF, Zan Q, Cheung SG, Shin PK, Wong YS et al (2017) Performance and bacterial community structure of a 10-years old constructed mangrove wetland. Mar Pollut Bull 124(2):1096–1105

Tram Vo P, Ngo HH, Guo W, Zhou JL, Nguyen PD, Listowski A, Wang XC (2014) A mini-review on the impacts of climate change on wastewater reclamation and reuse. Sci Total Environ 494–495:9–17

Truu J, Nurk K, Juhanson J, Mander U (2005) Variation of microbiological parameters within planted soil filter for domestic wastewater treatment. J Environ Sci Health 40(6–7):1191–1200

Truu M, Juhanson J, Truu J (2009) Microbial biomass, activity and community composition in constructed wetlands. Sci Total Environ 407(13):3958–3971

US Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA), National Risk Management Research Laboratory, US Agency for International Development (2012) 2012 guidelines for water reuse, EPA/600/R-12/618. US Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Wastewater Management, Washington, DC

Valipour A, Ahn YH (2016) Constructed wetlands as sustainable ecotechnologies in decentralization practices: a review. Environ Sci Pollut Res 23(1):180–197

Vera L, Martel G, Márquez M (2013) Two years monitoring of the natural system for wastewater reclamation in Santa Lucía, Gran Canaria Island. Ecol Eng 50:21–30

Wang Q, Xie H, Ngo HH, Guo W, Zhang J, Liu C et al (2016) Microbial abundance and community in subsurface flow constructed wetland microcosms: role of plant presence. Environ Sci Pollut Res 23(5):4036–4045

Weber KP, Legge RL (2011) Dynamics in the bacterial community-level physiological profiles and hydrological characteristics of constructed wetland mesocosms during start-up. Ecol Eng 37(5):666–677

Wetzel RG (1993) Constructed wetlands: scientific foundations are critical. Constructed wetlands for water quality improvement. CRC Press, Boca Raton, pp 3–7

Wiessner A, Kappelmeyer U, Kuschk P, Kästner M (2005) Sulphate reduction and the removal of carbon and ammonia in a laboratory-scale constructed wetland. Water Res 39(19):4643–4650

World Bank Group (2013) Wastewater reuse. http://go.worldbank.org/7K5VBGLQ70. Accessed 10 Aug 2016

World Health Organization (WHO) (2006) WHO guidelines for the safe use of wastewater, excreta and greywater, Policy and regulatory aspects, vol 1. World Health Organization, Geneva

Wu J, Zhang J, Jia W, Xie H, Gu RR, Li C, Gao B (2009) Impact of COD/N ratio on nitrous oxide emission from microcosm wetlands and their performance in removing nitrogen from wastewater. Bioresour Technol 100(12):2910–2917

Wu Y, Li T, Yang L (2012) Mechanisms of removing pollutants from aqueous solutions by microorganisms and their aggregates: a review. Bioresour Technol 107:10–18

Wu Q, Hu Y, Li S, Peng S, Zhao H (2016) Microbial mechanisms of using enhanced ecological floating beds for eutrophic water improvement. Bioresour Technol 211:451–456

Xiong J, Guo G, Mahmood Q, Yue M (2011) Nitrogen removal from secondary effluent by using integrated constructed wetland system. Ecol Eng 37(4):659–662

Yovo F, Dimon B, Suanon F, Aina M, Agani IC, Wotto VD, Togbe AFC (2016) Treatment performance of an autonomous gray water treatment system (SAUTEG) with the macrophytes *Thalia geniculata*. Am J Environ Protect 5(6):187–198

Zaman MDHJ, Di HJ, Cameron KC, Frampton CM (1999) Gross nitrogen mineralization and nitrification rates and their relationships to enzyme activities and the soil microbial biomass in soils treated with dairy shed effluent and ammonium fertilizer at different water potentials. Biol Fertil Soils 29(2):178–186

Zhang CB, Huang LN, Wong MH, Zhang JT, Zhai CJ, Lan CY (2006) Characterization of soil physico-chemical and microbial parameters after revegetation near Shaoguan Pb/Zn smelter, Guangdong, PR China. Water Air Soil Pollut 177(1–4):81–101

Zhang CB, Wang J, Liu WL, Zhu SX, Ge HL, Chang SX et al (2010) Effects of plant diversity on microbial biomass and community metabolic profiles in a full-scale constructed wetland. Ecol Eng 36(1):62–68

Zhang CB, Liu WL, Wang J, Chen T, Yuan QQ, Huang CC et al (2011a) Plant functional group richness-affected microbial community structure and function in a full-scale constructed wetland. Ecol Eng 37(9):1360–1368

Zhang TT, Wang LL, He ZX, Zhang D (2011b) Growth inhibition and biochemical changes of cyanobacteria induced by emergent macrophyte Thalia dealbata roots. Biochem Syst Ecol 39(2):88–94

Zhang D, Wang C, Zhang L, Xu D, Liu B, Zhou Q, Wu Z (2016) Structural and metabolic responses of microbial community to sewage-borne chlorpyrifos in constructed wetlands. J Environ Sci 44:4–12

Zhi E, Song Y, Duan L, Yu H, Peng J (2015) Spatial distribution and diversity of microbial community in large-scale constructed wetland of the Liao river conservation area. Environ Earth Sci 73(9):5085–5094

Zhong F, Wu J, Dai Y, Yang L, Zhang Z, Cheng S, Zhang Q (2015) Bacterial community analysis by PCR-DGGE and 454-pyrosequencing of horizontal subsurface flow constructed wetlands with front aeration. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 99(3):1499–1512

Zhu S, Huang X, Ho S-H, Wang L, Yang J (2017) Effect of plant species compositions on performance of lab-scale constructed wetland through investigating photosynthesis and microbial communities. Bioresour Technol 229:196–192

Chapter 15
Agricultural Waste: Its Impact on Environment and Management Approaches

Sutanu Maji, Deepa H. Dwivedi, Namrta Singh, Sachin Kishor, and Munni Gond

Abstract Waste materials are either usable or unusable products left behind after production or formulation of the main products produced by the human activities. According to the Press Information Bureau, India generates 62 million tonnes of waste (mixed waste containing both recyclable and nonrecyclable waste) every year, with an average annual growth rate of 4%. The agriculture sector is also contributing a large part through on field or off field activities. These waste materials consist of both usable and non-usable. Waste materials are of different kinds and come from various sources. The waste materials also have good nutritional values and thus, potential for its economics. The various forms, sources, and how the waste materials can be converted to many usable forms are studied and discussed here in this chapter. This chapter presented that there are solid and liquid types of waste which includes organics, dry, and biomedical wastes. The biodegradable wastes are being focused for utilizing its nutritional and desirable qualities and made into various usable products. Waste as in general is causing environmental pollution on earth surface, water, and air. Before their contamination it should be converted to usable form to minimize the pollution level as well as helps to generate employment and to make eco-friendly environment. Among the various sources agricultural crop residues, used pesticides, insecticides, fertilizers, and other indiscriminate use of chemicals causing environmental threats and already translocated through food chain causing several human diseases. The chapter also discussed the conversation of these wastes into valuable products with some tables and relevant information.

Keywords Agricultural waste · Environmental impact · Human activities · Management approaches

---

S. Maji (✉) · D. H. Dwivedi · N. Singh · S. Kishor · M. Gond
Department of Horticulture, School of Agricultural Sciences and Technology, Babasaheb Bhimrao Ambedkar University, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

R. N. Bharagava (ed.), *Emerging Eco-friendly Green Technologies for Wastewater Treatment*, Microorganisms for Sustainability 18,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-1390-9_15

15.1 Introduction

Waste materials are either usable or unusable products left behind after production or formulation of the main products produced by the human activities. A part of waste materials which is totally unsuitable for use is known as spoiled product. Economic development and rising living standards especially in the developing states have led to increase in the quantity and complexity of generated waste. Generally, waste is of two types: both hazardous and nonhazardous. The wastes are of major concern to keep the environment protected and thus, this part is generally not targeted for reuse. The nonhazardous waste has the potential to be used in many forms with little or no threat to environment and human health. Industrial diversification produces substantial quantities of industrial waste including biomedical waste which have severe environmental and human health consequences. There are several sources of waste generation including the home we reside in, besides public places, agricultural fields, hospitals, industry, etc.

India is the second largest population in the world after China with more than 1.27 billion people (17.6% of world's total population), however, it occupies only 5% of world's area (3,185,263 km^2). Sixty-eight percent of total Indian population lives in rural areas, while 32% lives in urban areas (World Bank 2014). Developing countries like India is in industrialization phase, which is an essential part to build modern society and contribute to urbanization. India is one of the fastest growing economies in the world with 7.30% GDP and expected to 10% GDP in 2030. Higher GDP is directly correlated to improved living standards. At the same time overpopulation, rapid industrialization, uncontrolled urbanization, and improved living standards produce more waste also (Nandan et al. 2017).

According to the Press Information Bureau, India generates 62 million tonnes of waste (both recyclable and nonrecyclable) every year, with an average annual growth rate of 4% (PIB 2016). The waste can be divided into three major categories: (1) organic (all kinds of biodegradable waste), (2) dry (or recyclable waste), and (3) biomedical (or sanitary and hazardous waste). Currently, 1,27,486 tonnes of municipal solid waste is being generated daily due to various household activities, other commercial and institutional activities (CPCB 2012). Among the various source municipal wastes, certain industrial waste and agriculture waste have comparatively significant impact on environment and few are extremely dangerous to the living organisms including human beings (Misra and Pandey 2005). These may pollute groundwater quality and cause air pollution by emission of greenhouse gases. With the fastest advancement of telecommunication and electronics industry e-waste and nuclear waste also need attention to solve the problem with solid waste management. A study on the wastes, their sources, nature, and effect is important to manage the waste to protect environment as well as human health.

15.1.1 Scenario of Waste Collection in India

Waste collection is much greater in metropolitan cities or other urban areas as compared to that of rural areas. Many local government bodies along with specific NGOs are involved in collecting these wastes as shown in Table 15.1.

15.1.2 Types of Waste

The principal sources of solid waste are residential households while, agricultural, commercial, construction, industrial, and institutional sectors also play an important role. A breakdown of solid waste types and sources is provided in Table 15.2. There are four major categories of waste: municipal solid waste, industrial waste, agricultural waste, and hazardous waste which are discussed in Table 15.2.

15.1.3 Classification of Waste

15.1.3.1 According to Physical Condition (Properties)

According to the physical properties, the waste is of mainly two types.

Solid Waste

Solid waste is the unwanted or useless solid materials generated from human activities in residential, industrial, or commercial areas. It may be categorized in three ways. According to its:

- Origin (domestic, industrial, commercial, construction, or institutional).
- Contents (organic material, glass, metal, plastic paper, etc.).
- Hazard potential (toxic, nontoxic, flammable, radioactive, infectious, etc.).

Liquid Waste

Liquid waste can be defined as wastewater, fats, oils or grease (FOG), used oil, liquids, solids, gases, or sludges and hazardous household liquids. These liquids are hazardous or potentially harmful to human health or the environment. They can also be discarded commercial products classified as “Liquid Industrial Waste” such as cleaning fluids or pesticides, or the by-products of manufacturing processes. There are general regulatory requirements relating to waste and additional regulations

Table 15.1 State-wise solid waste generation in urban areas, as on November 2017

S. No.	State/Union territories	Total waste generation (MT/D)	Total waste generation in (Lakh Mt./Annum)
1.	Andhra Pradesh	6525	23.82
2.	Andaman & Nicobar Islands	115	0.42
3.	Arunachal Pradesh	181	0.66
4.	Assam	1134	4.14
5.	Bihar	1192	4.35
6.	Chandigarh UT	340	1.24
7.	Chhattisgarh	1959	7.15
8.	Daman & Diu	23	0.08
9.	Dadar & Nagar Haveli	58	0.21
10.	NCT or Delhi	10,500	38.33
11.	Goa	240	0.88
12.	Gujarat	10,145	37.03
13.	Haryana	4514	37.03
14.	Himachal Pradesh	324	1.25
15.	Jammu & Kashmir	1792	6.54
16.	Jharkhand	2451	8.95
17.	Karnataka	10,000	36.50
18.	Kerala	1576	5.75
19.	Madhya Pradesh	6424	23.45
20.	Maharashtra	22,570	82.38
21.	Manipur	176	0.64
22.	Meghalaya	268	0.98
23.	Mizoram	201	0.73
24.	Nagaland	342	1.25
25.	Odisha	2460	8.98
26.	Puducherry UT	495	1.81
27.	Punjab	4100	14.97
28.	Rajasthan	6500	23.73
29.	Sikkim	89	0.32
30.	Tamil Nadu	15,547	56.75
31.	Telangana	7371	26.90
32.	Tripura	421	1.54
33.	Uttar Pradesh	15,500	56.58
34.	Uttarakhand	1400	5.11
35.	West Bengal	8675	31.66
Total		**1,45,626**	**531.53**

MT Million tonnes, *D* Day
Source: Government of India Ministry of New and Renewable Energy, 2017

Table 15.2 Sources and types of solid wastes

S. No.	Source	Typical waste generation	Types of solid wastes
1.	Residential	Single and multifamily dwellings	Food wastes, paper, cardboard, plastics, textiles, leather, yard wastes, wood, glass, metals, ashes, special wastes (e.g., bulky items, consumer electronics, white goods, batteries, oil, tires), and household hazardous wastes
2.	Industrial	Light and heavy manufacturing, fabrication, construction sites, power and chemical plants	Housekeeping wastes, packaging, food wastes, construction and demolition materials, hazardous wastes, ashes, special wastes
3.	Commercial	Stores, hotels, restaurants, markets, office buildings, etc.	Paper, cardboard, plastics, wood, food wastes, glass, metals, special wastes, hazardous wastes
4.	Institutional	Schools, hospitals, prisons, government centers	Same as commercial
5.	Construction and demolition	New construction sites, road repair, renovation sites, demolition of buildings	Wood, steel, concrete, dirt, etc.
6.	Municipal services	Street cleaning, landscaping, parks, beaches, other recreational areas, water, and wastewater treatment plants	Street sweepings, landscape and tree trimmings, general wastes from parks, beaches, and other recreational areas, sludge
7.	Process	Heavy and light manufacturing, refineries, chemical plants, power plants, mineral extraction and processing	Industrial process wastes, scrap materials, off specification products, slag, tailings
8.	Medical waste	Hospitals, nursing homes, clinics	Infectious waste (bandages, gloves, cultures, swabs, blood and body fluids), hazardous waste (sharps, instruments, chemicals), radioactive waste from cancer therapies, pharmaceutical waste
9.	Agriculture and food processing industry wastes	Crops, orchards, vineyards, dairies, feedlots, farms	Spoiled food wastes, agricultural wastes, hazardous wastes (e.g., pesticides), pulp, fruit peel, seed
10.	Mining	Open-cast mining, underground mining	Mainly inert materials such as ash

Source: Adapted from What a Waste (2012) and https://www.unescap.org/sites/default/files/CH08.PDF apply to generating, storing, transporting, treating, and disposing of hazardous and liquid wastes.

15.1.3.2 According to Their Properties

Biodegradable Wastes

Biodegradable wastes are natural organic compounds which are degraded or decomposed by biological or microbial action. Biodegradable wastes are mainly generated in food processing units, cotton mills, paper mills, sugar mills, textile factories, and sewage. Waste of slaughterhouses is biodegradable and some part of it is usable (for example, skin is used to make leather). Most of the wastes from these industries are reused. When these wastes are in excess, they are not easily decomposed and may act as pollutants (Shrama and Dwivedi 2018).

Non-biodegradable Wastes

These are not decomposed by microbes but are oxidized and dissociated automatically. Coal stone, metal scraps, sludge are generated from colliery operations. Refineries produce inert dry solids and varieties of sludge containing oil. Fly ash is the major solid waste from thermal power plants. Recently fly ash has been used to make different products for use in construction, road, etc. Generally, these wastes are not reused and accumulate in the ecosystem**.**

15.1.3.3 According to Their Effect on Human Health and Environment

Hazardous Waste

Mostly chemical, biological, explosive, or radioactive wastes, which are highly toxic and reactive, having a negative effect on human, animals, and plants, are called hazardous. Hazardous wastes, when improperly handled, can cause substantial harm to human health as well as the environment. Hazardous wastes may be solids, liquids, sludges, or gases.

Nonhazardous

Nonhazardous wastes are generally used safely and have no corrosive, reactive, toxic properties. The huge amount of nonhazardous waste creates a disposal problem, but may be converted to other product.

15.1.3.4 According to Their Origin

Nuclear Waste

Wastes from nuclear reactor are highly dangerous and requires proper management and disposal. Carbon-14, uranium-238, uranium-239 and radium-226, thorium, and plutonium are the main nuclear wastes. Two sources of nuclear waste:

Natural source: Cosmic rays from outer space with increasing altitude and latitude and emission from earth crust.

Manmade: Mining and processing of radioactive ores used in nuclear power plant, radioactive isotopes used in medicinal and industrial applications and nuclear weapons.

Thermal Waste

Thermal waste refers to the release of heat into any of the segment of environment and this type of pollution is called as thermal or heat pollution. Nuclear power plants, coal-fired power plants, nutrient effluents, domestic sewage, and hydroelectric power are the main sources of thermal waste. It degrades the water quality by changing the ambient water temperature which decreases oxygen supply and affects ecosystem composition.

Plastic Waste

Plastics are typically polymers of higher molecular mass containing other substances to improve performance and reduce cost. Monomers of plastic are either natural or synthetic organic compounds mainly generated through petroleum and natural gas industry.

There are two types of plastic waste:

Thermoplastic: which are softened by heat and can be molded (injection molded, blow molded, or vacuum formed). Good examples are acrylic, polypropylene, polystyrene, polyethylene, and PVC.

Thermosets: which are formed by heat process but are then set (like concrete) and cannot change shape by reheating. Good examples are melamine (kitchen worktops) Bakelite (black saucepan handles), polyesters, and epoxy resins.

Biomedical Waste

Solid or liquid wastes including containers, intermediate, or end products generated during diagnosis, treatment, pathological tests, and research activities of medical sciences, i.e., medicine bottles, expired medicines, syringes, medical instrument such as scissors, blades, etc.

E-Waste

E-waste or electronic waste is created when an electronic product is discarded after the end of its useful life. The rapid expansion of technology means that a very large amount of e-waste is created every minute. Electronic waste or e-waste may be defined as discarded computers, office electronic equipment, entertainment device electronics, mobile phones, television sets, and refrigerators.

15.1.3.5 According to Reuse of Wastes

Reusable/Recyclable Waste

Recycling is processing used waste into new, useful products. This is done to reduce the use of raw materials that would have been used. Waste that can be potentially recycled is termed recyclable waste. Animal product (milk, urine, and animal-dung), agriculture product (crop residue, vegetable residue, fruit residue, and fertilizers bags), plastics (grocery shopping bags, plastics bottles), glass product (wine and beer bottles, broken glass), paper products (used envelopes, newspaper, cardboard boxes, and magazines) can be reused.

Nonreusable Waste

Nonreusable/recycled waste is solid waste which are not processed nor reclaimed by a waste management system or already sorted out. The disposal of these materials is a rising concern in many parts of the developed world where environment alertness has been a rising trend.

15.2 Agriculture Waste

15.2.1 Definition

Agricultural waste is defined as the residue from the growing and processing of raw agricultural and allied products such as fruits, vegetables, meat, poultry, dairy, fishery, and crops. They are the nonproduct outputs of production and processing of agricultural products that may contain material that can benefit man but whose economic values are less than the cost of collection, transportation, and processing for beneficial/safe use. It is also called as agro-waste comprising of animal waste (manure, animal carcasses), food processing waste (only 20% of maize is canned and 80% is waste), crop waste (corn stalks, sugarcane bagasse, drops, and culls from fruits and vegetables, prunings) and hazardous and toxic agricultural waste

Table 15.3 Composition of agriculture crop residue waste

	Percent by weight (dry basis)					
Component	Carbon	Hydrogen	Oxygen	Nitrogen	Sulfur	Ash
Wheat straw	48.5	5.5	39.9	0.3	0.1	5.7
Rice straw	29.2	5.1	35.8	0.6	0.1	19.2
Rice husk	38.5	5.7	39.8	0.5	<0.01	15.5
Had wood	50.8	6.4	41.5	0.4	<0.01	0.9
Soft wood	52.9	6.3	39.7	0.1	<0.01	1.0
Corn cob	46.2	7.6	42.3	1.2	0.3	2.4
Cotton stalk	45.3	5.6	45.3	0.5	<0.01	3.3
Anthracite coal	78.8	2.3	2.5	0.9	0.5	13

Source: International Environmental Technology Center

(pesticides, insecticides, herbicides, etc.). Expanding agricultural production has naturally resulted in increased quantities of livestock waste, agricultural crop residues, and agro-industrial by-products. There is likely to be a significant increase in agricultural wastes globally if developing countries continue to intensify farming systems. It is estimated that about 998 million tonnes of agricultural waste is produced yearly (Agamuthu 2009). Organic wastes can amount up to 80% of the total solid wastes generated in any farm (Brown and Root Environmental Consultancy Group 1997) of which manure production can amount up to 5.27 kg/day/1000 kg live weight, on a wet weight basis (Overcash 1973).

15.2.2 Types of Agriculture Waste

Agricultural waste may be on (A) field as crop residues or (B) from agro-based industries. Agricultural crop residues on field like stem, stalks, seeds, weeds, etc. and residue after processing like husk, roots, seeds, bagasse, molasses, etc. The wastes from agro-based industries include fruit peels, pulp, cakes (oil), coir, nuts, etc.

15.2.2.1 Agriculture Crop Residues

The agricultural crop residues are materials left in an agricultural field or orchard after harvesting. The residue can be ploughed directly into the ground or converted into compost. Good management of field residues can increase efficiency of irrigation, control of erosion, improve soil aeration, and soil health (Table 15.3).

Organic Composting from Crop Residue

The crop residues focus on the equivalent fertilizer cost of the nutrients within. Although crop residues contain both macro- and micro nutrients, although values only for the macronutrients nitrogen, phosphorus, potassium, and sulfur are economically significant.

Importance of Crop Residue

Biofuel Production from Crop Residue

Because of the high carbohydrate content, crop residues can be considered as an appropriate feedstock to produce biofuels. Some algorithms have been developed to estimate the potential capacity of biofuel production from agricultural residues. Based on the experimental data obtained from a study that used ethanol organosolv pretreated rice straw to produce biohydrogen using *Enterobacter aerogenes*, the annual global amount of collectable rice straw (not total produced straw) for biofuel production was estimated about 249 million tonnes, that could approximately produce 355.78 kilotonnes of hydrogen and 11.32 million tonnes of lignin by the proposed organosolv technology and it was found that China contributes to about 32% of global potential capacity to produce biohydrogen from rice straw (Asadi and Zilouei 2017).

Mineralization Through Crop Residue

Nutrients in most crop residue are not immediately available for crop use. Their release (called mineralization) occurs over a period of years. The biological processes involved in soil nutrient cycles are complex. As a rough guide, cereal straw releases about 10–15% of its nutrients and pea residues release about 35% of their nutrients by the next year. The speed of mineralization depends on the nitrogen and lignin (fiber) content, soil moisture, temperature, and degree of mixing with the soil. N is released fairly quickly from residue when the content is higher than 1.5% (such as in pea residues). In contrast, below 1.2% (such as cereal residue), soil-available N is fixed (called immobilization) by the microbes as they decompose the residue (Table 15.4).

Thus, pea residue would have short- and long-term benefits to soil fertility, whereas cereal straw would reduce next year's soil supply of available nutrients. Over time, the nutrients fixed by soil microbes and humus are released and available to crops. Nutrients from residue are not fully recovered by crops. Just like fertilizer nutrients, nutrients released from crop residue into the soil are susceptible to losses such as leaching (N and S), denitrification (N), immobilization (N, P, K and S), and fixation (P and K).

Efficiency of Nutrient Uptake

The efficiency of nutrient uptake by crops from fertilizers or residue release is generally thought to be similar. For example, there is about 50% recovery of N in the above-ground plant in the first year. There is some residual benefit of fertilizers as the crops take up a small amount of the nutrients 2 and 3 years later. Fertilizer placement can significantly affect the efficiency of crop uptake. The impact of residue placement (buried by tillage or left on the surface in zero tillage) on nutrient cycling and efficiency is under study.

Composition of Crop Residue Waste

The composition of crop residue waste largely depends on the nature of crop plants as shown in Table 15.5.

15.2.2.2 Waste from Agricultural Livestock

Animal wastes are commonly considered the excreted materials from live animals. However, under certain production conditions, the waste may also include straw, hay, wood shavings, or other sources of organic debris. Application of excreta to soil brings benefits such as improved soil tilth, increased water-holding capacity, and some plant nutrients. Concentrated forms of excreta or high application rates to soils without proper management may lead to high salt concentrations in the soil and cause serious on- or off-site pollution. Animal waste contains many beneficial constituents that if recycled effectively, can be used as fertilizer for crops, fodder for animals, and to produce energy. Animal manure is rich in nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium. In addition to providing supplemental nutrients for crop growth, manure has several beneficial effects on soil properties (Table 15.6). Application of organic waste decreases the bulk density of the soil by increasing both the organic fraction of the soil and the stability of aggregates (Mondal 2008).

The most common environment concern with animal wastes is that it affects the atmospheric air with offensive odors, release of large quantities of CO and ammonia which might contribute to acid rain and the greenhouse effect. It could also pollute water sources and be instrumental in spreading infectious diseases. If the disposal of water is not properly planned it might create social tension owing to the release of odors and contamination of water sources. Proper disposal and returning of nutrients back in the soil without pollution and spreading of diseases/pathogens, is required for efficient utilization of wastes on large farms (Mondal 2008).

Table 15.4 Composition of agriculture waste

Agriculture waste	Chemical composition (% w/w)						References
	Cellulose	Hemicellulose	Lignin	Ash (%)	Total solid (%)	Moisture (%)	
Sugarcane bagasse	30.2	56.7	13.4	1.9	91.66	4.8	El-Tayeb et al. (2012), Nigam et al. (2009)
Rice straw	29.2	23.5	36.1	12.4	98.62	6.58	El-Tayeb et al. (2012)
Corn stalks	61.2	19.3	6.9	10.8	97.78	6.40	El-Tayeb et al. (2012)
Sawdust	45.1	28.1	24.2	1.2	98.54	1.12	El-Tayeb et al. (2012), Martin et al. (2007)
Sugar beet waste	26.3	18.5	2.5	4.8	87.5	12.4	El-Tayeb et al. (2012)
Barley straw	33.8	21.9	13.8	11	–	–	Nigam et al. (2009)
Cotton stalks	58.5	14.4	21.5	9.8	–	7.45	Nigam et al. (2009)
Oat straw	29.4	27.1	17.5	8	–	–	Martin et al. (2007)
Soya stalks	34.5	24.8	19.8	10.3	–	11.84	Motte et al. (2013)
Sunflower stalks	42.1	29.7	13.4	11.7	–	–	Motte et al. (2013)
Wheat straw	32.9	24.8	8.9	6.7	95.6	7.0	Nigam (2001), Nigam et al. (2009), Martin et al. (2007)

Types of Livestock Waste

Solid Waste

Waste containing 20% or more solids or with moisture content of 50% MWB or less is considered to be solid waste. Solid wastes are treated by drying or composting. Dried wastes are used not only as fertilizer but also as fuel for combustion to obtain energy (Haga 1998).

Slurry

Slurry is a type of liquid manure that can be used on fields as fertilizer. If the soil or plants are unable to absorb the slurry or if the slurry is spread in too high a concentration, the run-off can get into water systems. Slurry is generally more polluting than raw sewage. When slurry tanks are accidentally or deliberately breached large amounts of slurry can spill into rivers, streams, or lakes, including wetlands causing severe environmental problems. Many incidents are not reported. Animal waste is found in soil, surface water and groundwater, and sea water. Slurry disturbs aquatic

Table 15.5 Cellulose content and composition [% (w/w) of dry matter] of agriculture waste

Agriculture waste	Cellulose (%)	Hemicelluloses (%)	Lignin (%)
Hard wood	40–50	24–40	18–25
Soft wood	40–50	25–35	25–35
Nut shells	25–30	25–30	30–40
Corn cob	45	35	15
Grasses	25–40	35–40	10–30
Wheat straw	33–40	20–25	15–20
Rice straw	40	18	5.5
Leaves	15–20	80–85	–
Switch grass	30–50	10–40	5–20
Solid cattle manure	1.6–4.7	1.4–3.3	2.7–5.7
Primary waste water solids	8–15	–	24–29
Paper	85–99	–	0–15
News paper	40–55	25–40	1830
Hardwood stem	40–50	24–40	18–25
Peanut shell	22.1	12.1	35.2
Rice hull	49.1	9.6	12.9
Sugarcane leaf and stalk	40	29	13
Sorghum leaf and stalk	31	30	11

Source: Sindhu (2015); Dueñas et al. (1995); Martin et al. (2007)

ecosystems by increasing nitrogen and phosphorus levels leading to the growth of toxic algae, which poison the fish and it decreases oxygen levels causing fish to suffocate (Table 15.7).

Importance of Agro-Livestock Waste

Livestock and poultry industries produce meat, milk, and egg, and also generate large volumes of waste water and solid wastes that could be beneficial or harmful to the environment. The waste products which include livestock or poultry excreta and associated feed losses, beddings, washwater, and other such waste materials represent a valuable resource that if used wisely, can replace significant amounts of inorganic fertilizers.

Animal waste contains many beneficial constituents that if recycled effectively, can be used as fertilizer for crops, fodder for animals, and to produce energy. Animal manure is rich in nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium. In addition to providing supplemental nutrients for crop growth, manure has several beneficial effects on soil properties. Organic manure decreases the bulk density of the soil and also improves both organic fraction and stability of the soil. Organic manure also increases rate of water infiltration, water-holding capacity, and electrical conductivity of the soil.

15.2.2.3 Agro-Industry Waste

Waste from Fruit and Vegetable

Fruits and vegetables are the most utilized commodities among all horticultural crops. They are consumed raw, minimally processed, as well as processed, due to their nutrients and health-promoting compounds. With the growing population and changing diet habits, the production and processing of horticultural crops, especially fruits and vegetables, have increased very significantly to fulfill the increasing demands. The significant amount of fruits produced globally include 124.73 million metric tons (MMT) of citrus, 114.08 MMT of bananas, 84.63 MMT of apples, 74.49 MMT of grapes, 45.22 MMT of mangoes, mangosteen, and guavas, and 25.43 MMT of pineapples. Production of some vegetables include potato (3820.00 MMT), tomatoes (171.00 MMT), cabbages and other brassicas (71.77 MMT), carrots and turnips (38.83 MMT), cauliflower and broccoli (24.17 MMT), and peas (17.42 MMT) (FAO 2017).

Higher production and growth, and the lack of proper handling methods and infrastructure, have led to huge losses and waste of these important food commodities, as well as their components and by-products and residues. The United Nations has estimated that at least one-third of the food produced in the world (estimated as 1.3 billion metric tons) is lost and wasted every year (FAO 2014) and losses and waste of horticultural commodities are the highest among all types of foods, reaching up to 60% (Table 15.8).

Agricultural Waste Generation

As noted earlier, agricultural development is usually accompanied by wastes from the irrational application of intensive farming methods and the abuse of chemicals used in cultivation, remarkably affecting rural environments in particular and the

Table 15.6 Composition of oil cake

Oil cakes	Dry matter	Crude protein	Crude fiber	Ash	Calcium	Phosphorus	References
CaOC	90.0	33.9	9.7	6.2	0.79	1.06	Ewing (1997)
COC	88.8	25.2	10.8	6.0	0.08	0.67	Gohl (1970)
CSC	94.3	40.3	15.7	6.8	0.31	0.11	Friesecke (1970)
GOC	92.6	49.5	5.3	4.5	0.11	0.75	Kuo (1967)
MOC	89.8	38.5	3.5	9.9	0.05	1.11	Kuo (1967)
OOC	85.2	6.3	40.0	4.2	–	–	Maymone et al. (1961)
PKC	90.8	18.6	37.0	4.5	0.31	0.85	Owusu et al. (1970)
SuOC	91.0	34.1	13.2	6.6	0.30	1.30	Owusu et al. (1970)

CaOC Canola oil cake, *COC* Coconut oil cake, *CSC* Cotton seed cake, *GOC* Groundnut oil cake, *MOC* mustard oil cake, *OOC* Olive oil cake, *PKC* Palm kernel cake, *SuOC* Sunflower oil cake global environmental in general. The waste generated is dependent on the type of agricultural activities carried out.

15.3 Impact of Agricultural Waste

Environment is everything that is around us. It can be living or non-living things. It includes physical, chemical and other natural forces. Living things live in their environment. They constantly interact with it and adapt themselves to conditions in their environment. In the environment there are different interactions between animals, plants, Insects, soil, water, and other living and nonliving things (Wikipedia 2018a). Agriculture is the cultivation of land and breeding of animals and plants to provide food, fiber, medicinal plants, and other products to sustain and enhance life (Anonymous 1999).

15.3.1 Soil

Soil is a mixture of organic matter, minerals, gases, liquids, and organisms that together support life. Earth's body of soil is the pedosphere, which has four important functions:

It is a medium for plant growth.
It is a means of water storage.
It is a means for supply and purification.
It is a modifier of Earth's atmosphere.
It is a habitat for organisms; all of which, in turn, modify the soil (Wikipedia 2018b).

Soil erosion and sedimentation are caused by the agriculture waste. Increased erosion rates from tilled fields can cause excessive deposition of fine sediments in receiving streams that block interstitial spaces and river-bed gravels which are

Table 15.7 Composition of agro-livestock waste

Nutrient	Poultry manure	Cow dung	Swine waste	Goat droppings
Organic carbon (%)	16.0	8.0	13.1	5.2
Nitrogen (%)	2.1	1.6	2.0	1.8
Available phosphorus (mg kg^{-1})	2.2	0.75	0.70	2.10
Organic matter (%)	28.8	13.5	24.2	10.9
Calcium (%)	6.2	4.2	6.1	3.2
Magnesium (%)	2.0	2	2.1	1.3
Potassium (%)	3.3	0.65	0.60	0.40
Sodium (%)	0.70	0.32	0.40	0.24
Carbon:nitrogen ratio	8.0	4.3	6.8	2.6

important spawning habitats for many fish species. Sediment deposition also contributes to changes in channel morphology and flow regime. Additionally, suspended sediments reduce light penetration, scour surfaces and may interfere with feeding mechanisms, drift rates and respiration of macro invertebrates and fish (Doeg and Koehn 1994; Wood and Armitage 1997; Relyea et al. 2000).

15.3.2 Environment

Pesticides that are used for the elimination of harmful insects, microorganisms, and other pests when they mix with soil, water, air, and food, cause problems on the agricultural foods and affect both human health and natural balance and so finally become an environment problem. Pesticide runoff is an important contributor to surface-water contamination (Wohlfahrt et al. 2010). Additionally fields, streams, lakes, ground water, and sea are converted to a kind of poison storage in time (Şimşek et al. 1991). There are hundreds of pesticides that are used in the world. According to WHO's classification, 33 pesticides are very dangerous, 48 of them are quite dangerous, 118 of them are moderately dangerous, and 239 of them are less dangerous of the total 700 mostly used pesticides. A 75% rate of pesticide usage belongs to developed countries. Pesticides and insecticides contaminate water. Contaminated water contains the heavy metals viz.; mercury, arsenic, lead, cadmium, etc. which affect the environment.

Table 15.8 Commercially manufactured products from fruit and vegetable wastes

Apple	Extra pomace after juice extraction used to prepare pectin, cider, vinegar, chutney
Apricot	Kernels after removing seed coat of white apricot can be added to jam to improve color and appearance. Oil from kernel and seed are used in pharmaceutical and cosmetic industry. Oil cake is used for cattle feed
Citrus	Fruit peels are utilized for making candy and oil is used in confectionery. Rages from galgal and orange are used to make pectin. Rages are utilized in making marmalade, toffee. This is also a good feed for cattle. Citric acid is produced from sludge and others residues can be fermented to make vinegar. Peel and seed oil are also used in many cosmetic industry
Grapes	Seed oil is used as cattle feed. Pomace is used in jelly, chutney, and jam making. Stem portion is used to prepare cream of tartar
Guava	Fruit cores, seeds, peels left after juice extraction is used to prepare popular product guava cheese
Mango	Stone of fruits are powdered followed by drying and utilized in many edible products. Peels are used to make vinegar by fermentation
Jackfruit	Seeds from fully ripe fruit are eaten after roasting. Pectin is extracted from rind and perigons
Tomato	Seeds are used to prepare edible oil
Pineapple	Juice from shell, trimmings, and other wastes may be used for secondary canning. Fruit core is used to prepare candy as well as used as cattle feed

15.3.3 Human Health

Water pollution creates a vicious cycle of contamination of the human food chain. Water and food are interlinked and difficult to separate. Many communicable and noncommunicable human diseases are related to water, soil geochemistry, and environmental pollution. There are numerous examples of environmental pollution leading to epidemics of serious human diseases (Kolpakova 2004; Deleanu et al. 1981). In agricultural areas, water can be contaminated with microbes, toxic heavy metals, such as lead, cadmium, or arsenic; fluoride; and various toxic agrochemicals (Wittmer et al. 2010, Belden et al. 2000 and Meyer et al. 2011). According to Gadde et al. (2009), open burning of crop stubble results in the emissions of harmful chemicals like polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAH's), and polychlorinated dibenzofurans (PCDFs). Burning of crop stubble has severe adverse impacts especially for those people suffering from respiratory disease and cardiovascular disease. Pregnant women and small children are also likely to suffer from the smoke produced due to stubble burning. Inhaling of fine particulate matter of less than PM 2.5 μg triggers asthma and can even aggravate symptoms of bronchial attack (Kumar et al. 2015).

Industrial agriculture focuses on the growth of the same crop season after season. Mono crops cause nutrient loss and reduce the soil's ability to naturally eliminate pests and replenish nutrients. To compensate, industrial agriculture uses heavy doses of chemical pesticides. Likewise, factory farming is contaminating the world with industrial operations that raise massive quantities of animals (usually cows, pigs, chickens, or turkeys) in overcrowded, confined, and unsanitary conditions (Hatz 2009). The price of food is at a relatively cheap cost, but is actually a cost affecting our health in a significant way. The oldest and most well-studied agricultural respiratory diseases are from exposures to organic dusts such as grain processing and confined animal feeding operations (CAFOs), (e.g., swine confinement facilities) (Kirkhorn and Facoem 2001). Organic dust toxic syndrome (ODTS) is common and may be seen in up to 34% of CAFO workers (Von Essen and Donham 1999).

15.4 Conversion and Utilization of Agricultural Waste

Agricultural wastes are basically unusable substances which may be either liquid or solid produced as result of cultivation processes such as fertilizers, pesticides, crop residues, and animal waste. Agricultural waste management is part of the ecological cycle in which everything is cycled and recycled such that an interdependent relationship is maintained in the ecosystem. By waste management, all the plant wastes are placed at the right place and right time for the best utilization in order to convert into useful products and pollution control. Globally, 140 billion metric tons of biomass is generated every year from agriculture. Ministry of New and Renewable Energy, Govt. of India estimated that about 500 Mt. of crop residue is generated every year (Shehrawat and Sindhu 2012). Agricultural waste contains biodegradable hemicellulose and cellulose materials, which on decomposition gives good nutrients to plants. Cow dung is commonly available in rural areas, which is rich in nutrients and microorganisms. Cow dung can be used as good seeding material as it is available in the agricultural farm itself from livestock. One of the main aims of the study is to reduce the overall time required for composting. Therefore, cow dung is mixed with agricultural waste as seeding agent (Kale 2000).

15.4.1 Agricultural Waste Improves Soil Fertility

Edwards and Bohlen (1996) reported that the pH range between 6 and 7 promotes the availability of plant nutrients like NPK, so vermicompost should be applied in soil. Chemical parameters like pH and electrical conductivity (EC) were determined by ISI Bulletin (Butterworth and Mosi 1986) by using digital pH and conductivity meters. Vermicompost improves the pH of soil and make available the nutrient for the crop yield reported by Srikanth et al. (2000). The deficiency in organic carbon reduces the storage capacity of soil nutrients and reduction in soil fertility reported by Kale et al. (1992). Vasanthi and Kumarasamy (1999) and Srikanth et al. (2000) reported that the incorporation of vermicompost with farm yard manure have been shown to increase organic carbon content in the soil.

Atiyeh et al. (1998) reported that the conventional compost had higher ammonium, while the vermicompost tended to be higher in nitrates, which is the more available form of nitrogen. Kale and Bano (1994) reported that the vermicompost shows the high values of NPK as high as 7.37% nitrogen (N) and 19.58% phosphorus as P_2O_5 in worm's vermicast. Lee et al. (2004) suggested that the passage of organic matter through the gut of worm results in phosphorus (P) converted to forms which are more bioavailable to plants. Suhane et al. (2008) reported that exchangeable potassium (K) was over 95% higher in vermicompost. The nutrients N and P and the intestinal mucus excreted by worms are further used by the microbes for multiplication and vigorous soil remediation and fertility improvement action reported by Teotia et al. (1950).

15.4.2 Conservation of Paddy Straw Waste Material

Paddy straw can be used as a source of energy for small-scale processing units, for carrying out various processes like washing, boiling, canning, etc. A mushroom processing unit is being run by a farmer in village Aterna of district Sonipat; his processing unit works under biomass energy. Paddy straw, cotton sticks, mustard sticks, and husk is utilized as a source of energy in the processing unit (Shehrawat and Sindhu 2012).

15.4.3 Utilization of Biogas Plant Waste

Forty-one farmers possessed biogas plant. Slurry thrown out of the biogas plant is utilized by the farmers (100.00) as manure and for composting and vermicomposting by 78.04% of farmers. This result was analogous with the findings of Ponni et al. (2007) that vermicompost can be used as manure on farm, the application of FYM + vermicompost @ 2.5 t/ha along with the panchagavya 3% proved to be the best treatment as it was found to record the highest plant height (83.17 cm), number of branches (38.23) and leaves (1115.87) and also recorded the mass herbage (44.81 g/plant).

15.4.4 Utilization of Floricultural Waste Product

After picking flowers, the whole plant is a waste along with the damaged and unsold flowers. The left out flowers are generally unsold or sold at least price. Few farmers use it in composting, vermicomposting, and green manuring, but mostly it becomes a waste. The left out flowers can be dried and used for making dry flowers which is an upcoming industry. The dry flowers can be painted, colored, and dyed and various floral products such as cards, pictures, wall hangings, arrangements, potpourris, and pomanders can be made out of them. Dilta et al. (2011) also suggested that dry flowers can be painted, colored, dyed, and sold at very high prices.

15.4.5 Conservation of Horticultural Waste Product

Horticultural crops were cultivated by 64 farmers. Damaged or spoiled fruits and vegetables, dead plants, branches, leaves, and unsold fruits and vegetables are the horticultural wastes. Among these, damaged fruits and vegetables are turned into compost/vermicompost or fed to animals by 70.31% of farmers. The dead plants, branches, and leaves were fed to animals by 100.00% and composted by 70.31% of farmers. Unsold fruits and vegetables are fed to animals by 100.00%, composted by 70.31%, and 26.56% farmers sold it after processing.

Value added products can be made from surplus fruits and vegetables and then sold in market; this will not only help the farmers avoid wastage but to earn more. Another way of preserving the unsold fruits and vegetables is drying them and then selling. Various chemicals can also be extracted from waste fruits and vegetables like citric acid, lactic acid, acetic acid, etc. Production of lactic acid was studied that it can be produced through the batch and fed batch fermentation method using hydrolyzed potato starch, results from the findings of Zhang and Mu (2011) concluded that potato residues can also be used for extraction of pectin.

15.4.6 Uses of Sugarcane Waste Product

From sugarcane crop, residues are sugarcane trash and bagasse. From the farmers those who cultivated sugarcane (43 farmers), 48.83% used the bagasse as fuel in making jaggery, 46.51% turned it into compost/vermicompost, and only 11.62% sold it to paper/cardboard industry or power plant. Farmers used sugarcane trash to feed their animals (100.00), composting/vermicomposting (46.51), sell as animal feed (16.28), and use it for mulching (1.67). Apart from composting and feeding bagasse and trash to animal, bagasse can also be used as planting for growing green fodder. Besides this, sugarcane bagasse has one more important use which is production of biogas; this is similar to the findings of Dellepiane et al. (2003) who conducted the study due to the existing difficulty of finding energy sources and reducing pollution, the use of renewable sources and highly efficient technologies for electrical energy production, the combination of these two aspects, namely, a molten carbonate fuel cell system fed with biomass-derived syngas. In particular, the biogas comes from bagasse and barbojo, the sugarcane residues. So far in developing countries they have been wasted or partly used with poorly efficient technology.

15.4.7 Conservation of Cotton Waste Material

Seventy-five farmers cultivated cotton crop. Cotton sticks which are left after the picking of cotton are used as fuel and stored by all the farmers. Cotton sticks were not utilized for any other purpose. If the farmers sell the cotton sticks to power plants, plywood industries, particle board industries they can add to their income. Another way of changing the waste cotton sticks into useful material is by chipping and converting them into compost. Cotton waste can also be used in biogas production by treating it anaerobically. This was similar to the findings of Isci and Demirer (2006), who found out that cotton wastes are a good source of biogas. Approximately, 65, 86 and 78 mL CH4 were produced in 23 days from 1 g of cotton stalks, cotton seed hull and cotton oil cake in the presence of basal medium (BM), respectively. BM supplementation had an important positive effect on the production of biogas.

15.5 Summary

Waste materials are produced by human activities and it is being used as potential source for making various products. Generally, agricultural wastes are rich in nutrients, sugars, vitamins, pigments etc. also which make them source materials instead of wastes. They are utilized as both edible and nonedible products. Agri-wastes are of solid and liquid in nature causing environmental hazards making the ecosystem unsustainable when they are lying unattended. Industrial liquid waste is polluting river water and air. With intervention of some practices these wastes may be converted to many products like bio-compost, fermented products, candy, cosmetic products, pharmaceutical products, etc. Thus, reuse of agri-wastes is the future of alternative source of raw materials for various products which not only will reduce the production cost but also reduce the pollution level and will make the planet eco-friendly.

References

Agamuthu P (2009) Challenges and opportunities in agro-waste management: an Asian perspective. In: Inaugural meeting of first regional 3R forum in Asia, Tokyo, Japan, 11–12 November 2009

Anonymous (1999). Safety and health in agriculture. International Labour Organization. p. 77. ISBN 978-92-2-111517-5. Archived from the original on 22 July 2011. Accessed 13 Sept 2010

Asadi N, Zilouei H (2017) Optimization of organosolv pretreatment of rice straw for enhanced biohydrogen production using *Enterobacter aerogenes*. Biores Technol 227:335–344. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biortech.2016.12.073

Atiyeh RM, Dominguez J, Sobler S et al (1998) Changes in biochemical properties of cow manure during processing by earthworms (Eiseniaandrei) and the effects on seedling growth. Pedobiologia 44:709–724

Belden JB, Hofelt CS, Lydy MJ (2000) Analysis of multiple pesticides in urban storm water using solid-phase extraction. Arch Environ Contam Toxicol 38(1):7–10

Brown and Root Environmental Consultancy Group (1997) Environmental review of national solid waste management plan. Interim report submitted to the Government of Mauritius

Butterworth MH, Mosi AK (1986) The voluntary intake and digestibility of combinations of cereal crop residues and legume hay for sheep. ILCA Bulletin 24:14–17

CPCB (2012) Central Pollution Control Board database

Deleanu M, Lenghel I, Zubac I (1981) Data regarding the incidence decrease of some diseases under the conditions of urban environmental pollution reduction. Sante Publique (Bucur) 24(2–3):239–248

Dellepiane D, Bosio B, Arato E (2003) Clean energy from sugarcane waste: feasibility study of an innovative application of bagasse and barbojo. Biores Technol 73(2):95–98

Dilta BS, Sharma BP, Bawejaand HS et al (2011) Flower drying techniques—A review. Int J Farm Sci 1(2):1–16

Doeg TJ, Koehn JD (1994) Effects of draining and desilting a smallweir on downstream fish and macro invertebrates. Regul Rivers Res Manag 9:263–277

Dueñas R, Tengerdy RP, Gutierrez-Correa M (1995) Cellulase production by mixed fungi in solid-substrate fermentation of bagasse. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 11:333–337

Edwards CA, Bohlen PJ (1996) Biology and ecology of earthworms, 3rd edn. Chapman and Hall, London

El-Tayeb TS, Ali SH, Abdelhafes AA et al (2012) Effect of acid hydrolysis and fungal biotreatment on agro-industrial wastes for obtainment of free sugars for bioethanol production. Braz J Microbiol 43(4):1523–1535

Ewing WN (1997) The feeds directory. Context Publications, Leicestershire

FAO (2014) Food wastage footprints impact on natural resources. www.fao.org/3/i3347e/i3347e.pdf

FAO (2017). www.fao.org/save-food

Friesecke HK (1970) Final report. UNDP/SF Project No. 150 (IRQ/6)

Gadde B, Bonnet S, Menke C et al (2009) Air pollutant emissions from rice straw open field burning in India, Thailand and the Philippines. Environ Pollut 157:1554–1558

Gohl BI (1970) Animal feed from local products and by-products in the British Caribbean. FAO, Rome. AGA/Misc/70/25

Haga K (1998) Animal waste problems and their solution from the technological point of view in Japan. JARQ (Jpn Agric Res Q) 32(3):203–210

Hatz D (2009) Factory farming and industrial agriculture. Sustainable table. http://www.sustainabletable.org/intro/comparison. Accessed 22 May 2009

Isci A, Demirer GN (2006) Biogas production potential from cotton wastes. Renew Energy 32(5):750–757

Kale RD (2000) An evaluation of the vermin technology process for the treatment of agro, sugar and food processing waste. In: Technology Appreciation Programme on Evaluation of Biotechnological Approaches no Waste Management, Industrial Association ship of IIT Madras, 26 October 2000, pp 15–17

Kale RD, Bano K (1994) Laboratory studies on age specific survival and fecundity of Eudriluseugeniae. Mitt Hamb Zool Mus Inst Band 89:139–148

Kale RD, Mallesh B, Bano K et al (1992) Influence of vermicompost application on the available macronutrients and selected microbial populations in a paddy field. Soil Biol Biochem 24:1317–1320

Kirkhorn SMD, Facoem MPH (2001) Human health effects of agriculture: physical diseases and illnesses. National Ag Safety Database (NASD), pp 1–18

Kolpakova AF (2004) Role of environmental pollution with heavy metals in chronic pulmonary diseases pathogenesis in North regions. Med Tr Prom Ekol 8:14–19

Kumar P, Kumar S, Joshi L (2015) Socioeconomic and environmental implications of agricultural residue burning-a case study of Punjab, India. Springer briefs in Environmental Science, pp 25–26

Kuo LH (1967) Animal feeding stu Vs compositional data of feeds and concentrates (part 3). Malays Agric J 46:63–70

Lee JJ, Park RD, Kim YW et al (2004) Effect of food waste compost on microbial population, soil enzyme activity and lettuce growth. Bioresour Technol 93:21–28

Martin C, Alriksson B, Sjöde A et al (2007) Dilute sulfuric acid pretreatment of agricultural and agro-industrial residues for ethanol production. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 136–140:339–352

Maymone B, Battaglini A, Tiberio M (1961) Ricerche sul valore nutritive della sansa d'olive. Alimentazione Animale Alimentazione Animale 5:219–250

Meyer B, Pailler JY, Guignard C et al (2011) Concentrations of dissolved herbicides and pharmaceuticalsin a small river in Luxembourg. Environ Monit Assess 180(1–4):127–146

Misra V, Pandey SD (2005) Hazardous waste, impact on health and environment for development of better waste management strategies in future in India. Environ Int 31:417–431

Mondal P (2008) Effective animal waste management systems. Your article library. http://www.yourarticlelibrary.com/dairy-farm-management/effective-animal-waste-management-systems/36110

Motte JC, Trably E, Escudié R et al (2013) Total solids content: a key parameter of metabolic pathways in dry anaerobic digestion. Biotechnol Biofuels 6:164

Nandan A, Yadav BP, Baksi S et al (2017) Recent scenario of solid waste management in India. World Scientific News 66:56–74. (www.worldscientificnews.com)

Nigam JN (2001) Ethanol production from wheat straw hemicellulose hydrolysate by *Pichia stipitis*. J Biotechnol 87:17–27

Nigam PS, Gupta N, Anthwal A (2009) Pre-treatment of agro-industrial residues. In: Nigam PS, Pandey A (eds) Biotechnology for agro-industrial residues utilization. Springer, Heidelberg, pp 13–33

Overcash MR (1973) In: Humenik FJ, Miner JR (eds) Livestock waste management. CRC Press, Boca Raton

Owusu K, Christensen DA, Owen BD (1970) Nutritive value of some Ghanian feed-stu Vs. Can J Anim Sci 50:1–14

PIB (2016) Solid waste management rules revised after 16 years; rules now extend to urban and industrial areas. Press Information Bureau, Government of India. http://pib.nic.in/newsite/PrintRelease.aspx?relid=138591

Ponni C, Arumugan S et al (2007) Effect on certain organic manures and Bio-stimulants on the growth, yield of phyllanthusniruri. Asian J Hortic 2(2):148–150

Relyea CD, Minshall GW, Danehy RJ (2000) Stream insects as bioindicators of fine sediment. In: Proceedings of the water environment federation, watershed 2000, Water Environment Federation, pp 663–686

Shehrawat PS, Sindhu N (2012) Agricultural waste utilization for healthy environment and sustainable lifestyle. In: Third International Scientific Symposium “Agrosym Jahorina 2012”. https://doi.org/10.7251/AGSY1203393S UDK 631.147:577

Shrama N, Dwivedi AK (2018) Municipal solid waste management system for Ujjain city- A review. Int J Res Method Human 1(4):1–13

Şimşek Y, Zirai MücadeleŞaşkınlığı, SızıntıDergisi (1991) Cilt 13, Sayı: 154

Sindhu P (2015) Effect of inhibitors on ethanol production: a mini review. Res Rev J Pharmace Anal 4(2):27–41

Srikanth K, Srinivasamurthy CA, Siddaramappa R et al (2000) Direct and residual effect of enriched compost, FYM, vermicopmost and fertilizers on properties of an Alfisol. J Indian Soc Soil Sci 48(3):496–499

Suhane RK, Sinha K et al (2008) Vermicompost, cattle-dung compost and chemical fertilizers: impacts on yield of wheat crops. Communication of Rajendra Agriculture University, Pusa, Bihar

Teotia SP, Duley FL, McCalla TM (1950) Effect of stubble mulching on number and activity of earthworms. Agricultural Experiment Research Station Bulletin, University of Nebraska College of Agriculture, Lincoln, pp 165–188

Vasanthi D, Kumarasamy K (1999) Efficacy of vermicompost to improve soil fertility and rice yield. J Indian Soc Soil Sci 42(2):268–272

Von Essen SG, Donham KJ (1999) Illness and injury in animal confinement workers. Occup Med 14(2):337–350

Wikipedia (2018a) https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Soil

Wikipedia (2018b) https://simple.wikipedia.org/wiki/Environment

Wittmer IK, Bader HP, Scheidegger R et al (2010) Significance of urban and agricultural landuse for biocide and pesticide dynamics in surface waters. Water Res 44(9):2850–2862

Wohlfahrt J, Colin F, Assaghir Z, Bockstaller C (2010) Assessing the impact of the spatial arrangement of agricultural practices on pesticide runoff in small catchments: combining hydrological modeling and supervised learning. Ecol Indic 10:826–839

Wood PJ, Armitage PD (1997) Biological effects of fine sedimentin the lotic environment. Environ Manag 21:203–217

World Bank (2014) Census 2011. Provisional population totals, India. http://censusindia.gov.in/2011-prov-results/datafiles/india/povpoputotalpresentation.2011.pdf

Zhang C, Mu T (2011) The optimization of pectin extraction from sweet potato residues with disodium phosphate solution by response surface method. Eng Environ Biosys 46:2274–2280